

FUNDAMENTALS OF

**E**   
**ENGLISH**  
**GRAMMAR**

---

Third Edition

**WORKBOOK**



longman.com

---

**Betty Schramper Azar**  
with Stacy Hagen

304 (803)  
D=13-013633-6 3007  
Fundamentals of English Grammar  
2637026  
400.00

# FUNDAMENTALS OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR WORKBOOK

Third Edition

*Betty Schramper Azar*  
with *Stacy Hagen*

*FUNDAMENTALS OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR* is a classic developmental skills text for students of English as a second or foreign language.

This **Workbook** consists solely of self-study exercises, providing students the opportunity to explore and practice grammar independently. It is keyed to the explanatory grammar charts in both the **Student Book** and the **Chartbook**.

The components of *FUNDAMENTALS OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR, Third Edition*, are:

### **Student Book**

Full Edition: ISBN 0-13-013631-X

Volume A: ISBN 0-13-013646-8

Volume B: ISBN 0-13-013652-2

Full edition with Answer Key: ISBN 0-13-049447-X

**Workbook**, consisting of self-study exercises for independent work

Full Edition: ISBN 0-13-013633-6

Volume A: ISBN 0-13-013647-6

Volume B: ISBN 0-13-013653-0

**Chartbook**, a reference text consisting of only the grammar charts

ISBN 0-13-013635-2

**Teacher's Guide**, with teaching suggestions, grammar notes, and answers

ISBN 0-13-013634-4



Azar/Grammar Exchange Companion website

<http://www.longman.com/azar>

<http://www.longman.com/grammarexchange>



9 780130 136336

ISBN 0-13-013633-6

FUNDAMENTALS OF



**E**NGLISH  
GRAMMAR

---

Third Edition

**WORKBOOK**



longman.com

---

**Betty Schramper Azar**  
with **Stacy Hagen**

**Fundamentals of English Grammar, Third Edition  
Workbook**

Copyright © 2003, 1992, 1985 by Betty Schramper Azar  
All rights reserved.

No part of this publication may be reproduced,  
stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted  
in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical,  
photocopying, recording, or otherwise,  
without the prior permission of the publisher.

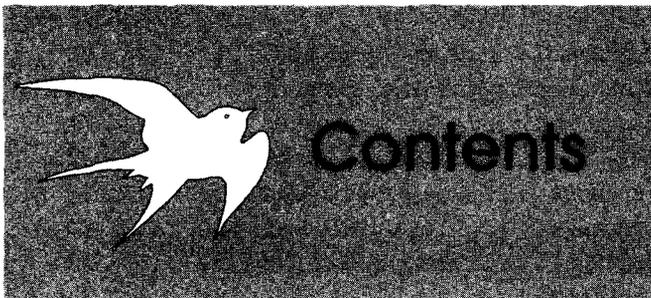
Azar Associates  
Shelley Hartle, Editor  
Susan Van Etten, Manager

Pearson Education, 10 Bank Street, White Plains, NY 10606

Vice president of instructional design: Allen Ascher  
Editorial manager: Pam Fishman  
Project manager: Margo Grant  
Development editor: Janet Johnston  
Vice president, director of design and production: Rhea Banker  
Director of electronic production: Aliza Greenblatt  
Executive managing editor: Linda Moser  
Production manager: Ray Keating  
Production editor: Robert Ruvo  
Director of manufacturing: Patrice Fraccio  
Senior manufacturing buyer: Edie Pullman  
Cover design: Monika Popowitz  
Illustrations: Don Martinetti  
Text composition: Carlisle Communications, Ltd.  
Text font: 10.5/12 Plantin

ISBN: 0-13-013633-6

Printed in the United States of America  
5 6 7 8 9 10-CRK-06 05



Preface .....	xv
---------------	----

## Chapter 1 PRESENT TIME

### PRACTICES

1. Interview questions and answers .....	1
2. Present verbs .....	2
3. Forms of the simple present .....	2
4. Forms of the present progressive .....	3
5. Present verbs: questions .....	3
6. Present verbs: questions .....	4
7. Simple present .....	4
8. Simple present and present progressive .....	5
9. Simple present .....	5
10. Simple present and present progressive .....	6
11. Frequency adverbs .....	7
12. Frequency adverbs .....	7
13. Frequency adverbs .....	8
14. Frequency adverbs .....	8
15. Frequency adverbs .....	9
16. Simple present: final <i>-s/-es</i> .....	10
17. Simple present: final <i>-s/-es</i> .....	11
18. Pronunciation: final <i>-s/-es</i> .....	11
19. Pronunciation: final <i>-s/-es</i> .....	12
20. Spelling: final <i>-s/-es</i> .....	12
21. Non-action verbs .....	12
22. Simple present and present progressive .....	13
23. Simple present and present progressive .....	14
24. Error analysis .....	15
25. Present verbs: questions and short answers .....	15
26. Review: present verbs .....	16

## Chapter 2 PAST TIME

1. Simple past .....	18
2. Simple past: regular and irregular verbs .....	19
3. Simple past forms .....	19

## PRACTICES

4. Present and past negatives	20
5. Simple past: questions	21
6. Simple past: questions	21
7. Simple past: regular and irregular verbs	22
8. Regular verbs: pronunciation of <i>-ed</i> endings	23
9. Regular verbs: pronunciation of <i>-ed</i> endings	23
10. Spelling and pronunciation of <i>-ed</i> endings	23
11. Regular verbs: pronunciation of <i>-ed</i> endings	24
12. Spelling of <i>-ing</i> and <i>-ed</i> forms	24
13. Spelling of <i>-ing</i>	25
14. Spelling of <i>-ing</i> and <i>-ed</i>	25
15. Spelling of <i>-ing</i>	26
16. Spelling of irregular verbs	27
17. Irregular verbs	28
18. Irregular verbs	29
19. Review: past questions and negatives	30
20. Simple present and past: questions	31
21. Review: simple present, present progressive, simple past forms	32
22. Simple present and simple past	32
23. Past progressive	34
24. Past progressive	34
25. Past progressive vs. simple past	35
26. Past time using time clauses	36
27. Past verbs	37
28. Past habit with <i>used to</i>	39
29. Error analysis	40
30. Past verbs	41

## Chapter 3 FUTURE TIME

1. Present, past, and future	43
2. <i>Will</i> and <i>be going to</i>	44
3. <i>Be going to</i>	44
4. <i>Will</i>	44
5. Questions with <i>will</i> and <i>be going to</i>	45
6. <i>Will</i>	46
7. <i>Will probably</i>	46
8. <i>Will probably</i>	47
9. Sureness about the future	47
10. Sureness about the future	48
11. <i>Will</i>	49
12. <i>Be going to</i> vs. <i>will</i>	49
13. <i>Be going to</i> vs. <i>will</i>	50
14. Past and future time clauses	52
15. Future time clauses	52
16. <i>If</i> -clauses	53
17. Time clauses and <i>if</i> -clauses	54
18. Review: past and future	54

## PRACTICES

19. Using <b>be going to</b> and the present progressive to express future time . . . . .	56
20. Using the present progressive to express future time . . . . .	56
21. Using the simple present to express future time . . . . .	58
22. Using <b>be about to</b> . . . . .	59
23. Parallel verbs . . . . .	59
24. Error analysis . . . . .	60
25. Verb tense review . . . . .	61

## Chapter 4 THE PRESENT PERFECT AND THE PAST PERFECT

1. Forms of the present perfect . . . . .	64
2. The present perfect . . . . .	65
3. Review: irregular verbs . . . . .	66
4. The present perfect . . . . .	67
5. The present perfect vs. the simple past . . . . .	68
6. Review: irregular verbs . . . . .	68
7. The present perfect vs. the simple past . . . . .	70
8. Review: irregular verbs . . . . .	71
9. <b>Since</b> vs. <b>for</b> . . . . .	73
10. Present perfect with <b>since</b> and <b>for</b> . . . . .	74
11. Present perfect and simple past with time words . . . . .	74
12. <b>Since</b> -clauses . . . . .	75
13. The present perfect progressive . . . . .	75
14. The present perfect progressive . . . . .	76
15. <b>Already, still, yet, anymore</b> . . . . .	77
16. <b>Already, still, yet, anymore</b> . . . . .	78
17. Verb tense review . . . . .	79
18. The present perfect vs. the past perfect . . . . .	80
19. The past progressive vs. the past perfect . . . . .	81
20. The past perfect . . . . .	82
21. Verb tense review . . . . .	83
22. Error analysis . . . . .	84

## Chapter 5 ASKING QUESTIONS

1. Preview: asking questions . . . . .	85
2. Yes/no questions . . . . .	86
3. Yes/no questions and short answers . . . . .	87
4. Yes/no questions and short answers . . . . .	88
5. Yes/no questions and short answers . . . . .	89
6. Yes/no and information questions . . . . .	89
7. Information questions . . . . .	90
8. Information questions . . . . .	91
9. Information questions with <b>why</b> . . . . .	92
10. <b>Who, who(m), and what</b> . . . . .	93
11. <b>Who, who(m), and what</b> . . . . .	94
12. Asking for the meaning of a word . . . . .	95
13. <b>What</b> + a form of <b>do</b> . . . . .	95

## PRACTICES

14. <b>What kind of</b> . . . . .	96
15. <b>Which vs. what</b> . . . . .	97
16. <b>Who vs. whose</b> . . . . .	98
17. <b>Who vs. whose</b> . . . . .	99
18. Using <b>how</b> . . . . .	99
19. Using <b>how far, how long, and how often</b> . . . . .	100
20. Cumulative review . . . . .	101
21. Cumulative review . . . . .	102
22. Tag questions . . . . .	103
23. Tag questions . . . . .	104
24. Error analysis . . . . .	105
25. Review: questions . . . . .	106

## Chapter 6 NOUNS AND PRONOUNS

1. Preview: plural nouns . . . . .	108
2. Pronunciation of <b>-s/-es</b> . . . . .	108
3. Pronunciation of <b>-s/-es</b> . . . . .	108
4. Pronunciation of <b>-s/-es</b> . . . . .	109
5. Plural nouns . . . . .	109
6. Plural nouns . . . . .	110
7. Subjects, verbs, and objects . . . . .	111
8. Objects of prepositions . . . . .	111
9. Subjects, verbs, objects, and prepositions . . . . .	112
10. Prepositions of time . . . . .	112
11. Word order: object, place, and time . . . . .	113
12. Subject–verb agreement . . . . .	114
13. Subject–verb agreement . . . . .	114
14. Adjectives . . . . .	114
15. Adjectives and nouns . . . . .	115
16. Nouns as adjectives . . . . .	116
17. Review: nouns . . . . .	117
18. Personal pronouns . . . . .	118
19. Personal pronouns . . . . .	118
20. Personal pronouns . . . . .	119
21. Possessive nouns . . . . .	120
22. Possessive nouns . . . . .	120
23. Possessive pronouns vs. possessive adjectives . . . . .	122
24. Possessive pronouns vs. possessive adjectives . . . . .	122
25. Reflexive pronouns . . . . .	123
26. Reflexive pronouns . . . . .	124
27. Review: pronouns . . . . .	125
28. Review: pronouns . . . . .	125
29. Singular forms of <b>other</b> . . . . .	126
30. Singular forms of <b>other</b> . . . . .	127
31. Plural forms of <b>other</b> . . . . .	128
32. Summary: forms of <b>other</b> . . . . .	129
33. Cumulative review . . . . .	130
34. Cumulative review . . . . .	130

## Chapter 7 MODAL AUXILIARIES

### PRACTICES

1. Preview: modal auxiliaries . . . . .	132
2. The form of modal auxiliaries . . . . .	133
3. Expressing ability . . . . .	134
4. Expressing ability and possibility . . . . .	134
5. Expressing possibility . . . . .	135
6. Expressing possibility and permission . . . . .	135
7. Meanings of <i>could</i> . . . . .	136
8. Polite questions . . . . .	137
9. Polite questions . . . . .	137
10. Expressing advice . . . . .	138
11. Expressing advice . . . . .	138
12. Expressing advice . . . . .	139
13. Expressing necessity . . . . .	140
14. Expressing necessity . . . . .	140
15. Necessity: <i>must, have to, have got to</i> . . . . .	141
16. Necessity: <i>must, have to, have got to</i> . . . . .	141
17. Expressing lack of necessity and prohibition . . . . .	141
18. Expressing necessity, lack of necessity, and prohibition . . . . .	143
19. Expressing necessity, lack of necessity, and prohibition . . . . .	143
20. Logical conclusion or necessity . . . . .	144
21. Imperative sentences . . . . .	144
22. Polite questions and imperatives . . . . .	145
23. <i>Let's</i> and <i>why don't</i> . . . . .	145
24. Stating preferences . . . . .	146
25. Stating preferences . . . . .	147
26. Cumulative review . . . . .	148
27. Cumulative review . . . . .	149
28. Cumulative review . . . . .	150

## Chapter 8 CONNECTING IDEAS

1. Connecting ideas with <i>and</i> . . . . .	152
2. Punctuating items connected with <i>and</i> . . . . .	153
3. Punctuating sentences . . . . .	153
4. Punctuating sentences . . . . .	154
5. Using <i>and, but, and or</i> . . . . .	154
6. Using <i>and, but, or, and so</i> . . . . .	155
7. Using <i>and, but, or, and so</i> . . . . .	155
8. Using <i>and, but, or, and so</i> . . . . .	156
9. Using <i>and, but, or, and so</i> . . . . .	156
10. Using <i>and, but, or, and so</i> . . . . .	157
11. Using auxiliary verbs after <i>but</i> and <i>and</i> . . . . .	157
12. Auxiliary verbs after <i>but</i> and <i>and</i> . . . . .	158
13. Using <i>too, so, either, or neither</i> after <i>and</i> . . . . .	160
14. Adverb clauses with <i>because</i> . . . . .	161
15. Adverb clauses with <i>because</i> . . . . .	161
16. Adverb clauses with <i>because</i> . . . . .	161

## PRACTICES

17. Adverb clauses with <i>because</i> . . . . .	162
18. Adverb clauses with <i>even though</i> and <i>although</i> . . . . .	163
19. Using <i>because</i> and <i>even though</i> . . . . .	164
20. Adverb clauses with <i>because</i> . . . . .	165
21. Using <i>even though</i> / <i>although</i> and <i>because</i> . . . . .	166
22. Error analysis . . . . .	168

## Chapter 9 COMPARISONS

1. <i>As . . . as</i> . . . . .	169
2. <i>As . . . as</i> . . . . .	169
3. <i>As . . . as</i> . . . . .	170
4. <i>As . . . as</i> . . . . .	172
5. <i>As . . . as</i> . . . . .	172
6. Comparative and superlative forms . . . . .	174
7. Comparative forms . . . . .	174
8. Comparatives . . . . .	175
9. Comparatives and superlatives . . . . .	176
10. <i>Farther</i> and <i>further</i> . . . . .	176
11. Adjectives and adverbs in the comparative . . . . .	177
12. Completing a comparative . . . . .	177
13. Completing comparisons with pronouns . . . . .	178
14. <i>Very</i> vs. <i>a lot</i> / <i>much</i> / <i>far</i> . . . . .	179
15. <i>Not as . . . as</i> and <i>less . . . than</i> . . . . .	179
16. Unclear comparisons . . . . .	180
17. Using <i>more</i> with nouns . . . . .	180
18. Repeating a comparative . . . . .	181
19. Double comparatives . . . . .	181
20. Double comparatives . . . . .	182
21. Using superlatives . . . . .	183
22. Using superlatives . . . . .	183
23. <i>As . . . as</i> , <i>more/-er</i> , and <i>most/-est</i> . . . . .	184
24. Using <i>never</i> with comparatives . . . . .	186
25. Using <i>ever</i> and <i>never</i> in comparisons . . . . .	186
26. Review of comparatives and superlatives . . . . .	187
27. Review of comparatives and superlatives . . . . .	188
28. <i>Like</i> , <i>alike</i> . . . . .	189
29. <i>The same as</i> , <i>similar to</i> , <i>different from</i> . . . . .	190
30. <i>Like</i> , <i>alike</i> , <i>similar (to)</i> , <i>different (from)</i> . . . . .	190
31. <i>The same</i> , <i>similar</i> , <i>different</i> , <i>like</i> , <i>alike</i> . . . . .	191
32. Error analysis . . . . .	192

## Chapter 10 THE PASSIVE

1. Active vs. passive . . . . .	193
2. Active vs. passive . . . . .	193
3. Review of past participles . . . . .	194
4. Passive form . . . . .	194
5. Passive vs. active meaning . . . . .	195

## PRACTICES

6. Tense forms of the passive	196
7. Passive to active	197
8. Passive to active	197
9. Transitive vs. intransitive	198
10. Active and passive	198
11. Review: identifying passives with transitive and intransitive verbs	199
12. The <b>by</b> -phrase	199
13. The <b>by</b> -phrase	200
14. Active to passive	200
15. Review: active vs. passive	201
16. Progressive tenses in passive	201
17. Passive forms of progressive verbs	202
18. Passive forms of progressive verbs	203
19. Review: active vs. passive	203
20. Passive modals	204
21. Passive modals	204
22. Passive modals	205
23. Summary: active vs. passive	205
24. Summary: active vs. passive	206
25. Summary: active vs. passive	207
26. Using past participles as adjectives	207
27. Using past participles as adjectives	208
28. <b>-Ed</b> vs. <b>-ing</b>	209
29. <b>-Ed</b> vs. <b>-ing</b>	209
30. <b>-Ed</b> vs. <b>-ing</b>	211
31. <b>-Ed</b> vs. <b>-ing</b>	211
32. <b>Get</b> + adjective and past participle	212
33. <b>Get</b> + adjective and past participle	213
34. <b>Be used / accustomed to</b>	214
35. <b>Used to</b> vs. <b>be used to</b>	214
36. <b>Used to</b> vs. <b>be used to</b>	215
37. <b>Be supposed to</b>	215
38. <b>Be supposed to</b>	216
39. Error analysis	217

## Chapter 11 COUNT/NONCOUNT NOUNS AND ARTICLES

1. <b>A</b> vs. <b>an</b> : singular count nouns	218
2. Preview: count and noncount nouns	218
3. Count and noncount nouns	219
4. Count and noncount nouns	220
5. Count and noncount nouns	220
6. Count and noncount nouns	221
7. <b>Many</b> vs. <b>much</b>	222
8. <b>How many</b> and <b>how much</b>	223
9. Review: count and noncount nouns	224
10. <b>A few</b> vs. <b>a little</b>	224
11. Error analysis	225
12. Count and noncount nouns	225

## PRACTICES

13. Units of measure with noncount nouns	226
14. Units of measure with noncount nouns	227
15. <b>Much</b> vs. <b>many</b>	227
16. <b>A/an</b> vs. <b>some</b>	228
17. <b>A</b> vs. <b>some</b>	228
18. <b>A/an</b> vs. <b>the</b> : singular count nouns	229
19. <b>Ø</b> vs. <b>the</b>	230
20. Using <b>the</b> for second mention	231
21. Using <b>the</b> for second mention	233
22. Summary: <b>a/an</b> vs. <b>the</b> vs. <b>Ø</b>	234
23. Using <b>the</b> or <b>Ø</b> with names	236
24. Using <b>the</b> or <b>Ø</b> with names	237
25. Capitalization	238
26. Capitalization	238
27. Error analysis	239

## Chapter 12 ADJECTIVE CLAUSES

1. Using <b>who</b> in adjective clauses	240
2. Using <b>who</b> in adjective clauses	241
3. Using <b>who</b> and <b>whom</b> in adjective clauses	241
4. Using <b>who</b> and <b>whom</b> in adjective clauses	242
5. Using <b>who</b> and <b>who(m)</b> in adjective clauses	242
6. Using <b>that</b> or <b>Ø</b> in adjective clauses	243
7. Using <b>that</b> or <b>Ø</b> in adjective clauses	243
8. Using <b>who</b> , <b>who(m)</b> , <b>that</b> , or <b>Ø</b> in adjective clauses	244
9. <b>Who</b> and <b>who(m)</b> vs. <b>which</b>	245
10. Adjective clauses	245
11. <b>Which</b> and <b>that</b>	246
12. Using <b>which</b> , <b>that</b> , and <b>Ø</b> in adjective clauses	246
13. Error analysis: object pronouns in adjective clauses	247
14. Pronoun usage in adjective clauses	247
15. Subject-verb agreement in adjective clauses	248
16. Prepositions in adjective clauses	249
17. Prepositions in adjective clauses	250
18. Prepositions in adjective clauses	250
19. Adjective clauses with <b>whose</b>	251
20. Adjective clauses with <b>whose</b>	251
21. Meaning of adjective clauses	252
22. Adjective clauses	253
23. Adjective clauses	253
24. Error analysis	254

## Chapter 13 GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES

1. Verb + gerund	256
2. <b>Go</b> + gerund	256
3. Identifying gerunds and infinitives	257

## PRACTICES

4. Gerunds and infinitives	258
5. Verb + gerund vs. infinitive	258
6. Verb + gerund or infinitive	260
7. Verb + gerund or infinitive	261
8. Preposition + gerund	262
9. Preposition + gerund	263
10. Review: gerund vs. infinitive	264
11. Review: gerund vs. infinitive	265
12. Review: gerund vs. infinitive	265
13. <b>By</b> + gerund	267
14. <b>By</b> + gerund	268
15. <b>By</b> vs. <b>with</b>	268
16. Gerund as subject; <b>it</b> + infinitive	269
17. Purpose: <b>to</b> vs. <b>for</b>	270
18. Purpose: <b>to</b> vs. <b>for</b>	271
19. Purpose: <b>to</b> vs. <b>for</b>	271
20. ( <b>In order</b> ) <b>to</b>	271
21. <b>Too</b> vs. <b>enough</b>	272
22. <b>Too</b> vs. <b>enough</b>	273
23. Gerund vs. infinitive	273
24. Gerund vs. infinitive	274
25. Error analysis	276

## Chapter 14 NOUN CLAUSES

1. Information questions and noun clauses	278
2. Noun clauses	278
3. Information questions and noun clauses	279
4. Information questions and noun clauses	279
5. Noun clauses	281
6. Information questions and noun clauses	281
7. Noun clauses with <b>who, what, whose</b> + <b>be</b>	282
8. Noun clauses with <b>who, what, whose</b> + <b>be</b>	282
9. Noun clauses with <b>who, what, whose</b> + <b>be</b>	283
10. Noun clauses with <b>who, what, whose</b> + <b>be</b>	283
11. Noun clauses and yes/no questions	284
12. Noun clauses and yes/no questions	285
13. Noun clauses	285
14. Noun clauses	286
15. <b>That</b> -clauses	287
16. <b>That</b> -clauses	288
17. <b>That</b> -clauses	289
18. <b>That</b> -clauses	290
19. <b>That</b> -clauses	290
20. Quoted speech	291
21. Quoted speech	291
22. Quoted speech	292
23. Quoted speech	293

## PRACTICES

24. Reported speech: changing pronouns	293
25. Reported speech: changing verbs	294
26. Reported speech	295
27. Reporting questions	296
28. Quoting questions	296
29. Reporting questions	297
30. Reported speech	298
31. <i>Say</i> vs. <i>tell</i> vs. <i>ask</i>	299
32. Reported speech	299
33. Reported speech	300
34. Reported speech	300
35. Reported speech	302
36. Error analysis	303

## Appendix 1 PHRASAL VERBS

1. Phrasal verbs: separable (Group A)	305
2. Phrasal verbs: separable (Group A)	306
3. Phrasal verbs: nonseparable (Group B)	307
4. Phrasal verbs: nonseparable (Group B)	308
5. Phrasal verbs: separable (Group C)	308
6. Phrasal verbs: separable (Groups A, B, C)	309
7. Phrasal verbs: separable (Group D)	310
8. Phrasal verbs: separable and nonseparable (Groups A, B, C, D)	311
9. Phrasal verbs: separable (Group E)	312
10. Phrasal verbs: separable (Group E)	313
11. Phrasal verbs: intransitive (Group F)	314
12. Phrasal verbs: intransitive (Group F)	316
13. Phrasal verbs (three-word) (Group G)	316
14. Phrasal verbs (three-word) (Group G)	317
15. Phrasal verbs (three-word) (Group H)	317
16. Phrasal verbs (three-word) (Group H)	318
17. Review: phrasal verbs (Appendix 1)	319

## Appendix 2 PREPOSITION COMBINATIONS

1. Preposition combinations (Group A)	321
2. Preposition combinations (Group A)	322
3. Preposition combinations (Group B)	322
4. Preposition combinations (Group B)	323
5. Preposition combinations (Group C)	323
6. Review: preposition combinations (Groups A and C)	324
7. Preposition combinations (Group D)	325
8. Preposition combinations (Groups B and D)	326
9. Preposition combinations (Group E)	326
10. Preposition combinations (Group E)	327
11. Preposition combinations (Group F)	327
12. Preposition combinations (Group F)	328

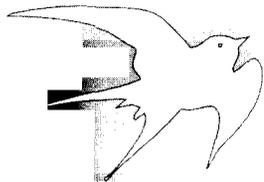
PRACTICES

13. Preposition combinations (Group G) ..... 329  
14. Preposition combinations (Group G) ..... 330  
15. Review: preposition combinations (Appendix 2) ..... 331  
16. Review: preposition combinations (Appendix 2) ..... 331

INDEX ..... INDEX 1

ANSWER KEY ..... ANSWER KEY 1





## Preface

This ESL/EFL *Workbook* is a place for students to explore and practice English grammar on their own. It is a place where they can test and fine-tune their understandings of English structures and improve their abilities to use English meaningfully and correctly.

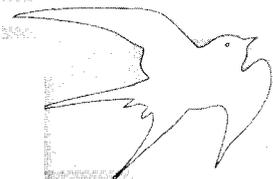
It is keyed to the explanatory grammar charts found in *Fundamentals of English Grammar, Third Edition*, a classroom teaching text for students of English as a second or foreign language, as well as in the accompanying *Chartbook*, a reference grammar with no exercises.

The *Workbook* is designed not only for students who desire the opportunity for independent study of English grammar but also as a resource for teachers who need exercise material for additional classwork, homework, testing, or individualized instruction.

The answers to ALL of the practices are given in the back of the book in an *Answer Key*. The *Answer Key* is on perforated pages so that it can be detached to construct a separate booklet. If teachers desire to use the *Workbook* as a classroom teaching text, the *Answer Key* can be removed at the beginning of the term.

A note on changes from the previous edition: The *Workbook* that accompanied the previous edition of *Fundamentals of English Grammar* had both self-study (answers given) and guided study (no answers given) practices. This *Workbook* has only self-study practices. The guided study practices that involved communicative, interactive, and/or task-based activities are now in the main teaching text, and other guided study practices from the previous edition have been adapted to a self-study format in this edition. A good portion of the material in this edition of the *FEG Workbook* is newly created.





# CHAPTER 1

## Present Time

### ◇ PRACTICE 1. Interview questions and answers.

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with appropriate words.

SPEAKER A: Hi. My name is Kunio.

SPEAKER B: Hi. My name is Maria. I am glad to meet you.

KUNIO: I am glad to meet you, too. Where are you from?

MARIA: I am from Mexico. Where are you from?

KUNIO: I am from Japan.

MARIA: Where are you living now?

KUNIO: On Fifth Avenue in an apartment. And you?

MARIA: I am living in a dorm.

KUNIO: What are you studying?

MARIA: Business. After I study English, I'm going to attend the School of Business Administration. How are you doing? What is your major?

KUNIO: Engineering.

MARIA: What do you like to do in your free time?

KUNIO: I read a lot. How do you do it?

MARIA: I like to get on the Internet.

KUNIO: Really? What do you do when you're online?

MARIA: I visit many different Web sites. It is a good way to practice my English.

KUNIO: That's interesting. I like to get on the Internet, too.

MARIA: I have to write down your full name on the board when I introduce you to the class. How do you spell your name?

KUNIO: My first name is Kunio. K-U-N-I-O. My family name is Akiwa.

MARIA: Kunio Akiwa. Is that right?

KUNIO: Yes, it is. And what is your name again?

MARIA: My first name is Maria. M-A-R-I-A. My last name is Lopez.

KUNIO: Thanks. It's been nice talking to you.

MARIA: I enjoyed it, too.

◇ PRACTICE 2. Present verbs. (Charts 1-1 and 1-2)

Directions: Use the given verb to complete each sentence that follows. Use the simple present or the present progressive.

1. *sit* I am sitting at my desk right now.
2. *read* I \_\_\_\_\_ the second sentence in this exercise.
3. *look* I \_\_\_\_\_ at sentence 3 now.
4. *write* Now I \_\_\_\_\_ the right completion for this sentence.
5. *do* I \_\_\_\_\_ a grammar exercise.
6. *sit* I usually sit at my desk when I do my homework. And right now I am sitting at my desk to do this exercise.
7. *read* I often \_\_\_\_\_ the newspaper, but right now I \_\_\_\_\_ a sentence in my grammar workbook.
8. *look* I \_\_\_\_\_ at the newspaper every day. But right now I \_\_\_\_\_ at my grammar workbook.
9. *write* When I do exercises in this workbook, I \_\_\_\_\_ the answers in my book and then I check them in the *Answer Key*.\* Right now I \_\_\_\_\_ an answer in the book.
10. *do* I \_\_\_\_\_ grammar exercises every day. Right now I \_\_\_\_\_ Practice 2 in this workbook.

◇ PRACTICE 3. Forms of the simple present. (Charts 1-1 and 1-2)

Directions: Review the basic forms of the simple present tense by completing the sentences with the correct form of the verb *speak*.

**PART I: STATEMENT FORMS**

1. I (*speak*) speak English.
2. They (*speak*) \_\_\_\_\_ English.
3. He (*speak*) \_\_\_\_\_ English.
4. You (*speak*) \_\_\_\_\_ English.
5. She (*speak*) \_\_\_\_\_ English.

**PART II: NEGATIVE FORMS**

6. I (*speak, not*) do not (don't) speak your language.
7. They (*speak, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ English.
8. She (*speak, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ English.
9. You (*speak, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ English.
10. He (*speak, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ English.

\*The *Answer Key* to these practices is in the back of this book.

**PART III: QUESTION FORMS**

11. (*you, speak*) Do you speak English?
12. (*they, speak*) \_\_\_\_\_ English?
13. (*he, speak*) \_\_\_\_\_ English?
14. (*we, speak*) \_\_\_\_\_ English?
15. (*she, speak*) \_\_\_\_\_ English?

◇ **PRACTICE 4. Forms of the present progressive. (Charts 1-1 and 1-2)**

*Directions:* Review the basic forms of the present progressive by completing the sentences with the correct form of the verb **spea**k.

**PART I: STATEMENT FORMS**

1. I (*speak*) am speaking English right now.
2. They (*speak*) \_\_\_\_\_ English right now.
3. She (*speak*) \_\_\_\_\_ English right now.
4. You (*speak*) \_\_\_\_\_ English right now.
5. He (*speak*) \_\_\_\_\_ English right now.

**PART II: NEGATIVE FORMS**

6. I (*speak, not*) am not speaking English right now.
7. They (*speak, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ English right now.
8. She (*speak, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ English right now.
9. You (*speak, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ English right now.
10. He (*speak, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ English right now.

**PART III: QUESTION FORMS**

11. (*you, speak*) Are you speaking English right now?
12. (*he, speak*) \_\_\_\_\_ English right now?
13. (*they, speak*) \_\_\_\_\_ English right now?
14. (*we, speak*) \_\_\_\_\_ English right now?
15. (*she, speak*) \_\_\_\_\_ English right now?

◇ **PRACTICE 5. Present verbs: questions. (Charts 1-1 and 1-2)**

*Directions:* Complete the questions with **Does he** or **Is he**.

1. Is he a student?
2. Does he have class now?
3. \_\_\_\_\_ know his teachers?
4. \_\_\_\_\_ in the classroom?
5. \_\_\_\_\_ like school?
6. \_\_\_\_\_ a hard worker?

7. \_\_\_\_\_ tired?
8. \_\_\_\_\_ study every day?
9. \_\_\_\_\_ need help with his homework?
10. \_\_\_\_\_ studying right now?

◇ PRACTICE 6. Present verbs: questions. (Charts 1-1 and 1-2)

Directions: Complete the questions with **Does she** or **Is she**.

1. Is she at work?
2. Does she work five days a week?
3. \_\_\_\_\_ working right now?
4. \_\_\_\_\_ sitting at her desk?
5. \_\_\_\_\_ come to the office every day?
6. \_\_\_\_\_ like her job?
7. \_\_\_\_\_ on the phone?
8. \_\_\_\_\_ in a meeting?
9. \_\_\_\_\_ work overtime often?
10. \_\_\_\_\_ working overtime now?

◇ PRACTICE 7. Simple present. (Charts 1-1 and 1-2)

Directions: Complete the sentences with **do**, **does**, or **Ø**.\*

1. Jack does not work at his father's store.
2. Do you have a job?
3. Kate Ø works at a restaurant.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ she work the day shift or night shift?
5. Denise and Scott \_\_\_\_\_ own a small company that does home repairs.
6. They \_\_\_\_\_ have different job skills.
7. They \_\_\_\_\_ not do the same work.
8. Denise \_\_\_\_\_ enjoys painting, and Scott \_\_\_\_\_ prefers woodworking.
9. Scott \_\_\_\_\_ not like painting very much.
10. They \_\_\_\_\_ get along well with each other.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ they plan to work together for a long time? Yes. They're married.

\*Ø = "nothing."

◇ PRACTICE 8. Simple present and present progressive. (Charts 1-1 and 1-2)

Directions: Complete the sentences with *does, do, is, are*, or  $\emptyset$ .

A: What is<sub>1</sub> that? What           <sub>2</sub> you looking at?

B: It           <sub>3</sub> a very rare and valuable book.

A:           <sub>4</sub> it yours?

B: No. It           <sub>5</sub> not belong to me. It           <sub>6</sub> belongs to my cousin.

He           <sub>7</sub> collects old books.

A: That           <sub>8</sub> an interesting hobby.           <sub>9</sub> you a collector, too?

          <sub>10</sub> you collect old books?

B: I           <sub>11</sub> have the interest but not the money. Rare old books           <sub>12</sub>

expensive to collect. I           <sub>13</sub> becoming interested in stamps, though. Stamps

          <sub>14</sub> not as expensive as rare books. I           <sub>15</sub> want to collect stamps from the 1800s.

A: I           <sub>16</sub> thinking about collecting stamps, too.           <sub>17</sub> you want to get together sometime and talk about it?

B: Yes. Let's do that.

◇ PRACTICE 9. Simple present. (Charts 1-1 and 1-2)

Directions: Complete the sentences with *does, do, is, are*, or  $\emptyset$ .

1. A turtle  $\emptyset$  lays eggs.

2. Do snakes lay eggs?

3.            an alligator lay eggs?

4.            an alligator a reptile?

5.            turtles and snakes reptiles?

6. Turtles, snakes, and alligators            all reptiles.

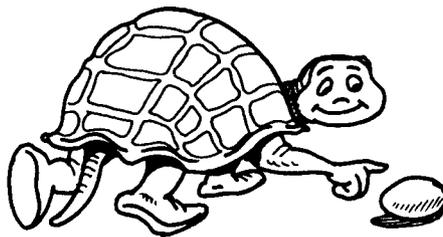
7. Almost all reptiles            lay eggs.

8. Reptiles            cold-blooded.

9. They            prefer warm climates.

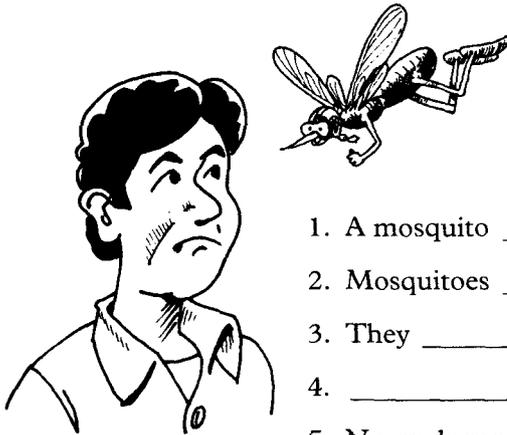
10. Their body temperature            the same as the temperature of their surroundings.

11.            reptiles like to lie in the sun? Yes, they do.



◇ PRACTICE 10. Simple present and present progressive. (Charts 1-1 and 1-2)

Directions: Complete the sentences with *does, do, is, are*, or *Ø*.



1. A mosquito is flying around Sam's head.
2. Mosquitoes \_\_\_\_\_ pests.
3. They \_\_\_\_\_ bother people and animals.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ a male mosquito bite?
5. No, male mosquitoes \_\_\_\_\_ not bite.
6. Only female mosquitoes \_\_\_\_\_ bite animals and people.
7. A female mosquito \_\_\_\_\_ lays 1000 to 3000 eggs each year.
8. How long \_\_\_\_\_ mosquitoes live?
9. A female mosquito \_\_\_\_\_ lives for 30 days.
10. A male mosquito \_\_\_\_\_ not live as long as a female.
11. How long \_\_\_\_\_ a male mosquito live?
12. It \_\_\_\_\_ dies after 10 or 20 days.
13. Beverly \_\_\_\_\_  
wearing mosquito  
repellent.



14. The mosquito repellent \_\_\_\_\_ smells bad, but it \_\_\_\_\_ works.
15. The mosquito repellent \_\_\_\_\_ effective.
16. Mosquitoes \_\_\_\_\_ stay away from people who \_\_\_\_\_ wearing mosquito repellent.
17. \_\_\_\_\_ you ever wear mosquito repellent?
18. \_\_\_\_\_ mosquito repellent work?

◇ PRACTICE 11. Frequency adverbs. (Chart 1-3)

*Directions:* Add the word in *italics* to the sentences. Put the word in its usual midsentence position. Write Ø if no word is needed in a blank.

1. *usually* Ann usually stays Ø at night.
2. *usually* Ann Ø is usually at home at night.
3. *always* Bob \_\_\_\_\_ stays \_\_\_\_\_ home in the evening.
4. *always* He \_\_\_\_\_ is \_\_\_\_\_ at his desk in the evening.
5. *usually* He \_\_\_\_\_ doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ go out in the evenings.
6. *always* But he \_\_\_\_\_ doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ study every evening.
7. *sometimes* He \_\_\_\_\_ watches \_\_\_\_\_ a little TV.
8. *never* He \_\_\_\_\_ stays \_\_\_\_\_ up past midnight.
9. *never* He \_\_\_\_\_ is \_\_\_\_\_ up past midnight.
10. *usually* Does \_\_\_\_\_ Ann \_\_\_\_\_ study \_\_\_\_\_ at night?
11. *always* Does \_\_\_\_\_ Bob \_\_\_\_\_ study \_\_\_\_\_ at night?
12. *always* Is \_\_\_\_\_ Bob \_\_\_\_\_ at home at night?

◇ PRACTICE 12. Frequency adverbs. (Chart 1-3)

*Directions:* Add the given words to the sentence. Put the adverbs in their usual midsentence position. Change the verb from negative to affirmative (i.e. statement form) as necessary.

1. *Sentence:* **Jane doesn't come to class on time.**

- a. *usually* Jane usually doesn't come to class on time.
- b. *ever* Jane doesn't ever come to class on time.
- c. *seldom* Jane seldom comes to class on time.
- d. *sometimes* Jane \_\_\_\_\_ to class on time.
- e. *always* Jane \_\_\_\_\_ to class on time.
- f. *occasionally* Jane \_\_\_\_\_ to class on time.
- g. *never* Jane \_\_\_\_\_ to class on time.
- h. *hardly ever* Jane \_\_\_\_\_ to class on time.

2. *Sentence:* **Jane isn't on time for class.**

- a. *usually* Jane usually isn't on time for class.
- b. *rarely* Jane \_\_\_\_\_ on time for class.
- c. *always* Jane \_\_\_\_\_ on time for class.
- d. *frequently* Jane \_\_\_\_\_ on time for class.
- e. *never* Jane \_\_\_\_\_ on time for class.
- f. *ever* Jane \_\_\_\_\_ on time for class.
- g. *seldom* Jane \_\_\_\_\_ on time for class.

◇ PRACTICE 13. Frequency adverbs. (Chart 1-3)

Directions: Use the given information to complete the sentences. Use a frequency adverb for each sentence.

Kim's Day	S	M	T	W	Th	F	S
1. wake up late	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
2. skip breakfast		X	X		X		
3. visit friends	X	X		X		X	X
4. be on time for class		X	X	X	X		
5. surf the Internet				X			
6. talk on the phone	X	X	X	X		X	X
7. do homework			X			X	
8. be in bed early							

1. Kim always wakes up late.
2. She \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast.
3. She \_\_\_\_\_ friends.
4. She \_\_\_\_\_ on time for class.
5. She \_\_\_\_\_ the Internet.
6. She \_\_\_\_\_ on the phone.
7. She \_\_\_\_\_ homework.
8. She \_\_\_\_\_ in bed early.

◇ PRACTICE 14. Frequency adverbs. (Chart 1-3)

Directions: Complete each sentence with an appropriate frequency adverb from the list.

<i>always</i>	<i>often OR usually</i>	<i>sometimes</i>
<i>never</i>	<i>seldom OR rarely</i>	

1. I watch TV in the evening five or six times a week.  
→ I often OR usually watch TV in the evening.
2. I let my roommate borrow my car only one time last year.  
→ I seldom OR rarely let my roommate borrow my car.
3. Maria eats cereal for breakfast seven days a week.  
→ Maria always eats cereal for breakfast.

4. Four out of five visitors to the museum stay for three hours or longer.  
→ Museum visitors \_\_\_\_\_ stay for at least three hours.
5. We occasionally have quizzes in Dr. Rice's history class.  
→ Dr. Rice \_\_\_\_\_ gives quizzes in her history class.
6. If the teacher is on time, the class begins at 8:00 A.M. Once in a while, the teacher is a few minutes late.  
→ The class \_\_\_\_\_ begins at 8:00 A.M.
7. The train from Chicago has been late ninety percent of the time.  
→ The train from Chicago is \_\_\_\_\_ on time.
8. In the desert, it rains only two or three days between May and September every year.  
→ It \_\_\_\_\_ rains in the desert in the summer.
9. James asks me to go to the sailboat races every year, but I don't accept his invitation because I think sailboat racing is boring.  
→ I \_\_\_\_\_ go to sailboat races with James.
10. Every time I go to a movie, I buy popcorn.  
→ I \_\_\_\_\_ buy popcorn when I go to a movie.
11. Andy and Jake work in the same office and are friends. They go to lunch together four or five times a week.  
→ Andy and Jake \_\_\_\_\_ go out to lunch with each other.
12. Most of the time Andy and Jake don't discuss business when they go to lunch with each other.  
→ They \_\_\_\_\_ discuss business during lunch.

◇ PRACTICE 15. Frequency adverbs. (Chart 1-3)

*Directions:* Complete each sentence with an appropriate frequency adverb from the list and the simple present of the given verbs.

<i>always</i>	<i>often OR usually</i>	<i>sometimes</i>
<i>never</i>	<i>seldom OR rarely</i>	

1. Every time Pat rents a video, she chooses a comedy.  
→ Pat (*choose*) always chooses a comedy to rent.
2. I almost always watch soccer matches on TV. I go to a soccer match only once a year.  
→ I (*go*) \_\_\_\_\_ to a soccer match.
3. I take the bus to work once a week or once every two weeks.  
→ I usually carpool to work, but I (*ride*) \_\_\_\_\_ the bus.

4. The doctor told Mari to exercise four times a week, but she works long hours and exercises only a couple of times a month.  
→ Mari (*exercise*) \_\_\_\_\_.
5. My roommate eats only vegetarian food, and I like beef and chicken. We always cook separate meals.  
→ I (*eat*) \_\_\_\_\_ my roommate's meals.
6. The little boy in the street is begging for food. He comes from a poor family and never gets enough to eat.  
→ The little boy (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_ hungry.
7. On most Sundays, my family gets together for a big dinner.  
→ My family (*get*) \_\_\_\_\_ together for a big dinner on Sundays.
8. Usually Jane can get right to work on her computer when she turns it on, but every once in a while she gets an error message.  
→ Jane (*get*) \_\_\_\_\_ an error message when she turns on her computer.
9. Peter tries to finish his homework before he goes to bed, but he usually falls asleep.  
→ Peter (*finish*) \_\_\_\_\_ his homework before he falls asleep and decides to go to bed.
10. My friends like to play video games, but I don't join them because the games are too violent.  
→ I (*play*) \_\_\_\_\_ video games with my friends.
11. Jenny's job starts at 8:00. Most days of the week, Jenny arrives around 7:30.  
→ Jenny (*arrive*) \_\_\_\_\_ at work early.
12. I like to relax every night by taking a long, hot bath.  
→ I (*take*) \_\_\_\_\_ a long, hot bath in the evening.

◇ PRACTICE 16. Simple present: final -S/-ES. (Charts 1-4 and 1-5)

*Directions:* Write *-s/-es* in the blanks where necessary. If the verb does not need *-s/-es*, use  $\emptyset$ . Change *-y* to *-i* if necessary.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Alan like <u>s</u> to play soccer.                               | 9. Yuki go _____ to school at seven.                       |
| 2. My son watch <u>es</u> too much TV.                              | 10. Tina get _____ her work done on time.                  |
| 3. Rita do <u>es</u> n't like <u><math>\emptyset</math></u> coffee. | 11. Tina and Pat get _____ their work done.                |
| 4. Monkeys climb <u><math>\emptyset</math></u> trees.               | 12. Do _____ Bill get _____ his work done?                 |
| 5. Do _____ you like _____ to climb trees?                          | 13. Eric do _____ n't get it done on time.                 |
| 6. Do _____ Paul like _____ to cook?                                | 14. Ahmed carry _____ a briefcase to work.                 |
| 7. Paula like _____ to dance.                                       | 15. Janet play _____ tennis every day.                     |
| 8. Mike wash _____ his own clothes.                                 | 16. A turtle is another animal that live _____ near water. |

17. Bees make \_\_\_\_\_ honey.
18. A bee visit \_\_\_\_\_ many flowers in one day.
19. A frog catch \_\_\_\_\_ flies with its tongue.
20. Frogs are small green animals that live \_\_\_\_\_ near water.



◇ PRACTICE 17. Simple present: final -S/-ES. (Charts 1-4 and 1-5)

*Directions:* Read the paragraph. Then complete the paragraph about Sam's day using **he** in place of **I**. You will need to change the verbs.

SAM'S DAY:

I leave my apartment at 8:00 every morning. I walk to the bus stop and catch the 8:10 bus. It takes me downtown. Then I transfer to another bus, and it takes me to my part-time job. I arrive at work at 8:50. I stay until 1:00, and then I leave for school. I attend classes until 5:00. I usually study in the library and try to finish my homework. Then I go home around 8:00. I have a long day.

Sam leaves his apartment at 8:00. He walks to the bus stop and \_\_\_\_\_ the 8:10 bus. It takes him downtown. Then \_\_\_\_\_ to another bus, and it takes him to his part-time job. \_\_\_\_\_ at work at 8:50. \_\_\_\_\_ until 1:00, and then \_\_\_\_\_ for school. \_\_\_\_\_ classes until 5:00. \_\_\_\_\_ usually \_\_\_\_\_ in the library and \_\_\_\_\_ to finish his homework. Then \_\_\_\_\_ home around 8:00. \_\_\_\_\_ a long day.

◇ PRACTICE 18. Pronunciation: final -S/-ES. (Charts 1-5 and 6-1\*)

*Directions:* Put the verbs under the correct endings for pronunciation.

✓cooks	stays	hates	misses
✓promises	seems	travels	draws
invites	watches	picks	introduces

/s/	/z/	/əz/
_____ <u>cooks</u> _____	_____	_____ <u>promises</u> _____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____

\*See Chart 6-1, p. 157, in the Student Book for information about the pronunciation and spelling of final -s/-es.

◇ PRACTICE 19. Pronunciation: final -S/-ES. (Charts 1-5 and 6-1)

Directions: Provide the pronunciation for the verb ending: /s/, /z/, or /əz/.

- |                    |                         |                           |
|--------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. he need/ z /    | 6. she add/ /           | 11. she realize/ /        |
| 2. she take/ s /   | 7. he dress/ /          | 12. her dad spend/ /      |
| 3. the bus pass/ / | 8. it fit/ /            | 13. she think/ /          |
| 4. John love/ /    | 9. the teacher enjoy/ / | 14. he wonder/ /          |
| 5. Pam listen/ /   | 10. the baby kiss/ /    | 15. my manager suggest/ / |

◇ PRACTICE 20. Spelling: final -S/-ING. (Charts 1-4, 1-5, and 2-5)

Directions: Fill in the blanks with the simple present and present progressive forms of the verbs.

- |          |              |                  |           |       |       |
|----------|--------------|------------------|-----------|-------|-------|
| 1. buy   | <u>buys</u>  | <u>is buying</u> | 10. enjoy | _____ | _____ |
| 2. come  | <u>comes</u> | <u>is coming</u> | 11. write | _____ | _____ |
| 3. open  | _____        | _____            | 12. try   | _____ | _____ |
| 4. begin | _____        | _____            | 13. stay  | _____ | _____ |
| 5. stop  | _____        | _____            | 14. hope  | _____ | _____ |
| 6. die   | _____        | _____            | 15. study | _____ | _____ |
| 7. rain  | _____        | _____            | 16. lie   | _____ | _____ |
| 8. dream | _____        | _____            | 17. fly   | _____ | _____ |
| 9. eat   | _____        | _____            | 18. sit   | _____ | _____ |

◇ PRACTICE 21. Non-action verbs. (Chart 1-5)

Directions: Choose the correct sentence.

1.  a. We want to have an answer.  
b. We are wanting to have an answer.
2. a. The students think their grammar class is challenging.  
b. The students are thinking their grammar class is challenging.
3. a. Look! An eagle is flying overhead.  
b. Look! An eagle flies overhead.
4. a. The eagle is over there! Are you seeing it?  
b. The eagle is over there! Do you see it?
5. a. Now I believe my English is better.  
b. Now I am believing my English is better.
6. a. I'm doing this exercise now.  
b. I do this exercise now.
7. a. My parents are owning two cars at this time.  
b. My parents own two cars at this time.
8. a. This is fun. I am having a good time.  
b. This is fun. I have a good time.

9. a. We are having a new computer now.  
b. We have a new computer now.
10. a. I'm not knowing the answer to your question right now, but I'll find out.  
b. I don't know the answer to your question right now, but I'll find out.
11. a. My family is preferring chicken to red meat.  
b. My family prefers chicken to red meat.
12. a. I need to borrow some money.  
b. I am needing to borrow some money.

◇ PRACTICE 22. Simple present and present progressive. (Charts 1-1 → 1-6)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with the simple present or present progressive form of the verbs in the list. Each verb is used only once.

<i>belong</i>	<i>need</i>	<i>see</i>	✓ <i>take</i>
<i>bite</i>	<i>play</i>	<i>shine</i>	<i>understand</i>
<i>drive</i>	<i>prefer</i>	<i>sing</i>	<i>watch</i>
<i>look</i>	<i>rain</i>	✓ <i>snow</i>	<i>write</i>

1. Look outside! It is snowing. Everything is beautiful and all white.
2. My father takes the 8:15 train into the city every weekday morning.
3. On Tuesdays and Thursdays, I walk to work for the exercise. Every Monday, Wednesday, and Friday, I \_\_\_\_\_ my car to work.
4. A: Charlie, can't you hear the telephone? Answer it!  
B: You get it! I \_\_\_\_\_ my favorite TV show. I don't want to miss anything.
5. A: What kind of tea do you like?  
B: Well, I'm drinking black tea, but I \_\_\_\_\_ green tea.
6. I'm gaining weight around my waist. These pants are too tight. I \_\_\_\_\_ a larger pair of pants.
7. A: Dinner's ready. Please call the children.  
B: Where are they?  
A: They \_\_\_\_\_ a game outside in the street.
8. It's night. There's no moon. Emily is outside. She \_\_\_\_\_ at the sky. She \_\_\_\_\_ more stars than she can count.
9. Michael has a good voice. Sometimes he \_\_\_\_\_ with a musical group in town. It's a good way to earn a little extra money.

10. A: Ouch!

B: What's the matter?

A: Every time I eat too fast, I \_\_\_\_\_ my tongue.

11. Nadia always \_\_\_\_\_ in her diary before bed.

12. Thank you for your help in algebra. Now I \_\_\_\_\_ that lesson.

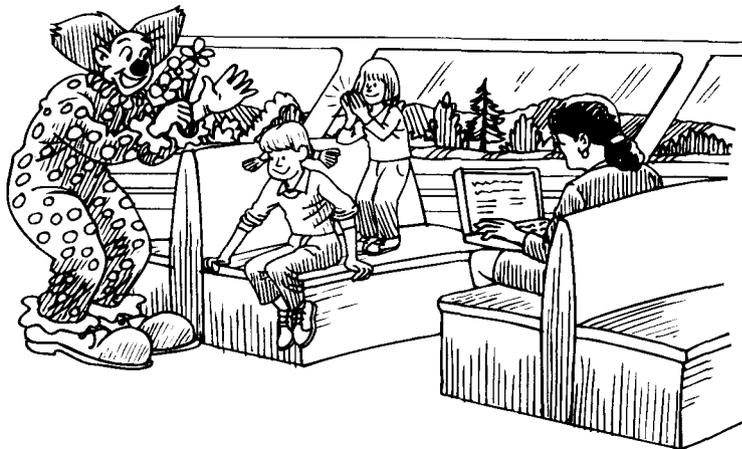
13. This magazine is not mine. It \_\_\_\_\_ to Colette.

14. I can see a rainbow because the sun \_\_\_\_\_ and it \_\_\_\_\_ at the same time.

◇ PRACTICE 23. Simple present and present progressive. (Charts 1-1 → 1-6)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the simple present or present progressive form of the verb.

Rosa is sitting on the train right now. She (*take/not/usually*) usually doesn't take<sup>1</sup> the train, but today her son (*need*) \_\_\_\_\_<sup>2</sup> her car. She (*enjoy*) \_\_\_\_\_<sup>3</sup> the ride today. There (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_<sup>4</sup> so many people to watch. Some people (*eat*) \_\_\_\_\_<sup>5</sup> breakfast. Others (*drink*) \_\_\_\_\_<sup>6</sup> coffee and (*read*) \_\_\_\_\_<sup>7</sup> the newspaper. One woman (*work*) \_\_\_\_\_<sup>8</sup> on her laptop computer. Another (*hug*) \_\_\_\_\_<sup>9</sup> her baby. Two teenagers (*play*) \_\_\_\_\_<sup>10</sup> computer games. One of them (*wave*) \_\_\_\_\_<sup>11</sup> his hand in excitement. A clown (*walk*) \_\_\_\_\_<sup>12</sup> up and down the aisles and (*entertain*) \_\_\_\_\_<sup>13</sup> the children. Rosa (*smile*) \_\_\_\_\_<sup>14</sup>. The train ride (*take, usually*) \_\_\_\_\_<sup>15</sup> her longer than driving, but it (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_<sup>16</sup> a more enjoyable way for her to travel.



◇ PRACTICE 24. Error analysis. (Charts 1-1 → 1-6)

*Directions:* Correct the sentences.

1. My friend ~~don't~~<sup>doesn't</sup> speak English well.
2. I am not believing you.
3. My sister's dog no bark.
4. Our teacher is always starting class on time.
5. Look! The cat gets up on the counter.
6. Is Marie has enough money?
7. We are not liking this rainy weather.
8. Mrs. Gray is worry about her daughter.
9. My brother no has enough free time.
10. Is Jim drive to school every day?
11. He always hurrys in the morning. He no wanting to be late.
12. Anna have usually dinner at eight.

◇ PRACTICE 25. Present verbs: questions and short answers. (Chart 1-7)

*Directions:* Complete the questions with **do**, **does**, **am**, **is**, or **are**. Then complete both the affirmative and negative short answers.

1. A: \_\_\_\_\_ Are \_\_\_\_\_ you leaving now?  
B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ I am \_\_\_\_\_. OR No, \_\_\_\_\_ I'm not \_\_\_\_\_.
2. A: \_\_\_\_\_ Do \_\_\_\_\_ your neighbors know that you are a police officer?  
B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ they do \_\_\_\_\_. OR No, \_\_\_\_\_ they don't \_\_\_\_\_.
3. A: \_\_\_\_\_ you follow the same routine every morning?  
B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_. OR No, \_\_\_\_\_.
4. A: \_\_\_\_\_ Dr. Jarvis know the name of her new assistant yet?  
B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_. OR No, \_\_\_\_\_.
5. A: \_\_\_\_\_ Paul and Beth studying the problem?  
B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_. OR No, \_\_\_\_\_.

6. A: \_\_\_\_\_ they understand the problem?  
 B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_. OR No, \_\_\_\_\_.
7. A: \_\_\_\_\_ Mike reading the paper and watching television at the same time?  
 B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_. OR No, \_\_\_\_\_.
8. A: \_\_\_\_\_ you listening to me?  
 B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_. OR No, \_\_\_\_\_.
9. A: \_\_\_\_\_ that building safe?  
 B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_. OR No, \_\_\_\_\_.
10. A: \_\_\_\_\_ you and your co-workers get together outside of work?  
 B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_. OR No, \_\_\_\_\_.

◇ PRACTICE 26. Review: present verbs. (Charts 1-1 → 1-7)

*Directions:* Use either the simple present or the present progressive of the verbs in parentheses to complete the sentences.

1. A: Hi! What (*you, do*) are you doing ?  
 B: I (*watch*) \_\_\_\_\_ an exercise video. I (*want*) \_\_\_\_\_  
 to lose a little weight before my vacation.  
 A: I really (*enjoy*) \_\_\_\_\_ exercising. I (*go*) \_\_\_\_\_ to  
 an aerobics class three times a week. It (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_ really fun. I also  
 (*run*) \_\_\_\_\_ every morning before school.  
 B: Stop! You (*make*) \_\_\_\_\_ me feel bad!
2. A: I like to read. How about you? (*you, read*) \_\_\_\_\_ a lot?  
 B: Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_. I (*read*) \_\_\_\_\_ at least one novel  
 every week, and I (*subscribe*) \_\_\_\_\_ to several magazines. And I  
 (*look, always*) \_\_\_\_\_ at the newspaper during breakfast.
3. Before you begin to study, you should ask yourself two questions. First, "Why (*I, study*)  
 \_\_\_\_\_ this subject right now?" Second, "What (*I, want*) \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_ to learn about this topic?" Students (*need*) \_\_\_\_\_  
 to understand the purpose of their study.
4. A: I (*leave*) \_\_\_\_\_ now. (*you, want*) \_\_\_\_\_ to go  
 with me into town?  
 B: No, thanks. I can't. I (*wait*) \_\_\_\_\_ for my sister to call.

5. A: Shhh.

B: Why? (*the baby, sleep*) \_\_\_\_\_?

A: Uh-huh. She (*take*) \_\_\_\_\_ her afternoon nap.

B: Okay, I'll talk softly. I (*want, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ to wake her up.

6. Ann is a painter. She (*go*) \_\_\_\_\_ to the opening of every new art show in the city. She (*like*) \_\_\_\_\_ to see the latest work of other artists. Right now she (*prepare*) \_\_\_\_\_ for a show of her new paintings next month.

7. It (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_ a cool autumn day today. The wind (*blow*) \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ and the leaves (*fall*) \_\_\_\_\_ to the ground.

8. My roommate (*eat*) \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast at exactly seven o'clock every morning. I usually (*eat, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast at all. What time (*you, eat*) \_\_\_\_\_ in the morning?

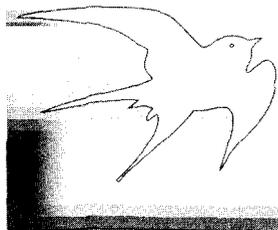
9. A: (*you, shop*) \_\_\_\_\_ at this store every week?

B: No, I \_\_\_\_\_. I (*shop, usually*) \_\_\_\_\_ at the store near my apartment.

A: Why (*you, shop*) \_\_\_\_\_ here now?

B: I (*try*) \_\_\_\_\_ to find something special for my father's birthday dinner.

10. In cold climates, many trees (*lose*) \_\_\_\_\_ their leaves in winter. They (*rest*) \_\_\_\_\_ for several months. Then they (*grow*) \_\_\_\_\_ new leaves and flowers in the spring. Some trees (*keep*) \_\_\_\_\_ their leaves during the winter and (*stay*) \_\_\_\_\_ green all year long. In some regions of the earth, trees (*grow, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ at all. For example, some desert areas (*have, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ any trees. The largest area of the world without trees (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_ Antarctica. No trees (*grow*) \_\_\_\_\_ in Antarctica.



# CHAPTER 2

## Past Time

### ◇ PRACTICE 1. Simple past. (Charts 2-1 → 2-7)

Directions: Change the sentences to past time. Use simple past verbs and *yesterday* or *last*.

PRESENT	PAST
<i>every day</i>	<i>yesterday</i>
<i>every morning</i>	<i>yesterday morning</i>
<i>every afternoon</i>	<i>yesterday afternoon</i>
<i>every night</i>	<i>last night</i>
<i>every week</i>	<i>last week</i>
<i>every Monday, Tuesday, etc.</i>	<i>last Monday, Tuesday, etc.</i>
<i>every month</i>	<i>last month</i>
<i>every year</i>	<i>last year</i>

1. I **walk** to my office **every morning**.

→ I walked to my office yesterday morning.

2. I **talk** to my parents on the phone **every week**.

→ I talked to my parents on the phone last week.

3. The post office **opens** at eight o'clock **every morning**.

→ The post office \_\_\_\_\_ at eight o'clock \_\_\_\_\_ morning.

4. Mrs. Hall **goes** to the fruit market **every Monday**.

→ Mrs. Hall \_\_\_\_\_ to the fresh fruit market \_\_\_\_\_ Monday.

5. The company managers **meet** at nine o'clock **every Friday morning**.

→ The executives \_\_\_\_\_ at nine o'clock \_\_\_\_\_ Friday morning.

6. I **make** my own lunch and **take** it to work with me **every morning**.

→ \_\_\_\_\_ morning, I \_\_\_\_\_ my own lunch and \_\_\_\_\_ it to work with me.

7. Mr. Clark **pays** his rent on time **every month**.

→ Mr. Clark \_\_\_\_\_ his rent on time \_\_\_\_\_ **month**.

8. The baby **falls** asleep at three o'clock **every afternoon**.

→ \_\_\_\_\_ **afternoon**, the baby \_\_\_\_\_ asleep at three o'clock.

9. The last bus to downtown **leaves** at ten o'clock **every night**.

→ The last bus to downtown \_\_\_\_\_ at ten o'clock \_\_\_\_\_ **night**.

◇ PRACTICE 2. Simple past: regular and irregular verbs. (Charts 2-2 and 2-7)

Directions: Write the simple past form of the given verbs.

- |             |                |            |       |
|-------------|----------------|------------|-------|
| 1. start    | <u>started</u> | 16. bring  | _____ |
| 2. go       | <u>went</u>    | 17. break  | _____ |
| 3. see      | _____          | 18. eat    | _____ |
| 4. stand    | _____          | 19. watch  | _____ |
| 5. arrive   | _____          | 20. build  | _____ |
| 6. win      | _____          | 21. take   | _____ |
| 7. have     | _____          | 22. pay    | _____ |
| 8. make     | _____          | 23. leave  | _____ |
| 9. finish   | _____          | 24. wear   | _____ |
| 10. feel    | _____          | 25. open   | _____ |
| 11. fall    | _____          | 26. decide | _____ |
| 12. hear    | _____          | 27. plan   | _____ |
| 13. sing    | _____          | 28. write  | _____ |
| 14. explore | _____          | 29. teach  | _____ |
| 15. ask     | _____          | 30. hold   | _____ |

◇ PRACTICE 3. Simple past forms. (Charts 2-1 → 2-3)

Directions: Use the given words to create questions and answers.

1. you/answer

A: The teacher asked a question. Did you answer it?

B: Yes, I did. I answered it. OR

No, I didn't. I didn't answer it.

2. *he/see*

A: Tom went to the celebration. \_\_\_\_\_ the fireworks?

B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ the fireworks. OR

No, \_\_\_\_\_ the fireworks.

3. *they/watch*

A: The game was on TV. \_\_\_\_\_ it?

B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ the game. OR

No, \_\_\_\_\_ the game.

4. *you/understand*

A: You went to a lecture. \_\_\_\_\_ it?

B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ the lecture. OR

No, \_\_\_\_\_ the lecture.

5. *you/be*

A: \_\_\_\_\_ at home last night?

B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ at home last night. OR

No, \_\_\_\_\_ at home last night.

◇ PRACTICE 4. Present and past negatives. (Chapter 1 and Charts 2-1 → 2-3)

*Directions:* The sentences in quotation marks contain incorrect information. Complete the unfinished sentences by using correct information: first in a negative sentence, then in an affirmative sentence.

1. "You flew to school yesterday."

No, I didn't fly to school yesterday. I walked/took the bus.

2. "Lemons are sweet."

No, lemons \_\_\_\_\_ sweet. They \_\_\_\_\_.

3. "Astronauts walked on Mars in 1969."

No, astronauts \_\_\_\_\_ on Mars in 1969. They \_\_\_\_\_ in 1969.

4. "You were a baby in the year 2000."

No, I \_\_\_\_\_ in 2000. I \_\_\_\_\_ years old in 2000.

5. "Buddha came from China."

No, Buddha \_\_\_\_\_ from China. Buddha \_\_\_\_\_ from Nepal.

6. "Coffee comes from cocoa beans."

No, coffee \_\_\_\_\_ from cocoa beans. It \_\_\_\_\_.

7. "You slept outdoors last night."

No, I \_\_\_\_\_ outdoors last night. I \_\_\_\_\_.

8. "Ice is hot."

No, ice \_\_\_\_\_ hot. It \_\_\_\_\_.

9. "Dinosaurs disappeared a hundred years ago."

No, dinosaurs \_\_\_\_\_ a hundred years ago.

They \_\_\_\_\_ ago.

◇ PRACTICE 5. Simple past: questions. (Charts 2-2 and 2-3)

Directions: Write past tense questions using the italicized words and *did*, *was*, or *were*.

1. *he/study*      Did he study      yesterday?

2. *he/sick*      was he sick      yesterday?

3. *she/sad*      \_\_\_\_\_      yesterday?

4. *they/eat*      \_\_\_\_\_      yesterday?

5. *they/hungry*      \_\_\_\_\_      yesterday?

6. *you/go*      \_\_\_\_\_      yesterday?

7. *she/understand*      \_\_\_\_\_      yesterday?

8. *he/forget*      \_\_\_\_\_      yesterday?

◇ PRACTICE 6. Simple past: questions. (Charts 2-2 and 2-3)

Directions: You took your driver's test yesterday. A friend is asking you questions about it. Fill in the blanks with *did*, *was*, or *were*.

1. Did you pass your driver's test yesterday?

2. \_\_\_\_\_ you nervous?

3. \_\_\_\_\_ your hands shake?

4. \_\_\_\_\_ you practice a lot for it?

5. \_\_\_\_\_ the license examiner friendly?

6. \_\_\_\_\_ you make any silly mistakes?

7. \_\_\_\_\_ the car easy to drive?

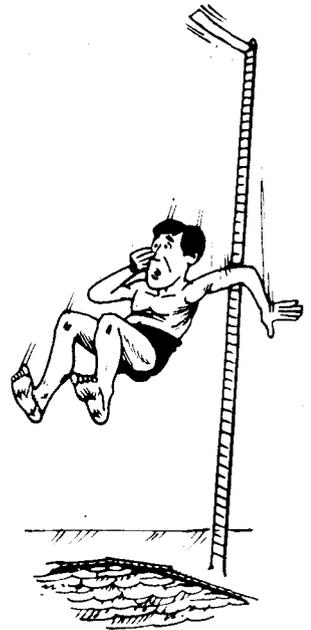
8. \_\_\_\_\_ you go on an easy route?

◇ PRACTICE 7. Simple past: regular and irregular verbs. (Charts 2-2 and 2-7)

Directions: Complete the sentences by using the simple past of the verbs below. Use each verb only once.

<i>call</i>	<i>hold</i>	<i>sell</i>	<i>swim</i>
<i>fight</i>	<i>jump</i>	<i>✓shake</i>	<i>teach</i>
<i>freeze</i>	<i>ride</i>	<i>stay</i>	<i>think</i>

- Paul shook the soft drink so hard that it sprayed all over his clothes.
- Carol didn't want to go on vacation with us, so she \_\_\_\_\_ home alone all week.
- Since I hurt my knee, I can't go jogging. Yesterday, I \_\_\_\_\_ in the pool for an hour instead.
- I was terrified just standing over the pool on the high diving board. Finally, I took a deep breath, held my nose, and \_\_\_\_\_ into the water.
- The climber, who was fearful of falling, \_\_\_\_\_ the rope tightly in both hands.
- Johnny pushed Alan down on the floor, and the two boys \_\_\_\_\_ for a few minutes. Neither boy was hurt.
- Before Louise started her own company, she \_\_\_\_\_ chemistry at the university.
- It was extremely cold last night, and the water we put out for the cat \_\_\_\_\_ solid.
- Before I made my decision, I \_\_\_\_\_ about it for a long, long time.
- Carlos \_\_\_\_\_ your house three times to ask you to go to the movie with us, but there was no answer, so we went without you.
- My car wouldn't start this morning, so I \_\_\_\_\_ my bicycle to work.
- I needed money to pay my tuition at the university, so I \_\_\_\_\_ my motorcycle to my cousin.



◇ PRACTICE 8. Regular verbs: pronunciation of -ED endings. (Chart 2-4)

*Directions:* Practice pronouncing final **-ed** by saying the words in the list aloud.

- |                        |                             |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. stopped = stop/t/   | 11. finished = finish/t/    |
| 2. robbed = rob/d/     | 12. seem = seem/d/          |
| 3. wanted = want/əd/   | 13. killed = kill/d/        |
| 4. talked = talk/t/    | 14. turned = turn/d/        |
| 5. lived = live/d/     | 15. played = play/d/        |
| 6. needed = need/əd/   | 16. continued = continue/d/ |
| 7. passed = pass/t/*   | 17. repeated = repeat/əd/   |
| 8. pushed = push/t/    | 18. waited = wait/əd/       |
| 9. watched = watch/t/  | 19. added = add/əd/         |
| 10. thanked = thank/t/ | 20. decide = decide/əd/     |

◇ PRACTICE 9. Regular verbs: pronunciation of -ED endings. (Chart 2-4)

*Directions:* Write the correct pronunciation. Then practice pronouncing final **-ed** by saying the words in the list aloud.

- |                          |                             |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. talked = talk/ t /    | 11. continued = continue/ / |
| 2. lived = live/ ə /     | 12. watched = watch/ /      |
| 3. waited = wait/ əd /   | 13. passed = pass/ /        |
| 4. played = play/ /      | 14. decide = decide/ /      |
| 5. added = add/ /        | 15. stopped = stop/ /       |
| 6. needed = need/ /      | 16. turned = turn/ /        |
| 7. killed = kill/ /      | 17. thanked = thank/ /      |
| 8. finished = finish/ /  | 18. wanted = want/ /        |
| 9. seemed = seem/ /      | 19. robbed = rob/ /         |
| 10. repeated = repeat/ / | 20. pushed = push/ /        |

◇ PRACTICE 10. Spelling and pronunciation of -ED endings. (Charts 2-4 and 2-5)

*Directions:* Add **-ed** to each verb. When necessary, add or change letters to correct the spelling. Then circle the correct pronunciation of **-ed** for the given verb.

- |   |                              |
|---|------------------------------|
| 1. walk <u>ed</u> _____ (t/ /d/ /əd/)   | 9. open _____ /t/ /d/ /əd/   |
| 2. pat <u>ted</u> _____ /t/ /d/ (əd/)   | 10. hurry _____ /t/ /d/ /əd/ |
| 3. worry <u>ied</u> _____ /t/ (d/ /əd/) | 11. rent _____ /t/ /d/ /əd/  |
| 4. stay _____ /t/ /d/ /əd/              | 12. try _____ /t/ /d/ /əd/   |
| 5. visit _____ /t/ /d/ /əd/             | 13. enjoy _____ /t/ /d/ /əd/ |
| 6. die _____ /t/ /d/ /əd/               | 14. stop _____ /t/ /d/ /əd/  |
| 7. trade _____ /t/ /d/ /əd/             | 15. need _____ /t/ /d/ /əd/  |
| 8. plan _____ /t/ /d/ /əd/              |                              |

\*The words "passed" and "past" have the same pronunciation.



◇ PRACTICE 13. Spelling of -ING. (Chart 2-5)

Directions: Add **-ing** to the verbs and write them in the correct columns.

- |         |         |           |           |           |
|---------|---------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. hit  | 4. take | 7. learn  | 10. smile | 13. begin |
| 2. come | 5. hop  | 8. listen | 11. stay  | 14. win   |
| 3. cut  | 6. hope | 9. rain   | 12. study | 15. write |

Double the consonant. (stop → stopping)	Drop the -e. (live → living)	Just add -ing. (visit → visiting)
hitting		

◇ PRACTICE 14. Spelling of -ING and -ED. (Chart 2-5)

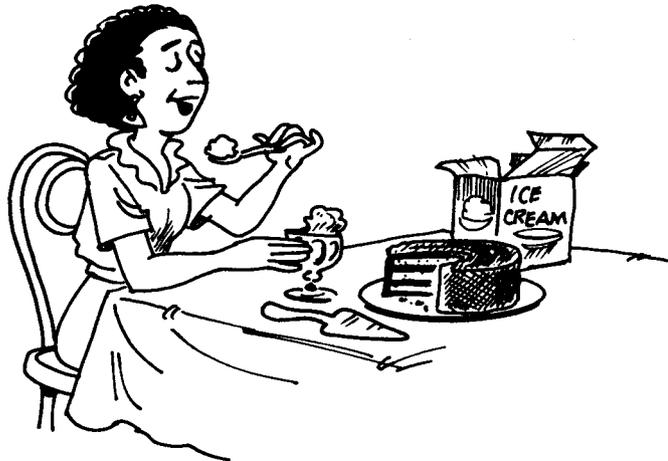
Directions: Spell the **-ing** and **-ed** forms of the verbs. (The simple past/past participle of irregular verbs is given in parentheses.)

	-ING	-ED
1. ride	riding	(ridden)
2. start	starting	started
3. come		(came)
4. happen		
5. try		
6. buy		(bought)
7. hope		
8. keep		(kept)
9. tip		
10. fail		
11. fill		
12. feel		(felt)
13. dine		
14. mean		(meant)
15. win		(won)
16. learn		
17. listen		
18. begin		(began)

◇ PRACTICE 15. Spelling of -ING. (Chart 2-5)

Directions: Write one "t" or two "t"s in the blanks to spell the *-ing* verb form correctly. Then write the simple form of the verb in each sentence.

	SIMPLE FORM
1. I'm wai <u>t</u> ing for a phone call.	1. <u>wait</u>
2. I'm pe <u>tt</u> ing my dog.	2. <u>pet</u>
3. I'm bi ___ ing my nails because I'm nervous.	3. _____
4. I'm si ___ ing in a comfortable chair.	4. _____
5. I'm wri ___ ing in my book.	5. _____
6. I'm figh ___ the urge to have some ice cream.	6. _____
7. I'm wai ___ ing to see if I'm really hungry.	7. _____
8. I'm ge ___ ing up from my chair now.	8. _____
9. I'm star ___ ing to walk to the refrigerator.	9. _____
10. I'm permi ___ ing myself to have some ice cream.	10. _____
11. I'm lif ___ ing the spoon to my mouth.	11. _____
12. I'm ea ___ ing the ice cream now.	12. _____
13. I'm tas ___ ing it. It tastes good.	13. _____
14. I'm also cu ___ ing a piece of cake.	14. _____
15. I'm mee ___ ing my sister at the airport tomorrow.	15. _____
16. She's visi ___ ing me for a few days. I'll save some cake and ice cream for her.	16. _____



◇ PRACTICE 16. Spelling of irregular verbs. (Chart 2-7)

Directions: The given verbs are in the present tense. Write the past tense of these verbs.

**PART I.**

buy     b o u g h t  
bring   br \_ \_ \_ \_ t  
teach   t \_ \_ \_ \_ t  
catch   c \_ \_ \_ \_ t  
fight   f \_ \_ \_ \_ t  
think   th \_ \_ \_ \_ t  
find     f \_ \_ \_ d

**PART II.**

swim    sw \_ \_ \_  
drink    dr \_ \_ \_  
sing     s \_ \_ \_  
ring     r \_ \_ \_

**PART III.**

blow    bl \_ \_ \_  
draw    dr \_ \_ \_  
fly      fl \_ \_ \_  
grow    gr \_ \_ \_  
know    kn \_ \_ \_  
throw   thr \_ \_ \_

**PART IV.**

break   br \_ \_ \_  
write   wr \_ \_ \_  
freeze   fr \_ \_ \_  
ride     r \_ \_ \_  
sell     s \_ \_ \_  
steal    st \_ \_ \_

**PART V.**

hit      h \_ \_ \_  
hurt     h \_ \_ \_  
read     r \_ \_ \_  
shut     sh \_ \_  
cost     c \_ \_ \_  
put      p \_ \_ \_  
quit     q \_ \_ \_

**PART VI.**

pay      p \_ \_ d\*  
say      s \_ \_ d\*

\*The pronunciations of *paid* and *said* are different.

*Paid* rhymes with *made*.

*Said* rhymes with *red*.

◇ PRACTICE 17. Irregular verbs. (Chart 2-7)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the simple past of the given irregular verbs. There may be more than one possible completion.

<i>begin</i>	<i>drive</i>	<i>hurt</i>	<i>ring</i>	<i>think</i>
<i>build</i>	<i>eat</i>	<i>keep</i>	<i>rise</i>	<i>write</i>
<i>come</i>	<i>fall</i>	<i>lead</i>	<i>shut</i>	
<i>do</i>	<i>freeze</i>	<i>pay</i>	<i>steal</i>	
<i>drink</i>	<i>have</i>	<i>run</i>	<i>take</i>	

- Sue drank/had a cup of coffee before class this morning.
- We \_\_\_\_\_ a delicious dinner at a Mexican restaurant last night.
- When it \_\_\_\_\_ to rain yesterday afternoon, I \_\_\_\_\_ all of the windows in the apartment.
- The phone \_\_\_\_\_ eight times before anybody answered it.
- My brother and his wife \_\_\_\_\_ to our apartment for dinner last night.
- The architectural firm that I work for designed that building. My brother's construction company \_\_\_\_\_ it. They took two years to complete it.
- When Alan slipped on the icy sidewalk yesterday, he \_\_\_\_\_ down and \_\_\_\_\_ his back. His back is very painful today.
- Alice called the police yesterday because someone \_\_\_\_\_ her bicycle while she was in the library studying. She's very angry.
- There was a cool breeze last night. I opened the window, but Colette got cold and \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- Ted \_\_\_\_\_ his car across Canada last summer.
- Rita \_\_\_\_\_ faster than anyone else in the footrace.
- None of the other runners was ever in front of Rita during the race. She \_\_\_\_\_ all of the other runners in the race from start to finish.
- Greg is very cheap. I was surprised when he \_\_\_\_\_ for my dinner.
- It was really cold yesterday. The temperature was three below zero.\* I nearly \_\_\_\_\_ to death when I walked home!

\*Note: -3°F (Fahrenheit) equals -20°C (Centigrade or Celsius).

15. Jason \_\_\_\_\_ an excellent job in gluing the broken vase together.
16. The sun \_\_\_\_\_ at 6:21 this morning.
17. I \_\_\_\_\_ about going to Florida for my vacation, but I finally decided to go to Puerto Rico.
18. My friend \_\_\_\_\_ a note and passed it to me in class.
19. My mother \_\_\_\_\_ all the letters I wrote to her while I was in England. She didn't throw any away.
20. An earthquake destroyed the old bridge, so the town \_\_\_\_\_ a new one across the river.

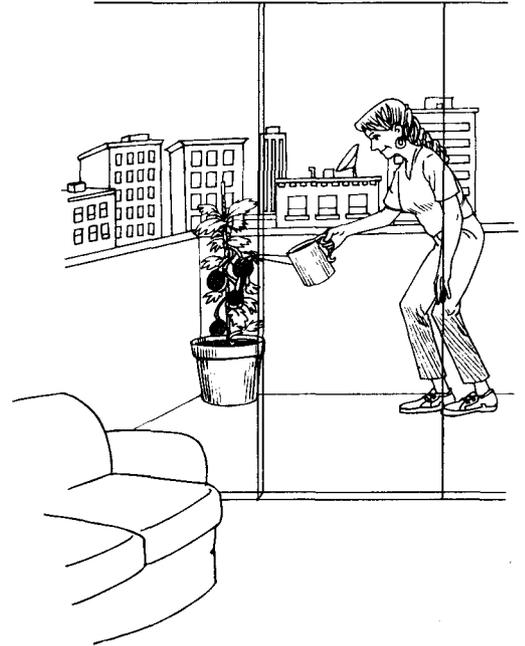
◇ PRACTICE 18. Irregular verbs. (Chart 2-7)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with the simple past of any of the given irregular verbs. There may be more than one possible completion.

<i>break</i>	<i>draw</i>	<i>give</i>	<i>quit</i>	<i>steal</i>
<i>buy</i>	<i>fall</i>	<i>grow</i>	<i>read</i>	<i>teach</i>
<i>choose</i>	<i>feel</i>	<i>hear</i>	<i>shake</i>	
<i>cut</i>	<i>find</i>	<i>lose</i>	<i>sleep</i>	
<i>dig</i>	<i>forget</i>	<i>meet</i>	<i>speak</i>	

1. A: Why isn't Bill here for the meeting? He's supposed to give the weekly report.  
B: I spoke to him on the phone last night, and he said he'd be here.
2. After I gave a large bone to each of my three dogs, they went to separate corners of the backyard and \_\_\_\_\_ holes to bury their bones.
3. After looking at all the chairs, I finally \_\_\_\_\_ the red one. It was a difficult decision.
4. The players are depressed because they \_\_\_\_\_ the game last weekend. Next time they'll play better.
5. A: How can you take a three-month vacation? What about your job?  
B: I won't be going back to that job ever again. I \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.
6. Laurie has circles under her eyes because she \_\_\_\_\_ only two hours last night. She was studying for her final exams.
7. Matt lost his watch. He looked everywhere for it. Finally, he \_\_\_\_\_ it in his pants that were in the washing machine. He had washed his watch, but it was still ticking.

8. Joy was barefoot. She stepped on a piece of broken glass and \_\_\_\_\_ her foot.
9. Danny and I are old friends. We \_\_\_\_\_ each other in 1985.
10. My father \_\_\_\_\_ me how to make furniture.
11. The student with the highest grade point average \_\_\_\_\_ a speech at the graduation ceremony. She \_\_\_\_\_ about her hopes for the future of the world.
12. I didn't have a garden, so I \_\_\_\_\_ tomatoes in a pot on the balcony outside my apartment.
13. Paul was in a hurry to get to class this morning. He \_\_\_\_\_ to comb his hair.
14. Last week I \_\_\_\_\_ an interesting book about the volcanoes in Iceland.
15. When Erica and I were introduced to each other, we \_\_\_\_\_ hands.
16. Mike is in jail because he \_\_\_\_\_ a car.
17. When I heard about Sue's problem, I \_\_\_\_\_ sorry for her.
18. The students all \_\_\_\_\_ pictures of their teacher, but few of the drawings looked like her. She tried not to laugh at the pictures.
19. A few minutes ago, I \_\_\_\_\_ on the radio about a bad plane accident.
20. Joe had an accident. He \_\_\_\_\_ off the roof and \_\_\_\_\_ his leg.



◇ PRACTICE 19. Review: past questions and negatives. (Charts 2-1 → 2-3)

*Directions:* Rewrite the subjects and verbs that appear in boldface to create questions and negative statements. Omit the rest of each sentence.

	QUESTION	NEGATIVE
1. <b>I rode</b> a bus.	<u>Did I ride</u>	<u>I didn't ride</u>
2. <b>She sat</b> down.	_____	_____
3. <b>We were</b> on time.	_____	_____
4. <b>They tried</b> hard.	_____	_____

5. **He was** late. \_\_\_\_\_
6. **They cut** some paper. \_\_\_\_\_
7. **She threw** a ball. \_\_\_\_\_
8. **We did** our work. \_\_\_\_\_

◇ PRACTICE 20. Simple present and past: questions. (Chapter 1, Charts 2-1 → 2-5, and preview of Chapter 5)

*Directions:* Create questions using the SIMPLE PAST or the SIMPLE PRESENT.

SITUATION: Your cousin, Susan, has a new friend. She was with her new friend last night. You have several questions.

1. *what/do last night?* A: What did you do last night?  
B: I went to a concert with my new friend.
2. *what/your friend's name?* A: What is your friend's name?  
B: Robert.
3. *he/nice?* A: \_\_\_\_\_  
B: Yes, he's very nice.
4. *how/your evening?* A: \_\_\_\_\_  
B: Fine.
5. *where/you/go?* A: \_\_\_\_\_  
B: To a concert.
6. *you/enjoy it?* A: \_\_\_\_\_  
B: Very much.
7. *the music/loud?* A: \_\_\_\_\_  
B: Yes, very loud! I loved it.
8. *what time/you/get home?* A: \_\_\_\_\_  
B: Around midnight.
9. *what/you/wear?* A: \_\_\_\_\_  
B: Nothing special. Just some jeans and a sweater.
10. *what/he/be like?* A: \_\_\_\_\_  
(his personality) B: He's funny and friendly. He's really nice.
11. *what/helook like?* A: \_\_\_\_\_  
B: He has dark hair and is medium height.
12. *you/want to go out with* A: \_\_\_\_\_  
*him again?* B: Yes. I like him a lot.

◇ PRACTICE 21. Review: simple present, present progressive, and simple past forms. (Chapter 1 and Charts 2-1 → 2-7)

Directions: Complete the chart with the correct forms of the verbs.

EVERY DAY	NOW	YESTERDAY
1. He <b>is</b> here every day.	He <u>is</u> here now.	He <u>was</u> here yesterday.
2. I <u>think</u> about you every day.	I'm <b>thinking</b> about you now.	I <u>thought</u> about you yesterday.
3. We <b>play</b> tennis every day.	We _____ tennis now.	We _____ tennis yesterday.
4. I _____ juice every day.	I _____ juice now.	I <b>drank</b> juice yesterday.
5. He _____ every day.	He <b>is teaching</b> now.	He _____ yesterday.
6. She _____ every day.	She _____ now.	She <b>swam</b> yesterday.
7. You <b>sleep</b> late every day.	You _____ now.	You _____ late yesterday.
8. He _____ every day.	He <b>is reading</b> now.	He _____ yesterday.
9. They _____ hard every day.	They _____ hard now.	They <b>tried</b> hard yesterday.
10. We <b>eat</b> dinner every day.	We _____ dinner now.	We _____ dinner yesterday.

◇ PRACTICE 22. Simple present and simple past. (Chapter 1 and Charts 2-1 → 2-7)

Directions: Use the simple present or the simple past form of the verb in parentheses as appropriate. Complete the short answers to the questions.

1. A: (you, hear) Did you hear the thunder last night?

B: No, I didn't. I (hear, not) didn't hear anything all night. I (be) was asleep.

2. A: Listen! (you, hear) Do you hear a siren in the distance?

B: No, I don't. I (hear, not) don't hear anything at all.

3. A: That's a nice bookshelf. (*you, build*) \_\_\_\_\_ it?  
 B: No, I \_\_\_\_\_. My uncle (*build*) \_\_\_\_\_ it for me.
4. A: I have a question. (*a fish, be*) \_\_\_\_\_ slippery to hold?  
 B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_. It can slip right out of your hand.  
 A: How about frogs? (*they, be*) \_\_\_\_\_ slippery?  
 B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A: What about snakes?  
 B: I (*know, not*) \_\_\_\_\_. I've never touched a snake.
5. A: I (*want*) \_\_\_\_\_ to go to the mall later this afternoon and look for a new bathing suit. (*you, want*) \_\_\_\_\_ to go with me?  
 B: I can't. I (*have*) \_\_\_\_\_ an appointment with my English teacher. Besides, I (*buy*) \_\_\_\_\_ a new bathing suit last year. I (*need, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ a new one this year.
6. I always (*offer*) \_\_\_\_\_ to help my older neighbor carry her groceries into her house every time I see her return from the store. She (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_ always very grateful. Yesterday, she (*offer*) \_\_\_\_\_ to pay me for helping her, but of course I (*accept, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ the offer.
7. Last Monday night, I (*take*) \_\_\_\_\_ my sister and her husband to my favorite restaurant for dinner and (*find*) \_\_\_\_\_ the doors locked. I (*know, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ it then, but the restaurant (*be, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ open on Mondays. We (*want, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ to eat anywhere else, so we (*go*) \_\_\_\_\_ back to my house. I (*make*) \_\_\_\_\_ a salad and (*heat*) \_\_\_\_\_ some soup. Everyone (*seem*) \_\_\_\_\_ satisfied even though I (*be, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ a wonderful cook.
8. My daughter is twenty-one years old. She (*like*) \_\_\_\_\_ to travel. My wife and I (*worry*) \_\_\_\_\_ about her a little when she (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_ away from home, but we also (*trust*) \_\_\_\_\_ her judgment.  
 Last year, after she (*graduate*) \_\_\_\_\_ from college, she (*go*) \_\_\_\_\_ to Europe with two of her friends. They (*travel, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ by train or by car. Instead, they (*rent*) \_\_\_\_\_ motor scooters and (*ride*) \_\_\_\_\_ slowly through each country they visited.  
 While she (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_ away, my wife and I (*worry*) \_\_\_\_\_ about her safety. We (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_ very happy when we (*see*) \_\_\_\_\_ her smiling face at the airport and (*know*) \_\_\_\_\_ that she was finally safe at home.

◇ PRACTICE 23. Past progressive. (Charts 2-8 and 2-9)

Directions: Complete the sentences by using the past progressive of the given verbs. Use each verb only once.

✓hide	look	read	sing	sit	talk	watch
-------	------	------	------	-----	------	-------

- Jack's wife arranged a surprise birthday party for him. When Jack arrived home, several people were hiding behind the couch or behind doors. All of the lights were out, and when Jack turned them on, everyone shouted "Surprise!"
- The birds began to sing when the sun rose at 6:30. Dan woke up at 6:45. When Dan woke up, the birds \_\_\_\_\_.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ a video last night when my best friend called.
- While we \_\_\_\_\_ on the phone, the power went out.
- The bus driver looked at all the passengers on her bus and noticed how quiet they were. Some people \_\_\_\_\_ newspapers or books. Most of the people \_\_\_\_\_ quietly in their seats and \_\_\_\_\_ out the windows of the bus.

◇ PRACTICE 24. Past progressive. (Charts 2-8 and 2-9)

Directions: Complete the sentences. Use the simple past for one clause and the past progressive for the other.

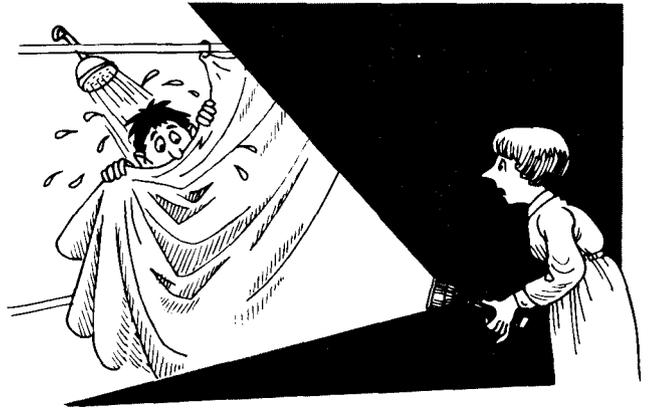
ACTIVITY IN PROGRESS	NADIA	GEORGE	BILL
play soccer	break her glasses	score a goal	hurt his foot
hike	find some money	see a bear	pick up a snake
dance	trip and fall	meet his future wife	get dizzy

- While Nadia was playing soccer, she broke her glasses.
- George scored a goal while he was playing soccer.
- Bill \_\_\_\_\_ his foot while he \_\_\_\_\_ soccer.
- While Nadia \_\_\_\_\_, she \_\_\_\_\_ some money.
- George \_\_\_\_\_ a bear while he \_\_\_\_\_.
- Bill \_\_\_\_\_ a snake while he \_\_\_\_\_.
- Nadia \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ while she \_\_\_\_\_.
- While George \_\_\_\_\_, he \_\_\_\_\_ his future wife.
- While Bill \_\_\_\_\_, he \_\_\_\_\_ dizzy.

◇ PRACTICE 25. Past progressive vs. simple past. (Charts 2-8 and 2-9)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses. Use the simple past or the past progressive.

1. It (*begin*)   began   to rain while Amanda and I (*walk*)  
  were walking   to school this morning.
2. While I (*wash*) \_\_\_\_\_ dishes last night, I (*drop*)  
\_\_\_\_\_ a plate and (*break*) \_\_\_\_\_ it.
3. I (*see*) \_\_\_\_\_ Ted at the student cafeteria at lunchtime yesterday. He (*eat*)  
\_\_\_\_\_ a sandwich and (*talk*) \_\_\_\_\_ with some  
friends. I (*join*) \_\_\_\_\_ them.
4. While I (*walk*) \_\_\_\_\_ under an apple tree a few days ago, an apple  
(*fall*) \_\_\_\_\_ and (*hit*) \_\_\_\_\_ me on the head.
5. Robert didn't answer the phone when Sara called. He (*sing*) \_\_\_\_\_  
his favorite song in the shower and (*hear, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ the phone ring.
6. A: I saw a whale!  
B: Really? Great! When?  
A: This morning. I (*walk*) \_\_\_\_\_ on the beach when I (*hear*)  
\_\_\_\_\_ a sudden "whoosh!" It (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_ the spout of  
a huge gray whale.
7. A: There was a power outage in our part of town last night. (*your lights, go out*) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ too?  
B: Yes, they did. It (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_ terrible! I (*take*) \_\_\_\_\_ a  
shower when the lights went out. My wife (*find*) \_\_\_\_\_ a flashlight and  
rescued me from the bathroom. We couldn't cook dinner, so we (*eat*) \_\_\_\_\_  
sandwiches instead. I (*try*)  
\_\_\_\_\_ to read some  
reports by candlelight, but I couldn't  
see well enough, so I (*go*)  
\_\_\_\_\_ to bed  
and (*sleep*) \_\_\_\_\_.  
How about you?



8. Yesterday Tom and Janice (*go*) \_\_\_\_\_ to the zoo, where they (*see*) \_\_\_\_\_ many kinds of animals and (*have*) \_\_\_\_\_ a few adventures. While they (*walk*) \_\_\_\_\_ by an elephant, it (*begin*) \_\_\_\_\_ to squirt water at them, so they run behind a rock and (*dry*) \_\_\_\_\_ themselves. Later, while they (*pass*) \_\_\_\_\_ the giraffe area, one of the tall, purple-tongued animals (*lower*) \_\_\_\_\_ its head toward Tom and (*start*) \_\_\_\_\_ to nibble on his green hat. Janice said, "Shoo!"\* At that point, the giraffe (*stretch*) \_\_\_\_\_ its head toward Janice and (*try*) \_\_\_\_\_ to eat her ice cream cone. Janice (*let, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ the giraffe have the ice cream because she (*stand*) \_\_\_\_\_ right in front of a sign that said, "DO NOT FEED THE ANIMALS." She (*point*) \_\_\_\_\_ at the sign and (*say*) \_\_\_\_\_ to the giraffe, "Can't you read?"

◇ PRACTICE 26. Past time using time clauses. (Chart 2-10)

*Directions:* Combine the two sentences in any order, using the time expression in parentheses. Underline the time clause.

1. I gave Alan his allowance. He finished his chores. (*after*)  
 → I gave Alan his allowance after he finished his chores. OR  
 → After Alan finished his chores, I gave him his allowance.
2. The doorbell rang. I was climbing the stairs. (*while*)
3. The firefighters checked the ashes one last time. They went home. (*before*)
4. The Novaks stopped by our table at the restaurant. They showed us their new baby. (*when*)
5. We started to dance. The music began. (*as soon as*)
6. We stayed in our seats. The game ended. (*until*)
7. My father was listening to a baseball game on the radio. He was watching a basketball game on television. (*while*)

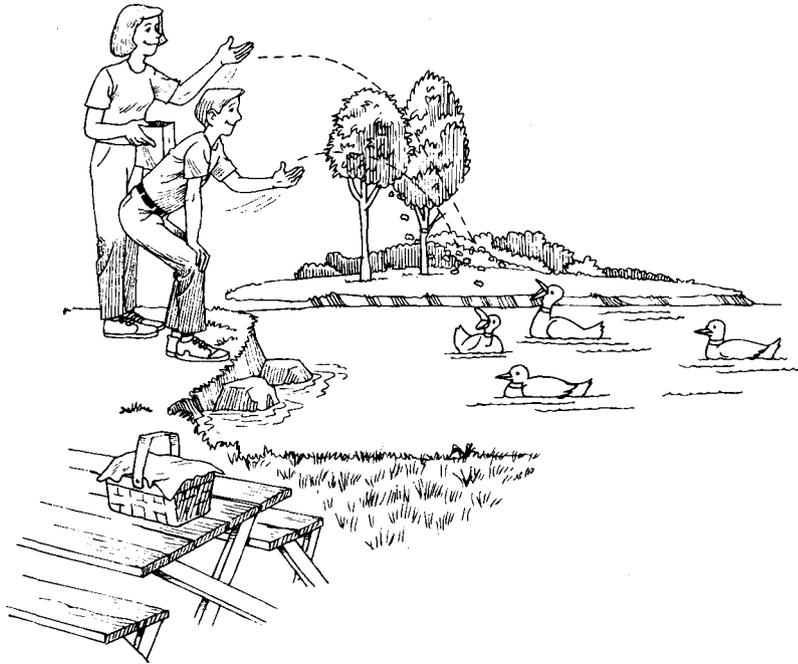
\*"Shoo! Shoo!" means "Go away! Leave!" When the woman *shooed* the giraffe, that means she said "Shoo! Shoo!" and made the giraffe leave.

◇ PRACTICE 27. Past verbs. (Charts 2-1 → 2-10)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

Last Friday was a holiday. It *(be)* \_\_\_\_\_<sup>1</sup> Independence Day, so I didn't have to go to classes. I *(sleep)* \_\_\_\_\_<sup>2</sup> a little later than usual. Around ten, my friend Larry *(come)* \_\_\_\_\_<sup>3</sup> over to my apartment. We *(pack)* \_\_\_\_\_<sup>4</sup> a picnic basket and then *(take)* \_\_\_\_\_<sup>5</sup> the bus to Forest Park. We *(spend)* \_\_\_\_\_<sup>6</sup> most of the day there.

When we *(get)* \_\_\_\_\_<sup>7</sup> to the park, we *(find)* \_\_\_\_\_<sup>8</sup> an empty picnic table near a pond. There were some ducks on the pond, so we *(feed)* \_\_\_\_\_<sup>9</sup> them. We *(throw)* \_\_\_\_\_<sup>10</sup> small pieces of bread on the water, and the ducks

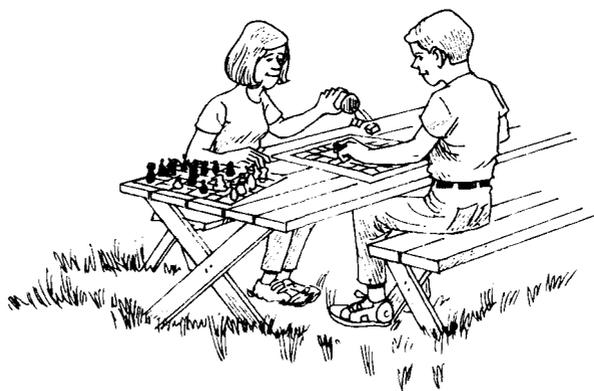


*(swim)* \_\_\_\_\_<sup>11</sup> over to get them. One duck was very clever. It *(catch)* \_\_\_\_\_<sup>12</sup> the bread in midair before it *(hit)* \_\_\_\_\_<sup>13</sup> the water. Another duck was a thief. It *(steal)* \_\_\_\_\_<sup>14</sup> bread from the beaks of other ducks. While we *(feed)* \_\_\_\_\_<sup>15</sup> the ducks, Larry and I *(meet)* \_\_\_\_\_<sup>16</sup> a man who usually *(come)* \_\_\_\_\_<sup>17</sup> to the park every day to feed the ducks. We *(sit)* \_\_\_\_\_<sup>18</sup> on a park bench and *(speak)* \_\_\_\_\_<sup>19</sup> to him for fifteen or twenty minutes.

After we (eat) \_\_\_\_\_ our lunch, I  
 (take) \_\_\_\_\_ a short nap under a tree.  
 While I (sleep) \_\_\_\_\_, a  
 mosquito (bite) \_\_\_\_\_ my arm. When I  
 (wake) \_\_\_\_\_ up, my arm itched, so I  
 scratched it. Suddenly I (hear) \_\_\_\_\_ a  
 noise in the tree above me. I (look) \_\_\_\_\_  
 up and (see) \_\_\_\_\_ an orange and gray  
 bird. After a few moments, it (fly) \_\_\_\_\_  
 away.



During the afternoon, we (do) \_\_\_\_\_ many things. First we (take)  
 \_\_\_\_\_ a long walk. When we (get) \_\_\_\_\_ back to our picnic table,  
 I (read) \_\_\_\_\_ a book, and Larry, who (be) \_\_\_\_\_ an artist,  
 (draw) \_\_\_\_\_ pictures. Later we (play) \_\_\_\_\_ a game of chess.  
 Larry (win) \_\_\_\_\_ the first game, but I (win) \_\_\_\_\_ the second  
 one. Then he (teach) \_\_\_\_\_ me how to play a new game, one with dice. While  
 we (play) \_\_\_\_\_, one of the dice (fall) \_\_\_\_\_ from the  
 picnic table onto the ground. We finally (find) \_\_\_\_\_ it in some tall grass.



In the evening, we (join) \_\_\_\_\_ a huge crowd to watch the fireworks display.  
 The fireworks (be) \_\_\_\_\_ beautiful. Some of the explosions (be) \_\_\_\_\_

very loud, however. They (*hurt*) \_\_\_\_\_ my ears. When the display (*be*)

45

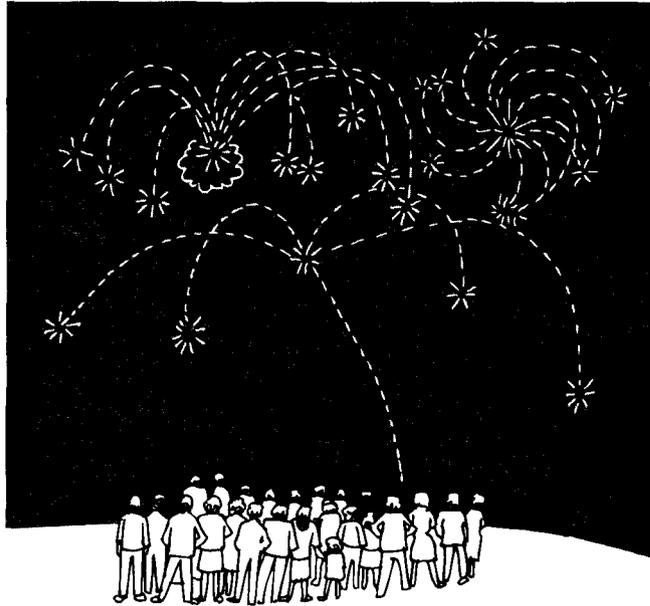
\_\_\_\_\_ over, we (*leave*) \_\_\_\_\_. All in all, it (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_

46

47

48

a very enjoyable day.



◇ PRACTICE 28. Past habit with USED TO. (Chart 2-11)

Directions: Using the given information, complete the sentences. Use *used to*.

1. When James was young, he hated school. Now he likes school.

→ James used to hate school.

2. Ann was a secretary for many years, but now she owns her own business.

→ Ann \_\_\_\_\_, but now she owns her own business.

3. Rebecca had a pet rat when she was ten. The rat died, and she hasn't had another rat as a pet since that time.

→ Rebecca \_\_\_\_\_ as a pet.

4. Before Adam got married, he went bowling five times a week.

→ Adam \_\_\_\_\_ five times a week.

5. When we raised our own chickens, we had fresh eggs every morning.

→ We \_\_\_\_\_ every morning when we raised our own chickens.

6. When Ben was a child, he often crawled under his bed and put his hands over his ears when he heard thunder.

→ Ben \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ when he heard thunder.

7. When I lived in my home town, I went to the beach every weekend. Now I don't go to the beach every weekend.  
→ I \_\_\_\_\_ to the beach every weekend, but now I don't.
8. Adam has a new job. He has to wear a suit every day. When he was a student, he always wore jeans.  
→ Adam \_\_\_\_\_ a suit every day, but now he does.
9. Sara has two cats that she enjoys as pets. In the past, she hated cats. These are her first pets.  
→ Sara \_\_\_\_\_ cats. She \_\_\_\_\_  
pets, but today she enjoys her two cats.
10. Now you have a job every summer. Have you always worked during summers?  
→ What \_\_\_\_\_ in summer?

◇ PRACTICE 29. Error analysis. (Chapter 2)

*Directions:* Correct the errors.

1. They <sup>didn't stay</sup> ~~don't stayed~~ at the park very long last Saturday.
2. They are walked to school yesterday.
3. I was understand all the teacher's questions yesterday.
4. We didn't knew what to do when the fire alarm ringed yesterday.
5. I was really enjoyed the baseball game last week.
6. Mr. Rice didn't died in the accident.
7. I use to live with my parents. but now I have my own apartment.
8. My friends were went on vacation together last month.
9. I didn't afraid of anything when I am a child.
10. The teacher was changed his mind yesterday.
11. Sally love Jim, but he didn't loved her.
12. Carmen no used to eat fish, but now she does.

◇ PRACTICE 30. Past verbs. (Chapter 2)

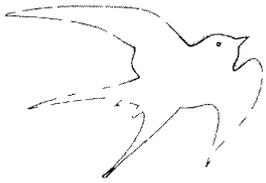
Directions: Complete the sentences with the simple past or the past progressive of the verbs in parentheses.

Late yesterday afternoon while I (*prepare*) was preparing<sup>1</sup> dinner, the doorbell (*ring*)                     <sup>2</sup>. I (*put*)                     <sup>3</sup> everything down and (*rush*)                     <sup>4</sup> to answer it. I (*open*)                     <sup>5</sup> the door and (*find*)                     <sup>6</sup> a delivery man standing in my doorway. He (*hold*)                     <sup>7</sup> an express mail package and (*need*)                     <sup>8</sup> me to sign



for it. While I (*deal*)                     <sup>9</sup> with the delivery man, the phone (*ring*)                     <sup>10</sup>. I (*excuse*)                     <sup>11</sup> myself and (*reach*)                     <sup>12</sup> for the phone. While I (*try*)                     <sup>13</sup> to talk on the phone and sign for the package at the same time, my young son (*run*)                     <sup>14</sup> up to me to tell me about the cat. The cat (*try*)                     <sup>15</sup> to catch a big fish in my husband's prized aquarium. The fish (*swim*)                     <sup>16</sup> frantically to avoid the cat's paw.

I (*say*) \_\_\_\_\_<sub>17</sub> an abrupt goodbye to the telemarketer on the phone and  
(*hang*) \_\_\_\_\_<sub>18</sub> up. I (*thank*) \_\_\_\_\_<sub>19</sub> the delivery man and (*shut*)  
\_\_\_\_\_<sub>20</sub> the door. I (*yell*) \_\_\_\_\_<sub>21</sub> at the cat and (*shoo*)  
\_\_\_\_\_<sub>22</sub> her away from the fish. Then I (*sit*) \_\_\_\_\_<sub>23</sub> down in an easy  
chair and (*stay*) \_\_\_\_\_<sub>24</sub> there until I (*begin*) \_\_\_\_\_<sub>25</sub> to feel calm  
again. But as soon as I (*feel*) \_\_\_\_\_<sub>26</sub> like everything was under control, the  
doorbell (*ring*) \_\_\_\_\_<sub>27</sub> again. Then the phone (*ring*) \_\_\_\_\_<sub>28</sub>. Then  
my son said, "Mom! Mom! The dog is in the refrigerator!" I couldn't move. "What's next?" I  
said aloud to no one in particular.



# CHAPTER 3

## Future Time

### ◇ PRACTICE 1. Present, past, and future. (Chapters 1, 2, and 3)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with the given verbs. Use the simple present, the simple past, and **be going to/will**.

1. *arrive*
- a. Joe arrives on time **every day**.
- b. Joe arrived on time **yesterday**.
- c. Joe is going to arrive on time **tomorrow**. OR  
Joe will arrive on time **tomorrow**.
2. *eat*
- a. Ann \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast **every day**.
- b. Ann \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast **yesterday**.
- c. Ann \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast **tomorrow**. OR  
Ann \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast **tomorrow**.
3. *arrive, not*
- a. Mike \_\_\_\_\_ on time **every day**.
- b. Mike \_\_\_\_\_ on time **yesterday**.
- c. Mike isn't going to arrive on time **tomorrow**. OR  
Mike \_\_\_\_\_ on time **tomorrow**.
4. *eat?*
- a. \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast **every day?**
- b. \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast **yesterday?**
- c. \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast **tomorrow?** OR  
\_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast **tomorrow?**
5. *eat, not*
- a. I \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast **every day**.
- b. I \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast **yesterday**.
- c. I \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast **tomorrow**. OR  
I \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast **tomorrow**

◇ PRACTICE 2. WILL and BE GOING TO. (Charts 3-1 → 3-3)

Directions: Complete the chart with the correct forms of the verbs.

<i>be going to</i>		<i>will</i>	
I <u>am going to</u>	leave.	I <u>will</u>	leave.
You _____	leave.	You _____	leave.
Mr. Rose _____	leave.	He _____	leave.
We _____	leave.	We _____	leave.
Our parents _____	leave.	They _____	leave.
The boys (not) _____	leave.	They (not) _____	leave.
Ann (not) _____	leave.	She (not) _____	leave.
I (not) _____	leave.	I (not) _____	leave.

◇ PRACTICE 3. BE GOING TO. (Chart 3-2)

Directions: Complete the sentences by using a pronoun + a form of *be going to*.

- I ate lunch with Alan today, and I'm going to eat lunch with him tomorrow too.
- Jason wasn't in class today, and he isn't going to be in class tomorrow either.
- The students took a quiz yesterday, and \_\_\_\_\_ another quiz today.
- Margaret walked to school this morning, and \_\_\_\_\_ to school tomorrow morning too.
- It isn't raining today, and according to the weather report, \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow either.
- We're in class today, and \_\_\_\_\_ in class tomorrow too.
- You didn't hitchhike to school today, and \_\_\_\_\_ to school tomorrow either.
- I didn't get married last year, and \_\_\_\_\_ married this year either.
- Peter didn't wear a clean shirt today, and \_\_\_\_\_ a clean one tomorrow either.

◇ PRACTICE 4. WILL. (Chart 3-3)

Directions: Read the paragraph. Change all the verbs with *be going to* to *will*.

The Smiths ~~are going to~~ <sup>will</sup> celebrate their 50th wedding anniversary on December 1 of this year. Their children are planning a party for them at a local hotel. Their family and friends are going to join them for the celebration.

Mr. and Mrs. Smith have three children and five grandchildren. The Smiths know that two of their children are going to be at the party, but the third child, their youngest daughter, is far away in Africa, where she is doing medical research. They believe she is not going to come home for the party.

The Smiths don't know it, but their youngest daughter is going to be at the party. She is planning to surprise them. It is going to be a wonderful surprise for them! They are going to be very happy to see her. The whole family is going to enjoy being together for this special occasion.

◇ PRACTICE 5. Questions with WILL and BE GOING TO. (Charts 3-1 → 3-3)

*Directions:* Use the given information to complete the questions. Write the question forms for both *will* and *be going to*.

1. Nick is thinking about *starting* an Internet company. His friends are wondering:

Will Nick start an Internet company?

Is Nick going to start an Internet company?

2. The teacher, Mr. Jones, is thinking about *giving* a test. His students are wondering:

\_\_\_\_\_ a test?

\_\_\_\_\_ a test?

3. Jacob is thinking about *quitting* his job. His co-workers are wondering:

\_\_\_\_\_ his job?

\_\_\_\_\_ his job?

4. Mr. and Mrs. Kono are thinking about *adopting* a child. Their friends are wondering:

\_\_\_\_\_ a child?

\_\_\_\_\_ a child?

5. The Johnsons are thinking about *moving*. Their friends are wondering:

\_\_\_\_\_ ?

\_\_\_\_\_ ?

6. Dr. Johnson is thinking about *retiring*. Her patients are wondering:

\_\_\_\_\_ ?

\_\_\_\_\_ ?

◇ PRACTICE 6. WILL. (Chart 3-3)

Directions: Complete the dialogues. Use *will*.

1. A: (*you, help*) will you help me tomorrow?  
B: Yes, I will\*. OR No, I won't.
2. A: (*Paul, lend*) \_\_\_\_\_ us some money?  
B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_. OR No, \_\_\_\_\_.
3. A: (*Jane, graduate*) \_\_\_\_\_ this spring?  
B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_. OR No, \_\_\_\_\_.
4. A: (*her parents, be*) \_\_\_\_\_ at the ceremony?  
B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_. OR No, \_\_\_\_\_.
5. A: (*I, benefit*) \_\_\_\_\_ from this business deal?  
B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_. OR No, \_\_\_\_\_.

◇ PRACTICE 7. WILL PROBABLY. (Chart 3-4)

Directions: Complete the sentences with *will* or *won't*. Also use *probably*.

1. The clouds are leaving, and the sun is coming out. It probably won't rain anymore.
2. The weather is cold today. There's no reason to expect the weather to change. It will probably be cold tomorrow too.
3. Sam, Sharon, and Carl worked hard on this project. They \_\_\_\_\_ turn in the best work. The other students didn't work as hard.
4. Ronald is having a very difficult time in advanced algebra. He didn't understand anything that happened in class today, and he \_\_\_\_\_ understand tomorrow's class either.
5. Jan skipped lunch today. She \_\_\_\_\_ eat as soon as she gets home.
6. I don't like parties. Mike really wants me to come to his birthday party, but I \_\_\_\_\_ go. I'd rather stay home.

\*Pronouns are NOT contracted with helping verbs in short answers.

CORRECT: *Yes, I will.* INCORRECT: *Yes, I'll.*

7. Conditions in the factory have been very bad for a long time. All of the people who work on the assembly line are angry. They \_\_\_\_\_ vote to go out on strike.
8. We are using up the earth's resources at a rapid rate. We \_\_\_\_\_ continue to do so\* for years to come.

◇ PRACTICE 8. WILL PROBABLY. (Chart 3-4)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences.

**PART I.** Use a pronoun + *will/won't*. Use *probably*.

1. I went to the library last night, and I'll probably go there tonight too.
2. Ann didn't come to class today, and she probably won't come tomorrow either.
3. Greg went to bed early last night, and \_\_\_\_\_ to bed early tonight too.
4. Jack didn't hand his homework in today, and \_\_\_\_\_ it in tomorrow either.
5. The students had a quiz today, and \_\_\_\_\_ one tomorrow too.

**PART II.** Use a pronoun + *be going to/not be going to*. Use *probably*.

6. I watched TV last night, and I'm probably going to watch TV tonight too.
7. I wasn't at home last night, and \_\_\_\_\_ at home tonight either.
8. It's hot today, and \_\_\_\_\_ hot tomorrow too.
9. My friends didn't come over last night, and \_\_\_\_\_ over tonight either.
10. Alice didn't ride her bike to school today, and \_\_\_\_\_ it to school tomorrow either.

◇ PRACTICE 9. Sureness about the future. (Chart 3-4)

*Directions:* Decide if the speaker is 100%, 90%, or 50% sure.

1. 90% You'll probably hear from our office tomorrow.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ Gino may not finish his assignment on time.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ My roommate will transfer to another university next year.

\*Do so means "do that thing I just talked about." In this sentence, *do so* = *use up the earth's resources at a rapid rate*.

4. \_\_\_\_\_ My roommate is probably going to change her major.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Julia may join a health club next month.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ I will probably join a health club too.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Karen and Lee are not going to continue dating each other.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ Maybe they will remain friends.

◇ PRACTICE 10. Sureness about the future. (Chart 3-4)

*Directions:* Answer each question by using the word in parentheses. Pay special attention to word order.

1. A: Are Joel and Rita going to have a simple wedding? (*probably*)  
 B: Yes. Joel and Rita are probably going to have a simple wedding.
2. A: Are they going to invite a lot of people? (*probably not*)  
 B: No. They \_\_\_\_\_  
 a lot of people.
3. A: Will they get married in Rita's garden? Or will they get married at a place of worship?  
 (*may, maybe*)  
 B: They're not sure. They \_\_\_\_\_ in Rita's garden.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ they \_\_\_\_\_ at a place of worship.
4. A: Is Rita going to rent her wedding dress? (*may*)  
 B: She's trying to save money, so she's thinking about it. She \_\_\_\_\_ her  
 wedding dress.
5. A: Will she decide that she wants a wedding dress of her very own? (*probably*)  
 B: She \_\_\_\_\_ that she wants a wedding dress of her very own.
6. A: Will Joel feel very relaxed on his wedding day? Will he be nervous? (*may not, may*)  
 B: Joel \_\_\_\_\_ very relaxed on his wedding day. He \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_ a little nervous.
7. A: Are they going to go on a honeymoon? (*will*)  
 B: Yes. They \_\_\_\_\_ on a honeymoon immediately after the  
 wedding, but they haven't told anyone where they are going to go.
8. A: Will they go far away for their honeymoon? (*probably not*)  
 B: They \_\_\_\_\_ far. They have only a few days before  
 they need to be back at work.

◇ PRACTICE 11. WILL. (Chart 3-5)

Directions: Complete the dialogues with **will** and a verb from the list. Use each verb only once.

✓ answer	hold	move	take
get	leave	read	turn off

1. At the office:           A: The phone's ringing.  
                                  B: I 'll answer it .
2. At home:                A: The baby won't stop crying.  
                                  B: I \_\_\_\_\_ her.
3. At the doctor's office:  
                                  A: I feel hot.  
                                  B: I \_\_\_\_\_ your temperature.
4. At work:                A: These boxes are in the way.  
                                  B: I \_\_\_\_\_ them.
5. At home:                A: The oven's still on.  
                                  B: I \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ .
6. At a restaurant:       A: You paid the bill. I \_\_\_\_\_ the tip.  
                                  B: Thanks!
7. At home:                A: The mail's here.  
                                  B: I \_\_\_\_\_ it.
8. At a fast-food restaurant:  
                                  A: I don't have my glasses. I can't read the menu board.  
                                  B: I \_\_\_\_\_ it to you.

◇ PRACTICE 12. BE GOING TO vs. WILL. (Chart 3-5)

Directions: Complete the sentences with either **be going to** or **will**.\*

1. (Speaker B is planning to listen to the news at six.)  
A: Why did you turn on the radio?  
B: I 'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ listen to the news at six.
2. (Speaker B didn't have a plan to show the other person how to solve the math problem, but she is happy to do it.)  
A: I can't figure out this math problem. Do you know how to do it?  
B: Yes. Give me your pencil. I 'll \_\_\_\_\_ show you how to solve it.

\*Usually **be going to** and **will** are interchangeable: you can use either one of them with little difference in meaning. Sometimes, however, they are NOT interchangeable. In this exercise, only one of them is correct, not both. See Chart 3-5, p. 63, in the *FEG 3e* student book.

3. (*Speaker B has made a plan. He is planning to lie down because he doesn't feel well.*)  
 A: What's the matter?  
 B: I don't feel well. I \_\_\_\_\_ lie down for a little while. If anyone calls, tell them I'll call back later.  
 A: Okay. I hope you feel better.
4. (*Speaker B did not plan to take the other person home. He volunteers to do so only after the other person talks about missing his bus.*)  
 A: Oh no! I wasn't watching the time. I missed my bus.  
 B: That's okay. I \_\_\_\_\_ give you a ride home.  
 A: Hey, thanks!
5. (*Speaker B already has a plan.*)  
 A: Why did you borrow money from the bank?  
 B: I \_\_\_\_\_ buy a new pickup.\* I've already picked it out.
6. (*Speaker B does not have a plan.*)  
 A: Mom, can I have a candy bar?  
 B: No, but I \_\_\_\_\_ buy an apple for you. How does that sound?  
 A: Okay, I guess.
7. (*Speaker B has already made her plans about what to wear. Then Speaker B volunteers to help.*)  
 A: I can't figure out what to wear to the dance tonight. It's informal, isn't it?  
 B: Yes. I \_\_\_\_\_ wear a pair of nice jeans.  
 A: Maybe I should wear my jeans, too. But I think they're dirty.  
 B: I \_\_\_\_\_ wash them for you. I'm planning to do a load of laundry in a few minutes.  
 A: Gee, thanks. That'll help me out a lot.

◇ PRACTICE 13. BE GOING TO vs. WILL. (Chart 3-5)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with either **be going to** or **will**.

1. A: Can I borrow this book?  
 B: Sure. But I need it back soon.  
 A: I 'll \_\_\_\_\_ return it to you tomorrow. Okay?
2. A: I 'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ wear a dark suit to the wedding reception. How about you?  
 B: I'm not sure.
3. A: What are you doing with that picture?  
 B: It doesn't look good in this room. I \_\_\_\_\_ hang it in our bedroom.

\*A pickup is a small truck.

4. A: Can you meet me for dinner after work?

B: I'd like to, but I can't. I \_\_\_\_\_ work late tonight.

5. A: It's grandfather's eighty-fifth birthday next Sunday. What \_\_\_\_\_  
you \_\_\_\_\_ give him for his birthday?

B: I \_\_\_\_\_ give him a walking stick that I made myself.

6. A: Gee, I'd really like an ice cream cone, but I didn't bring any money with me.

B: That's okay. I \_\_\_\_\_ buy one for you.

A: Thanks!



7. A: Why are you looking for a screwdriver?

B: One of the kitchen chairs has a loose screw. I \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ fix it.

8. A: The computer printer isn't working again! What am I going to do?

B: Calm down. Give Tom a call. He \_\_\_\_\_  
fix it for you. He just fixed my printer.

9. A: Why is Nadia going to leave work early today?

B: She \_\_\_\_\_ pick up her husband at the airport.

10. A: Achoo! Your cat is making me sneeze.

B: I \_\_\_\_\_ put her outside.

A: Thanks.

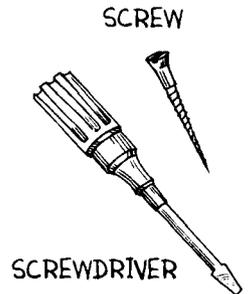
11. A: Do you have any plans for Saturday?

B: I \_\_\_\_\_ help some friends move to their new home.

12. A: Your pants have ink on them.

B: They do? I don't have another pair.

A: Don't worry. I have some spot remover. I \_\_\_\_\_ get it for you.



◇ PRACTICE 14. Past and future time clauses. (Charts 2-10 and 3-6)

Directions: Underline the time clauses.

1. After I did my homework last night, I went to bed.
2. I'm going to go to bed after I do my homework tonight.
3. Before Bob left for work this morning, he locked the door.
4. Before Bob leaves for work this morning, he's going to lock the door.
5. I'll call you after I get home this evening.
6. I called my friend after I got home last night.
7. Class will begin as soon as the teacher arrives.
8. As soon as the teacher arrived, class began.
9. When the rain stops, we'll go for a walk.
10. We went for a walk when the rain stopped.

◇ PRACTICE 15. Future time clauses. (Chart 3-6)

Directions: Combine the ideas of the two given sentences into one sentence by using a time clause. Use the word in parentheses to introduce the time clause.

1. *First:* I'm going to finish my homework.  
*Then:* I'm going to go to bed.  
(*after*) After I finish my homework, I'm going to go to bed.
2. *First:* I'll finish my homework.  
*Then:* I'm going to go to bed.  
(*until*) I'm not going to go to bed until I finish my homework.
3. *First:* Ann will finish her homework.  
*Then:* She will watch TV tonight.\*  
(*before*) \_\_\_\_\_ TV tonight, \_\_\_\_\_ her homework.
4. *First:* Jim will get home tonight.  
*Then:* He's going to read the newspaper.  
(*after*) \_\_\_\_\_ the newspaper \_\_\_\_\_ home tonight.
5. *First:* I'll call John tomorrow.  
*Then:* I'll ask him to my party.  
(*when*) \_\_\_\_\_ John tomorrow, \_\_\_\_\_ him to my party.

\*A noun usually comes before a pronoun:

After **Ann** eats dinner, **she** is going to study.

**Ann** is going to study after **she** eats dinner.

6. *First:* Mrs. Fox will stay in her office tonight.  
*Then:* She will finish her report.  
*(until)* \_\_\_\_\_ in her office tonight \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_ her report.
7. *First:* I will get home tonight.  
*Then:* I'm going to take a hot bath.  
*(as soon as)* \_\_\_\_\_ home tonight, \_\_\_\_\_  
 a hot bath.
8. *First:* I'm going to be in Bangkok.  
*Then:* I'm going to go to a Thai-style boxing match.  
*(while)* \_\_\_\_\_ in Bangkok, \_\_\_\_\_ to a  
 Thai-style boxing match.

◇ PRACTICE 16. IF-clauses. (Chart 3-6)

*Directions:* Using the given ideas, complete each sentence by using an *if*-clause. Use a comma if necessary.\*

1. Maybe it will rain tomorrow.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ *If it rains tomorrow,* \_\_\_\_\_ I'm going to go to a movie.
2. Maybe it will be hot tomorrow.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ I'm going to go swimming.
3. Maybe Adam will have enough time.  
 Adam will finish his essay tonight \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Maybe I won't get a check tomorrow.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ I'll e-mail my parents.
5. Perhaps the weather will be nice tomorrow.  
 We're going to go on a hike \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Maybe Gina won't study for her test.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ she'll get a bad grade.
7. Maybe I will have enough money.  
 I'm going to go to Hawaii for my vacation \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Maybe I won't study tonight.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ I probably won't pass the chemistry exam.

\*Notice the punctuation in the example. A comma is used when the *if*-clause comes before the main clause. No comma is used when the *if*-clause follows the main clause.

◇ PRACTICE 17. Time clauses and IF-clauses. (Chart 3-6)

*Directions:* Combine the ideas in the two sentences into one sentence by using the word in *italics* to make an adverb clause. Omit the words in parentheses from your new sentence. Underline the adverb clause.

1. *when*
  - a. I'll see you Sunday afternoon.
  - b. I'll give you my answer (then).\*→ When I see you Sunday afternoon, I'll give you my answer. OR  
I'll give you my answer when I see you Sunday afternoon.
  
2. *before*
  - a. I'm going to clean up my apartment (first).
  - b. My friends are going to come over (later).
  
3. *when*
  - a. The storm will be over (in an hour or two).
  - b. I'm going to do some errands (then).
  
4. *if*
  - a. (Maybe) you won't learn how to use a computer.
  - b. (As a result), you will have trouble finding a job.
  
5. *as soon as*
  - a. Joe will meet us at the coffee shop.
  - b. He'll finish his report (soon).
  
6. *after*
  - a. Sue will wash and dry the dishes.
  - b. (Then) she will put them away.
  
7. *if*
  - a. They may not leave at seven.
  - b. (As a result), they won't get to the theater on time.

◇ PRACTICE 18. Review: past and future. (Chapters 2 and 3)

*Directions:* Read Part I. Use the information in Part I to complete Part II with appropriate verb tenses. Use *will* (not *be going to*) for future time in Part II. Use the simple present for present time.

**PART I.**

(1) Yesterday morning was an ordinary morning. I got up at 6:30. I washed my face and brushed my teeth. Then I put on my jeans and a sweater. I went to the kitchen and started the electric coffee maker.

---

\*When you combine the sentences, omit the word in parentheses.

(2) Then I walked down my driveway to get the morning newspaper. While I was walking to get the paper, I saw a deer. It was eating the flowers in my garden. After I watched the deer for a little while, I made some noise to make the deer run away before it destroyed my flowers.

(3) As soon as I got back to the kitchen, I poured myself a cup of coffee and opened the morning paper. While I was reading the paper, my teenage daughter came downstairs. We talked about her plans for the day. I helped her with her breakfast and made a lunch for her to take to school. After we said goodbye, I ate some fruit and cereal and finished reading the paper.

(4) Then I went to my office. My office is in my home. My office has a desk, a computer, a radio, a fax, a copy machine, and a lot of bookshelves. I worked all morning. While I was working, the phone rang many times. I talked to many people. At 11:30, I went to the kitchen and made a sandwich for lunch. As I said, it was an ordinary morning.

#### **PART II.**

(1) Tomorrow morning will be an ordinary morning. I 'll get up at 6:30. I 'll wash my face and brush my teeth. Then I \_\_\_\_\_ probably \_\_\_\_\_ on my jeans and a sweater. I \_\_\_\_\_ to the kitchen and \_\_\_\_\_ the electric coffee maker.

(2) Then I \_\_\_\_\_ down my driveway to get the morning newspaper. If I \_\_\_\_\_ a deer in my garden, I \_\_\_\_\_ it for a while and then \_\_\_\_\_ some noise to chase it away before it \_\_\_\_\_ my flowers.

(3) As soon as I \_\_\_\_\_ back to the kitchen, I \_\_\_\_\_ myself a cup of coffee and \_\_\_\_\_ the morning paper. While I'm reading the paper, my teenage daughter \_\_\_\_\_ downstairs. We \_\_\_\_\_ about her plans for the day. I \_\_\_\_\_ her with her breakfast and \_\_\_\_\_ a lunch for her to take to school. After we \_\_\_\_\_ goodbye, I \_\_\_\_\_ some fruit and cereal and \_\_\_\_\_ reading the paper.

(4) Then I \_\_\_\_\_ to my office. My office \_\_\_\_\_ in my home. My office \_\_\_\_\_ a desk, a computer, a radio, a fax, a copy machine, and a lot of bookshelves. I \_\_\_\_\_ all morning. While I'm working, the phone \_\_\_\_\_ many times. I \_\_\_\_\_ to many people. At 11:30, I \_\_\_\_\_ to the kitchen and \_\_\_\_\_ a sandwich for lunch. As I said, it \_\_\_\_\_ an ordinary morning.

◇ PRACTICE 19. Using BE GOING TO and the present progressive to express future time. (Chart 3-7)

Directions: Rewrite the sentences by using *be going to* and the present progressive.

1. I'm planning to stay home tonight.

I'm going to stay home tonight.

I'm staying home tonight.

2. They're planning to travel across the country by train this summer.

\_\_\_\_\_ across the country by train this summer.

\_\_\_\_\_ across the country by train this summer.

3. We're planning to get married in June.

\_\_\_\_\_ married in June.

\_\_\_\_\_ married in June.

4. He's planning to start graduate school next year.

\_\_\_\_\_ graduate school next year.

\_\_\_\_\_ graduate school next year.

5. She's planning to go to New Zealand next month.

\_\_\_\_\_ to New Zealand next month.

\_\_\_\_\_ to New Zealand next month.

6. My neighbors are planning to build their dream home this spring.

\_\_\_\_\_ their dream home this spring.

\_\_\_\_\_ their dream home this spring.

◇ PRACTICE 20. Using the present progressive to express future time. (Chart 3-7)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the present progressive. Use each verb in the list only once. Notice the future time expressions in *italics*.

<i>arrive</i>	<i>come</i>	<i>meet</i>	<i>see</i>	<i>take</i>
<i>attend</i>	<i>get</i>	<i>plan</i>	<i>speak</i>	✓ <i>travel</i>
<i>call</i>	<i>leave</i>	<i>prepare</i>	<i>study</i>	

1. Kathy is traveling to Caracas *next month* to attend a conference.

2. A: Your apartment is so neat! Are you expecting guests?

B: Yes. My parents \_\_\_\_\_ *tomorrow* for a two-day visit.

3. A: Do you have any plans for lunch today?  
B: I \_\_\_\_\_ Shannon at the Shamrock Cafe *in an hour*. Want to join us?
4. A: I \_\_\_\_\_ a bicycle for my son for his birthday *next month*. Do you know anything about bikes for kids?  
B: Sure. What do you want to know?
5. Amanda likes to take her two children with her on trips whenever she can, but she \_\_\_\_\_ not \_\_\_\_\_ them with her to El Paso, Texas, *next week*. It's strictly a business trip.
6. A: What are your plans for the rest of the year?  
B: I \_\_\_\_\_ French in Grenoble, France, *this coming summer*. Then I'll be back here in school in the fall.
7. A: Why are you packing your suitcase?  
B: I \_\_\_\_\_ for Los Angeles *in a couple of hours*.
8. My regular dentist, Dr. Jordan, \_\_\_\_\_ a conference in Las Vegas *next week*, so I \_\_\_\_\_ her partner, Dr. Peterson, when I go in for my appointment *next Friday*.
9. A: Do we have a test in English class tomorrow?  
B: No. Don't you remember? We're going to have a guest lecturer.  
A: Really? Who? Are you sure we don't have a test?  
B: A professor from the Department of Environmental Sciences \_\_\_\_\_ to our class tomorrow morning.  
A: Great! That sounds interesting. And it's a lot better than having a test.
10. A: My sister and her husband \_\_\_\_\_ over to my house for dinner tomorrow night. It's my sister's birthday, so I \_\_\_\_\_ a special birthday dinner for her. I \_\_\_\_\_ her favorite food: roast beef and mashed potatoes.  
B: That's nice. She'll like that.
11. A: I'm going to call the doctor. You have a fever, chills, and a stomach ache.  
B: No, don't call a doctor. I'll be okay.  
A: I'm worried. I \_\_\_\_\_ the doctor! And that's it!

◇ PRACTICE 21. Using the simple present to express future time. (Chart 3-8)

*Directions:* Use any of the verbs in the list to complete the sentences. Use the simple present to express future time.

<i>arrive</i>	<i>depart</i>	<i>get in</i>	<i>open</i>
<i>begin</i>	<i>end</i>	<i>land</i>	<i>start</i>
<i>close</i>	<i>finish</i>	<i>leave</i>	

1. A: What time does class begin/start tomorrow morning?  
 B: It begins/starts at eight o'clock sharp.
  
2. A: The coffee shop \_\_\_\_\_ at seven o'clock tomorrow morning. I'll meet you there at 7:15.  
 B: Okay. I'll be there.
  
3. A: What time are you going to go to the airport tonight?  
 B: Tom's plane \_\_\_\_\_ around 7:15, but I think I'll go a little early in case it gets in ahead of schedule.
  
4. A: What's the hurry?  
 B: I've got to take a shower, change clothes, and get to the theater fast. The play \_\_\_\_\_ in forty-five minutes, and I don't want to miss the beginning.
  
5. A: What time \_\_\_\_\_ the dry cleaning shop \_\_\_\_\_ this evening?  
 If I don't get there in time, I'll have nothing to wear to the banquet tonight.  
 B: It \_\_\_\_\_ at 6:00. I can pick up your dry cleaning for you.  
 A: Hey, thanks! That'll really help!
  
6. A: What time should we go to the theater tomorrow night?  
 B: The doors \_\_\_\_\_ at 6:00 P.M., but we don't need to be there that early. The show \_\_\_\_\_ at 8:00.  
 If we \_\_\_\_\_ at the theater by 7:15, we'll be there in plenty of time. The show \_\_\_\_\_ around 10:30, so we can be back home by a little after 11:00.
  
7. A: I've enjoyed my visit with you, but tomorrow I have to go back home.  
 A: What time \_\_\_\_\_ your flight \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow?  
 B: It \_\_\_\_\_ at 12:34 P.M. I want to be at the airport an hour early, so we should leave here around 10:30, if that's okay with you.  
 A: Sure. What time \_\_\_\_\_ your flight \_\_\_\_\_ in Mexico City?  
 B: It's about a three-hour flight. I'll get in around 4:30 Mexico City time.

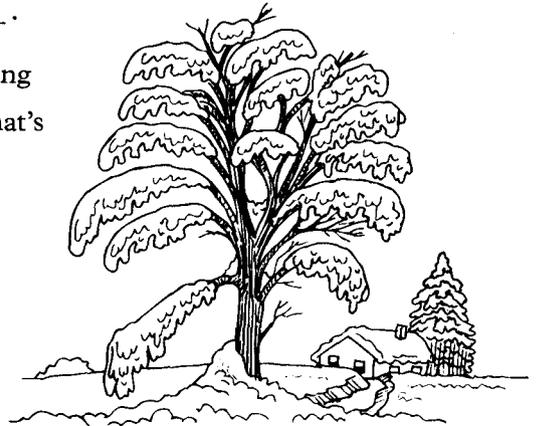


◇ PRACTICE 22. Using BE ABOUT TO. (Chart 3-9)

Directions: Write sentences using **be about to**. Use each verb in the list only once.

break      leave      ✓rain      ring      write

- A: What does it usually mean if the sky is cloudy and dark?  
B: It usually means that it is about to rain.
- A: What does it probably mean if Jack is standing by the front door with his car keys in his hand?  
B: It means that he \_\_\_\_\_ the house.
- A: What does it mean if the teacher picks up a piece of chalk?  
B: It probably means that she \_\_\_\_\_ on the board.
- A: You're in the kitchen. The oven timer has only a few seconds left. What does that mean?  
B: The timer \_\_\_\_\_.
- A: The heavy snow is making the tree branches hang down. One is almost touching the ground. What's going to happen?  
B: The branch \_\_\_\_\_ probably \_\_\_\_\_.



◇ PRACTICE 23. Parallel verbs. (Chart 3-10)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses.

- My classmates are going to meet at Danny's and (*study*) study together tonight.
- Tomorrow the sun will rise at 6:34 and (*set*) \_\_\_\_\_ at 8:59.
- Last night, I was listening to music and (*do*) \_\_\_\_\_ my homework when Kim stopped by.
- Next weekend, Nick is going to meet his friends downtown and (*go*) \_\_\_\_\_ to a soccer game.
- My pen slipped out of my hand and (*fall*) \_\_\_\_\_ to the floor.
- Alex is at his computer. He (*write*) \_\_\_\_\_ e-mails and (*wait*) \_\_\_\_\_ for responses.

7. Every morning without exception, Mrs. Carter (*take*) \_\_\_\_\_ her dog for a walk and (*buy*) \_\_\_\_\_ a newspaper at Charlie's newsstand.
8. Before I (*go*) \_\_\_\_\_ to your boss and (*tell*) \_\_\_\_\_ her about your mistake, I want to give you an opportunity to explain it to her yourself.
9. Next month, I (*take*) \_\_\_\_\_ my vacation and (*forget*) \_\_\_\_\_ about everything that is connected to my job.
10. Kathy thinks I was the cause of her problems, but I wasn't. Someday she (*discover*) \_\_\_\_\_ the truth and (*apologize*) \_\_\_\_\_ to me.

◇ PRACTICE 24. Error analysis. (Chapter 3)

*Directions:* Correct the errors.

1. My friends will ~~to~~ join us after work.
2. Maybe the rain stops soon.
3. On Friday, our school close early so teachers can go to a workshop.
4. My husband and I will intend to be at your graduation.
5. Our company is going to sells computer equipment to schools.
6. Give grandpa a hug. He's about to leaving.
7. Mr. Scott is going to retire and moving to a warmer climate.
8. If your soccer team will win the championship tomorrow, we'll have a big celebration for you.
9. I maybe won't be able to meet you for coffee.
10. I bought this cloth because I will make some curtains for my bedroom.
11. I moving to London when I will finish my education here.
12. Are you going go to the meeting?
13. I opened the door and walk to the front of the room.
14. When will you be going to move into your new apartment?

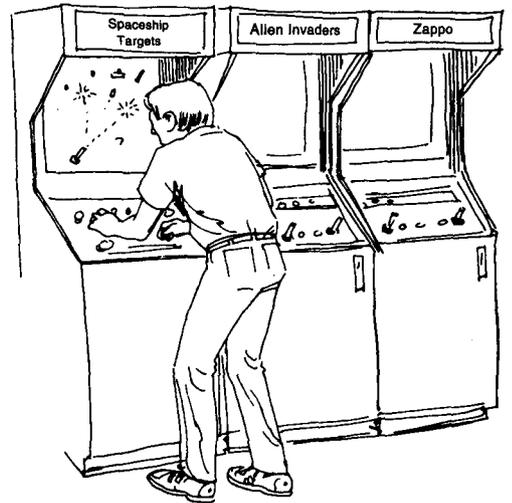
◇ PRACTICE 25. Verb tense review. (Chapters 1 → 3)

Directions: Complete the sentences by using a form of the words in parentheses.

1. It's getting late, but before I (*go*) go to bed, I (*finish*) \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_ my homework and (*write*) \_\_\_\_\_ a couple of e-mails.

2. While I (*make*) \_\_\_\_\_ dinner last night, some grease (*spill*)  
 \_\_\_\_\_ out of the frying pan and (*catch*) \_\_\_\_\_ on  
 fire. When the smoke detector on the ceiling (*start*) \_\_\_\_\_ to buzz, my  
 roommate (*run*) \_\_\_\_\_ into the kitchen to find out what was wrong. He  
 (*think*) \_\_\_\_\_ that the house was on fire!

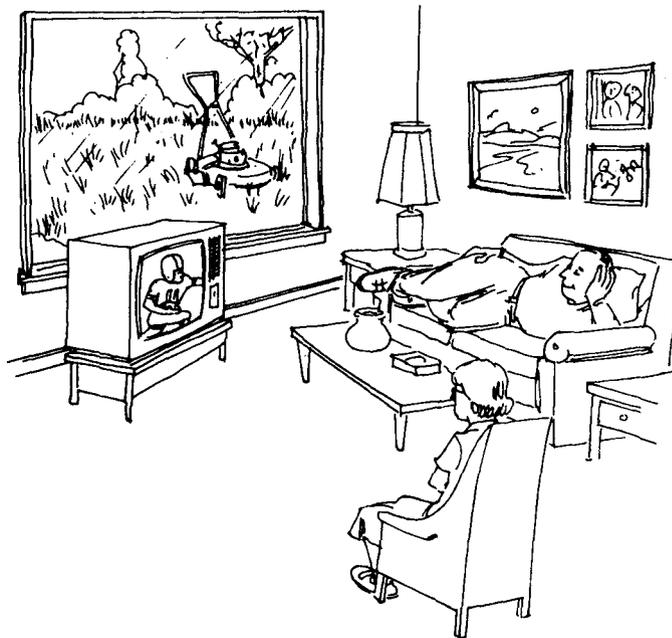
3. Mark is obsessed with video games. He (*play*) \_\_\_\_\_ video games morning,  
 noon, and night. Sometimes he (*cut*) \_\_\_\_\_ class to play them. Right now he  
 (*do, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ very well in  
 school. If he (*study, not*) \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_ harder and (*go*)  
 \_\_\_\_\_ to class every day, he (*flunk*)  
 \_\_\_\_\_ out of school.



4. Sometimes my daughter, Susie, has temper  
 tantrums. She (*cry*) \_\_\_\_\_ and  
 (*stomp*) \_\_\_\_\_ her feet when she  
 (*get*) \_\_\_\_\_ angry. Yesterday when  
 she (*get*) \_\_\_\_\_ angry, she (*pick*) \_\_\_\_\_ up a toy car and  
 (*throw*) \_\_\_\_\_ it at her little brother. Luckily, the car (*hit, not*) \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_ him. Susie (*feel*) \_\_\_\_\_ very bad. She (*apologize*)  
 \_\_\_\_\_ to her brother and (*kiss*) \_\_\_\_\_ him.

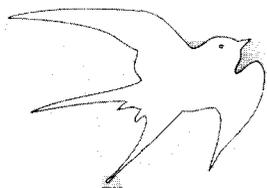
5. It's October now. The weather (*begin*) \_\_\_\_\_ to get colder. It (*begin*)  
 \_\_\_\_\_ to get cold every October. I (*like, not*) \_\_\_\_\_  
 winter, but I (*think*) \_\_\_\_\_ autumn is beautiful. In a couple of weeks, my  
 friend and I (*take*) \_\_\_\_\_ a weekend trip to the country if the  
 weather (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_ nice. We (*drive*) \_\_\_\_\_ through the  
 river valley and (*enjoy*) \_\_\_\_\_ the colors of fall.

6. Jane (*meet*) \_\_\_\_\_ me at the airport when my plane (*arrive*) \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow.
7. If I (*see*) \_\_\_\_\_ Mike tomorrow, I (*tell*) \_\_\_\_\_ him about the party.
8. I go to New York often. When I (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_ in New York, I usually (*see*) \_\_\_\_\_ a Broadway play.
9. When I (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_ in New York next week, I (*stay*) \_\_\_\_\_ at the Park Plaza Hotel.
10. Cindy and I (*go*) \_\_\_\_\_ to the beach tomorrow if the weather (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_ warm and sunny.
11. Jack (*watch*) \_\_\_\_\_ a football game on TV right now. As soon as the game (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_ over, he (*mow*) \_\_\_\_\_ the grass in the back yard.



12. As soon as the test (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_ over in class yesterday, the students (*leave*) \_\_\_\_\_ the room.
13. As soon as I (*get*) \_\_\_\_\_ home every day, my children always (*run*) \_\_\_\_\_ to the door to meet me.
14. A: I'll lend you my bike if I (*need, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ it tomorrow.  
B: Thanks.

15. A: Everyone in the office (*plan*) \_\_\_\_\_ to come to the annual company picnic tomorrow. (*you, come*) \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 B: Of course!
16. A: How (*you, get, usually*) \_\_\_\_\_ to work?  
 B: I (*take*) \_\_\_\_\_ the commuter train every morning.
17. This morning, Bob (*comb*) \_\_\_\_\_ his hair when the comb (*break*) \_\_\_\_\_. So he (*finish*) \_\_\_\_\_ combing his hair with his fingers and (*rush*) \_\_\_\_\_ out the door to class.
18. I'm exhausted! When I (*get*) \_\_\_\_\_ home tonight, I (*read*) \_\_\_\_\_ the paper and (*watch*) \_\_\_\_\_ the news. I (*do, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ any work around the house.
19. Yesterday I (*see*) \_\_\_\_\_ the man who stole the radio from my car last Friday. I (*run*) \_\_\_\_\_ after him, (*catch*) \_\_\_\_\_ him, and (*knock*) \_\_\_\_\_ him down. A passerby (*go*) \_\_\_\_\_ to call the police. I (*sit*) \_\_\_\_\_ on the man while I (*wait*) \_\_\_\_\_ for them to come. After they (*get*) \_\_\_\_\_ there and (*understand*) \_\_\_\_\_ the situation, they (*put*) \_\_\_\_\_ handcuffs on him and (*take*) \_\_\_\_\_ him to jail.
20. A: My cousin (*have*) \_\_\_\_\_ a new cat. She now (*have*) \_\_\_\_\_ four cats.  
 B: Why (*she, have*) \_\_\_\_\_ so many?  
 A: To catch the mice in her house.  
 B: (*you, have*) \_\_\_\_\_ any cats?  
 A: No, and I (*get, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ any. I (*have, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ mice in my house.



# CHAPTER 4

## The Present Perfect and the Past Perfect

### ◇ PRACTICE 1. Forms of the present perfect. (Charts 4-1 → 4-3)

*Directions:* Complete the dialogues with the given verbs and any words in parentheses. Use the present perfect.

1. *eat*     A: (*you, ever*) Have you ever eaten pepperoni pizza?  
B: Yes, I have. I have eaten pepperoni pizza many times. OR  
No, I haven't. I (*never*) have never eaten pepperoni pizza.
  
2. *talk*     A: (*you, ever*) \_\_\_\_\_ to a famous person?  
B: Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_. I \_\_\_\_\_ to a lot of famous people. OR  
No, I \_\_\_\_\_. I (*never*) \_\_\_\_\_ to a famous person.
  
3. *rent*     A: (*Erica, ever*) \_\_\_\_\_ a car?  
B: Yes, she \_\_\_\_\_. She \_\_\_\_\_ a car many times. OR  
No, she \_\_\_\_\_. She (*never*) \_\_\_\_\_ a car.
  
4. *see*     A: (*you, ever*) \_\_\_\_\_ a shooting star?  
B: Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_. I \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of shooting stars. OR  
No, I \_\_\_\_\_. I (*never*) \_\_\_\_\_ a shooting star.
  
5. *catch*     A: (*Joe, ever*) \_\_\_\_\_ a big fish?  
B: Yes, he \_\_\_\_\_. He \_\_\_\_\_ lots of big fish. OR  
No, he \_\_\_\_\_. He (*never*) \_\_\_\_\_ a big fish.

6. *have* A: (*you, ever*) \_\_\_\_\_ a bad sunburn?  
 B: Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_. I \_\_\_\_\_ a bad sunburn several times. OR  
 No, I \_\_\_\_\_. I (*never*) \_\_\_\_\_ a bad sunburn.

◇ PRACTICE 2. The present perfect. (Charts 4-1 → 4-3)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with the present perfect of the verbs in parentheses.

1. A cell phone is so convenient. I (*want*) have wanted one since they were available for sale.
2. I quit eating meat when I was in college. I (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_ a strict vegetarian for several years and feel very healthy.
3. We got a dog because we live in an isolated area. She (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_ a wonderful watchdog for us.
4. We (*fly*) \_\_\_\_\_ that airline many times because the service is excellent.
5. Our neighbors (*pick up, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ their mail yet. They may not be back from their trip.
6. Vivian (*change*) \_\_\_\_\_ her hair color so many times that no one can remember her natural color.
7. Our teacher (*correct, already*) \_\_\_\_\_ our tests, but she (*return, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ them yet.
8. A: Jose left two messages on my answering machine. I wonder what he wants.  
 B: Maybe he just wants to talk. He said he (*talk, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ to you in a long time.
9. My parents (*need*) \_\_\_\_\_ a new car for several months. They (*look*) \_\_\_\_\_ in lots of car showrooms, but they can't agree on what kind of car to buy.
10. A: (*you, have*) \_\_\_\_\_ your flu shot this year? I got mine last week.  
 B: No, but I will. I (*get*) \_\_\_\_\_ one every year for the past three years. My doctor says it's a good idea after the age of 50.

◇ PRACTICE 3. Review: irregular verbs. (Charts 2-6, 2-7, and 4-1)

Directions: Write each verb in the correct group.

✓ring	put	quit	have	shut	teach
✓hurt	drink	stick	swim	sink	pay
✓win	stand	upset	find	let	bring
feed	keep	meet	sing	catch	set
weep	sit	cut	buy	fight	think

**GROUP I.** Simple form, simple past, and past participle are the same.

Example: cost → cost → cost

<u>hurt</u>	<u>hurt</u>	<u>hurt</u>
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____

**GROUP III.** Simple past and past participle are the same.

Example: find → found → found

<u>win</u>	<u>won</u>	<u>won</u>
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____

**GROUP II.** The vowel changes: i → a → u.

Example: begin → began → begun

<u>ring</u>	<u>rang</u>	<u>rung</u>
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____

◇ PRACTICE 4. The present perfect. (Charts 4-1 → 4-3)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the present perfect of the verbs in the list and any words in parentheses. Use each verb only once.

<i>eat</i>	<i>look</i>	<i>save</i>	<i>✓use</i>
<i>give</i>	<i>play</i>	<i>sleep</i>	<i>wear</i>
<i>improve</i>	<i>rise</i>	<i>speak</i>	<i>win</i>

1. People have used leather to make shoes for hundreds of years.
2. The night is over. It's daytime now. The sun \_\_\_\_\_.
3. I (*never*) \_\_\_\_\_ golf, but I'd like to. It looks like fun.
4. Our team is great. They \_\_\_\_\_ all of their games so far this year. They haven't lost a single game.
5. Amy must be mad at me. She (*not*) \_\_\_\_\_ one word to me all evening. I wonder what I did to make her angry.
6. The cat must be sick. He (*not*) \_\_\_\_\_ any food for two days. We'd better call the vet.
7. Our teacher \_\_\_\_\_ us a lot of tests and quizzes since the beginning of the term.
8. We put a little money in our savings account every month. We want to buy a car, but we (*not*) \_\_\_\_\_ enough money yet. We'll have enough in a few more months.
9. (*you, ever*) \_\_\_\_\_ outdoors for an entire night? I mean without a tent, with nothing between you and the stars?
10. My aunt puts on a wig whenever she goes out, but I (*never*) \_\_\_\_\_ a wig in my whole life.
11. Paul's health \_\_\_\_\_ a lot since he started eating the right kinds of food, exercising regularly, and handling the stress in his life. He's never felt better.
12. I can't find my keys. I \_\_\_\_\_ everywhere—in all my pockets, in my briefcase, in my desk. They're gone.



◇ PRACTICE 5. The present perfect vs. the simple past. (Charts 4-3 and 4-4)

Directions: Write **F** if the activity or situation is finished and **C** if it continues to the present.

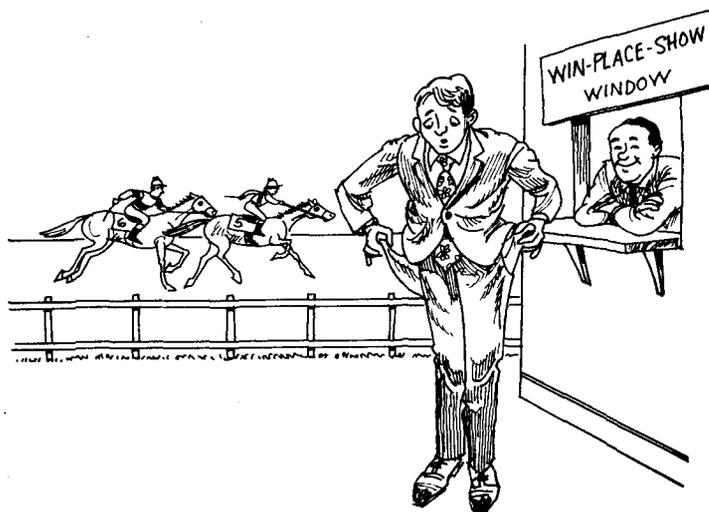
1.   C   My grandfather *has worked* since he was in high school.
2.   F   My grandmother *worked* for 20 years.
3.   F   I *finished* my work two hours ago.
4.   F   I *have already finished* my work, so I'm leaving the office.
5.        My father *has been* sick since yesterday.
6.        Jane *was* sick last Monday.
7.        Tom *has already left*. He's not here.
8.        Tom *left* five minutes ago.
9.        I *have known* Max Shell since we were children.
10.        The baby *has had* a fever since midnight. I think I'll call the doctor.
11.        The baby *had* a fever all night, but he's better now.
12.        I *have had* the flu several times in my lifetime.
13.        I *had* the flu last year.
14.        Sue *has had* the flu since last Friday.

◇ PRACTICE 6. Review: irregular verbs. (Charts 2-6, 2-7, and 4-1)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the simple past and the present perfect of the given verbs.

1. *begin*            I   began   a new diet and exercise program last week. I  
                           have begun   lots of new diet and exercise programs in my lifetime.
2. *bend*            I                    down to pick up my young son from his crib this morning. I  
                                                    down to pick him up many times since he was born.
3. *broadcast*      The radio                            news about a terrible earthquake in Iran  
                         last week. The radio                            news about Iran every day  
                         since the earthquake occurred there.
4. *catch*            I                            a cold last week. I                            a lot  
                         of colds in my lifetime.
5. *come*            A tourist                            into Mr. Nasser's jewelry store after lunch. A lot of  
                         tourists                            into his store since he opened it last year.
6. *cut*              I                            some flowers from my garden yesterday. I  
                                                    lots of flowers from my garden so far this summer.
7. *dig*              The workers                            a hole to fix the leak in the water pipe. They  
                                                    many holes to fix water leaks since the earthquake.

8. *draw* The artist \_\_\_\_\_ a picture of a sunset yesterday. She \_\_\_\_\_ many pictures of sunsets in her lifetime.
9. *feed* I \_\_\_\_\_ birds at the park yesterday. I \_\_\_\_\_ birds at the park every day since I lost my job.
10. *fight* We \_\_\_\_\_ a war last year. We \_\_\_\_\_ several wars since we became an independent country.
11. *forget* I \_\_\_\_\_ to turn off the stove after dinner. I \_\_\_\_\_ to turn off the stove a lot of times in my lifetime.
12. *hide* The children \_\_\_\_\_ in the basement yesterday. They \_\_\_\_\_ in the basement often since they discovered a secret place there.
13. *hit* The baseball player \_\_\_\_\_ the ball out of the stadium yesterday. He \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of home runs since he joined our team.
14. *hold* My husband \_\_\_\_\_ the door open for me when he entered the restaurant. He \_\_\_\_\_ a door open for me many times since we met each other.
15. *keep* During the discussion yesterday, I \_\_\_\_\_ my opinion to myself. I \_\_\_\_\_ my opinions to myself a lot of times in my lifetime.
16. *lead* Mary \_\_\_\_\_ the group discussion at the conference. She \_\_\_\_\_ group discussions many times since she started going to conferences.
17. *lose* Eddie \_\_\_\_\_ money at the racetrack yesterday. He \_\_\_\_\_ money at the racetrack lots of times in his lifetime.



18. *meet* I \_\_\_\_\_ two new people in my class yesterday. I \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of new people since I started going to school here.
19. *ride* I \_\_\_\_\_ the bus to work yesterday. I \_\_\_\_\_ the bus to work many times since I got a job downtown.
20. *ring* The doorbell \_\_\_\_\_ a few minutes ago. The doorbell \_\_\_\_\_ three times so far today.
21. *see* I \_\_\_\_\_ a good movie yesterday. I \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of good movies in my lifetime.
22. *steal* The fox \_\_\_\_\_ a chicken from the farmer's yard. The fox \_\_\_\_\_ three chickens so far this month.
23. *stick* I \_\_\_\_\_ a stamp on the corner of the envelope. I \_\_\_\_\_ lots of stamps on envelopes in my lifetime.
24. *sweep* I \_\_\_\_\_ the floor of my apartment yesterday. I \_\_\_\_\_ the floor of my apartment lots of times since I moved in.
25. *take* I \_\_\_\_\_ a test yesterday. I \_\_\_\_\_ lots of tests in my life as a student.
26. *upset* The Smith children \_\_\_\_\_ Mr. Jordan when they broke his window. Because they are careless and noisy, they \_\_\_\_\_ Mr. Jordan many times since they moved in next door.
27. *withdraw* I \_\_\_\_\_ some money from my bank account yesterday. I \_\_\_\_\_ more than three hundred dollars from my bank account so far this month.
28. *write* I \_\_\_\_\_ a letter to a friend last night. I \_\_\_\_\_ lots of letters to my friends in my lifetime.

◇ PRACTICE 7. The present perfect vs. the simple past. (Chart 4-4)

*Directions:* Fill in the blanks with the present perfect or simple past form of the verb.

1. I (*go*) went to Toronto last year for business. I (*go*) have gone there several times since then.
2. I (*live*) \_\_\_\_\_ in British Columbia from 1998 to 2000.
3. My friend, Joe, (*live*) \_\_\_\_\_ in Vancouver since 2000.

4. Before Joe (*move*) \_\_\_\_\_ to Vancouver, he (*work*) \_\_\_\_\_ on cruise ships as a cook.
5. My college roommate came from Ghana. We (*room*) \_\_\_\_\_ together for three years, and then she (*return*) \_\_\_\_\_ home.
6. My grandfather (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_ a great golfer for most of his life, but he (*die*) \_\_\_\_\_ last year.
7. My father (*play*) \_\_\_\_\_ competitive golf for most of his life and really enjoys it.
8. Since my husband began working the night shift, he (*sleep, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ very well.
9. When I lived in Alaska, the long daylight hours (*make*) \_\_\_\_\_ it difficult for me to sleep.
10. Since I was a child, I (*enjoy*) \_\_\_\_\_ collecting rocks from the beach.
11. When I was a child, my friends (*collect*) \_\_\_\_\_ rocks with me.

◇ PRACTICE 8. Review: irregular verbs. (Charts 2-6, 2-7, and 4-1)

*Directions:* This is a review of irregular verbs. Complete the sentences with the simple past or the present perfect of the given verbs and any words in parentheses.

1. *go*
  - a. I have gone to every play at the local theater so far this year.
  - b. My whole family went to the play last weekend.
2. *give*
  - a. Jane gave me a ride home from work today.
  - b. (*she, ever*) Has she ever given you a ride home since she started working in your department?
3. *fall*
  - a. I \_\_\_\_\_ down many times in my lifetime, but never hard enough to really hurt myself or break a bone.
  - b. Mike \_\_\_\_\_ down many times during football practice yesterday.
4. *break*
  - a. (*you, ever*) \_\_\_\_\_ a bone in your body?
  - b. I \_\_\_\_\_ my leg when I was ten years old. I jumped off the roof of my house.
5. *shake*
  - a. In my entire lifetime, I (*never*) \_\_\_\_\_ hands with a famous movie star.
  - b. In 2000, I \_\_\_\_\_ hands with a famous soccer player.

6. *hear* a. I \_\_\_\_\_ you practicing your trumpet late last night.  
 b. In fact, I \_\_\_\_\_ you practicing every night for two weeks.



7. *fly* a. Mike is a commercial airline pilot. Yesterday he \_\_\_\_\_ from Tokyo to Los Angeles.  
 b. Mike \_\_\_\_\_ to many places in the world since he became a pilot.
8. *wear* a. Carol really likes her new leather jacket. She \_\_\_\_\_ it every day since she bought it.  
 b. She \_\_\_\_\_ her new leather jacket to the opera last night.
9. *build* a. (*you, ever*) \_\_\_\_\_ a piece of furniture?  
 b. My daughter \_\_\_\_\_ a table in her woodworking class at the high school last year.
10. *teach* a. Ms. Kent \_\_\_\_\_ math at the local high school since 1995.  
 b. She \_\_\_\_\_ in Hungary last year on an exchange program.
11. *find* a. In your lifetime, (*you, ever*) \_\_\_\_\_ something really valuable?  
 b. My sister \_\_\_\_\_ a very expensive diamond ring in the park last year.
12. *drive* a. After I took Danny to school, I \_\_\_\_\_ straight to work.  
 b. I'm an experienced driver, but I (*never*) \_\_\_\_\_ a bus or a big truck.

13. *sing* a. I \_\_\_\_\_ a duet with my mother at the art benefit last night.  
b. We \_\_\_\_\_ together ever since I was a small child.
14. *run* a. I (*never*) \_\_\_\_\_ in a marathon race, and I don't intend to.  
b. I'm out of breath because I \_\_\_\_\_ all the way over here.
15. *tell* a. Last night, my brother \_\_\_\_\_ me a secret.  
b. He \_\_\_\_\_ me lots of secrets in his lifetime.
16. *stand* a. When I visited the United Nations last summer, I \_\_\_\_\_ in the main gallery and felt a great sense of history.  
b. Many great world leaders \_\_\_\_\_ there over the years.
17. *spend* a. I \_\_\_\_\_ all of my money at the mall yesterday.  
b. I don't have my rent money this month. I (*already*) \_\_\_\_\_ it on other things.
18. *make* a. I consider myself fortunate because I \_\_\_\_\_ many good friends in my lifetime.  
b. I \_\_\_\_\_ a terrible mistake last night. I forgot that my friend had invited me to his apartment for dinner.
19. *rise* a. The price of flour \_\_\_\_\_ a lot since February.  
b. When his name was announced, Jack \_\_\_\_\_ from his seat and walked to the podium to receive his award.
20. *feel* a. I \_\_\_\_\_ terrible yesterday, so I stayed in bed.  
b. I \_\_\_\_\_ terrible for a week now. I'd better see a doctor.

◇ PRACTICE 9. SINCE vs. FOR. (Chart 4-5)

Directions: Complete the sentences with *since* or *for*.

1. David has worked for the power company since 1999.
2. His brother has worked for the power company for five years.
3. I have known Peter Gow \_\_\_\_\_ September.
4. I've known his sister \_\_\_\_\_ three months.
5. Jonas has walked with a limp \_\_\_\_\_ many years.
6. He's had a bad leg \_\_\_\_\_ he was in the war.
7. Rachel hasn't been in class \_\_\_\_\_ last Tuesday.
8. She hasn't been in class \_\_\_\_\_ three days.

9. My vision has improved \_\_\_\_\_ I got new reading glasses.
10. I've had a toothache \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday morning.
11. I've had this toothache \_\_\_\_\_ thirty-six hours.
12. I've had a cold \_\_\_\_\_ almost a week.
13. Jane hasn't worked \_\_\_\_\_ last summer when the factory closed down.
14. I attended Jefferson Elementary School \_\_\_\_\_ six years.



◇ PRACTICE 10. Present perfect with SINCE and FOR. (Chart 4-5)

*Directions:* Rewrite the sentences using **since** or **for**.

1. I was in this class a month ago, and I am in this class now.  
→ *I have been in this class for a month.*
2. I knew my teacher in September, and I know her now.
3. Sam wanted a dog two years ago, and he wants one now.
4. Sara needed a new car last year, and she still needs one.
5. Our professor was sick a week ago, and she is still sick.
6. They live in Canada. They moved there in December.
7. I know Mrs. Brown. I met her in 1999.
8. Tom works at a fast-food restaurant. He got the job three weeks ago.

◇ PRACTICE 11. Present perfect and simple past with time words. (Charts 4-1 → 4-5)

*Directions:* Check all the phrases that correctly complete the sentences. Mark those that don't with a dash. The first item has been started for you.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. The Petersons took a trip                       | 2. The Petersons have been out of town |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> two weeks ago. | _____ the day before yesterday.        |
| <input type="checkbox"/> since yesterday.          | _____ one month ago.                   |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> yesterday.     | _____ since Friday.                    |
| _____ last year.                                   | _____ last week.                       |
| _____ several months ago.                          | _____ since last week.                 |
| _____ since last month.                            | _____ in April last year.              |
| _____ the day before yesterday.                    | _____ several weeks ago.               |
| _____ in March.                                    | _____ for several weeks.               |

◇ PRACTICE 12. SINCE-clauses. (Chart 4-5)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses. Use the present perfect or the simple past.

1. Carol and I are old friends. I (*know*) have known her since I (*be*) was a freshman in high school.
2. Maria (*have*) \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of problems since she (*come*) \_\_\_\_\_ to this country.
3. I (*experience, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ any problems since I (*come*) \_\_\_\_\_ here.
4. Since the semester (*begin*) \_\_\_\_\_, our teacher (*give*) \_\_\_\_\_ four tests.
5. Mike (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_ in school since he (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_ six years old.
6. My mother (*be, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ in school since she (*graduate*) \_\_\_\_\_ from college in 1978.
7. Since I (*start*) \_\_\_\_\_ doing this exercise, I (*complete*) \_\_\_\_\_ six sentences.
8. Since soccer season (*begin*) \_\_\_\_\_, our son (*have, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ much free time.
9. Our long-distance phone calls (*become*) \_\_\_\_\_ less expensive since we (*change*) \_\_\_\_\_ to a different telephone company.
10. Our phone bill (*rise*) \_\_\_\_\_ since we (*buy*) \_\_\_\_\_ a cell phone.

◇ PRACTICE 13. The present perfect progressive. (Charts 4-6 and 4-7)

Directions: Use the given information to complete the dialogues. Use the present perfect progressive.

1. Eric is studying. He started to **study** at seven o'clock. It is now nine o'clock.  
 A: How long has Eric been studying ?  
 B: He 's been studying for two hours.
2. Kathy is working at the computer. She began to **work** at the computer at two o'clock. It is now three o'clock.  
 A: How long has Kathy been working at the computer ?  
 B: She 's been working since two o'clock.

3. It began to **rain** two days ago. It is still raining.  
 A: How long \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 B: It \_\_\_\_\_ for \_\_\_\_\_ .
4. Liz is reading. She began to **read** at ten o'clock. It is now ten-thirty.  
 A: How long \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 B: She \_\_\_\_\_ for \_\_\_\_\_ .
5. Boris began to **study** English in 2001. He is still studying English.  
 A: How long \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 B: He \_\_\_\_\_ since \_\_\_\_\_ .
6. Three months ago, Nicole started to **work** at the Silk Road Clothing Store.  
 A: How long \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 B: She \_\_\_\_\_ for \_\_\_\_\_ .
7. Ms. Rice started to **teach** at this school in September 2001.  
 A: How long \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 B: She \_\_\_\_\_ since \_\_\_\_\_ .
8. Mr. Fisher **drives** a Chevy. He bought it twelve years ago.  
 A: How long \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 B: He \_\_\_\_\_ for \_\_\_\_\_ .
9. Mrs. Taylor is **waiting** to see her doctor. She arrived at the waiting room at two o'clock. It is now three-thirty.  
 A: How long \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 B: She \_\_\_\_\_ for \_\_\_\_\_ .
10. Ted and Erica started to **play** tennis at two o'clock. It's now four-thirty.  
 A: How long \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 B: They \_\_\_\_\_ since \_\_\_\_\_ .

◇ PRACTICE 14. The present perfect progressive. (Charts 4-6 and 4-7)

*Directions:* Choose the correct verb form.

1. Where have you been? I \_\_\_\_\_ for you for over an hour!  
 A. am waiting                      (B.) have been waiting
2. I'm exhausted! I \_\_\_\_\_ for the last eight hours without a break.  
 A. am working                      B. have been working
3. Shhh! Susan \_\_\_\_\_. Let's not make any noise. We don't want to wake her up.  
 A. is sleeping                      B. has been sleeping

4. Annie, go upstairs and wake your brother up. He \_\_\_\_\_ for over ten hours. He has chores to do.  
A. is sleeping                      B. has been sleeping
5. Erin has never gone camping. She \_\_\_\_\_ in a tent.  
A. has never slept                  B. has never been sleeping
6. This is a great shirt! I \_\_\_\_\_ it at least a dozen times, and it still looks like new.  
A. have washed                      B. have been washing
7. Aren't you about finished with the dishes? You \_\_\_\_\_ dishes for thirty minutes or more. How long can it take to wash dishes?  
A. have washed                      B. have been washing
8. We \_\_\_\_\_ to the Steak House restaurant many times. The food is excellent.  
A. have gone                          B. have been going

◇ PRACTICE 15. ALREADY, STILL, YET, ANYMORE. (Chart 4-8)

*Directions:* Choose the correct completion.

1. I haven't finished my homework yet. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ working on it.  
A. already      **B. still**      C. yet      D. anymore
2. *Top Rock Videos* used to be my favorite TV show, but I have stopped watching it. I don't watch it \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. already      B. still      C. yet      D. anymore
3. I don't have to take any more math classes. I've \_\_\_\_\_ taken all the required courses.  
A. already      B. still      C. yet      D. anymore
4. I used to nearly choke in an airplane because of all the smoke in the cabin. But smoking is now forbidden by law on all domestic flights. You can't smoke in an airplane \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. already      B. still      C. yet      D. anymore
5. I'm not quite ready to leave. I haven't finished packing my suitcase \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. already      B. still      C. yet      D. anymore
6. "Don't you have a class at two?"  
"Yeah, why?"  
"Look at your watch."  
"Oh my gosh, it's \_\_\_\_\_ past two! Bye!"  
A. already      B. still      C. yet      D. anymore
7. Don't sit there! I painted that chair yesterday, and the paint isn't completely dry \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. already      B. still      C. yet      D. anymore
8. 1448 South 45th Street is Joe's old address. He doesn't live there \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. already      B. still      C. yet      D. anymore
9. Mr. Wood is eighty-eight years old, but he \_\_\_\_\_ goes into his office every day.  
A. already      B. still      C. yet      D. anymore

10. "Are you going to drive to Woodville with us for the street festival Saturday?"  
"I don't know. I might. I haven't made up my mind \_\_\_\_\_."  
A. already      B. still      C. yet      D. anymore

◇ PRACTICE 16. ALREADY, STILL, YET, ANYMORE. (Chart 4-8)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with *already*, *yet*, *still*, or *anymore*.

1. A: Has Dennis graduated yet ?  
B: No. He's still in school.
2. A: I'm hungry. How about you? Did you eat \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
B: No. Did you?  
A: Nope. Let's go eat lunch.
3. A: Do you \_\_\_\_\_ live on Fifth Street?  
B: Not anymore. I moved.
4. A: Has Karen found a new apartment \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
B: Not that I know of. She's still living on Elm Street.
5. A: Do you \_\_\_\_\_ love me?  
B: Of course I do! I love you very much.
6. A: Is the baby \_\_\_\_\_ sleeping?  
B: Yes. Shhh. We don't want to wake him up.
7. A: Is the baby asleep \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
B: I think so. I don't hear anything from the nursery. I put him down for his nap fifteen minutes ago, so I'm pretty sure he's asleep by now.
8. It started raining an hour ago. We can't go for a walk because it's \_\_\_\_\_ raining. I hope it stops soon.
9. Look! The rain has stopped. It isn't raining \_\_\_\_\_. Let's go for a walk.
10. I didn't understand this chapter in my biology book when I read it yesterday. Since then, I've read it three more times, but I \_\_\_\_\_ don't understand it.
11. A: Is Anne home \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
B: No, she isn't. I'm getting worried. She was supposed to be home at eight. It's almost nine, and she \_\_\_\_\_ isn't here.  
A: Don't worry. She'll probably be here any minute.

12. A: I'm going to have another sandwich.  
 B: What? You just ate three sandwiches!  
 A: I know, but I'm not full \_\_\_\_\_. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ hungry.
13. A: Would you like to see today's newspaper?  
 B: Thanks, but I've \_\_\_\_\_ read it.
14. A: Did you try to call Peter again?  
 B: Yes, but the line was \_\_\_\_\_ busy. I'll try again in a few minutes.
15. A: How does Dick like his job at the cafe?  
 B: He doesn't work there \_\_\_\_\_. He found a new job.
16. A: Is your younger sister a college student?  
 B: No. She's \_\_\_\_\_ in high school.
17. A: When are you going to make Tommy's birthday cake?  
 B: I've \_\_\_\_\_ made it.
18. A: How did you do on your calculus exam?  
 B: I haven't taken it \_\_\_\_\_. The exam is tomorrow. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ studying for it.

◇ PRACTICE 17. Verb tense review. (Chapters 1 → 4)

*Directions:* Read the conversation between Ann and Ben. Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses.

BEN: I (*need*) need<sub>1</sub> to find a job. Where (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_<sub>2</sub> a good place for a student to work?

ANN: (*you, work, ever*) \_\_\_\_\_<sub>3</sub> at a restaurant?

BEN: Yes. I (*work*) \_\_\_\_\_<sub>4</sub> at several restaurants. I (*have*) \_\_\_\_\_<sub>5</sub> a job as a dishwasher last fall.



ANN: Where?

BEN: At The Bistro, a little cafe on First Street.

ANN: How long (*you, work*) \_\_\_\_\_ there?  
6

BEN: For two months.

ANN: I (*work*) \_\_\_\_\_ in a lot of restaurants, but I (*have, never*)  
7

\_\_\_\_\_ a dishwashing job. How (*you, like*)  
8

\_\_\_\_\_ your job as a dishwasher?  
9

BEN: I (*like, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ it very much. It (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_ hard  
10 11  
work for low pay.

ANN: Where (*you, work*) \_\_\_\_\_ at present?  
12

BEN: I (*have, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ a job right now. I (*have, not*)  
13

\_\_\_\_\_ a job since I (*quit*) \_\_\_\_\_ the dishwashing one.  
14 15

ANN: (*you, look*) \_\_\_\_\_ for a part-time or a full-time job?  
16

BEN: A part-time job, maybe twenty hours a week.

ANN: I (*go*) \_\_\_\_\_ to Al's Place tomorrow to see about a job. The restaurant  
17

(*look*) \_\_\_\_\_ for help. Why don't you come along with me?  
18

BEN: Thanks. I think I (*do*) \_\_\_\_\_ that. I (*look, never*)  
19

\_\_\_\_\_ for a job at Al's Place before. Maybe the pay (*be*)  
20

\_\_\_\_\_ better than at The Bistro.  
21

ANN: I (*know, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ . We (*find*) \_\_\_\_\_ out when  
22 23

we (*go*) \_\_\_\_\_ there tomorrow.  
24

◇ PRACTICE 18. The present perfect vs. the past perfect. (Chart 4-9)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with the word in parentheses. Use the present perfect or the past perfect.

1. I am not hungry. I (*eat, already*) have already eaten .

2. I was not hungry. I (*eat, already*) had already eaten .

3. It's ten o'clock. I (*finish, already*) \_\_\_\_\_ my  
homework, so I'm going to go to bed.

4. Last night I went to bed at ten o'clock. I (*finish, already*) \_\_\_\_\_ my homework.
5. By the time\* I went to bed last night, I (*finish, already*) \_\_\_\_\_ my homework.
6. Sam's parties usually start late, so I was surprised that his party (*start, already*) \_\_\_\_\_ by the time I got there.
7. Look at all the people who are here! The party (*start, already*) \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Carol missed her plane yesterday because of a traffic jam on her way to the airport. By the time she got to the airport, her plane (*leave, already*) \_\_\_\_\_.

◇ PRACTICE 19. The past progressive vs. the past perfect. (Chart 4-9)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses. Use the past progressive or the past perfect.

1. When I left for school this morning, it (*rain*) was raining, so I used my umbrella.
2. By the time class was over this morning, the rain (*stop*) had stopped, so I didn't need my umbrella anymore.
3. Last night I started to study at 7:30. Dick came at 7:35. I (*study*) \_\_\_\_\_ when Dick came.
4. Last night I started to study at 7:30. I finished studying at 9:00. Dan came at 9:30. By the time Dan came, I (*finish*) \_\_\_\_\_ my homework.
5. When I walked into the kitchen after dinner last night, my wife (*wash*) \_\_\_\_\_ the dishes, so I picked up a dish towel to help her.
6. By the time I walked into the kitchen after dinner tonight, my husband (*wash, already*) \_\_\_\_\_ the dishes and (*put*) \_\_\_\_\_ them away.

\_\_\_\_\_   
 \*by the time = before.

◇ PRACTICE 20. The past perfect. (Chart 4-9)

*Directions:* Read the passage and underline the past perfect verbs and their modifying adverbs **always** and **never**. Then complete the sentences that follow the passage. Use the past perfect in your completions.

(1) Alan Green got married for the first time at age 49. His new life is very different because he has had to change many old habits. For example, before his marriage, he had always watched TV during dinner, but his wife likes to talk at dinnertime, so now the TV is off.

(2) Until his marriage, Alan had always read the front page of the newspaper first, but his wife likes to read the front page first, too, so now Alan reads the sports page first.

(3) Until he got married, he had never let anyone else choose the radio station in the car. He had always listened to exactly what he wanted to listen to. But his wife likes to choose what's on the radio when she's in the car with him.

(4) When he was a bachelor, Alan had always left his dirty socks on the floor. Now he picks them up and puts them in the laundry basket.

(5) Before he was married, he'd never put the cap back on the toothpaste. He left it off. His wife prefers to have the cap back on. She also squeezes from the bottom of the tube, and Alan doesn't. Alan can't remember to put the cap back on, so now they have separate toothpaste tubes.

(6) Alan had never shared the TV remote control with anyone before he got married. He still likes to have control of the TV remote, but he doesn't say anything when his wife uses it.

*Complete these sentences.*

1. Until Alan got married, he had always watched TV during dinner.
2. Before his marriage, he \_\_\_\_\_ the front page of the newspaper first.
3. Prior to getting married, he \_\_\_\_\_ other people choose the station on his car radio.
4. Until he began married life, he \_\_\_\_\_ his dirty socks on the floor.
5. Before getting married, he \_\_\_\_\_ the toothpaste cap back on.
6. Until he had a wife who also liked to use the TV remote control, he \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ the remote with anyone.

◇ PRACTICE 21. Verb tense review. (Chapters 2 and 4)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses.

1. A: (*you, enjoy*) Did you enjoy the concert last night?  
B: Very much. I (*go, not*) hadn't gone to a concert in a long time.
2. A: (*you, see*) \_\_\_\_\_ John yesterday?  
B: Yes, I did. It (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_ good to see him again. I (*see, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ him in a long time.
3. A: Hi, Jim! It's good to see you again. I (*see, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ you in weeks.  
B: Hi, Sue! It (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_ good to see you again, too. I (*see, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ you since the end of last semester. How's everything going?
4. A: (*you, get*) \_\_\_\_\_ to class on time yesterday morning?  
B: No. By the time I (*get*) \_\_\_\_\_ there, it (*begin, already*) \_\_\_\_\_.
5. A: I called Ana, but I couldn't talk to her.  
B: Why not?  
A: She (*go, already*) \_\_\_\_\_ to bed, and her sister didn't want to wake her up for a phone call.
6. A: You're a wonderful artist. I love your watercolor paintings of the river valley.  
B: Thank you. I (*paint*) \_\_\_\_\_ the same valley many times because it has such interesting light at different times of the day.
7. A: I had a scare yesterday. I (*watch*) \_\_\_\_\_ the news when a tornado warning flashed on the screen.  
B: What (*you, do*) \_\_\_\_\_?  
A: I (*run*) \_\_\_\_\_ to the basement of the house.
8. A: (*you, go*) \_\_\_\_\_ out to eat last night?  
B: No. By the time I (*get*) \_\_\_\_\_ home, my husband (*make, already*) \_\_\_\_\_ dinner for us.  
A: How (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_ it?  
B: Terrific! We (*have*) \_\_\_\_\_ chicken, rice, and a salad. While we (*eat*) \_\_\_\_\_, George Drake (*stop*) \_\_\_\_\_ by to visit us, so we (*invite*) \_\_\_\_\_ him to join us for dinner.

◇ PRACTICE 22. Error analysis. (Chapters 1 → 4)

*Directions:* Correct the errors.

1. Where have you been? I've <sup>been</sup> ^ waiting for you for an hour.
2. Anna have been a soccer fan since a long time.
3. Since I have been a child, I liked to solve puzzles.
4. Have you ever want to travel around the world?
5. The family is at the hospital since they hear about the accident.
6. My sister is only 30 years old, but her hair has began to turn gray.
7. Jake has been working as a volunteer at the children's hospital several times.
8. Steve has worn his black suit only once since he has bought it.
9. My cousin is studying for medical school exams since last month.
10. The students are hearing rumors about their teacher's engagement for a week.
11. I don't know the results of my medical tests already. I'll find out soon.
12. Jean has been try to get online to go Internet shopping for an hour.
13. By the time Michelle unlocked the door and got into her apartment, the phone already stopped ringing.



# CHAPTER 5

## Asking Questions

### ◇ PRACTICE 1. Preview: asking questions. (Charts 5-1 → 5-13)

*Directions:* Pretend that you are interviewing Anna, a member of your class. Write your name on the first line, and then complete the dialogue with appropriate questions.

1. ME: Hi. My name is \_\_\_\_\_ . Our teacher has asked me to interview you so that I can practice asking questions. Could I ask you a few questions about yourself?  
ANNA: Sure.
2. ME: Well, first of all, what is your name \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
ANNA: Anna.
3. ME: \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
ANNA: Yes, that's my first name.
4. ME: \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
ANNA: Polanski.
5. ME: \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
ANNA: P-O-L-A-N-S-K-I.  
ME: Let me make sure I have that right. Your first name is Anna, A-N-N-A. And your last name is Polanski, P-O-L-A-N-S-K-I. Right?  
ANNA: That's right.
6. ME: \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
ANNA: Poland.
7. ME: \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
ANNA: Warsaw. My hometown is Warsaw.
8. ME: \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
ANNA: Two weeks ago. I came to this country two weeks ago.
9. ME: \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
ANNA: To study. I came here because I wanted to study at this school.
10. ME: \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
ANNA: Biochemistry.

11. ME: \_\_\_\_\_?  
ANNA: I'm going to stay here for four years, or until I graduate.
12. ME: \_\_\_\_\_?  
ANNA: I'm living at my aunt and uncle's house.
13. ME: \_\_\_\_\_?  
ANNA: No, it isn't far from school.
14. ME: \_\_\_\_\_?  
ANNA: I'd say about ten blocks.
15. ME: \_\_\_\_\_?  
ANNA: Sometimes I take the bus, but usually I walk.
16. ME: You're lucky. I live far away from the school, so it takes me a long time to get here every day. But that's my only big complaint about living here. Otherwise, I like going to this school a lot. \_\_\_\_\_?  
ANNA: Very much.  
ME: Well, thanks for the interview. I think I have enough information for the assignment. Nice to meet you.  
ANNA: Nice to meet you, too.

◇ PRACTICE 2. Yes/no questions. (Chart 5-1)\*

*Directions:* Write the correct question form. Use the information in B's response to create each question.

		helping verb	subject	main verb	rest of sentence
1. SIMPLE PRESENT	A:	<u>Do</u>	<u>you</u>	<u>like</u>	<u>coffee?</u>
	B:	Yes, I like coffee.			
2. SIMPLE PRESENT	A:	_____	_____	_____	_____
	B:	Yes, Tom likes coffee.			
3. PRESENT PROGRESSIVE	A:	_____	_____	_____	_____
	B:	Yes, Ann is watching TV.			
4. PRESENT PROGRESSIVE	A:	_____	_____	_____	_____
	B:	Yes, I'm having lunch with Rob.			

\**Question forms* of tenses and modals can be found in the following charts in the *FEG 3e* student book:

Simple present and present progressive: Chart 1-2, p. 4

Simple past: Chart 2-2, p. 26

Past progressive: Chart 2-9, p. 39

Simple future: Charts 3-2, p. 56, and 3-3, p. 59

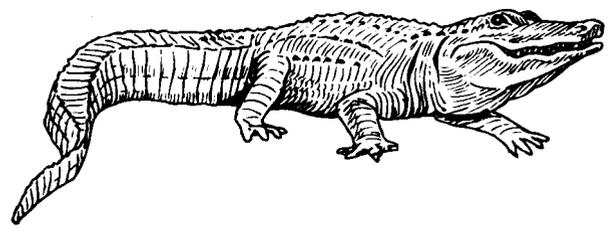
Modal *can*: Chart 7-2, p. 191

		helping verb	subject	main verb	rest of sentence
5. SIMPLE PAST	A:	_____	_____	_____	_____
	B:	Yes, Sara walked to school.			
		helping verb	subject	main verb	rest of sentence
6. PAST PROGRESSIVE	A:	_____	_____	_____	_____
	B:	Yes, Ann was taking a nap.			
		helping verb	subject	main verb	rest of sentence
7. SIMPLE FUTURE	A:	_____	_____	_____	_____
	B:	Yes, Ted will come to the meeting.			
		helping verb	subject	main verb	rest of sentence
8. MODAL: CAN	A:	_____	_____	_____	_____
	B:	Yes, Rita can ride a bicycle.			
		form of <i>be</i>	subject		rest of sentence
9. MAIN VERB: BE SIMPLE PRESENT	A:	_____	_____	_____	_____
	B:	Yes, Ann is a good artist.			
		form of <i>be</i>	subject		rest of sentence
10. MAIN VERB: BE SIMPLE PAST	A:	_____	_____	_____	_____
	B:	Yes, I was at the wedding.			

◇ PRACTICE 3. Yes/no questions and short answers. (Charts 5-1 and 5-2)

Directions: Complete Speaker A's questions with *do*, *does*, *is*, or *are*. Complete Speaker B's short answers.

- A: I need a flashlight. Do you have one?  
B: No, I don't.
- A: \_\_\_\_\_ Africa the largest continent?  
B: No, \_\_\_\_\_. Asia is.
- A: \_\_\_\_\_ ants eat other insects?  
B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_.
- A: \_\_\_\_\_ you going to be in class tomorrow?  
B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_.
- A: \_\_\_\_\_ all snakebites poisonous?  
B: No, \_\_\_\_\_.
- A: \_\_\_\_\_ crocodiles lay eggs?  
B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_.



7. A: \_\_\_\_\_ it raining right now?  
B: No, \_\_\_\_\_.
8. A: \_\_\_\_\_ that pen belong to you?  
B: No, \_\_\_\_\_.
9. A: \_\_\_\_\_ you working on English grammar right now?  
B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_.
10. A: Mercury is a liquid metal used in thermometers. \_\_\_\_\_ mercury have a boiling point?  
B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_. It boils at 356.58°C.

◇ PRACTICE 4. Yes/no questions and short answers. (Charts 5-1 and 5-2)

Directions: Answer the questions honestly. Use short answers.

1. Do you know how to swim? Yes, I do. OR No, I don't.
2. Does your mother speak Chinese? \_\_\_\_\_
3. Are you going downtown tomorrow? \_\_\_\_\_
4. Will you be in class tomorrow? \_\_\_\_\_
5. Can you play the guitar? \_\_\_\_\_
6. Do you know how to play the violin? \_\_\_\_\_
7. Are we going to have a test on grammar tomorrow? \_\_\_\_\_
8. Can turtles swim? \_\_\_\_\_
9. Should people smoke cigarettes? \_\_\_\_\_
10. Did you watch TV last night? \_\_\_\_\_
11. Do you have a bicycle? \_\_\_\_\_
12. Will class begin on time tomorrow? \_\_\_\_\_
13. Does class begin on time every day? \_\_\_\_\_
14. Were all of the students in class yesterday? \_\_\_\_\_
15. Should the teacher speak more slowly? \_\_\_\_\_
16. Is English grammar easy? \_\_\_\_\_
17. Was this exercise difficult? \_\_\_\_\_

◇ PRACTICE 5. Yes/no questions and short answers. (Charts 5-1 and 5-2)

Directions: Complete Speaker A's questions. Complete Speaker B's short answers.

1. A: Does Jane eat lunch at the cafeteria every day?  
B: Yes, she does. (Jane eats lunch at the cafeteria every day.)
2. A: Do your parents live nearby?  
B: No, \_\_\_\_\_ (My parents don't live nearby.)
3. A: \_\_\_\_\_ to class yesterday?  
B: No, \_\_\_\_\_ (Ann and Jim didn't come to class yesterday.)
4. A: \_\_\_\_\_ in your grammar workbook?  
B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ (I'm writing in my grammar workbook.)
5. A: \_\_\_\_\_ home last night?  
B: No, \_\_\_\_\_ (I wasn't home last night.)
6. A: \_\_\_\_\_ in your astronomy class?  
B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ (Tim Wilson is in my astronomy class.)
7. A: \_\_\_\_\_ her work before she goes to bed?  
B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ (Karen will finish her work before she goes to bed.)
8. A: \_\_\_\_\_ under water?  
B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ (Some birds can swim under water.)
9. A: \_\_\_\_\_ at your homework for tomorrow yet?  
B: No, \_\_\_\_\_ (I haven't looked at my homework for tomorrow yet.)

◇ PRACTICE 6. Yes/no and information questions. (Charts 5-1 and 5-2)

Directions: Complete the dialogues by writing Speaker A's questions. Write Ø if no word is needed in a space.

1. (question word) helping verb subject main verb rest of sentence  
A: Ø Did you hear the news yesterday?  
B: Yes, I did. (I heard the news yesterday.)
2. (question word) helping verb subject main verb rest of sentence  
A: When did you hear the news?  
B: Yesterday. (I heard the news yesterday.)
3. (question word) helping verb subject main verb rest of sentence  
A: Ø \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_  
B: Yes, he is. (Eric is reading today's paper.)
4. (question word) helping verb subject main verb rest of sentence  
A: \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_ Ø  
B: Today's paper. (Eric is reading today's paper.)

5. (question word) helping verb subject main verb rest of sentence  
 A: \_\_\_\_\_  
 B: Yes, I did. (I found my wallet.)
6. (question word) helping verb subject main verb rest of sentence  
 A: \_\_\_\_\_  
 B: On the floor of the car. (I found my wallet on the floor of the car.)
7. (question word) helping verb subject main verb rest of sentence  
 A: \_\_\_\_\_  
 B: Because he enjoys the exercise. (Mr. Li walks to work because he enjoys the exercise.)
8. (question word) helping verb subject main verb rest of sentence  
 A: \_\_\_\_\_  
 B: Yes, he does. (Mr. Li walks to work.)
9. (question word) helping verb subject main verb rest of sentence  
 A: \_\_\_\_\_  
 B: Yes, she will. (Ms. Cook will return to her office at one o'clock.)
10. (question word) helping verb subject main verb rest of sentence  
 A: \_\_\_\_\_  
 B: At one o'clock. (Ms. Cook will return to her office at one o'clock.)
11. (question word) form of *be* subject rest of sentence  
 A: \_\_\_\_\_  
 B: Yes, it is. (The orange juice is in the refrigerator.)
12. (question word) form of *be* subject rest of sentence  
 A: \_\_\_\_\_  
 B: In the refrigerator. (The orange juice is in the refrigerator.)

◇ PRACTICE 7. Information questions. (Charts 5-1 → 5-3)

*Directions:* Create questions for the given answers. Use the information in parentheses. Use **when**, **what time**, **where**, or **why**. Pay special attention to the word order in the questions.

1. A: What time (When) do the fireworks start this evening?  
 B: 9:30. (The fireworks start at 9:30 this evening.)
2. A: \_\_\_\_\_ to see the principal?  
 B: Because I need to get his signature on this application form. (I'm waiting to see the principal because I need to get his signature on this application form.)
3. A: \_\_\_\_\_ her new job?  
 B: Next Monday morning. (Rachel starts her new job next Monday morning.)

4. A: \_\_\_\_\_ home for work?

B: Usually around 6:00. (I usually leave home for work around 6:00.)

5. A: \_\_\_\_\_ to the meeting?

B: Because I fell asleep after dinner and didn't wake up until 9:00. (I didn't get to the meeting because I fell asleep after dinner and didn't wake up until 9:00.)

6. A: \_\_\_\_\_ razor blades?

B: At many different kinds of stores. (You can find razor blades at many different kinds of stores.)

7. A: \_\_\_\_\_ for home?

B: Next Saturday. (I'm leaving for home next Saturday.)

8. A: \_\_\_\_\_ to finish this project?

B: Next month. (I expect to finish this project next month.)

9. A: \_\_\_\_\_ ?

B: To Mars. (The spaceship will go to Mars.)

10. A: \_\_\_\_\_ Chinese?

B: In Germany. (I studied Chinese in Germany.)

A: \_\_\_\_\_ Chinese in Germany?

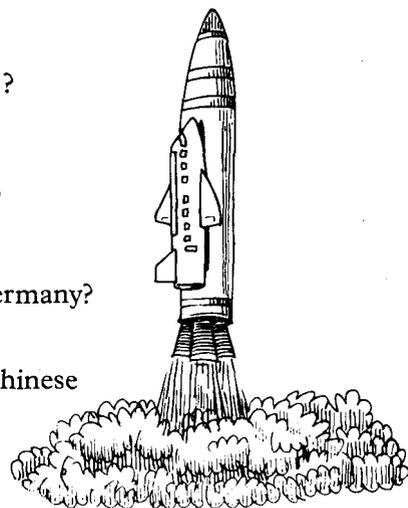
B: Because there is a good Chinese language school there.

(I studied Chinese in Germany because there is a good Chinese language school there.)

A: \_\_\_\_\_ to China to study Chinese?

B: Because I had a scholarship to study in Germany.

(I didn't go to China to study Chinese because I had a scholarship to study in Germany.)



◇ PRACTICE 8. Information questions. (Charts 5-1 → 5-3)

Directions: Create information questions. Use *where*, *why*, *when*, or *what time*.

1. A: When/What time did you get up this morning?

B: At 7:30. (I got up at 7:30 this morning.)

2. A: \_\_\_\_\_ today?

B: At the cafeteria. (I ate lunch at the cafeteria today.)

3. A: \_\_\_\_\_ lunch?

B: At 12:15. (I ate lunch at 12:15.)

4. A: \_\_\_\_\_ at the cafeteria?

B: Because the food is good. (I eat lunch at the cafeteria because the food is good.)

5. A: \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
B: In Chicago. (My aunt and uncle live in Chicago.)
6. A: \_\_\_\_\_ your aunt and uncle?  
B: Next week. (I'm going to visit my aunt and uncle next week.)
7. A: \_\_\_\_\_ tonight?  
B: Around six. (I'll get home around six tonight.)
8. A: \_\_\_\_\_ tonight?  
B: At the library. (George is going to study at the library tonight.)
9. A: \_\_\_\_\_ at the library?  
B: Because it's quiet. (George studies at the library because it's quiet.)
10. A: \_\_\_\_\_ a bus?  
B: At that corner. (You can catch a bus at that corner.)
11. A: \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
B: Ten o'clock. (I have to leave at ten o'clock.)
12. A: \_\_\_\_\_ in 1998?  
B: In Japan. (I was living in Japan in 1998.)
13. A: \_\_\_\_\_ in their books?  
B: Because they're working on an exercise. (The students are writing in their books because they're working on an exercise.)
14. A: \_\_\_\_\_ you?  
B: Around seven. (You should call me around seven.)
15. A: \_\_\_\_\_ absent?  
B: Because she's flying her kite in the park. (Yoko is absent because she's flying her kite in the park.)

◇ PRACTICE 9. Information questions with WHY. (Charts 5-1 → 5-3)

*Directions:* Practice questions with **why**.

1. A: I was absent from class yesterday.  
B: Why were you absent from class yesterday?
2. A: I can't come to your party this weekend.  
B: Why \_\_\_\_\_ to my party this weekend?
3. A: Tom went downtown yesterday.  
B: Why \_\_\_\_\_ downtown yesterday?

4. A: Ann won't be in class tomorrow.  
B: Why \_\_\_\_\_ in class tomorrow?
5. A: I need to go to the drugstore.  
B: Why \_\_\_\_\_ to go to the drugstore?
6. A: I'm going to buy a new dictionary.  
B: Why \_\_\_\_\_ a new dictionary?
7. A: I didn't do my homework last night.  
B: Why \_\_\_\_\_ your homework last night?
8. A: Anita is not coming to class tomorrow.  
B: Why \_\_\_\_\_ to class tomorrow?
9. A: Joe and I are going to the bank after class.  
B: Why \_\_\_\_\_ to the bank after class?
10. A: I didn't eat breakfast this morning  
B: Why \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast this morning?
11. A: Jack took a taxi to school today.  
B: Why \_\_\_\_\_ a taxi to school today?
12. A: I don't like the weather in this city.  
B: Why \_\_\_\_\_ the weather in this city?

◇ PRACTICE 10. WHO, WHO(M), and WHAT. (Chart 5-4)

Directions: Create questions with *who*, *who(m)*, and *what*.

QUESTION	ANSWER
1. <u>Who knows Tom?</u>	<b>Someone</b> knows Tom.
2. <u>Who(m) does Tom know?</u>	Tom knows <b>someone</b> .
3. _____	<b>Someone</b> will help us.
4. _____	I will ask <b>someone</b> .
5. _____	Eric is talking to <b>someone</b> on the phone.
6. _____	<b>Someone</b> is knocking on the door.
7. _____	<b>Something</b> surprised them.
8. _____	Jack said <b>something</b> .
9. _____	Sue talked about <b>something</b> .
10. _____	Ann talked about <b>someone</b> .

◇ PRACTICE 11. WHO, WHO(M), and WHAT. (Chart 5-4)

Directions: Complete the dialogues by creating questions. Use the information in the long answer in parentheses to create each question.

1. A: Who taught you to play chess?  
B: My mother. (My mother taught me to play chess.)
2. A: \_\_\_\_\_?  
B: A bank robbery. (Robert saw a bank robbery.)
3. A: \_\_\_\_\_ a good look at the bank robber?  
B: Robert did. (Robert got a good look at the bank robber.)
4. A: \_\_\_\_\_?  
B: A toy for my brother's children. (I'm making a toy for my brother's children.)
5. A: \_\_\_\_\_ to?  
B: Joe. (That calculator belongs to Joe.)
6. A: \_\_\_\_\_ in your pocket?  
B: A bag of candy. (I have a bag of candy in my pocket.)
7. A: \_\_\_\_\_?  
B: A mouse. (The cat killed a mouse.)
8. A: \_\_\_\_\_?  
B: Curiosity. (Curiosity killed the cat.★)
9. A: \_\_\_\_\_ an apple fall to the ground from a tree?  
B: Gravity. (Gravity makes an apple fall to the ground from a tree.)
10. A: \_\_\_\_\_ on the envelope?  
B: My sister. (My sister wrote a note on the envelope.)
11. A: \_\_\_\_\_ from?  
B: My father. (I got a letter from my father.)



★Curiosity is the desire to learn about something. "Curiosity killed the cat" is an English saying that means we can get into trouble when we want to know too much about something that doesn't really concern us.

◇ PRACTICE 12. Asking for the meaning of a word. (Charts 5-3 and 5-4)

Directions: Ask for the meaning of the words in *italics*. Complete the dialogue.

1. Captain Cook *explored* many islands in the Pacific Ocean.

A: What does "explore" mean?

B: It means "to go to a new place and find out about it."

2. Alice put her hand *underneath* the blanket.

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: It means \_\_\_\_\_

3. How many times a minute do people *blink*?

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: It means \_\_\_\_\_

4. The food was absolutely *delicious*!

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: It means \_\_\_\_\_

◇ PRACTICE 13. WHAT + a form of DO. (Chart 5-6)

Directions: Use the information in parentheses to make questions with *what* + a form of *do* to complete each dialogue. Use the same verb tense or modal that is used in the parentheses.

1. A: What is Alex doing \_\_\_\_\_ ?

B: Watching a movie on TV. (Alex is watching a movie on TV.)

2. A: What should I do \_\_\_\_\_ if someone calls while you're out?

B: Just take a message. (You should take a message if someone calls while I'm out.)

3. A: \_\_\_\_\_ ?

B: They explore space. (Astronauts explore space.)

4. A: \_\_\_\_\_ Saturday morning?

B: Play tennis at Waterfall Park. (I'm going to play tennis at Waterfall Park Saturday morning.)

5. A: \_\_\_\_\_ when you get sick?

B: I see my doctor. (I see my doctor when I get sick.)

6. A: \_\_\_\_\_ to help you?

B: Carry this suitcase. (You can carry this suitcase to help me.)

7. A: \_\_\_\_\_ when she heard the good news?

B: She smiled. (Sara smiled when she heard the good news.)

8. A: I spilled some juice on the floor. \_\_\_\_\_ ?

B: Wipe it up with a paper towel. (You should wipe it up with a paper towel.)

9. A: \_\_\_\_\_ after she graduates?  
 B: I think she plans to look for a job in hotel management. (Emily is going to look for a job in hotel management after she graduates.)
10. A: \_\_\_\_\_ when the fire alarm sounded?  
 B: Ran down the stairs and out of the building. (I ran down the stairs and out of the building when the fire alarm sounded.)
11. A: \_\_\_\_\_ after school today?  
 B: Let's go to the shopping mall, okay? (I would like to go to the shopping mall after school today.)
12. A: \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 B: Make this coin stand on edge. (I'm trying to make this coin stand on edge.)
13. A: \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 B: He needs to hand in all of his homework. (Kevin needs to hand in all of his homework if he wants to pass advanced algebra.)
14. A: \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 B: He's an airplane mechanic. (Nick repairs airplanes for a living.)
15. A: Did you say something to that man over there? Why does he look angry?  
 B: I accidentally ran into him and stepped on his foot.  
 A: \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 B: Said something nasty. (He said something nasty when I bumped into him.)  
 A: \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 B: Apologized. (I apologized.)  
 A: Then \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 B: Walked away without saying a word. (Then he walked away without saying a word.)  
 A: What an unpleasant person!  
 B: I didn't mean to step on his foot. It was just an accident.

◇ PRACTICE 14. WHAT KIND OF. (Chart 5-7)

*Directions:* Ask questions with **what kind of**.

1. A: What kind of music do you like best?  
 B: Rock 'n roll.
2. A: \_\_\_\_\_ do you like to wear?  
 B: Jeans and a T-shirt.
3. A: \_\_\_\_\_ do you like best?  
 B: Fresh fruit and vegetables.

4. A: \_\_\_\_\_ do you like to read?  
B: Romance novels.
5. A: \_\_\_\_\_ should I buy?  
B: A four-door sedan with good gas mileage.
6. A: \_\_\_\_\_ does your country have?  
B: It's a democratic republic.
7. A: \_\_\_\_\_ would you like to have?  
B: I'd like to have one that pays well, is interesting, and allows me to contribute to society. I've often thought I'd like to be a doctor or an architect.
8. A: \_\_\_\_\_ would you like to marry?  
B: Someone who is kind-hearted, loving, funny, serious, and steady.
9. A: \_\_\_\_\_ can we recycle?  
B: Paper, wood, plastic, and aluminum.

◇ PRACTICE 15. WHICH vs. WHAT. (Chart 5-8)

*Directions:* Complete the questions with *which* or *what*.

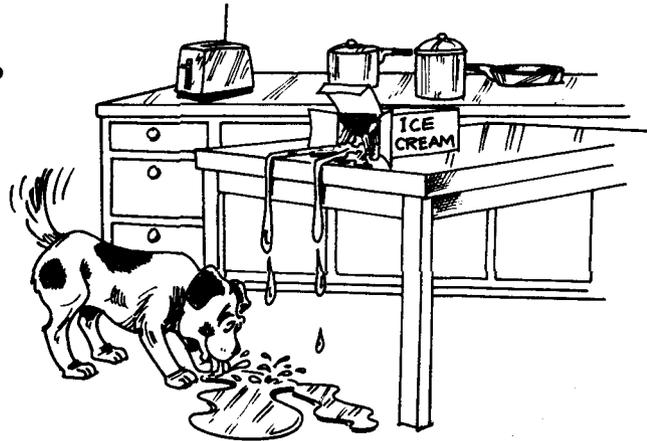
1. A: I have two pens. Which one do you want?  
B: That one.
2. A: I'm hungry.  
B: So am I. What are you going to order?  
A: I think I'll have the fish.
3. A: There are two good movies on TV tonight, a spy movie and a comedy. \_\_\_\_\_  
one do you want to watch?  
B: Let's watch the spy movie.
4. A: Did you go out last night?  
B: No. I stayed home and watched TV.  
A: \_\_\_\_\_ did you watch?  
B: A movie.
5. A: These shoes are comfortable, and so are those shoes. \_\_\_\_\_ should I buy, these  
or those? I can't decide.  
B: These.

6. A: There are flights to Atlanta at 7:30 A.M. and 8:40 A.M. \_\_\_\_\_ one are you going to take?  
 B: The 7:30 flight.
7. A: \_\_\_\_\_ does "huge" mean?  
 B: "Very big."
8. A: I need some help.  
 B: \_\_\_\_\_ can I do to help?  
 A: Please hand me that bowl.  
 B: Sure.
9. A: Would you please hand me a sharp knife?  
 B: I'd be happy to. There are several in this drawer. \_\_\_\_\_ one would you like?  
 A: That one.

◇ PRACTICE 16. WHO vs. WHOSE. (Chart 5-9)

*Directions:* Complete the questions with *who* or *whose*.

1. A: \_\_\_\_\_ Who is driving to the game tonight?  
 B: Heidi is.
2. A: \_\_\_\_\_ Whose car are we taking to the game?  
 B: Heidi's.
3. A: This notebook is mine. \_\_\_\_\_ is that? Is it yours?  
 B: No, it's Sara's.
4. A: There's Ms. Adams. \_\_\_\_\_ is standing next to her?  
 B: Mr. Wilson.
5. A: \_\_\_\_\_ was the first woman doctor in the United States?  
 B: Elizabeth Blackwell, in 1849.
6. A: Okay. \_\_\_\_\_ forgot to put the ice cream back in the freezer?  
 B: I don't know. Don't look at me. It wasn't me.
7. A: \_\_\_\_\_ motorcycle ran into the telephone pole?  
 B: Bill's.
8. A: \_\_\_\_\_ suitcase did you borrow for your trip?  
 B: Andy's.



◇ PRACTICE 17. WHO vs. WHOSE. (Chart 5-9)

Directions: Create the questions.

1. A: Whose house is that?  
B: Pat's. (That's Pat's house.)
2. A: Who's living in that house?  
B: Pat. (Pat is living in that house.)
3. A: \_\_\_\_\_  
B: Pedro's. (I borrowed Pedro's umbrella.)
4. A: \_\_\_\_\_  
B: Linda's. (I used Linda's book.)
5. A: \_\_\_\_\_  
B: Nick's. (Nick's book is on the table.)
6. A: \_\_\_\_\_  
B: Nick. (Nick is on the phone.)
7. A: \_\_\_\_\_  
B: Sue Smith. (That's Sue Smith.) She's a student in my class.
8. A: \_\_\_\_\_  
B: Sue's. (That's Sue's.) This one is mine.

◇ PRACTICE 18. Using HOW. (Chart 5-10)

Directions: Complete the sentences with any of the words in the list.

<i>busy</i>	<i>fresh</i>	<i>safe</i>	<i>soon</i>
<i>expensive</i>	<i>✓hot</i>	<i>serious</i>	<i>well</i>

1. A: How hot does it get in Chicago in the summer?  
B: Very hot. It can get over 100°. (100°F = 37.8°C)
2. A: How \_\_\_\_\_ will dinner be ready? I'm really hungry.  
B: In just a few more minutes.
3. A: Look at that beautiful vase! Let's get it.  
B: How \_\_\_\_\_ is it?  
A: Oh my gosh! Never mind. We can't afford it.
4. A: Sorry to interrupt, Ted, but I need some help. How \_\_\_\_\_ are you today? Do you have time to read over this report?  
B: Well, I'm always \_\_\_\_\_, but I'll make time to read it.

5. A: How \_\_\_\_\_ is Toshi about becoming an astronomer?  
 B: He's very \_\_\_\_\_. He already knows more about the stars and planets than his high school teachers.
6. A: How \_\_\_\_\_ is a car with an airbag?  
 B: Well, there have been bad accidents where both drivers walked away without injuries because of airbags.
7. A: Tomatoes for sale! Hey, lady! Do you want to buy some tomatoes? Tomatoes for sale!  
 B: Hmmm. They look pretty good. How \_\_\_\_\_ are they?  
 A: What do you mean "How \_\_\_\_\_ are they?" Would I sell something that wasn't \_\_\_\_\_? They were picked from the field just this morning.
8. A: Do you know Jack Young?  
 B: Yes.  
 A: Oh? How \_\_\_\_\_ do you know him?  
 B: Very \_\_\_\_\_. He's one of my closest friends. Why?  
 A: He's applied for a job at my store.

◇ PRACTICE 19. Using HOW FAR, HOW LONG, and HOW OFTEN. (Charts 5-11 → 5-13)

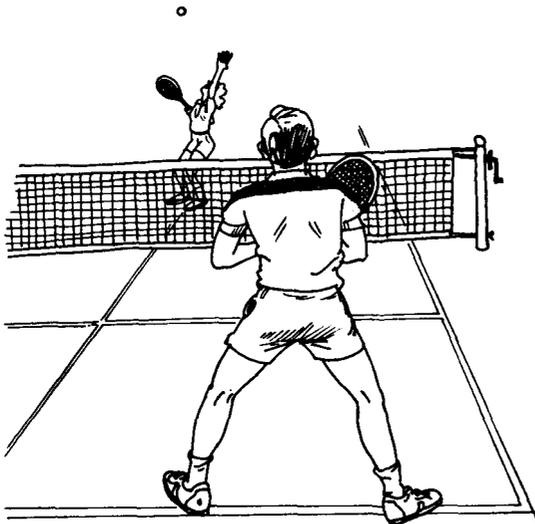
*Directions:* Complete the questions with **far**, **long**, or **often**.

1. A: How far is it to the nearest police station?  
 B: Four blocks.
2. A: How long does it take you to get to work?  
 B: Forty-five minutes.
3. A: How often do you see your family?  
 B: Once a week.
4. A: How \_\_\_\_\_ is it to your office from home?  
 B: About twenty miles.
5. A: How \_\_\_\_\_ is it from here to the airport?  
 B: Ten kilometers.
6. A: How \_\_\_\_\_ do you see your dentist?  
 B: Every six months.
7. A: How \_\_\_\_\_ does it take to get to the airport?  
 B: Fifteen minutes.
8. A: How \_\_\_\_\_ above sea level is Denver, Colorado?  
 B: One mile. That's why it's called the Mile High City.

9. A: How \_\_\_\_\_ does it take to fly from Chicago to Denver?  
B: About three hours.
10. A: How \_\_\_\_\_ does your department have meetings?  
B: Twice a week.
11. A: How \_\_\_\_\_ did it take you to build your own boat?  
B: Four years.
12. A: How \_\_\_\_\_ did you walk?  
B: Two miles.
13. A: How \_\_\_\_\_ did you walk?  
B: Two hours.
14. A: How \_\_\_\_\_ does the bus come?  
B: Every two hours.
15. A: How \_\_\_\_\_ is it from here to the bus stop?  
B: About two blocks.
16. A: How \_\_\_\_\_ does the ride downtown take?  
B: About 20 minutes.
17. A: How \_\_\_\_\_ do you take the bus?  
B: Every day.

◇ PRACTICE 20. Cumulative review. (Charts 5-1 → 5-13)

*Directions:* Complete the dialogues by writing questions for the given answers. Use the information in parentheses to form the questions.



1. A: What is Jack doing ?  
B: He's playing tennis. (Jack is playing tennis.)
2. A: \_\_\_\_\_ with?  
B: Anna. (He is playing tennis with Anna.)

3. A: \_\_\_\_\_?  
B: Serving the ball. (Anna is serving the ball.)
4. A: \_\_\_\_\_ in the air?  
B: A tennis ball. (She is throwing a tennis ball in the air.)
5. A: \_\_\_\_\_?  
B: Rackets. (Anna and Jack are holding rackets.)
6. A: \_\_\_\_\_ between them?  
B: A net. (A net is between them.)
7. A: \_\_\_\_\_?  
B: On a tennis court. (They are on a tennis court.)
8. A: \_\_\_\_\_?  
B: For an hour and a half. (They have been playing for an hour and a half.)
9. A: \_\_\_\_\_ right now?  
B: Jack. (Jack is winning right now.)
10. A: \_\_\_\_\_ the last game?  
B: Anna. (Anna won the last game.)

◇ PRACTICE 21. Cumulative review. (Charts 5-1 → 5-13)

*Directions:* Complete the dialogues by writing questions for the given answers. Use the information in parentheses to form the questions.

1. A: When will the clean clothes be \_\_\_\_\_ dry?  
B: In about an hour. (The clean clothes will be dry in about an hour.)
2. A: \_\_\_\_\_ Saturday afternoon?  
B: I went to a baseball game. (I went to a baseball game Saturday afternoon.)
3. A: \_\_\_\_\_?  
B: The small paperback. (I bought the small paperback dictionary, not the hardcover one.)
4. A: \_\_\_\_\_ to clean your apartment before your parents visited?  
B: Four hours. (It took me four hours to clean my apartment before my parents visited.)
5. A: \_\_\_\_\_ the top shelf?  
B: Stand on a chair. (You can reach the top shelf by standing on a chair.)
6. A: \_\_\_\_\_ the best?  
B: Whole wheat bread. (I like whole wheat bread the best.)
7. A: \_\_\_\_\_ the phone when it rang?  
B: Because I was in the middle of dinner with my family. (I didn't answer the phone when it rang because I was in the middle of dinner with my family.)

8. A: \_\_\_\_\_ to the show with?  
B: Maria and her sister. (I'm going to the show with Maria and her sister.)
9. A: \_\_\_\_\_ the radio?  
B: Eric. (Eric repaired the radio.)
10. A: \_\_\_\_\_ in your hometown in the winter?  
B: It's not bad. It rarely gets below zero. (It rarely gets below zero in my hometown in the winter.)

◇ PRACTICE 22. Tag questions. (Chart 5-16)

*Directions:* Complete the tag questions with the correct verbs.

1. SIMPLE PRESENT

- a. You **like** strong coffee,   don't   you?
- b. David **goes** to Ames High School, \_\_\_\_\_ he?
- c. Kate and Sara **live** on Tree Road, \_\_\_\_\_ they?
- d. Jane **has** the keys to storeroom, \_\_\_\_\_ she?
- e. Jane's in her office, \_\_\_\_\_ she?
- f. You're a member of this class, \_\_\_\_\_ you?
- g. Jack **doesn't** have a car, \_\_\_\_\_ he?
- h. Ann **isn't** from California, \_\_\_\_\_ she?

2. SIMPLE PAST

- a. Paul **went** to Florida, \_\_\_\_\_ he?
- b. You **didn't talk** to the boss, \_\_\_\_\_ you?
- c. Tom's parents **weren't** at home, \_\_\_\_\_ they?
- d. That **was** Pat's idea, \_\_\_\_\_ it?

3. PRESENT PROGRESSIVE, *BE GOING TO*, and PAST PROGRESSIVE

- a. You're **studying** hard, \_\_\_\_\_ you?
- b. Tom **isn't working** at the bank, \_\_\_\_\_ he?
- c. It **isn't going to rain** today, \_\_\_\_\_ it?
- d. Susan and Kevin **were waiting** for us, \_\_\_\_\_ they?
- e. It **wasn't raining**, \_\_\_\_\_ it?

4. PRESENT PERFECT

- a. It **has been** warmer than usual, \_\_\_\_\_ it?
- b. You've **had** a lot of homework, \_\_\_\_\_ you?

- c. We **haven't spent** much time together, \_\_\_\_\_ we?
- d. Lisa **has started** her new job, \_\_\_\_\_ she?
- e. Bill **hasn't finished** his sales report yet, \_\_\_\_\_ he?

5. MODAL AUXILIARIES

- a. You **can answer** these questions, \_\_\_\_\_ you?
- b. Kate **won't tell** anyone our secret, \_\_\_\_\_ she?
- c. Sam **should come** to the meeting, \_\_\_\_\_ he?
- d. Alice **would like** to come with us, \_\_\_\_\_ she?
- e. I **don't have to come** to the meeting, \_\_\_\_\_ I?
- f. Steve **had to leave** early, \_\_\_\_\_ he?

◇ PRACTICE 23. Tag questions. (Chart 5-16)

*Directions:* Add tag questions to the following and give the expected responses.

1. A: You've already seen that movie, haven't you?  
B: Yes, I have.
2. A: Alex hasn't called, has he?  
B: No, he hasn't.
3. A: You talked to Mike last night, didn't you?  
B: Yes, I did.
4. A: You usually bring your lunch to school, \_\_\_\_\_  
B: \_\_\_\_\_
5. A: Rita and Philip have been married for five years, \_\_\_\_\_  
B: \_\_\_\_\_
6. A: Kathy has already finished her work, \_\_\_\_\_  
B: \_\_\_\_\_
7. A: This isn't a hard exercise, \_\_\_\_\_  
B: \_\_\_\_\_
8. A: We have to hand in our assignments today, \_\_\_\_\_  
B: \_\_\_\_\_
9. A: Tony Wah lives in Los Angeles, \_\_\_\_\_  
B: \_\_\_\_\_
10. A: You used to live in Los Angeles, \_\_\_\_\_  
B: \_\_\_\_\_

11. A: Tomorrow isn't a holiday, \_\_\_\_\_  
 B: \_\_\_\_\_
12. A: Jack doesn't have to join the army, \_\_\_\_\_  
 B: \_\_\_\_\_
13. A: I don't have to be at the meeting, \_\_\_\_\_  
 B: \_\_\_\_\_
14. A: This isn't your book, \_\_\_\_\_  
 B: \_\_\_\_\_
15. A: Jack and Elizabeth were in class yesterday, \_\_\_\_\_  
 B: \_\_\_\_\_
16. A: Jennifer won't be here for dinner tonight, \_\_\_\_\_  
 B: \_\_\_\_\_

◇ PRACTICE 24. Error analysis. (Chapter 5)

*Directions:* Correct the errors in the sentences.

1. <sup>Who</sup> ~~Whom~~ saw the car accident?
2. Why you didn't say "good-bye" when you left?
3. How about ask Julie and Tim to come for dinner Friday night?
4. What time class begins today?
5. Why he have no shoes on his feet?
6. Where you can get a drink of water in this building?
7. What kind of music you like best?
8. How long it takes to get to the beach from here?
9. She is working late tonight, doesn't she?
10. Who's glasses are those?
11. How much tall your father?
12. Who you talked to about registration for next term?

13. How about we go to see the baby elephant at the zoo tomorrow?

14. How far from here to the nearest gas station?

◇ PRACTICE 25. Review: questions. (Chapter 5)

*Directions:* Using the information in parentheses, complete the questions for the given answers.

1. A: When are you going to buy a new bicycle?

B: Next week. (I'm going to buy a new bicycle next week.)

2. A: How are you going to pay for it?

B: With my credit card. (I'm going to pay for it with my credit card.)

3. A: \_\_\_\_\_ your old bike?

B: Ten years. (I had my old bike for ten years.)

4. A: \_\_\_\_\_ your bike?

B: Four or five times a week. (I ride my bike four or five times a week.)

5. A: \_\_\_\_\_ to work?

B: I usually ride my bike. (I usually get to work by riding my bike.)

6. A: \_\_\_\_\_ your bike to work tomorrow?

B: Yes. (I'm going to ride my bike to work tomorrow.)

7. A: \_\_\_\_\_ your bike to work today?

B: I decided I would rather walk. (I didn't ride my bike to work today because I decided I would rather walk.)

8. A: \_\_\_\_\_ a comfortable seat?

B: Yes, it does. (My bike has a comfortable seat.)

9. A: \_\_\_\_\_ ?

B: A ten-speed. (I have a ten-speed bicycle.)

10. A: \_\_\_\_\_ his new bike?

B: Two weeks ago. (Jason got his new bike two weeks ago.)

11. A: \_\_\_\_\_ Jason's new bike?

B: Billy. (Billy broke Jason's new bike.)

12. A: \_\_\_\_\_ ?

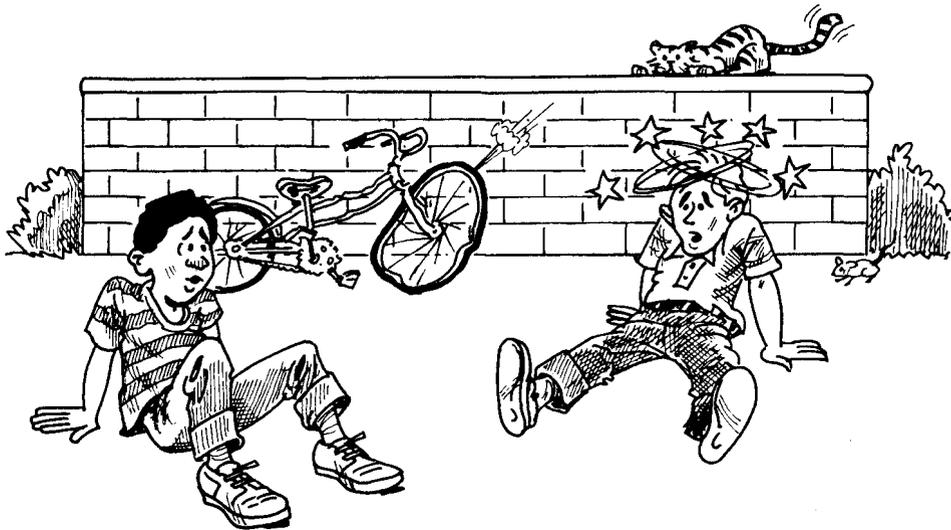
B: The front wheel on Jason's new bike. (Billy broke the front wheel on Jason's new bike.)

13. A: \_\_\_\_\_ ?

B: Jason's new bike. (Jason's new bike is broken.)

14. A: \_\_\_\_\_ Jason's bike?

B: He ran into a brick wall. (Billy broke Jason's bike by running into a brick wall.)



15. A: \_\_\_\_\_ yours?

B: The blue one. (The blue bicycle is mine, not the red one.)

16. A: \_\_\_\_\_ your bicycle at night?

B: Inside my apartment. (I keep my bicycle inside my apartment at night.)

17. A: \_\_\_\_\_ ?

B: David. (That bike belongs to David.)

18. A: \_\_\_\_\_ ?

B: Suzanne's. (I borrowed Suzanne's bike.)

19. A: \_\_\_\_\_ ?

B: In the park. (Rita is in the park.)

20. A: \_\_\_\_\_ ?

B: Riding her bike. (She's riding her bike.)

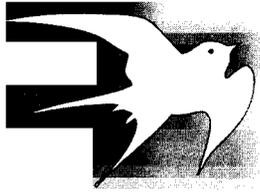
21. A: \_\_\_\_\_ her bike yesterday?

B: 25 miles. (Rita rode her bike 25 miles\* yesterday.)

22. A: \_\_\_\_\_ "bicycle"?

B: B-I-C-Y-C-L-E. (You spell "bicycle" B-I-C-Y-C-L-E.)

\*25 miles = approximately 40 kilometers/kilometres.



# CHAPTER 6

## Nouns and Pronouns

### ◇ PRACTICE 1. Preview: plural nouns. (Chart 6-2)

*Directions:* Underline each noun. Write the correct plural form if necessary. Do not change any other words.

1. Airplane<sup>s</sup> have wing<sup>s</sup>.
2. Child like to play on swing.
3. Some animal live in zoo.
4. Tree grow branch and leaf.
5. I saw three duck and several goose  
in a pond at the park.
6. Some baby are born with a few tooth.
7. I eat a lot of potato, bean, pea, and tomato.
8. Opinion are not the same as fact.
9. Each country has its own custom.
10. Government collect tax.

### ◇ PRACTICE 2. Pronunciation of -S/-ES. (Chart 6-1)

*Directions:* Write the correct pronunciations: /s/, /z/, or /əz/. Practice saying the words.

1. dogs = dog + / z /
2. cups = cup + / /
3. desks = desk + / /
4. classes = class + / /
5. doors = door + / /
6. radios = radio + / /
7. pages = page + / /
8. spoons = spoon + / /
9. sheets = sheet + / /
10. wishes = wish + / /
11. collars = collar + / /
12. shirts = shirt + / /

### ◇ PRACTICE 3. Pronunciation of -S/-ES. (Chart 6-1)

*Directions:* Write the correct pronunciations: /s/, /z/, or /əz/. Practice saying the words.

1. ear / z /
2. cat / /
3. dish / /
4. disk / /
5. table / /
6. lie / /
7. letter / /
8. group / /
9. nose / /
10. date / /
11. purse / /
12. fox / /

◇ PRACTICE 4. Pronunciation of -S/-ES. (Chart 6-1)

Directions: Write the correct pronunciations for the underlined words: /s/, /z/, or /əz/. Read the sentences aloud.

1. My friends raise chickens and cows.  
                   / z /                   / /                   / /
2. Boxes come in many different sizes.  
           / /                                   / /
3. The doctor checked the child's eyes, ears, and nose.  
   / /                   / /                   / /
4. Most businesses need to have computers.  
                   / /                                   / /
5. Apples and oranges are my favorite fruits.  
           / /                   / /
6. Sam's faxes have several mistakes.  
           / / / /                                   / /
7. We heard loud voices from the houses down the street.  
                           / /                   / /
8. Do you prefer to watch videos or go to movies on weekends?  
                                   / /                   / /                   / /

◇ PRACTICE 5. Plural nouns. (Chart 6-2)

Directions: Write the correct singular or plural form.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <u>mouse</u> _____	mice
2. pocket	<u>pockets</u> _____
3. _____	teeth
4. _____	tomatoes
5. _____	fish/fishes
6. _____	women
7. branch	_____
8. friend	_____
9. duty	_____
10. highway	_____
11. thief	<u>thieves</u> _____
12. belief	_____

- 13. potato \_\_\_\_\_
- 14. radio \_\_\_\_\_
- 15. offspring \_\_\_\_\_
- 16. \_\_\_\_\_ children
- 17. season \_\_\_\_\_
- 18. custom \_\_\_\_\_
- 19. business \_\_\_\_\_
- 20. \_\_\_\_\_ centuries
- 21. occurrence \_\_\_\_\_
- 22. \_\_\_\_\_ phenomena
- 23. sheep \_\_\_\_\_
- 24. \_\_\_\_\_ loaves
- 25. glass \_\_\_\_\_
- 26. problem \_\_\_\_\_
- 27. family \_\_\_\_\_
- 28. wife \_\_\_\_\_
- 29. shelf \_\_\_\_\_
- 30. roof \_\_\_\_\_
- 31. \_\_\_\_\_ feet
- 32. woman \_\_\_\_\_

◇ PRACTICE 6. Plural nouns. (Chart 6-2)

Directions: Write the plural of each word from the box in the correct category.

✓ cow	baby	lily	husband	goose
sheep	rose	tomato	pea	child
apple	horse	daughter	cherry	
potato	daisy	strawberry	wife	
poppy	son	mouse	pear	
daffodil	grape	banana	bean	

1. Common farm animals include   cows,
2. Common vegetables include \_\_\_\_\_
3. Common fruits include \_\_\_\_\_
4. Common flowers include \_\_\_\_\_
5. Family members include \_\_\_\_\_

◇ PRACTICE 7. Subjects, verbs, and objects. (Chart 6-3)

*Directions:* Underline and identify the subject (S) and verb (V) of each sentence. Also identify the object (O) of the verb if the sentence has an object.

- |  |                               |
|--|-------------------------------|
| 1. <sup>S</sup> <u>Children</u> <sup>V</sup> <u>play</u> <sup>O</sup> <u>games</u> . | 7. The cat found a mouse.     |
| 2. Fish swim.  | 8. The sun shines brightly.   |
| 3. The baby doesn't like her new toys.   | 9. Water evaporates.          |
| 4. Computers process information quickly.  | 10. Do snakes lay eggs?       |
| 5. Dictionaries give definitions.  | 11. The child petted the dog. |
| 6. Teachers correct tests.   | 12. Did the phone ring?       |

◇ PRACTICE 8. Objects of prepositions. (Charts 6-3 and 6-4)

*Directions:* Underline and identify the preposition (PREP) and object of the preposition (O of PREP).

- |  |
|--|
| 1. The man opened the door <sup>PREP</sup> <u>with</u> <sup>O of PREP</sup> his <u>key</u> . |
|--|
2. The little girl put her shoes on the wrong feet.
  3. The student added and subtracted with a calculator.
  4. My father fixes breakfast for my mother every morning.
  5. Librarians work in libraries.
  6. The bird flew into the window of the building.
  7. I do all my homework on a computer.
  8. The artist drew scenes of the beach in his notebook.
  9. The children played in the backyard until dinner.
  10. It rained for two weeks.
  11. The painter splashed paint on the floor of his studio.
  12. A man with dark glasses stood near the door.

◇ PRACTICE 9. Subjects, verbs, objects, and prepositions. (Charts 6-3 and 6-4)

*Directions:* Underline and identify the subjects (S), verbs (V), objects (O), and prepositional phrases (PP) in these sentences.

1. <sup>S</sup> Bridges <sup>V</sup> cross <sup>O</sup> rivers.

2. <sup>S</sup> A terrible earthquake <sup>V</sup> occurred <sup>PP</sup> in Turkey.

3. Airplanes fly above the clouds.

4. Trucks carry large loads.

5. Rivers flow toward the sea.

6. Salespeople treat customers with courtesy.

7. Bacteria can cause diseases.

8. Clouds are floating across the sky.

9. The audience in the theater applauded the performers at the end of the show.

10. Helmets protect bicyclists from serious injuries.

◇ PRACTICE 10. Prepositions of time. (Chart 6-5)

*Directions:* Complete the phrases with the correct time prepositions.

**The Jacksons got married . . .**

1. in the summer.

2. \_\_\_\_\_ June.

3. \_\_\_\_\_ June 17<sup>th</sup>.

4. \_\_\_\_\_ Saturday.

5. \_\_\_\_\_ 12:00 P.M.

6. \_\_\_\_\_ noon.

7. \_\_\_\_\_ 2000.

8. \_\_\_\_\_ Saturday afternoon.

**Their baby was born . . .**

9. \_\_\_\_\_ midnight.

10. \_\_\_\_\_ 12:00 A.M.

11. \_\_\_\_\_ the morning.

12. \_\_\_\_\_ April 12th.

13. \_\_\_\_\_ 2001.

14. \_\_\_\_\_ April.

15. \_\_\_\_\_ Wednesday.

◇ PRACTICE 11. Word order: object, place, and time. (Chart 6-6)

*Directions:* Complete each sentence by arranging the phrases in the correct order. There is only one correct solution for each sentence.

1. The dog chased   3   for several minutes.  
  1   a cat  
  2   around the room
2. The policeman stopped        the driver  
       at a busy intersection  
       at midnight
3. My friends rented        on the lake  
       last summer  
       a houseboat
4. The children caught        in the river  
       several fish  
       last weekend
5. Our library shows        free movies  
       every Saturday  
       in the children's section
6. We ate        at noon  
       our lunch  
       in the park
7. The little girl always puts        in bed  
       at night  
       her dolls
8. The florist delivers        every Monday  
       fresh flowers  
       to our office
9. I bought        at the corner store  
       a newspaper  
       after work yesterday

◇ PRACTICE 12. Subject-verb agreement. (Chart 6-7)

Directions: Complete the sentences with *is* or *are*.

1. These magazines are from the library.
2. The magazines on the table \_\_\_\_\_ for you.
3. Some people \_\_\_\_\_ wise.
4. Everyone \_\_\_\_\_ here.
5. Everybody \_\_\_\_\_ on time for class.
6. Each person in class \_\_\_\_\_ ready to begin.
7. Every teacher at this school \_\_\_\_\_ patient.
8. There \_\_\_\_\_ some money on the table.
9. There \_\_\_\_\_ some bills for you to pay.
10. This information about taxes \_\_\_\_\_ helpful.

◇ PRACTICE 13. Subject-verb agreement. (Chart 6-7)

Directions: Circle the correct verb.

1. Bees (make), *makes* honey.
2. Tomatoes *needs*, *need* lots of sunshine to grow.
3. *Do*, *Does* the people in your neighborhood help each other?
4. There *is*, *are* some people already in line for the movie.
5. The vegetables in the bowl on the table *is*, *are* fresh.
6. Everybody always *comes*, *come* to class on time.
7. Everyone in the class *is*, *are* paying attention.
8. The dishes on the counter *is*, *are* dirty.
9. Each person *needs*, *need* to bring identification.
10. The people next door *goes*, *go* hiking every weekend in the summer.
11. My father and mother *works*, *work* for the same company.
12. The pictures on the wall *is*, *are* of my father's family.

◇ PRACTICE 14. Adjectives. (Chart 6-8)

Directions: Complete each phrase with an adjective that has the opposite meaning.

1. new cars old cars
2. a young man an \_\_\_\_\_ man
3. a \_\_\_\_\_ day a warm day

- |                      |                   |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| 4. fast trains       | _____ trains      |
| 5. sad news          | _____ news        |
| 6. a good day        | a _____ day       |
| 7. _____ hair        | dry hair          |
| 8. _____ exercises   | hard exercises    |
| 9. a soft pillow     | a _____ pillow    |
| 10. a _____ street   | a wide street     |
| 11. _____ plates     | dirty plates      |
| 12. _____ cups       | full cups         |
| 13. dangerous cities | _____ cities      |
| 14. _____ children   | quiet children    |
| 15. shallow water    | _____ water       |
| 16. sweet candy      | _____ candy       |
| 17. _____ clothes    | expensive clothes |
| 18. a dark color     | a _____ color     |
| 19. a heavy box      | a _____ box       |
| 20. a _____ place    | a private place   |
| 21. my left foot     | my _____ foot     |
| 22. the wrong answer | the _____ answer  |
| 23. weak coffee      | _____ coffee      |
| 24. a _____ walk     | a short walk      |

◇ PRACTICE 15. Adjectives and nouns. (Chart 6-8)

*Directions:* Circle each adjective. Draw an arrow to the noun it describes.

1. Paul has a (loud) voice.

2. Sugar is (sweet).

3. The students took an easy test.

4. Air is free.

5. We ate some delicious food at a Mexican restaurant.

6. An encyclopedia contains important facts about a wide variety of subjects.

7. The child was sick.

8. The sick child crawled into his warm bed and sipped hot tea.
9. Our camping equipment looks old and rusty.
10. The hungry bear found food in the garbage cans.
11. My elderly father needs nursing care.
12. May I offer you some fresh coffee and warm cookies?

◇ PRACTICE 16. Nouns as adjectives. (Chart 6-9)

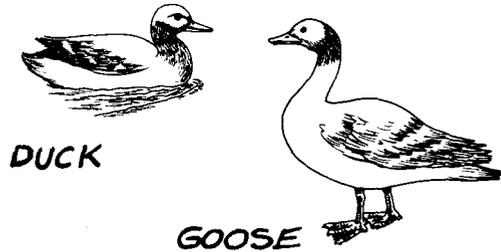
*Directions:* Use the information in *italics* to complete the sentences. Each completion should have a noun that is used as an adjective in front of another noun.

1. *Articles in newspapers* are called newspaper articles.
2. *Numbers on pages* are called \_\_\_\_\_.
3. *Money that is made of paper* is called \_\_\_\_\_.
4. *Buildings with apartments* are called \_\_\_\_\_.
5. *Disks for computers* are called \_\_\_\_\_.
6. *Presents for birthdays* are called \_\_\_\_\_.
7. *Gardens with roses* are called \_\_\_\_\_.
8. *Chains for keys* are called \_\_\_\_\_.
9. *Governments in cities* are called \_\_\_\_\_.
10. *Ponds for ducks* are called \_\_\_\_\_.
11. *Walls made of bricks* are called \_\_\_\_\_.
12. *Cartons that hold eggs* are called \_\_\_\_\_.
13. *Views of mountains* are called \_\_\_\_\_.
14. *Knives that people carry in their pockets* are called \_\_\_\_\_.
15. *Lights that control traffic* are called \_\_\_\_\_.
16. *Tables used for outdoor picnics* are called \_\_\_\_\_.
17. *Pies that are made with apples* are called \_\_\_\_\_.
18. *Helmets for bicycle riders* are called \_\_\_\_\_.
19. *Cabins made out of logs* are called \_\_\_\_\_.
20. *Bridges made from steel* are called \_\_\_\_\_.

◇ PRACTICE 17. Review: nouns. (Charts 6-2 → 6-9)

*Directions:* These sentences have many mistakes in the use of nouns. Decide which nouns should be plural and add the correct plural endings to them. Do not change any other words in the sentences.

1. The mountain<sup>s</sup><sub>^</sub> in Chile are beautiful.
2. Cat hunt mouse.
3. Mosquito are small insect.
4. Everyone has eyelash.
5. Goose are larger than duck.
6. What are your favorite radio program?
7. Forest sometimes have fire. Forest fire endanger wild animal.
8. Sharp kitchen knife can be dangerous weapon.
9. Good telephone manner are important.
10. I bought two theater ticket for the Thursday evening's performance of *A Doll's House*.
11. Our daily life have changed in many way in the past one hundred year. We no longer need to use oil lamp or candle in our house, raise our own chicken, or build daily fire for cooking.
12. There are approximately 250,000 different kind of flower in the world.
13. Newspaper reporter have high-pressure job.
14. I applied to several foreign university because I want to study abroad next year.
15. Ted lives with three other university student.
16. The offspring of animal like horse, zebra, and deer can run soon after they are born.
17. Science student do laboratory experiment in their class.
18. Housefly are troublesome pest. They carry germ.
19. I like to read magazine article about true personal experience.
20. Many modern device require battery to work. Some flashlight, pocket calculator, portable radio, tape recorder, and many kind of toy need battery.



◇ PRACTICE 18. Personal pronouns. (Chart 6-10)

Directions: Underline each pronoun. Note how it is used.

- Subject (S)
- Object of a verb (O of v)
- Object of a preposition (O of PREP)

1. The teacher helped <sup>O of v</sup> me with the lesson.
2. <sup>S</sup> I carry a dictionary with <sup>O of PREP</sup> me at all times.
3. Mr. Fong has a computer. He uses it for many things. It helps him in many ways.
4. Jessica went to Hawaii with Ann and me. We like her, and she likes us. We had a good time with her.
5. Mike had dirty socks. He washed them in the kitchen sink and hung them to dry in front of the window. They dried quickly.
6. Joseph and I are close friends. No bad feelings will ever come between him and me. He and I share a strong bond of friendship.

◇ PRACTICE 19. Personal pronouns. (Chart 6-10)

Directions: Circle each pronoun, then draw an arrow to the noun or noun phrase it refers to. Enclose the noun or noun phrase in brackets.

1. [Janet] had [a green apple.] (She) ate (it) after class.
2. Betsy called this morning. John spoke to her.
3. Nick and Rob are at the market. They are buying fresh vegetables.
4. Eric took some phone messages for Karen. They're on a pad of yellow paper in the kitchen.
5. When Louie called, Alice talked to him. He asked her for a date. She accepted.
6. Jane wrote a letter to Mr. and Mrs. Moore. She mailed it to them yesterday. They should get her letter on Friday.

◇ PRACTICE 20. Personal pronouns. (Chart 6-10)

Directions: Circle the correct pronoun.

1. You can ride with Jennifer and I, me.
2. Did you see Mark? *He, Him* was waiting in your office to talk to you.
3. I saw Rob a few minutes ago. I passed Sara and *he, him* on the steps of the classroom building.
4. Nick used to work in his father's store, but his father and *he, him* had a serious disagreement. Nick left and started his own business.
5. When the doctor came into the room, I asked *she, her* a question.
6. The doctor was very helpful. *She, Her* answered all of my questions.
7. Prof. Molina left a message for you and *I, me. He, Him* needs to see *we, us*.
8. Emily is a good basketball player. I watch Betsy and *she, her* carefully during games. *They, Them* are the best players.
9. Once my little sister and *I, me* were home alone. When our parents returned, a valuable vase was broken. *They, Them* blamed *we, us* for the broken vase, but in truth the cat had broken *it, them*. *We, Us* got in trouble with *they, them* because of the cat.
10. Take these secret documents and destroy *it, them*.
11. Ron invited Mary and *I, me* to have dinner with *he, him*.
12. Maureen likes movies. Ron and *she, her* go to the movies every chance they get.
13. Tom and *I, me* both want to marry Ann. She has to choose between *he and I, him and me*.
14. I talked to Jennifer and Mike. I told *they, them* about the surprise birthday party for Lizzy. *They, Them* won't tell *she, her* about *it, them*. *She, Her* is really going to be surprised!
15. Ted invited *I, me* to go to the game with *he, him*.
16. Ted invited Adam and *I, me* to go to the game with Tina and *he, him*.
17. My brother always teases *I, me* and my sister when *he, him* comes home from college. Our parents laugh and tell *he, him* to quit picking on *we, us*. *We, Us* love the attention. *We, Us* miss *he, him* when *he, him* returns to school.

◇ PRACTICE 21. Possessive nouns. (Chart 6-11)

*Directions:* Use the *italicized* noun in the first sentence to write a POSSESSIVE NOUN in the second sentence. Pay special attention to where you put the apostrophe.

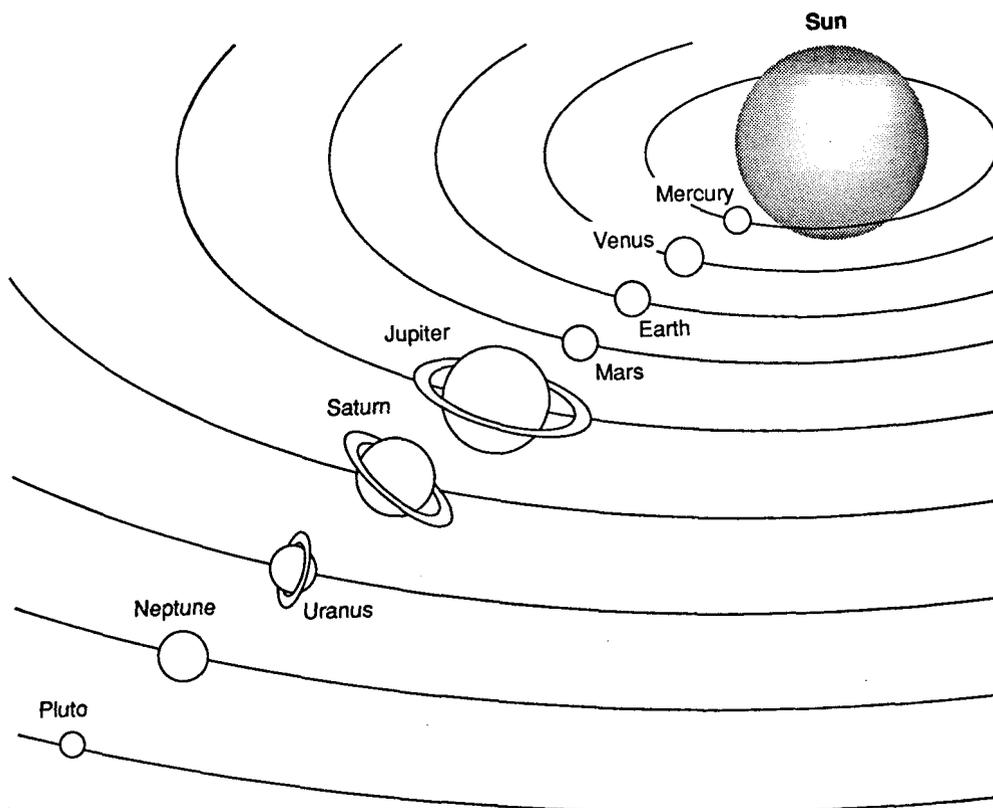
1. I have one *friend*. My friend's name is Paul.
2. I have two *friends*. My friends' names are Paul and Kevin.
3. I have one *son*. My \_\_\_\_\_ name is Ryan.
4. I have two *sons*. My \_\_\_\_\_ names are Ryan and Scott.
5. I have one *baby*. My \_\_\_\_\_ name is Joy.
6. I have two *babies*. My \_\_\_\_\_ names are Joy and Erica.
7. I have one *child*. My \_\_\_\_\_ name is Anna.
8. I have two *children*. My \_\_\_\_\_ names are Anna and Keith.
9. I know one *person*. This \_\_\_\_\_ name is Nick.
10. I know several *people*. These \_\_\_\_\_ names are Nick, Karen, and Rita.
11. I have one *teacher*. My \_\_\_\_\_ name is Ms. West.
12. I have two *teachers*. My \_\_\_\_\_ names are Ms. West and Mr. Fox.
13. I know a *man*. This \_\_\_\_\_ name is Alan Burns.
14. I know two *men*. These \_\_\_\_\_ names are Alan Burns and Joe Lee.
15. We live on the *earth*. The \_\_\_\_\_ surface is seventy percent water.

◇ PRACTICE 22. Possessive nouns. (Chart 6-11)

*Directions:* Make the nouns possessive if necessary.

1. I met <sup>Dan's</sup>~~Dan~~ sister yesterday.
2. I met Dan and his sister yesterday. OK (no change)
3. I know Jack roommates.
4. I know Jack well. He's a good friend of mine.
5. I have one roommate. My roommate desk is always messy.
6. You have two roommates. Your roommates desks are always neat.
7. Jo Ann and Betty are sisters.
8. Jo Ann is Betty sister. My sister name is Sonya.
9. My name is Richard. I have two sisters. My sisters names are Jo Ann and Betty.

10. There is an old saying: "A woman work is never done."
11. I read a book about the changes in women roles and men roles in modern society.
12. Jupiter is the largest planet in our solar system. We cannot see Jupiter surface from the earth because thick clouds surround the planet.
13. Mercury is the closest planet to the sun. Mercury atmosphere is extremely hot and dry.
14. Mars\* surface has some of the same characteristics as Earth surface, but Mars could not support life as we know it on Earth. The plants and animals that live on Earth could not live on any of the other planets in our solar system.
15. Venus is sometimes called Earth twin because the two planets are almost the same size. But like Mars, Venus surface is extremely hot and dry.



\*When a singular noun ends in -s, there are two possible possessive forms, as in the examples below:

SINGULAR NOUNS

*James*

*Chris*

*Carlos*

POSSESSIVE FORMS

I know *James'* brother. OR I know *James's* brother.

*Chris'* car is red. OR *Chris's* car is red.

*Carlos'* last name is Rivera. OR *Carlos's* last name is Rivera.

16. The planets English names come from ancient Roman mythology. For example, Mars was the name of the god of war in ancient Rome. Jupiter was the king of the gods. Mercury, who was Jupiter son, was the messenger of the gods. Venus was the goddess of love, beauty, and creativity. Venus son was named Cupid, the god of love and desire.

◇ PRACTICE 23. Possessive pronouns vs. possessive adjectives. (Chart 6-12)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with possessive pronouns or possessive adjectives that refer to the words in *italics*.

- A: Can I look at your grammar book?  
B: Why? *You* have your own\* book. *You* have yours, and I have mine.
- A: Anna wants to look at your grammar book.  
B: Why? *She* has \_\_\_\_\_ own book. *She* has \_\_\_\_\_, and I have mine.
- A: Tom wants to look at your grammar book.  
B: Why? *He* has \_\_\_\_\_ own book. *He* has \_\_\_\_\_, and I have mine.
- A: Tom and I want to look at your grammar book.  
B: Why? *You* have \_\_\_\_\_ own books. *You* have \_\_\_\_\_, and I have mine.
- A: Tom and Anna want to look at our grammar books.  
B: Why? *They* have \_\_\_\_\_ own books. *We* have \_\_\_\_\_ own books. *They* have \_\_\_\_\_, and *we* have \_\_\_\_\_.

◇ PRACTICE 24. Possessive pronouns vs. possessive adjectives. (Chart 6-12)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with possessive pronouns or possessive adjectives that refer to the words in *italics*.

- Sara* asked her mother for permission to go to a movie.
- I don't need to borrow your bicycle. *Sara* loaned me hers.
- Ted and I* are roommates. \_\_\_\_\_ apartment is small.
- Brian and Louie have a huge apartment, but *we* don't. \_\_\_\_\_ is small.
- You* can find \_\_\_\_\_ keys in the top drawer of the desk.

---

\**Own* frequently follows a possessive adjective: e.g., *my own, your own, their own*. The word *own* emphasizes that nobody else possesses the exact same thing(s); ownership belongs *only* to me (*my own book*), to you (*your own book*), to them (*their own books*), to us (*our own books*), etc.

6. The keys in the drawer belong to you. *I* have \_\_\_\_\_ in \_\_\_\_\_ pocket.  
You should look in the drawer for \_\_\_\_\_.
7. *Tom and Paul* talked about \_\_\_\_\_ experiences in the wilderness areas of Canada. I've had a lot of interesting experiences in the wilderness, but nothing to compare with \_\_\_\_\_.
8. *I* know Eric well. He is a good friend of \_\_\_\_\_. *You* know him, too, don't you? Isn't he a friend of \_\_\_\_\_, too?
9. Omar, *my wife and I* would like to introduce you to a good friend of \_\_\_\_\_.  
His name is Dan Lightfeather.

◇ PRACTICE 25. Reflexive pronouns. (Chart 6-13)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with reflexive pronouns that refer to the words in *italics*.

1. *I* enjoyed myself at Disney World.
2. *Paul* enjoyed \_\_\_\_\_.
3. *Paul and I* enjoyed \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Hi, Emily! Did *you* enjoy \_\_\_\_\_?
5. Hi, Emily and Dan! Did *you* enjoy \_\_\_\_\_?
6. *Jessica* enjoyed \_\_\_\_\_.
7. *Jessica and Paul* enjoyed \_\_\_\_\_.
8. *Joe* helped \_\_\_\_\_ to more dessert.
9. *Jane* helped \_\_\_\_\_.
10. *I* helped \_\_\_\_\_.
11. *We* helped \_\_\_\_\_.
12. *They* helped \_\_\_\_\_.
13. *The new teacher* introduced \_\_\_\_\_ to the students.
14. *My friends and I* introduced \_\_\_\_\_.
15. *The assistant teacher and school nurse* introduced \_\_\_\_\_.
16. *Ann* introduced \_\_\_\_\_.

17. *Jack* introduced \_\_\_\_\_ .
18. *The other teachers* introduced \_\_\_\_\_ .
19. Did *you* introduce \_\_\_\_\_ ?

◇ PRACTICE 26. Reflexive pronouns. (Chart 6-13)

*Directions:* Choose an expression and complete the sentences. Be sure to use the correct reflexive pronoun.

<i>be proud of</i>	<i>help</i>	<i>talk to</i>
<i>blame</i>	<i>introduce</i>	<i>teach</i>
✓ <i>cut</i>	<i>take care of</i>	<i>work for</i>
<i>enjoy</i>		

1. Ouch! I just cut myself with a knife.
2. You graduated with top honors in your class. Congratulations, Anna! You must \_\_\_\_\_ .
3. John often \_\_\_\_\_. People think there is more than one person in the room, but there isn't. It's only John.
4. When I was young, I \_\_\_\_\_ to ride a bicycle. Then I taught the other children in the neighborhood.
5. Sheri \_\_\_\_\_ for the accident, but it wasn't her fault. There was nothing she could have done when the car came toward her.
6. Eat! Eat! There's lots more pizza in the oven. Please, all of you, \_\_\_\_\_ .
7. Adam seldom gets sick because he eats nourishing food and exercises regularly. He \_\_\_\_\_ .
8. They went to a party last night. Let's ask them if they \_\_\_\_\_ .
9. My father never worked for anyone. He always owned his own company. He \_\_\_\_\_ throughout his entire adult life.
10. At the beginning of each term, my students walk around the room and greet each other. When they finish, they \_\_\_\_\_ to the whole class.

◇ PRACTICE 27. Review: pronouns. (Charts 6-10 → 6-13)

Directions: Circle the correct pronouns.

1. Nick invited I, me to go to dinner with he, him.
2. Sam and you should be proud of *yourself*, *yourselves*. The two of you did a good job.
3. The room was almost empty. The only furniture was one table. The table stood by *it*, *itself* in one corner.
4. The bird returned to *its*, *it's*\* nest to feed *its*, *it's* offspring.
5. Nick has his tennis racket, and Ann has *her*, *hers*, *her's*.\*
6. Where's Eric? I have some good news for Joe and *he*, *him*, *his*, *himself*.
7. Don't listen to Greg. You need to think for *yourself*, *yourselves*, Jane. It's *you*, *your*, *your's*\* life.
8. We all have *us*, *our*, *ours* own ideas about how to live *our*, *ours*, *our's*\* lives.
9. You have your beliefs, and we have *our*, *ours*.
10. People usually enjoy *themselves*, *themselves*, *theirselves*\*\* at family gatherings.
11. History repeats *himself*, *herself*, *itself*.
12. David didn't need my help. He finished the work by *him*, *himself*, *his*, *his self*.

◇ PRACTICE 28. Review: pronouns. (Charts 6-10 → 6-13)

Directions: Complete the sentences with pronouns that refer to the words in *italics*.

1. Tom is wearing a bandage on his arm. He hurt himself while he was repairing the roof. I'll help him with the roof later.
2. I have a *sister*. \_\_\_\_\_ name is Kate. \_\_\_\_\_ and I share a room.
3. *My sister and I* share a room. \_\_\_\_\_ room is pretty small. \_\_\_\_\_ have only one desk.
4. Our desk has five drawers. *Kate* puts \_\_\_\_\_ things in the two drawers on the right.

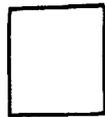
\*REMINDER: Apostrophes are NOT used with possessive pronouns. Note that *its* = possessive adjective; *it's* = *it is*. Also note that *her's*, *your's*, and *our's* are NOT POSSIBLE in grammatically correct English.

\*\*NOTE: *Themselves* and *theirselves* are not really words—they are NOT POSSIBLE in grammatically correct English. Only *themselves* is the correct reflexive pronoun form.

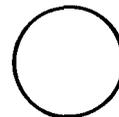
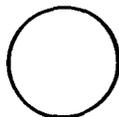
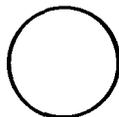
5. I keep \_\_\_\_\_ stuff in the two drawers on the left. She and \_\_\_\_\_ share the middle drawer.
6. Kate doesn't open my two drawers, and I don't open \_\_\_\_\_.
7. I don't put things in her drawers, and she doesn't put things in \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Ms. Lake and Mr. Ramirez work together at the advertising company. \_\_\_\_\_ often work on projects by \_\_\_\_\_, but I work with \_\_\_\_\_ sometimes. My office is next to \_\_\_\_\_. \_\_\_\_\_ office has \_\_\_\_\_ names on the door, and mine has my name.
9. I have my dictionary, and Sara has \_\_\_\_\_. But Nick doesn't have \_\_\_\_\_.
10. My friend James enjoyed \_\_\_\_\_ at Mike's house yesterday. When I talked to \_\_\_\_\_ on the phone, \_\_\_\_\_ told me about \_\_\_\_\_ day with Mike. \_\_\_\_\_ and Mike played basketball, ate junk food, and played computer games. I like James a lot. I'm going to spend next Saturday with Mike and \_\_\_\_\_ at a science fair.
11. Karen has a bandage on \_\_\_\_\_ thumb because \_\_\_\_\_ accidentally cut \_\_\_\_\_ with a hatchet while \_\_\_\_\_ was cutting wood for \_\_\_\_\_ fireplace.
12. We don't agree with you. You have \_\_\_\_\_ opinion, and we have \_\_\_\_\_.

◇ PRACTICE 29. Singular forms of OTHER. (Chart 6-14)

Directions: Write **another** or **the other** under each picture.



1. Four boxes: one      another      another      the other



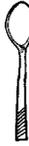
2. Three circles: one      \_\_\_\_\_      \_\_\_\_\_



3. Five flowers: one \_\_\_\_\_



4. Two cups: one \_\_\_\_\_



5. Six spoons: one \_\_\_\_\_

◇ PRACTICE 30. Singular forms of OTHER. (Chart 6-14)

Directions: Complete the sentences with *another* or *the other*.

- There are many kinds of animals in the world. The elephant is one kind. The tiger is another.
- There are two colors on this page. One is white. The other is black.
- There are two women in Picture A. One is Ann. \_\_\_\_\_ is Sara.



- There are three men in Picture B. One is Alex. \_\_\_\_\_ one is Mike.
- In Picture B, Alex and Mike are smiling. \_\_\_\_\_ man looks sad.
- There are three men in Picture B. All three have common first names. One is named Alex.
  - \_\_\_\_\_ is named David.
  - The name of \_\_\_\_\_ one is Mike.

7. There are many common English names for men. Alex is one.
  - a. Mike is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - b. David is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - c. John is \_\_\_\_\_ common name.
  - d. Joe is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - e. What is \_\_\_\_\_ common English name for a man?
8. Alex's bicycle was run over by a truck and destroyed. He needs to get \_\_\_\_\_ one.
9. The Smiths have two bicycles. One belongs to Mr. Smith. \_\_\_\_\_ bike belongs to Mrs. Smith.
10. There are three books on my desk. Two of them are dictionaries. \_\_\_\_\_ one is a telephone directory.
11. The puppy chewed up my telephone directory, so I went to the telephone company to get \_\_\_\_\_ phone book.

◇ PRACTICE 31. Plural forms of OTHER. (Chart 6-15)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with *the other*, *the others*, *other*, or *others*.

1. There are four common nicknames for "Robert." One is "Bob." Another is "Bobby."  
     The others are "Robbie" and "Rob."
2. There are five English vowels. One is "a." Another is "e." \_\_\_\_\_ are "i," "o," and "u."
3. There are many consonants in English. The letters "b" and "c" are consonants.  
     \_\_\_\_\_ are "d," "f," and "g."
4. Some people are tall, and \_\_\_\_\_ are short. Some people are neither tall nor short.
5. Some people are tall, and \_\_\_\_\_ people are short.
6. Some animals are huge. \_\_\_\_\_ are tiny.
7. Some animals are huge. \_\_\_\_\_ animals are tiny.
8. Some ships are fueled by petroleum. \_\_\_\_\_ are propelled by atomic power.
9. Some boats are used for pleasure. \_\_\_\_\_ boats are used for commercial fishing.

10. Of the twenty students in the class, eighteen passed the exam. \_\_\_\_\_ failed.
11. Out of the twenty students in the class, only two failed the exam. \_\_\_\_\_ students passed.
12. Our physical education class was divided into two groups. Half of the students stayed inside and played basketball. \_\_\_\_\_ students went outside and played soccer.
13. The telephone and the automobile are twentieth-century inventions. \_\_\_\_\_ are the computer, television, and the airplane. Can you name \_\_\_\_\_ twentieth-century inventions?
14. If you really hate your job, why don't you look for \_\_\_\_\_ one? You don't have to be a dishwasher all your life. There are lots of \_\_\_\_\_ jobs in the world.
15. An automobile consists of many parts. The motor is one, and the steering wheel is \_\_\_\_\_. \_\_\_\_\_ parts are the brakes, the trunk, and the fuel tank.
16. The students in our class had two choices: basketball or soccer. Half of the students played basketball. \_\_\_\_\_ played soccer.
17. Here, children. I have two coins. One is for you, Tommy. \_\_\_\_\_ is for you, Jimmy.

◇ PRACTICE 32. Summary: forms of OTHER. (Charts 6-14 → 6-16)

*Directions:* Choose the correct completion.

*Example:* Copper is one kind of metal. Silver is \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) another      B. the other      C. the others      D. others      E. other

1. Summer is one season. Spring is \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. another      B. the other      C. the others      D. others      E. other
2. There are four seasons. Summer is one. \_\_\_\_\_ are winter, fall, and spring.  
A. Another      B. The other      C. The others      D. Others      E. Other
3. What's your favorite season? Some people like spring the best. \_\_\_\_\_ think fall is the nicest season.  
A. Another      B. The other      C. The others      D. Others      E. Other
4. My eyes are different colors. One eye is gray, and \_\_\_\_\_ is green.  
A. another      B. the other      C. the others      D. others      E. other

5. There are two reasons not to buy that piece of furniture. One is that it's expensive. \_\_\_\_\_ is that it's not well made.  
A. Another    B. The other    C. The others    D. Others    E. Other
6. Alex failed his English exam, but his teacher is going to give him \_\_\_\_\_ chance to pass it.  
A. another    B. the other    C. the others    D. others    E. other
7. Some people drink tea in the morning. \_\_\_\_\_ have coffee. I prefer fruit juice.  
A. Another    B. The other    C. The others    D. Others    E. Other
8. There are five digits in the number 20,000. One digit is a 2. \_\_\_\_\_ digits are all zeroes.  
A. Another    B. The other    C. The others    D. Others    E. Other

◇ PRACTICE 33. Cumulative review. (Chapter 6)

*Directions:* Circle the correct answer.

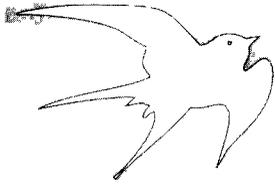
1. The people at the market *is, (are)* friendly.
2. How many *potato, potatoes* should I cook for dinner tonight?
3. I wanted to be alone, so I worked *myself, by myself*.
4. The twins were born *in, on* December 25 *on, at* midnight.
5. All the workers at our company get *four-week, four-weeks* vacations.
6. The bus driver waited for *we, us* at the bus stop.
7. Can you tell a good book by *its, it's* title?
8. This is *our, ours* dessert, and that is *your, yours*.
9. Jack has so much confidence. He really believes in *him, himself*.
10. These bananas are OK, but *the other, the others* were better.

◇ PRACTICE 34. Cumulative review. (Chapter 6)

*Directions:* Correct the errors.

1. Look at those beautiful~~y~~ mountains!
2. The children played on Saturday afternoon at the park a game.
3. There are two horse, several sheeps, and a cow in the farmers field.
4. The owner of the store is busy in the moment.
5. The teacher met her's students at the park after school.
6. Everyone want peace in the world.

7. I grew up in a city very large.
8. This apple tastes sour. Here's some more, so let's try the other one.
9. Some tree lose their leaf in the winter.
10. I am going to wear my shirt is brown to the party.
11. I hurt meself at work last week.
12. Our neighbors invited my friend and I to visit they.
13. My husband boss works for twelve hour every days.
14. The students couldn't find they're books.
15. I always read magazines articles while I'm in the waiting room at my dentists office.



# CHAPTER 7

## Modal Auxiliaries

### ◇ PRACTICE 1. Preview: modal auxiliaries. (Chapter 7)

*Directions:* The words in **boldfaced italics** are modal auxiliaries. Read the passage and then answer the questions.

(1) Everyone in my family **has to** contribute to keeping order in our house. My parents  
(2) assign chores to my brother Joe and me. We **must** do these tasks every day. Sometimes if  
(3) one of us is busy and **can't** do a chore, the other one **may** take care of it.

(4) For example, last Friday it was Joe's turn to wash the dishes after dinner. He said he  
(5) **couldn't** wash them because he had to hurry to school for a basketball game. Joe asked me,  
(6) "**Will** you do the dishes for me, please? I promise to do them for you tomorrow when it's  
(7) your turn. **I've got to** get to school for the game." I reluctantly agreed to do Joe's chore  
(8) and washed the dishes after dinner.

(9) But the next night, Joe "forgot" that we had traded days. When I reminded him to  
(10) wash the dishes, he said, "Who, me? It's not my turn. You **have to** do the dishes tonight.  
(11) It's your turn."

(12) I think I'd **better** write our agreement down when I do my brother Joe's chores, and I  
(13) **ought to** give him a copy of the agreement. Joe has a short memory, especially if he **has to**  
(14) wash dishes or take out the  
(15) garbage. I **should** write  
(16) everything down. In fact, I  
(17) **might** write out a weekly  
(18) schedule. Then, we **could**  
(19) write our names in and change  
(20) assignments if necessary. That  
(21) **ought to** solve the problem.  
(22) I **must** remember to do that.



What is the meaning of these modal auxiliaries from the sentences in the passage? Circle the answer that is closest in meaning to the modal.

MODAL AUXILIARY	MEANING			
(1) Everyone <b>has to</b> contribute . . . .	<u>must</u>	should	is able to	might
(3) . . . and <b>can't</b> do a chore . . . .	must not	should not	is not able to	might not
(3) . . . the other one <b>may</b> take care of it.	must	should	is able to	might
(5) He <b>couldn't</b> wash them . . . .	must not	should not	was not able to	might not
(7) I've <b>got to</b> get to school . . . .	must	should	are able to	might
(10) You <b>have to</b> do the dishes . . . .	must	should	are able to	might
(12) I think I'd <b>better</b> write . . . .	must	should	am able to	might
(13) . . . and I <b>ought to</b> give him . . . .	must	should	am able to	may
(13) . . . especially if he <b>has to</b> . . . .	must	should	is able to	may
(17) In fact, I <b>might</b> write out . . . .	must	should	am able to	may
(21) . . . That <b>ought to</b> solve the problem.	must	should	is able to	may

◇ PRACTICE 2. The form of modal auxiliaries. (Chart 7-1)

Directions: Add the word *to* where necessary. Write  $\emptyset$  if *to* is not necessary.

- Mr. Alvarez spilled tea on his shirt. He must  $\emptyset$  change clothes before dinner.
- Mr. Alvarez has to change his shirt before dinner.
- Tom and I might \_\_\_\_\_ play tennis after work tomorrow.
- You had better \_\_\_\_\_ see a doctor.
- Would you \_\_\_\_\_ speak more slowly, please?
- The students have \_\_\_\_\_ take a test next Friday.
- Everyone should \_\_\_\_\_ pay attention to local politics.
- Everyone ought \_\_\_\_\_ participate in local government.
- May I please \_\_\_\_\_ have the salt and pepper? Thanks.
- You'd better not \_\_\_\_\_ come to the meeting late. The boss will \_\_\_\_\_ be angry if you're late.
- I've had a lot of trouble sleeping the last few nights. I've got \_\_\_\_\_ get a good night's sleep! I can barely \_\_\_\_\_ stay awake in class.
- We may \_\_\_\_\_ go to Argentina for our vacation.
- Will you please \_\_\_\_\_ mail this letter for me?

◇ PRACTICE 3. Expressing ability. (Chart 7-2)

Directions: Choose one of the words in parentheses to complete each sentence.

1. (*giraffe, zebra*) A zebra **can't stretch** its neck to reach the tops of trees.
2. (*bee, cat*) A single \_\_\_\_\_ **can kill** a thousand mice in a year.
3. (*Rabbits, Elephants*) \_\_\_\_\_ **can crush** small trees under their huge feet.
4. (*Monkeys, Chickens*) \_\_\_\_\_ **can climb** trees with ease.
5. (*ducks, camels*) Did you know that \_\_\_\_\_ **can survive** seventeen days without any water at all?
6. (*cow, bull*) One \_\_\_\_\_ **can produce** as much as 8,500 lbs. (3,860 kgs) of milk in a year.
7. (*horse, cat*) A person **can sit** on a \_\_\_\_\_ without hurting it.
8. (*donkey, snake*) A \_\_\_\_\_ **can carry** heavy loads on its back.
9. (*squirrel, polar bear*) A \_\_\_\_\_ **can stay** high up in the trees for weeks, leaping from branch to branch.
10. (*people, ants*) Most \_\_\_\_\_ **can lift** objects that are ten times heavier than their own bodies.
11. (*baby, student*) When I was a \_\_\_\_\_, I **could sleep** most of the day.
12. (*men, women*) One hundred years ago, \_\_\_\_\_ **couldn't vote** in many countries, but now they can.

◇ PRACTICE 4. Expressing ability and possibility. (Charts 7-2 and 7-3)

Directions: Complete the sentences with *can/can't*, *may/might*, or *may not/might not*.

1. Jessica hasn't made up her mind about where to go to school. She may/might attend Duke University, or she may not/might not. She just doesn't know yet.
2. Alice is a runner. She likes to compete, but two days ago she broke her ankle when she fell. She can't run in the race tomorrow.
3. A: Carol's in New York now. Is she going to return to school in Chicago in September?  
B: It depends. If she \_\_\_\_\_ find a job in New York, she'll stay there this fall. Who knows? She \_\_\_\_\_ stay there through the winter and spring, too. If she likes her job, she \_\_\_\_\_ want to return to school in Chicago next year at all. We'll have to wait and see.

4. A: Do you remember a famous actor named Basil Rathbone? Is he still making movies?  
 B: I think he \_\_\_\_\_ be dead.
5. Jodie finished law school last month, but she hasn't taken her exams yet. She \_\_\_\_\_ practice law until she passes them.
6. Jack and Jenny haven't decided what kind of wedding to have. They \_\_\_\_\_ have a large, formal celebration, or they \_\_\_\_\_ have a small, quiet ceremony.
7. My roommate is planning to go sailing tomorrow, but he needs at least one other person to help him sail the boat. If no one is available, he \_\_\_\_\_ take it out.

◇ PRACTICE 5. Expressing possibility. (Chart 7-3)

Directions: Rewrite the sentences using the words in parentheses.

1. Maybe I will take a nap. (*might*) → I might take a nap.
2. She might be sick. (*maybe*) → Maybe she is sick.
3. There may be time later. (*maybe*) → \_\_\_\_\_
4. Maybe our team will win. (*may*) → \_\_\_\_\_
5. You may be right. (*might*) → \_\_\_\_\_
6. Maybe we'll hear soon. (*may*) → \_\_\_\_\_
7. It might rain. (*may*) → \_\_\_\_\_
8. Maybe it will snow. (*might*) → \_\_\_\_\_
9. She might come tomorrow. (*maybe*) → \_\_\_\_\_
10. She might be at home right now. (*maybe*) → \_\_\_\_\_

◇ PRACTICE 6. Expressing possibility and permission. (Chart 7-3)

Directions: Decide if the meaning of the modal verb is *possibility* or *permission*.

MODAL VERB	MEANING	
1. Both of my grandparents are retired. They like to travel. They <b>may travel</b> overseas next summer.	<u>possibility</u>	<i>permission</i>
2. They <b>may take</b> their two grandchildren with them.	<i>possibility</i>	<i>permission</i>
3. A: Yes, Tommy, you <b>may play</b> outdoors until dinner. B: Okay, Mom.	<i>possibility</i>	<i>permission</i>
4. A: What's wrong with the dog's foot? B: He <b>may have</b> an infection.	<i>possibility</i>	<i>permission</i>

**MODAL VERB**

**MEANING**

- |  |                    |                   |
|--|--------------------|-------------------|
| 5. The dog has an infected foot. He <b><i>might need</i></b> to go to the vet.   | <i>possibility</i> | <i>permission</i> |
| 6. A: Susie, no, you <b><i>can't stay</i></b> overnight at your friend's house tonight.<br>B: Then how about my friend staying overnight here?<br>A: No. | <i>possibility</i> | <i>permission</i> |
| 7. It <b><i>may be</i></b> hot and humid all weekend.  | <i>possibility</i> | <i>permission</i> |
| 8. Johnny, you <b><i>may not stay</i></b> up until midnight. Your bedtime is nine o'clock.   | <i>possibility</i> | <i>permission</i> |
| 9. I <b><i>might not stay</i></b> up to watch the end of the game on TV. I'm sleepy.   | <i>possibility</i> | <i>permission</i> |
| 10. Children, you <b><i>cannot go</i></b> out now. It's dark outside, and dinner is ready.   | <i>possibility</i> | <i>permission</i> |

◇ **PRACTICE 7. Meanings of COULD. (Charts 7-2 and 7-4)**

*Directions:* Choose the expression that has the same meaning as the *italicized* verb.

1. "How long will it take you to paint two small rooms?"  
"I'm not sure. If the job is not complicated, I *could finish* by Thursday."  
a. was able to finish                      **(b.)** might finish
2. I think I'll take my umbrella. It *could rain* today.  
a. was able to rain                      b. might rain
3. My niece *could read* by the time she was four years old.  
a. was able to read                      b. might read
4. You *could see* that the little boy was unhappy because of the sad expression in his eyes.  
a. were able to see                      b. might see
5. Sally is in excellent condition. I think she *could win* the 10-kilometer race on Saturday.  
a. was able to win                      b. might win
6. John *couldn't drive* for a month because of a broken ankle, but now it's healed.  
a. wasn't able to drive                      b. might not drive
7. Jane *could arrive* before dinner, but I don't really expect her until nine or later.  
a. was able to arrive                      b. might arrive
8. John was in an accident, but he *couldn't remember* how he had hurt himself.  
a. wasn't able to remember                      b. might not remember

◇ PRACTICE 8. Polite questions. (Charts 7-5 and 7-6)

Directions: Circle the correct completion.

1. A: This desk is too heavy for me. *May*, **Can** you help me lift it?  
B: Sure. No problem.
2. A: Ms. Milano, *may*, *will* I be excused from class early today? I have a doctor's appointment.  
B: Yes. You may leave early. That would be fine.
3. A: I'm having trouble with this word processor. *Would*, *May* you show me how to set the margins one more time?  
B: Of course.
4. A: Andrew, *would*, *could* I speak to you for a minute?  
B: Sure. What's up?
5. A: I can't meet David's plane tonight. *Can*, *May* you pick him up?  
B: Sorry. I have to work tonight. Call Uncle Frank. Maybe he can pick David up.
6. A: *Could*, *May* you please take these letters to the post office before noon?  
B: I'd be happy to, sir. Hmm. It's almost eleven-thirty. *May*, *Will* I leave for the post office now and then go to lunch early?  
A: That would be fine.
7. A: Marilyn, are you feeling okay? *Would*, *Can* I get you something?  
B: *May*, *Will* you get me a glass of water, please?  
A: Right away.
8. A: Darn these medicine bottles! I can never get the cap off!  
B: *Would*, *Could* I open that for you?  
A: Thanks. I'd really appreciate it.

◇ PRACTICE 9. Polite questions. (Charts 7-5 and 7-6)

Directions: Check all the modal auxiliaries that correctly complete each question.

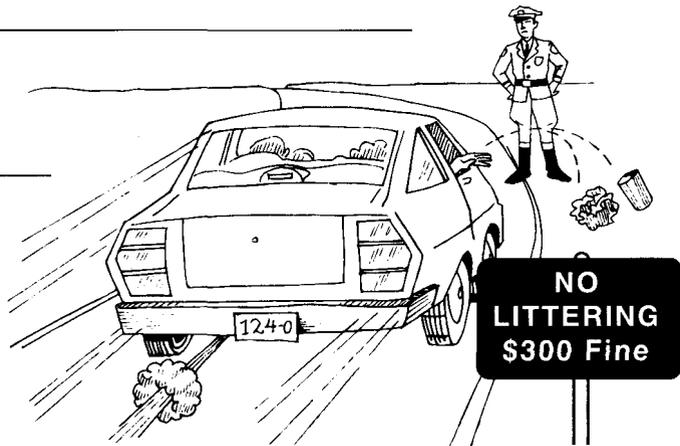
1. It's cold in here. \_\_\_\_\_ you please close the door?  
\_\_\_\_\_ May       Could       Can       Would
2. Oh, my pen's out of ink. \_\_\_\_\_ I borrow yours?  
\_\_\_\_\_ Could      \_\_\_\_\_ May      \_\_\_\_\_ Will      \_\_\_\_\_ Can
3. I can't lift this box by myself. \_\_\_\_\_ you help me carry it?  
\_\_\_\_\_ Would      \_\_\_\_\_ Could      \_\_\_\_\_ May      \_\_\_\_\_ Will
4. Hello. \_\_\_\_\_ I help you find something in the store?  
\_\_\_\_\_ Can      \_\_\_\_\_ Would      \_\_\_\_\_ May      \_\_\_\_\_ Could
5. The store closes in ten minutes. \_\_\_\_\_ you please bring all your purchases to the counter?  
\_\_\_\_\_ Will      \_\_\_\_\_ May      \_\_\_\_\_ Can      \_\_\_\_\_ Could

◇ PRACTICE 10. Expressing advice. (Chart 7-7)

Directions: Complete the sentences. Use **should** or **shouldn't** and the expressions in the list or your own words.

<i>be cruel to animals</i>	<i>give too much homework</i>
<i>always be on time for an appointment</i>	<i>miss any classes</i>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <i>drive a long distance</i>	<i>quit</i>
<i>exceed the speed limit</i>	<i>throw trash out of your car window</i>

- If you are tired, you shouldn't drive a long distance.
- Cigarette smoking is dangerous to your health. You \_\_\_\_\_.
- A good driver \_\_\_\_\_.
- A teacher \_\_\_\_\_.
- A student \_\_\_\_\_.
- Animals have feelings, too. You \_\_\_\_\_.
- It is important to be punctual. You \_\_\_\_\_.
- Littering is against the law. You \_\_\_\_\_.



◇ PRACTICE 11. Expressing advice. (Chart 7-7)

Directions: Choose the completion from the given list that seems best to you.

<i>call the landlord and complain</i>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <i>soak it in cold water</i>
<i>eat it</i>	<i>take it back to the store</i>
<i>find a new girlfriend</i>	<i>try to fix it herself</i>
<i>get a job</i>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <i>wash it in hot water</i>
<i>send it back to the kitchen</i>	

- A: I cut my finger. I got blood on my shirt. My finger is okay, but I'm worried about my shirt. What should I do?

B: You should soak it in cold water.

You shouldn't wash it in hot water.
- A: Ann bought a new tape recorder. After two days, it stopped working. What should she do?

B: She ought to \_\_\_\_\_.

She shouldn't \_\_\_\_\_.

3. A: I don't have any money. I'm broke and can't pay my rent. I don't have enough money to pay my bills. What should I do?  
B: You'd better \_\_\_\_\_.
4. A: There's no hot water in my apartment. What should I do?  
B: You should \_\_\_\_\_.
5. A: I asked Mary to marry me five times. She said no every time. What should I do?  
B: Maybe you should \_\_\_\_\_.
6. A: Helen is in a restaurant. She has ordered a salad. There's a big dead fly in it. What should she do?  
B: She should \_\_\_\_\_.  
She shouldn't \_\_\_\_\_.

◇ PRACTICE 12. Expressing advice. (Charts 7-7 and 7-8)

*Directions:* Choose the correct completion.

1. Danny doesn't feel well. He \_\_\_\_\_ see a doctor.  
A. should      B. ought      C. had
2. Danny doesn't feel well. He \_\_\_\_\_ better see a doctor.  
A. should      B. ought      C. had
3. Danny doesn't feel well. He \_\_\_\_\_ to see a doctor.  
A. should      B. ought      C. had
4. It's extremely warm in here. We \_\_\_\_\_ open some windows.  
A. should      B. ought      C. had
5. It's really cold in here. We \_\_\_\_\_ to close some windows.  
A. should      B. ought      C. had
6. There's a police car behind us. You \_\_\_\_\_ better slow down!  
A. should      B. ought      C. had
7. People who use public parks \_\_\_\_\_ clean up after themselves.  
A. should      B. ought      C. had
8. I have no money left in my bank account. I \_\_\_\_\_ better stop charging things on my credit card.  
A. should      B. ought      C. had
9. It's going to be a formal dinner and dance. You \_\_\_\_\_ to change clothes.  
A. should      B. ought      C. had
10. This library book is overdue. I \_\_\_\_\_ better return it today.  
A. should      B. ought      C. had

◇ PRACTICE 13. Expressing necessity. (Chart 7-9)

Directions: Choose the correct completion.

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ to wash the dishes after dinner last night. It was my turn.  
A. have      B. has      C. had      D. must
2. Bye! I'm leaving now. I \_\_\_\_\_ got to take this package to the post office.  
A. have      B. has      C. had      D. must
3. I know you didn't mean what you said. You \_\_\_\_\_ think before you speak!  
A. have      B. has      C. had      D. must
4. Yesterday everyone in the office \_\_\_\_\_ to leave the building for a fire drill. I'm glad it wasn't a real fire.  
A. have      B. has      C. had      D. must
5. Janet \_\_\_\_\_ to take an educational psychology course next semester. It's a required course.  
A. have      B. has      C. had      D. must
6. Pete, Chris, and Anna \_\_\_\_\_ to stay after class this afternoon. Professor Irwin wants them to help him grade papers.  
A. have      B. has      C. had      D. must
7. Mr. Silva, you \_\_\_\_\_ not be late today. The vice-president is coming in, and you're the only one who can answer her questions about the new project.  
A. have      B. has      C. had      D. must
8. Last year our town didn't have many tourists because of an oil spill. Business was bad. My wife and I own a small souvenir shop near the ocean. We \_\_\_\_\_ to borrow money from the bank last month to save our business.  
A. have      B. has      C. had      D. must

◇ PRACTICE 14. Expressing necessity. (Chart 7-9)

Directions: Complete the sentences with any appropriate forms of *have to* and *must*.

1. I can't go to the movie tonight because I have to/must study for final exams.
2. When I was in high school, I \_\_\_\_\_ work every evening at my parents' store.
3. If you want to travel to certain countries, you \_\_\_\_\_ get a visa.
4. I'm sorry I was absent from class yesterday, but I \_\_\_\_\_ go to a funeral.
5. Erica won't be in her office tomorrow afternoon because she \_\_\_\_\_ pick her brother up at the airport.
6. When I worked in my uncle's restaurant, I \_\_\_\_\_ wash dishes and clear tables.
7. If you want to enter the university, you \_\_\_\_\_ take an entrance exam.
8. We wanted to go bike riding along the river yesterday, but we \_\_\_\_\_ stay home because the weather was awful.

◇ PRACTICE 15. Necessity: MUST, HAVE TO, HAVE GOT TO. (Chart 7-9)

Directions: Circle the correct verb.

1. Last week, John *must*, (had to) interview five people for the new management position.
2. Professor Drake *had got to*, *had to* cancel several lectures when she became ill.
3. Why did you *have to*, *had to* leave work early?
4. I *must*, *had to* take my daughter to the airport yesterday.
5. Where did John *have to*, *had to* go for medical help yesterday?
6. We *had to*, *had got to* contact a lawyer last week about a problem with our neighbors.

◇ PRACTICE 16. Necessity: MUST, HAVE TO, HAVE GOT TO. (Chart 7-9)

Directions: Write the past tense of the verb in *italics*.

1. I *have to study* for my medical school exams.  
PAST: I had to study for my medical school exams.
2. We *have to turn off* our water because of a leak.  
PAST: We \_\_\_\_\_ our water because of a leak.
3. Do you *have to work* over the holidays?  
PAST: \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ over the holidays?
4. Jerry *has got to see* the dentist twice this week.  
PAST: Jerry \_\_\_\_\_ the dentist twice last month.
5. Who *has got to be* in early for work this week?  
PAST: Who \_\_\_\_\_ in early for work last week?
6. The bank *must close* early today.  
PAST: The bank \_\_\_\_\_ early yesterday.

◇ PRACTICE 17. Expressing lack of necessity and prohibition. (Chart 7-10)

Directions: Complete the sentences with *don't/doesn't have to* or *must not*.

1. The soup is too hot. You must not eat it yet. Wait for it to cool.
2. You don't have to have soup for lunch. You can have a sandwich if you like.
3. The review class before the final exam is optional. We \_\_\_\_\_ go unless we want to.
4. Many vegetables can be eaten raw. You \_\_\_\_\_ cook them.
5. You \_\_\_\_\_ use a pencil to write a check because someone could change the amount you have written on it.

6. When the phone rings, you \_\_\_\_\_ answer it. It's up to you.
7. When you have a new job, you \_\_\_\_\_ be late the first day. In fact, it is a good idea to be a few minutes early.
8. A: I \_\_\_\_\_ forget to set my alarm for 5:30.  
 B: Why do you have to get up at 5:30?  
 A: I'm going to meet Ron at 6:00. We're going fishing.
9. You \_\_\_\_\_ play loud music late at night. The neighbors will call the police.
10. This box isn't as heavy as it looks. You \_\_\_\_\_ help me with it. Thanks anyway for offering to help.
11. Susan, you \_\_\_\_\_ go to the university. Your father and I think you should, but it's your choice.
12. People \_\_\_\_\_ spend their money foolishly if they want to stay out of financial trouble.
13. When you first meet someone, you \_\_\_\_\_ ask personal questions. For example, it's not polite to ask a person's age.
14. The nations of the world \_\_\_\_\_ stop trying to achieve total world peace.
15. My husband and I grow all of our own vegetables in the summer. We \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_ buy any vegetables at the market.



◇ PRACTICE 18. Expressing necessity, lack of necessity, and prohibition. (Charts 7-9 and 7-10)

*Directions:* Complete each sentence with a form of **have to** or **must**. Use the negative if necessary to make a sensible sentence.

1. Smoking in this building is prohibited. You must/have to extinguish your cigar.
2. Alan's company pays all of his travel expenses. Alan doesn't have to pay for his own plane ticket to the business conference in Amman, Jordan.
3. Our company provides free advice on the use of our products. You \_\_\_\_\_ pay us for the advice.
4. Everyone here \_\_\_\_\_ leave immediately! The building is on fire!
5. Lynn \_\_\_\_\_ attend the meeting tonight because she isn't working on the project that we're going to discuss. We're going to talk about raising money for the new library. Lynn isn't involved in that.
6. The construction company \_\_\_\_\_ finish the building by the end of the month. That's the date they promised, and they will lose a lot of money if they're late.
7. Please remember, you \_\_\_\_\_ call my house between three and four this afternoon. That's when the baby sleeps, and my mother will get upset if we wake him up.

◇ PRACTICE 19. Expressing necessity, lack of necessity, and prohibition. (Charts 7-9 and 7-10)

*Directions:* Write the phrases in the correct columns.

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ <i>fall asleep while driving</i></li> <li><i>cook every meal themselves</i></li> <li><i>say "sir" or "madam" to others</i></li> <li><i>eat and drink in order to live</i></li> <li><i>drive without a license</i></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>take other people's belongings</i></li> <li><i>pay taxes</i></li> <li><i>stay in their homes in the evening</i></li> <li><i>stop when they see a police car's lights behind them</i></li> </ul>
---	---

People have to/must . . . (necessary)	People must not . . . (DON'T!)	People don't have to . . . (not necessary)
	<i>fall asleep while driving</i>	

◇ PRACTICE 20. Logical conclusion or necessity. (Charts 7-9 and 7-11)

Directions: Write 1 if the modal **must** expresses a logical conclusion. Write 2 if the modal expresses necessity.

1 = logical conclusion.

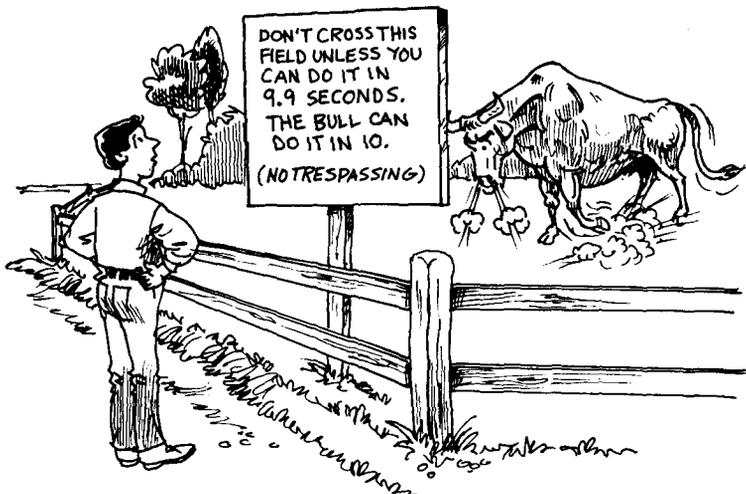
2 = necessity.

1.   2   You *must have* a passport to travel abroad.
2.   1   You *must like* to read. You have such a large library.
3.        Ellen *must like* fish. She buys it several times a week.
4.        You *must take off* your shoes before entering this room.
5.        The dessert *must be* good. It's almost gone.
6.        You *must try* this dessert. It's wonderful.
7.        Children *must stay* seated during the flight.
8.        You *must pay* in advance if you want a guaranteed seat for the performance.
9.        The cat *must be* afraid. She's hiding in the flower garden again.

◇ PRACTICE 21. Imperative sentences. (Chart 7-12)

Directions: Pretend that someone says the following sentences to **you**. Which verbs give **you** instructions? Underline the imperative verbs.

1. I'll be right back. Wait here.
2. Don't wait for Rebecca. She's not going to come.
3. Read pages thirty-nine to fifty-five before class tomorrow.
4. What are you doing? Don't put those magazines in the trash. I haven't read them yet.
5. Come in and have a seat. I'll be right with you.
- 6.



7. Don't just stand there! Do something!

8. A: Call me around eight, okay?

B: Okay.

9. Here, little Mike. Take this apple to Daddy. That's good. Go ahead. Walk toward Daddy. That's great! Now give him the apple. Wonderful!

10. Capitalize the first word of each sentence. Put a period at the end of a sentence. If the sentence is a question, use a question mark at the end.

◇ PRACTICE 22. Polite questions and imperatives. (Charts 7-5, 7-6, and 7-12)

Directions: Number the sentences in order of politeness. 1 = **most polite**.

1. 1 Could you open the door?

3 Open the door.

2 Can you open the door?

2. \_\_\_\_\_ Get the phone, please.

\_\_\_\_\_ Would you please get the phone?

\_\_\_\_\_ Get the phone.

\_\_\_\_\_ Can you get the phone?

3. \_\_\_\_\_ Can I borrow your eraser?

\_\_\_\_\_ Could I borrow your eraser?

4. \_\_\_\_\_ Hand me the calculator.

\_\_\_\_\_ Will you hand me the calculator, please?

\_\_\_\_\_ Would you hand me the calculator, please?

\_\_\_\_\_ Please hand me the calculator.

◇ PRACTICE 23. LET'S and WHY DON'T. (Chart 7-13)

Directions: Complete the sentences with verbs from the list. The verbs may be used more than once.

<i>ask</i>	<i>fly</i>	<i>pick up</i>	<i>see</i>
<i>call</i>	<i>get</i>	<i>play</i>	<i>stop</i>
<i>fill up</i>	<i>go</i>	<i>save</i>	<i>take</i>

1. A: There's a strong wind today. Let's go to the top of the hill on Cascade Avenue and fly our kite.

B: Sounds like fun. Why don't we see if Louie wants to come with us?

A: Okay. I'll call him.

2. A: What should we buy Mom for her birthday?

B: I don't know. Let's \_\_\_\_\_ her some perfume or something.

A: I have a better idea. Why don't we \_\_\_\_\_ her out for dinner and a movie?

3. A: My toe hurts. Let's not \_\_\_\_\_ dancing tonight.

B: Okay. Why don't we \_\_\_\_\_ chess instead?

4. A: Let's \_\_\_\_\_ a taxi from the airport to the hotel.  
 B: Why don't we \_\_\_\_\_ a bus and \_\_\_\_\_ ourselves some money?
5. A: We're almost out of gas. Why don't we \_\_\_\_\_ at a gas station and \_\_\_\_\_ before we drive the rest of the way to the beach?  
 B: Okay. Are you hungry? I am. Let's \_\_\_\_\_ something to eat too.  
 A: Great.
6. A: Let's \_\_\_\_\_ to a movie at the mall tonight.  
 B: I've already seen all the good movies there. What else can we do?  
 A: Well, Marika has a car. Why don't we \_\_\_\_\_ her and \_\_\_\_\_ if she wants to drive us into the city?  
 B: Okay. What's her number?

◇ PRACTICE 24. Stating preferences. (Chart 7-14)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with **prefer**, **like**, or **would rather**.

1. I prefer cold weather to hot weather.
2. A: What's your favorite fruit?  
 B: I like strawberries better than any other fruit.
3. Mary would rather save money than enjoy herself.
4. Unfortunately, many children \_\_\_\_\_ candy to vegetables.
5. A: Why isn't your brother going with us to the movie?  
 B: He \_\_\_\_\_ stay home and read than go out on a Saturday night.
6. A: Does Peter \_\_\_\_\_ football to baseball?  
 B: No. I think he \_\_\_\_\_ baseball better than football.  
 A: Then why didn't he go to the game yesterday?  
 B: Because he \_\_\_\_\_ watch sports on TV than go to a ball park.
7. I \_\_\_\_\_ jog in the morning than after work.
8. Heidi enjoys her independence. She is struggling to start her own business, but she \_\_\_\_\_ borrow money from the bank than ask her parents for help.

9. A: Do you want to go out to the Japanese restaurant for dinner?

B: That would be okay, but in truth I \_\_\_\_\_ Chinese food to Japanese food.

A: Really? I \_\_\_\_\_ Japanese food better than Chinese food. What shall we do?

B: Let's go to the Italian restaurant.

10. A: Mother, I can't believe you have another cat! Now you have four cats, two dogs, and three birds.

B: I know, dear. I can't help it. I love having animals around.

A: Honestly, Mother, I sometimes think you \_\_\_\_\_ animals to people.

B: Honestly, dear, sometimes I do.

◇ PRACTICE 25. Stating preferences. (Chart 7-14)

*Directions:* Use the words in parentheses to create a new sentence with the same meaning.

*Example:* Alex would rather swim than jog. (*prefer*)  
→ *Alex prefers swimming to jogging.*

*Example:* My son likes fish better than beef. (*would rather*)  
→ *My son would rather eat/have fish than beef.*

1. Kim likes salad better than dessert. (*prefer*)

2. In general, Nicole would rather have coffee than tea. (*like*)

3. Bill prefers teaching history to working as a business executive. (*would rather*)

4. When considering a pet, Sam prefers dogs to cats. (*like*)

5. On a long trip, Susie would rather drive than ride in the back seat. (*prefer*)

6. I like studying in a noisy room better than studying in a completely quiet room. (*would rather*)

7. Alex likes soccer better than baseball. (*would rather*)

◇ PRACTICE 26. Cumulative review. (Chapter 7)

Directions: Choose the best completion.

1. "I need the milk. \_\_\_\_\_ you get it out of the refrigerator for me?"  
"Sure."  
A. May                      B. Should                      C.  Could
2. "\_\_\_\_\_ you hand me that book, please? I can't reach it."  
"Sure. Here it is."  
A. Would                      B. Should                      C. Must
3. "What do you like the most about your promotion?"  
"I \_\_\_\_\_ get up at 5:30 in the morning anymore. I can sleep until 7:00."  
A. must not                      B. would rather                      C. don't have to
4. "Do you have a minute? I need to talk to you."  
"I \_\_\_\_\_ leave here in ten minutes. Can we make an appointment for another time?"  
A. have to                      B. could                      C. may
5. "Yes? \_\_\_\_\_ I help you?"  
"Yes. Do you have these sandals in a size eight?"  
A. Should                      B. Can                      C. Will
6. "Let's go bowling Saturday afternoon."  
"Bowling? I \_\_\_\_\_ play golf than go bowling."  
A. had better                      B. should                      C. would rather
7. "Diane found a library book on a bench at Central Park. Someone had left it there."  
"She \_\_\_\_\_ take it to any library in the city. I'm sure they'll be glad to have it back."  
A. will                      B. should                      C. would rather
8. "Beth got another speeding ticket yesterday."  
"Oh? That's not good. She \_\_\_\_\_ be more careful. She'll end up in serious trouble if she gets any more."  
A. would rather                      B. will                      C. ought to
9. "Are you going to take the job transfer when the company moves out of town?"  
"I \_\_\_\_\_ accept their offer if they are willing to pay all of my moving expenses."  
A. must not                      B. might                      C. maybe
10. "Are you going to admit your mistake to the boss?"  
"Yes. I \_\_\_\_\_ tell her about it than have her hear about it from someone else."  
A. can                      B. should                      C. would rather
11. "I just heard that there's an accident on the freeway. Traffic is a mess."  
"We \_\_\_\_\_ leave earlier than we planned."  
A. maybe                      B. had better                      C. prefer to
12. "Would you like to go with me to the Williams' wedding next month?"  
"I'm not sure. I \_\_\_\_\_ be too busy with school."  
A. will                      B. might                      C. maybe

13. "Do you need help washing the dishes?"  
 "Oh, no. You \_\_\_\_\_ help. There are enough people in the kitchen already."  
 A. don't have to      B. must not      C. may not
14. "Why are you working so many evenings and weekends?"  
 "I \_\_\_\_\_ increase sales or I'm in danger of losing my job."  
 A. may      B. can      C. have got to
15. "Are these gloves necessary?"  
 "Yes. You \_\_\_\_\_ use this chemical without gloves. It will burn your skin."  
 A. must not      B. don't have to      C. could not

◇ PRACTICE 27. Cumulative review. (Chapter 7)

*Directions:* Correct the errors.

1. Before I left on my trip last month, I ~~must~~ <sup>had to</sup> get a passport.
2. Could you to bring us more coffee, please?
3. Ben can driving, but he prefers take the bus.
4. My roommate maybe at home this evening.
5. A few of our classmates can't to come to the school picnic.
6. May you take our picture, please?
7. Jane's eyes are red, and she is yawning. She must is sleepy.
8. Jim would rather has Fridays off in the summer than a long vacation.
9. I must reading several lengthy books for my literature class.
10. Take your warm clothes with you. It will maybe snow.
11. When the baby went to the doctor last week, she must has several shots.
12. It's very cool in here. Please you turn up the heat.
13. You had better to call us before you come over. We're often away during the day.
14. The children would rather to see the circus than a baseball game.
15. It's such a gorgeous day. Why we don't go to a park or the beach?

◇ PRACTICE 28. Cumulative review. (Chapter 7)

*Directions:* The topic of this passage is writing a composition. Read the passage through completely to get the main ideas. Then read it again slowly and choose from the words in **boldface italics**.

**Writing a Composition**

(1) “What? Not another composition! I hate writing compositions. I’m not good at it.” Do you ever complain about having to write compositions in English class? A lot of students do. You **may, cannot** find it difficult and time-consuming, but you are learning a useful skill. The ability to write clearly **is, must be** important. It **can, must** affect your success in school and in your job. You **may, can** learn to write effectively by practicing. One of the best ways to practice your writing skills is to prepare compositions in a thoughtful, step-by-step process.

(2) The first step in writing a composition is to choose a subject that interests you. You **maybe, should** write about a subject you already know about or **can, have to** find out about through research. Writers **might, should** never pretend to be experts. For example, if you have never bought a car and are not knowledgeable about automobiles, you **should, should not** write an essay on what to look for when buying a car—unless, of course, you plan to research the subject in books and magazines and make yourself an expert. There is one topic about which you are the most knowledgeable expert in the world, and that topic **is, may be** yourself and your experiences. Many of the most interesting and informative compositions are based simply on a writer’s personal experience and observations. The questions you should ask yourself when choosing a topic are “Do I have any expertise in this subject?” and if not, “**Will, Can** I be able to find information about this subject?”

(3) After you have a topic and have researched it if necessary, start writing down your thoughts. These notes **must not, do not have to** be in any particular order. You **do not have to, could not** worry about grammar at this time. You **can, may** pay special attention to that later.

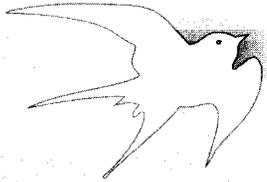
(4) Next, you **have to, may** organize your thoughts. You **cannot, might not** say everything possible about a subject in one composition. Therefore, you **may, must** carefully choose the ideas and information you want to include. Look over your notes, think hard about your topic, and find a central idea. Answer these questions: “What **am, do** I want my readers to understand? What **is, does** my main idea? How **can, am** I put this idea into one sentence?” Good writing depends on clear thinking. Writers **should, had better** spend more time thinking than actually writing. After you have a clearly formed main idea, choose relevant information from your notes to include in your composition.

(5) Before you begin to write the actual composition, you **ought to, can** know exactly what you want to say and how you are going to develop your ideas. Many good writers **prepare, prepared** an outline before they start. An outline is like a road map to keep you headed toward your destination without getting lost or sidetracked.

(6) There **are, ought to be** many ways to begin a composition. For example, you **might, must** begin with a story that leads up to your main idea. Or you **may, ought to** start with a question that you want your reader to think about, and then suggest an answer. **Maybe, May be** you **could, have to** introduce your topic by defining a key word. Simply presenting factual information **is, will be** another common way of beginning a composition. Your goals in your first paragraph **is, are** to catch your reader's attention and then state your main idea clearly and concisely. By the end of the first paragraph, your reader **may, should** understand what you are going to cover in the composition.

(7) If possible, write the entire first draft of your composition in a single sitting. After you have a first draft, the next step is rewriting. Every composition **could, should** go through several drafts. Rewriting is a natural part of the process of writing. You **will, do not have to** find many things that you **can change, changed** and improve when you reread your first draft. As you revise, you **will, should** be careful to include connecting words such as *then, next, for example, after, and therefore*. These words connect one idea to another so that your reader will not get lost. Also pay attention to grammar, punctuation, and spelling as you revise and rewrite. Your dictionary **should, can** be next to you, or if you are working on a computer, you **should, must** use the "spell checker."

(8) Writing **is, may be** a skill. It improves as you gain experience with the process of choosing a subject, jotting down thoughts, organizing them into a first draft, and then rewriting and polishing. At the end of this process, you **should, must** have a clear and well-written composition.



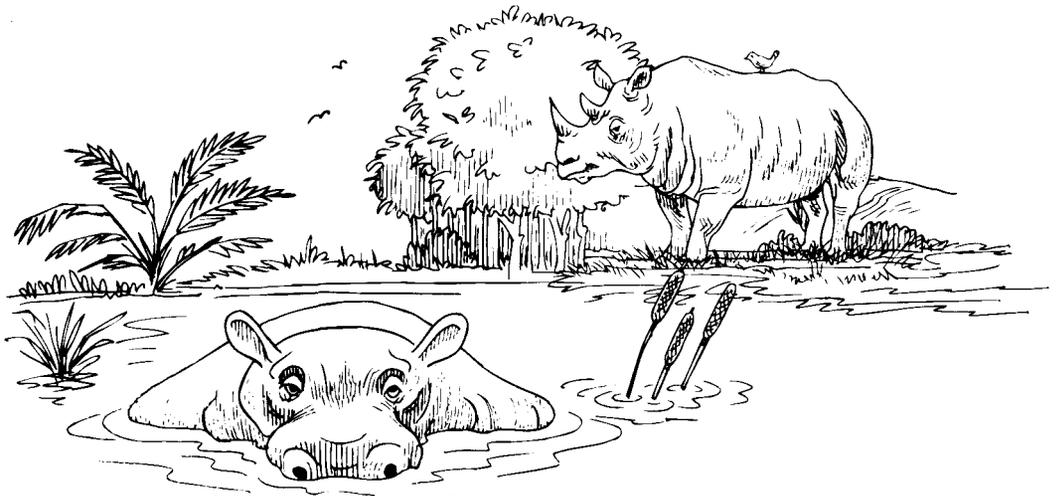
# CHAPTER 8

## Connecting Ideas

### ◇ PRACTICE 1. Connecting ideas with AND. (Chart 8-1)

*Directions:* Underline the words that are connected with **and**. Label these words as nouns, verbs, or adjectives.

1. The farmer has a <sup>noun + noun +</sup> cow, a goat, and a black <sup>noun</sup> horse.
2. Danny is a <sup>adjective + adjective</sup> bright and happy child.
3. I <sup>verb</sup> picked up the telephone and <sup>+ verb</sup> dialed Steve's number.
4. The cook washed the vegetables and put them in boiling water.
5. My feet were cold and wet.
6. Anita is responsible, considerate, and trustworthy.
7. The three largest land animals are the elephant, the rhinoceros, and the hippopotamus.
8. A hippopotamus rests in water during the day and feeds on land at night.



◇ PRACTICE 2. Punctuating items connected with AND. (Chart 8-1)

*Directions:* Add commas where necessary.

1. I opened the door and walked into the room. (*no commas*)
2. I opened the door, walked into the room, and sat down at my desk.
3. Their flag is green and black.
4. Their flag is green black and yellow.
5. Tom ate a sandwich and drank a glass of juice.
6. Tom made a sandwich poured a glass of juice and sat down to eat his lunch.
7. Ms. Parker is intelligent friendly and kind.
8. Mr. Parker is grouchy and unhappy.
9. Did you bring copies of the annual report for Sue Dan Joe and Mary?
10. I always read the newspaper and watch the TV news in the morning.
11. Can you watch television listen to the radio and read the newspaper at the same time?
12. Doctors save lives and relieve suffering.
13. Doctors save lives relieve suffering and cure diseases.
14. The restaurant served a five-course dinner: soup fish entree salad and dessert.
15. I had fish and a salad for dinner last night.
16. An invitation should include your name address the date the time the purpose of the party and any special activities such as swimming or dancing.

◇ PRACTICE 3. Punctuating sentences. (Chart 8-1)

*Directions:* Each of these sentences contains two independent clauses. Find the subject (S) and verb (V) of each clause. Add a comma or a period. Capitalize as necessary.

1. <sup>S</sup> Birds fly, <sup>S</sup> and <sup>V</sup> fish swim.

2. <sup>S</sup> Birds fly. <sup>S</sup> ~~F~~fish <sup>V</sup> swim.

3. Dogs bark lions roar.

4. Dogs bark and lions roar.

5. A week has seven days a year has 365 days.

6. A week has seven days and a year has 365 days.

7. Ahmed raised his hand and the teacher pointed at him.

8. Ahmed raised his hand the teacher pointed at him.

◇ PRACTICE 4. Punctuating sentences. (Chart 8-1)

*Directions:* Write "C" if the punctuation is correct. Write "I" if it is incorrect.

1. I Amy jogged along the road I rode my bicycle.
2. C Amy stopped after 20 minutes. I continued on for an hour.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Trained dogs can lie down and perform other tricks on command.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ My mother trained our dog to get the newspaper, my father trained it to bark at strangers.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ The river rose, it flooded the towns in the valley.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ The river and streams rose. They flooded the towns and farms in the valley.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Astrology is the study of the planets and their effect on our lives.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ Sharon reads her horoscope every day. She believes her life is shaped by the positions of the stars and planets.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ Sharon's children don't believe in astrology, they dismiss the information she gives them.

◇ PRACTICE 5. Using AND, BUT, and OR. (Chart 8-2)

*Directions:* Add commas where appropriate.

1. I talked to Amy for a long time, but she didn't listen.
2. I talked to Tom for a long time and asked him many questions. (*no change*)
3. Please call Jane or Ted.
4. Please call Jane and Ted.
5. Please call Jane Ted or Anna.
6. Please call Jane Ted and Anna.
7. I waved at my friend but she didn't see me.
8. I waved at my friend and she waved back.
9. I waved at my friend and smiled at her.
10. Was the test hard or easy?
11. My test was short and easy but Ali's test was hard.

◇ PRACTICE 6. Using AND, BUT, OR, and SO. (Charts 8-1 → 8-3)

*Directions:* Choose the correct completion.

1. I was tired, \_\_\_\_\_ I went to bed.  
A. but      B. or      C. so
2. I sat down on the sofa \_\_\_\_\_ opened the newspaper.  
A. but      B. and      C. so
3. The students were on time, \_\_\_\_\_ the teacher was late.  
A. but      B. or      C. so
4. I would like one pet. I'd like to have a dog \_\_\_\_\_ a cat.  
A. but      B. and      C. or
5. Our children are happy \_\_\_\_\_ healthy.  
A. but      B. and      C. or
6. I wanted a cup of tea, \_\_\_\_\_ I heated some water.  
A. but      B. and      C. so
7. The phone rang, \_\_\_\_\_ I didn't answer it.  
A. but      B. and      C. so
8. You can have an apple \_\_\_\_\_ an orange. Choose one.  
A. but      B. and      C. or

◇ PRACTICE 7. Using AND, BUT, OR, and SO. (Charts 8-1 → 8-3)

*Directions:* Add commas where appropriate. Some sentences need no commas.

1. I washed and dried the dishes. (*no change*)
2. I washed the dishes, and my son dried them.
3. I called their house but no one answered the phone.
4. He offered me an apple or a peach.
5. I bought some apples peaches and bananas.
6. I was hungry so I ate an apple.
7. Carlos was hungry and ate two apples.
8. My sister is generous and kind-hearted.
9. My daughter is affectionate shy independent and smart.
10. It started to rain so we went inside and watched television.

◇ PRACTICE 8. Using AND, BUT, OR, and SO. (Chart 8-1 → 8-3)

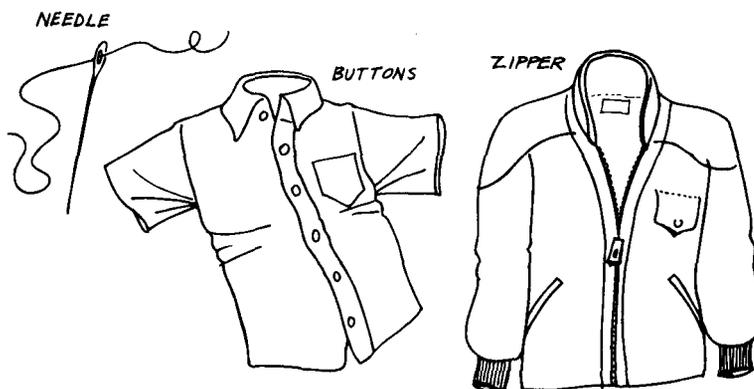
Directions: Add commas where appropriate. Some sentences need no commas.

1. Gina wants a job as an air traffic controller. Every air traffic controller worldwide uses English so it is important for Gina to become fluent in the language.
2. Gina has decided to take some intensive English courses at a private language institute but she isn't sure which one to attend. There are many schools available and they offer many different kinds of classes.
3. Gina has also heard of air traffic control schools that include English as part of their coursework but she needs to have a fairly high level of English to attend.
4. Gina needs to decide soon or the classes will be full. She's planning to visit her top three choices this summer and decide on the best one for her.

◇ PRACTICE 9. Using AND, BUT, OR, and SO. (Charts 8-1 → 8-3)

Directions: Add periods and capital letters as necessary.

1. There are over 100,000 kinds of flies they live throughout the world.  
→ *There are over 100,000 kinds of flies. They live throughout the world.*
2. I like to get mail from my friends and family mail is important to me.
3. We are all connected by our humanity we need to help each other we can all live in peace.
4. There was a bad flood in Hong Kong the streets became raging streams luckily no one died in the flood.
5. People have used needles since prehistoric times the first buttons appeared almost two thousand years ago zippers are a relatively recent invention the zipper was invented in 1890.



◇ PRACTICE 10. Using AND, BUT, OR, and SO. (Charts 8-1 → 8-3)

*Directions:* Add periods, commas, and capital letters as appropriate. Don't change any of the words or the order of the words.

1. James has a cold. <sup>H</sup>he needs to rest and drink plenty of fluids, so he should go to bed and drink water, fruit juices, or soda pop. <sup>H</sup>he needs to sleep a lot, so he shouldn't drink fluids with caffeine, such as tea or coffee.
2. My friend and I were tired so we went home early we wanted to stay until the end of the game but it got too late for us both of us had to get up early in the morning and go to our jobs.
3. The normal pulse for an adult is between 60 and 80 beats per minute but exercise nervousness excitement and a fever will all make a pulse beat faster the normal pulse for a child is around 80 to 90.
4. Many famous explorers throughout history set out on their hazardous journeys in search of gold silver jewels or other treasures but some explorers wanted only to discover information about their world.
5. Edward Fox was a park ranger for thirty-five years during that time, he was hit by lightning eight times the lightning never killed him but it severely burned his skin and damaged his hearing.
6. The Indian Ocean is bordered on four sides by the continents of Africa Asia Australia and Antarctica some of the important ports are Aden Bombay Calcutta and Rangoon.
7. The Indian Ocean has many fish and shellfish but it has less commercial fishing than the Atlantic or the Pacific the climate of the Indian Ocean is tropical so fish spoil quickly out of the water it is difficult and expensive for commercial fishing boats to keep fish fresh.

◇ PRACTICE 11. Using auxiliary verbs after BUT and AND. (Chart 8-4)

*Directions:* Practice using auxiliary verbs after **but** and **and**.

1. Dan didn't study for the test, but Amy did.
2. Alice doesn't come to class every day, but Julie \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Jack went to the movie last night, but I \_\_\_\_\_.

4. I don't live in the dorm, but Rob and Jim \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Rob lives in the dorm, and Jim \_\_\_\_\_ too.
6. I don't live in the dorm, and Carol \_\_\_\_\_ either.
7. My roommate was at home last night, but I \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Mr. Wong isn't here today, but Miss Choki \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Ted isn't here today, and Linda \_\_\_\_\_ either.
10. The teacher is listening to the tape, and the students \_\_\_\_\_ too.
11. Susan won't be at the meeting tonight, but I \_\_\_\_\_.
12. Susan isn't going to go to the meeting tonight, but I \_\_\_\_\_.
13. I'll be there, but she \_\_\_\_\_.
14. I'll be there, and Mike \_\_\_\_\_ too.
15. I can speak French, and my wife \_\_\_\_\_ too.
16. I haven't finished my work yet, but Erica \_\_\_\_\_.
17. I didn't finish my work last night, but Erica \_\_\_\_\_.
18. Jane would like a cup of coffee, and I \_\_\_\_\_ too.
19. I like rock music, and my roommate \_\_\_\_\_ too.
20. My son enjoys monster movies, but I \_\_\_\_\_.
21. Paul can't speak Spanish, and Larry \_\_\_\_\_ either.
22. My neighbor walks to work every morning, but I \_\_\_\_\_.
23. I am exhausted from the long trip, and my mother \_\_\_\_\_ too.
24. I don't have a dimple in my chin, but my brother \_\_\_\_\_.
25. I visited the museum yesterday, and my friend \_\_\_\_\_ too.
26. Water isn't solid, but ice \_\_\_\_\_.
27. Clouds aren't solid, and steam \_\_\_\_\_ either.

◇ PRACTICE 12. Auxiliary verbs after BUT and AND. (Chart 8-4)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences by using the word in *italics* and an appropriate auxiliary.

1. *Tom* Jack has a mustache, and so does Tom.  
Jack has a mustache, and Tom does too.
2. *Brian* Alex doesn't have a mustache, and neither \_\_\_\_\_.  
Alex doesn't have a mustache, and \_\_\_\_\_ either.
3. *I* Mary was at home last night, and so \_\_\_\_\_.  
Mary was at home last night, and \_\_\_\_\_ too.

4. *Oregon* California is on the West Coast, and so \_\_\_\_\_ .  
California is on the West Coast, and \_\_\_\_\_ too.
5. *Jean* I went to a movie last night, and so \_\_\_\_\_ .  
I went to a movie last night, and \_\_\_\_\_ too.
6. *Jason* I didn't study last night, and neither \_\_\_\_\_ .  
I didn't study last night, and \_\_\_\_\_ either.
7. *Rick* Jim can't speak Arabic, and neither \_\_\_\_\_ .  
Jim can't speak Arabic, and \_\_\_\_\_ either.
8. *Laura* I like to go to science fiction movies, and so \_\_\_\_\_ .  
I like to go to science fiction movies, and \_\_\_\_\_ too.
9. *Alice* I don't like horror movies, and neither \_\_\_\_\_ .  
I don't like horror movies, and \_\_\_\_\_ either.
10. *porpoises* Whales are mammals, and so \_\_\_\_\_ .  
Whales are mammals, and \_\_\_\_\_ too.



BLUE WHALE



PORPOISE

11. *I* Karen hasn't seen that movie yet, and neither \_\_\_\_\_ .  
Karen hasn't seen that movie yet, and \_\_\_\_\_ either.
12. *my brother* I have a car, and so \_\_\_\_\_ .  
I have a car, and \_\_\_\_\_ too.
13. *Erin* Rob won't join us for lunch, and neither \_\_\_\_\_ .  
Rob won't join us for lunch, and \_\_\_\_\_ either.

◇ PRACTICE 13. Using TOO, SO, EITHER, or NEITHER after AND. (Chart 8-5)

Directions: Complete the sentences.

**PART I.** Complete the sentences with **an auxiliary** + **TOO** or **EITHER**.

1. I **can't cook**, and my roommate can't either.
2. I **like** movies, and my wife \_\_\_\_\_.
3. I **don't like** salty food, and my wife \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Sugar **is** sweet, and honey \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Rosa Gomez **wasn't** in class yesterday, and Mr. Nazari \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Andy **didn't know** the answer to the question, and Tina \_\_\_\_\_.
7. I **couldn't understand** the substitute teacher, and Yoko \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Everyone in the room **laughed** at my foolish mistake, and I \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Fish **can't walk**, and snakes \_\_\_\_\_.
10. I **like** to fix things around the house, and Ted \_\_\_\_\_.
11. I'd **rather stay** home this evening, and my husband \_\_\_\_\_.

**PART II.** Complete the sentences with **SO** or **NEITHER** + **an auxiliary**.

12. Pasta **is** a famous Italian dish, and so is pizza.
13. Anteaters **don't have** teeth, and neither do most birds.
14. I **didn't go** to the bank, and \_\_\_\_\_ my husband.
15. Turtles **are** reptiles, and \_\_\_\_\_ snakes.
16. My sister **has** dark hair, and \_\_\_\_\_ I.
17. I'm **studying** English, and \_\_\_\_\_ Mr. Chu.
18. I'm **not** a native speaker of English, and \_\_\_\_\_ Mr. Chu.
19. Wood **burns**, and \_\_\_\_\_ paper.
20. Mountain climbing **is** dangerous, and \_\_\_\_\_ auto racing.
21. I've **never seen** a monkey in the wild, and \_\_\_\_\_ my children.
22. When we heard the hurricane warning, I **nailed** boards over my windows, and \_\_\_\_\_ all of my neighbors.
23. My brother and I studied chemistry together. I **didn't pass** the course, and \_\_\_\_\_ he.

◇ PRACTICE 14. Adverb clauses with BECAUSE. (Chart 8-6)

Directions: Underline the adverb clauses. Find the subject (S) and verb (V) of each adverb clause.

- 1. Mr. Tanaka was late for work because [he] [missed] the bus.
- 2. I closed the door because the room was cold.
- 3. Because I lost my umbrella, I got wet on the way home.
- 4. Joe didn't bring his book to class because he couldn't find it.
- 5. The teacher couldn't hear the question because the class was so noisy.
- 6. Because the ice cream was beginning to melt, I put it back in the freezer.

◇ PRACTICE 15. Adverb clauses with BECAUSE. (Chart 8-6)

Directions: Add periods, commas, and capital letters as necessary.

- 1. I opened the window because the room was hot. ~~w~~e felt more comfortable then.
- 2. Because his coffee was cold, Jack didn't finish it. ~~h~~e left it on the table and walked away.
- 3. Because the weather was bad we canceled our trip into the city we stayed home and watched TV.
- 4. Debbie is a cheerleader she woke up in the morning with a sore throat because she had cheered loudly at the basketball game.
- 5. Francisco is an intelligent and ambitious young man because he hopes to get a good job later in life he is working hard to get a good education now.



◇ PRACTICE 16. Adverb clauses with BECAUSE. (Chart 8-6)

Directions: Read each pair of phrases and circle the one that gives the reason (explains "why"). Then check the correct sentence.

- 1. *go on a diet*  
lose weight

Eric went on a diet because he wanted to lose weight.  
 Because Eric went on a diet, he wanted to lose weight.

- 2. *didn't have money*  
*couldn't buy food*

The family couldn't buy food because they didn't have money.  
 Because the family couldn't buy food, they didn't have money.

3. *have several children*  
*be very busy*

\_\_\_\_\_ Because our neighbors are very busy, they have several children.  
\_\_\_\_\_ Our neighbors are very busy because they have several children.

4. *go to bed*  
*be tired*

\_\_\_\_\_ I am tired because I am going to bed.  
\_\_\_\_\_ Because I am tired, I am going to bed.

5. *be in great shape*  
*exercise every day*

\_\_\_\_\_ Because Susan exercises every day, she is in great shape.  
\_\_\_\_\_ Susan exercises every day because she is in great shape.

6. *have a high fever*  
*go to the doctor*

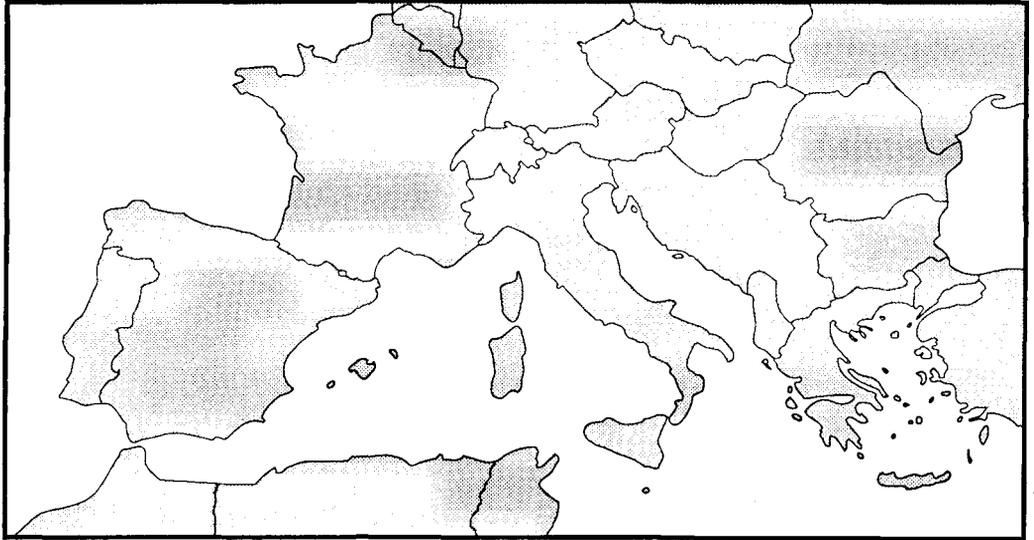
\_\_\_\_\_ Because Jennifer has a high fever, she is going to the doctor.  
\_\_\_\_\_ Jennifer has a high fever because she is going to the doctor.

◇ PRACTICE 17. Adverb clauses with BECAUSE. (Chart 8-6)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with *so* or *because*. Add commas where appropriate. Capitalize as necessary.

1. a. He was hungry so \_\_\_\_\_ he ate a sandwich.  
b. Because \_\_\_\_\_ he was hungry, he ate a sandwich.  
c. He ate a sandwich because \_\_\_\_\_ he was hungry.
2. a. \_\_\_\_\_ my sister was tired she went to bed.  
b. My sister went to bed \_\_\_\_\_ she was tired.  
c. My sister was tired \_\_\_\_\_ she went to bed.
3. a. \_\_\_\_\_ human beings have opposable thumbs they can easily pick things up and hold them.  
b. Human beings have opposable thumbs \_\_\_\_\_ they can easily pick things up and hold them.  
c. Human beings can easily pick things up and hold them \_\_\_\_\_ they have opposable thumbs.

4. a. Schoolchildren can usually identify Italy easily on a world map \_\_\_\_\_  
it is shaped like a boot.
- b. \_\_\_\_\_ Italy has the distinctive shape of a boot schoolchildren can  
usually identify it easily.
- c. Italy has the distinctive shape of a boot \_\_\_\_\_ schoolchildren can  
usually identify it easily on a map.



◇ PRACTICE 18. Adverb clauses with **EVEN THOUGH** and **ALTHOUGH**. (Chart 8-6)

*Directions:* Complete each sentence with the correct form of the verb in *italics*. Some verbs will be negative.

1. Even though I (*like*) like fish, I don't eat it much.
2. Even though I (*like*) don't like vegetables, I eat them every day.
3. Although my hairdresser (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_ expensive, I go to her once a week.
4. Even though the basketball game was over, the fans (*stay*) \_\_\_\_\_ in their seats cheering.
5. Although my clothes were wet from the rain, I (*change*) \_\_\_\_\_ them.
6. Even though Po studied for weeks, he (*pass*) \_\_\_\_\_ his exams.
7. Even though the soup was salty, everyone (*eat*) \_\_\_\_\_ it.
8. Although the roads (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_ icy, no one got in an accident.

◇ PRACTICE 19. Using BECAUSE and EVEN THOUGH. (Charts 8-6 and 8-7)

Directions: Choose the correct completion.

1. Even though I was hungry, I \_\_\_\_\_ a lot at dinner.  
A. ate                      **B. didn't eat**
2. Because I was hungry, I \_\_\_\_\_ a lot at dinner.  
A. ate                      B. didn't eat
3. Because I was cold, I \_\_\_\_\_ my coat.  
A. put on                  B. didn't put on
4. Even though I was cold, I \_\_\_\_\_ my coat.  
A. put on                  B. didn't put on
5. Even though Mike \_\_\_\_\_ sleepy, he stayed up to watch the end of the game on TV.  
A. was                      B. wasn't

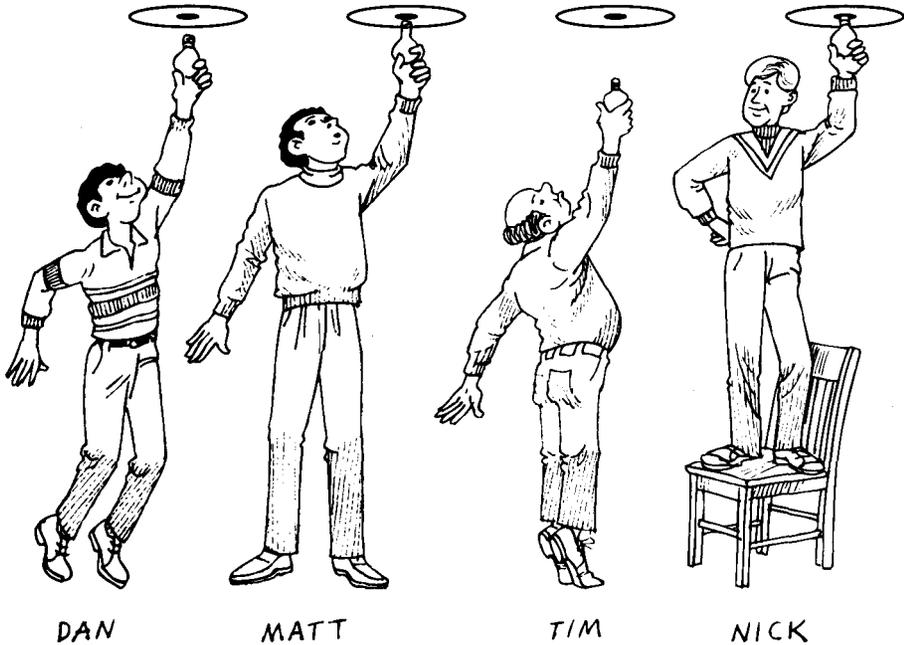


6. Because Linda \_\_\_\_\_ sleepy, she went to bed.  
A. was                      B. wasn't
7. Because Kate ran too slowly, she \_\_\_\_\_ the race.  
A. won                      B. didn't win
8. Even though Jessica ran fast, she \_\_\_\_\_ the race.  
A. won                      B. didn't win
9. I \_\_\_\_\_ the test for my driver's license because I wasn't prepared.  
A. failed                  B. didn't fail
10. I went to my daughter's school play because she \_\_\_\_\_ me to be there.  
A. wanted                  B. didn't want
11. I bought a new suit for the business trip even though I \_\_\_\_\_ it.  
A. could afford              B. couldn't afford
12. Even though I had a broken leg, I \_\_\_\_\_ to the conference in New York.  
A. went                      B. didn't go

◇ PRACTICE 20. Adverb clauses with BECAUSE. (Chart 8-6)

Directions: Complete the sentences by using *even though* or *because*.

1. Yuko went to a dentist because she had a toothache.
2. Colette didn't go to a dentist \_\_\_\_\_ she had a toothache.
3. Jennifer went to a dentist \_\_\_\_\_ she didn't have a toothache. She just wanted a checkup.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Dan is fairly tall, he can't reach the ceiling.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Matt is very tall, he can reach the ceiling.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ Tim isn't as tall as Matt, he can't reach the ceiling.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Nick isn't tall, he can reach the ceiling by standing on a chair.



8. Louie didn't iron his shirt \_\_\_\_\_ it was wrinkled.
9. Eric ironed his shirt \_\_\_\_\_ it was wrinkled.
10. I would like to raise tropical fish \_\_\_\_\_ it's difficult to maintain a fish tank in good condition.
11. The baby shoved the pills into his mouth \_\_\_\_\_ they looked like candy. \_\_\_\_\_ he ingested several pills, he didn't get sick. Today many pill bottles have child-proof caps \_\_\_\_\_ children may think pills are candy and poison themselves.

◇ PRACTICE 21. Using EVEN THOUGH/ALTHOUGH and BECAUSE. (Charts 8-6 and 8-7)

Directions: Choose the best completion.

Example: I gave him the money because \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. I didn't have any
- B. he had a lot of money
- Ⓒ. I owed it to him

1. Although \_\_\_\_\_, the hungry man ate every bit of it.
  - A. an apple is both nutritious and delicious
  - B. the cheese tasted good to him
  - C. the bread was old and stale
2. The nurse didn't bring Mr. Hill a glass of water even though \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. she was very busy
  - B. she forgot
  - C. he asked her three times
3. When she heard the loud crash, Marge ran outside in the snow although \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. her mother ran out with her
  - B. she wasn't wearing any shoes
  - C. she ran as fast as she could
4. Even though his shoes were wet and muddy, Brian \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. took them off at the front door
  - B. walked right into the house and across the carpet
  - C. wore wool socks

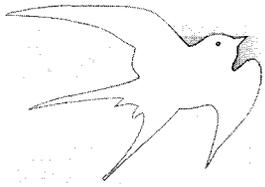


5. Robert ate dinner with us at our home last night. Although \_\_\_\_\_, he left right after dinner.
- A. he washed the dishes
  - B. there was a good movie at the local theater
  - C. I expected him to stay and help with the dishes
6. Alex boarded the bus in front of his hotel. He was on his way to the art museum. Because he \_\_\_\_\_, he asked the bus driver to tell him where to get off.
- A. was late for work and didn't want his boss to get mad
  - B. was carrying a heavy suitcase
  - C. was a tourist and didn't know the city streets very well
7. Although \_\_\_\_\_, Eric got on the plane.
- A. he is married
  - B. he is afraid of flying
  - C. the flight attendant welcomed him aboard
8. Foxes can use their noses to find their dinners because \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. they have a keen sense of smell
  - B. mice and other small rodents move very quickly
  - C. they have keen vision
9. Cats can't see red even though \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. it's a bright color
  - B. many animals are color-blind
  - C. mice aren't red
10. When I attended my first business conference out of town, I felt very uncomfortable during the social events because \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. we were all having a good time
  - B. I didn't know anyone there
  - C. I am very knowledgeable in my field
11. Although \_\_\_\_\_, Sue drives to work every day in the middle of rush hour.
- A. her car is in good condition
  - B. she isn't in a hurry
  - C. traffic is always heavy
12. Everyone listened carefully to what the speaker was saying even though \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. they had printed copies of the speech in their hands
  - B. she spoke loudly and clearly
  - C. the speech was very interesting
13. Talil works in the city, but once a month he visits his mother, who lives in the country. He must rent a car for these trips because \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. he rides the local bus
  - B. his mother doesn't drive
  - C. he doesn't own a car

◇ PRACTICE 22. Error analysis. (Chapter 8)

*Directions:* Correct the sentences.

1. I don't drink coffee, and my roommate <sup>doesn't</sup> ~~isn't~~ either.
2. The flight was overbooked, I had to fly on another airline.
3. Many people use computers for e-mail the Internet and word processing.
4. The room was stuffy and hot but I didn't close the window.
5. The baby woke up crying. Because her diaper was wet.
6. Even my father works two jobs, he always has time to play soccer or baseball on weekends with his family.
7. I saw a bad accident and my sister too.
8. Oscar always pays his bills on time but his brother wasn't.
9. Because my mother is afraid of heights, I took her up to the observation deck at the top of the building.
10. Janey doesn't like to get up early and either Joe.
11. Although it was raining quite hard, but we decided to go for a bike ride.
12. My mother and my father. They immigrated to this country 30 years ago.
13. Even though Maya is very intelligent, her parents want to put her in an advanced program at school.



# CHAPTER 9

## Comparisons

### ◇ PRACTICE 1. AS ... AS. (Chart 9-1)

Directions: Make comparisons using *as ... as*.

1. Rita is very busy. Jason is very busy.

→ Rita is (just) as busy as Jason (is).

2. Rita is not very busy at all. Jason is very, very busy.

→ Rita isn't (nearly) as busy as Jason (is).

3. I was tired. Susan was very tired.

→ I was \_\_\_\_\_.

4. Adam wasn't tired at all. Susan was very tired.

→ Adam wasn't \_\_\_\_\_.

5. My apartment has two rooms. Po's apartment has two rooms.

→ My apartment is \_\_\_\_\_.

6. My apartment has two rooms. Anna's apartment has six rooms.

→ My apartment is not \_\_\_\_\_.

### ◇ PRACTICE 2. AS ... AS. (Chart 9-1)

Directions: Using the given information and the words in parentheses, complete the comparisons using *as ... as*. Use *not* with the verbs as necessary.

1. Dogs make more noise than cats do. (*be noisy*)

→ Cats aren't as noisy as dogs.

2. Both Anne and her sister Amanda are lazy. (*be lazy*)

→ Anne is as lazy as her sister Amanda.

3. Adults have more strength than children. (*be strong*)

→ Children \_\_\_\_\_ adults.

4. Tom and Jerry are the same height. (*be tall*)

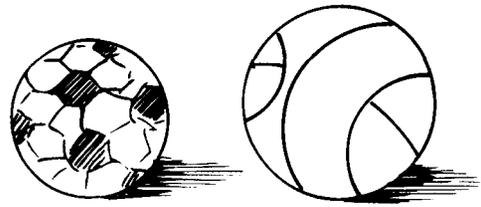
→ Tom \_\_\_\_\_ Jerry.

5. It's more comfortable to live at home than in a dormitory. (*be comfortable*)

→ Living in a dormitory \_\_\_\_\_ living at home.

6. A basketball is bigger than a soccer ball. (*be big*)

→ A soccer ball \_\_\_\_\_  
a basketball.



SOCCER  
BALL

BASKETBALL

7. The bride and the groom were equally

nervous before the wedding. (*be nervous*)

→ The bride \_\_\_\_\_ the groom.

8. The air in a big city is more polluted than the air in the countryside. (*be fresh and clean*)

→ The air in a big city \_\_\_\_\_ the air in the countryside.

9. My sister wants to be a successful businesswoman. I don't have any plans for my future.

(*be ambitious*)

→ I \_\_\_\_\_ my sister.

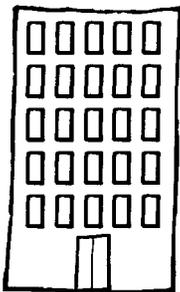
10. Some school subjects interest me, and others don't. (*be interesting*)

→ Some school subjects \_\_\_\_\_ others.

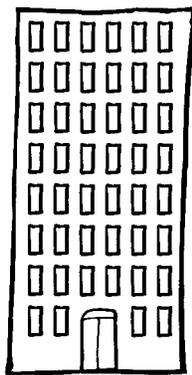
◇ PRACTICE 3. AS ... AS. (Chart 9-1)

Directions: Complete the sentences with one of the following:

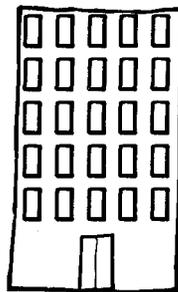
- just as ... as
- almost as ... as/not quite as ... as
- not nearly as ... as



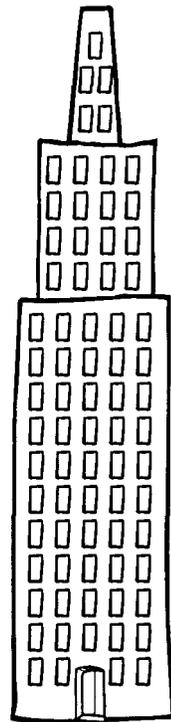
A



B



C



D

**PART I.**

1. Building B is not nearly as high as Building D.
2. Building A is \_\_\_\_\_ high as Building B.
3. Building C is \_\_\_\_\_ high as Building D.
4. Building A is \_\_\_\_\_ high as Building C.

**PART II.** Meeting time: 9:00 A.M. Compare the arrival times.

*Arrival times:*

David	9:01 A.M.
Julia	9:14 A.M.
Laura	9:15 A.M.
Paul	9:15 A.M.
James	9:25 A.M.

5. Paul was just as late as Laura.
6. David was \_\_\_\_\_ late as James.
7. Julia was \_\_\_\_\_ late as Laura and Paul.
8. Julia was \_\_\_\_\_ late as James.

**PART III.** Compare world temperatures.

Bangkok	92°F / 33°C
Cairo	85°F / 30°C
Madrid	90°F / 32°C
Moscow	68°F / 20°C
Tokyo	85°F / 30°C

9. Tokyo is \_\_\_\_\_ hot as Cairo.
10. Moscow is \_\_\_\_\_ hot as Bangkok.
11. Madrid is \_\_\_\_\_ hot as Bangkok.

**PART IV.** Compare world temperatures today and yesterday.

	<i>Yesterday</i>	<i>Today</i>
Bangkok	95°F / 35°C	92°F / 33°C
Cairo	95°F / 35°C	85°F / 30°C
Madrid	90°F / 32°C	90°F / 32°C
Moscow	70°F / 21°C	68°F / 20°C
Tokyo	81°F / 27°C	85°F / 30°C

12. Cairo was \_\_\_\_\_ hot as Bangkok yesterday.
13. It's \_\_\_\_\_ warm in Moscow today as yesterday.
14. Madrid is \_\_\_\_\_ hot today as yesterday.
15. It was \_\_\_\_\_ hot in Tokyo yesterday as in Bangkok.
16. It's \_\_\_\_\_ hot in Bangkok today as yesterday.

◇ PRACTICE 4. AS . . . AS. (Chart 9-1)

Directions: Choose the best sentence completion from the list.

- |                                     |                                 |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| A. <i>as bad as she said it was</i> | ✓E. <i>as much as possible</i>  |
| B. <i>as easy as it looks</i>       | F. <i>as often as I can</i>     |
| C. <i>as fast as I could</i>        | G. <i>as often as I used to</i> |
| D. <i>as good as they looked</i>    | H. <i>as soon as possible</i>   |

- I have a lot of homework. I will finish E before I go to bed.
- I'm sorry I'm late. I drove \_\_\_\_\_.
- I saw some chocolates at the candy store. They looked delicious, so I bought some. They tasted just \_\_\_\_\_.
- When I was in college, I went to at least two movies every week. Now I'm very busy with my job and family, so I don't go to movies \_\_\_\_\_.
- It took Julie years of lessons to be able to play the piano well. She makes it look easy, but we all know that playing a musical instrument isn't \_\_\_\_\_.
- I need to finish working on this report, so go ahead and start the meeting without me. I'll be there \_\_\_\_\_.
- Even though I'm very busy, I'm usually just sitting at my desk all day. I need more exercise, so I try to walk to and from work \_\_\_\_\_.
- My friend told me the movie was terrible, but I went anyway. My friend was right. The movie was just \_\_\_\_\_.

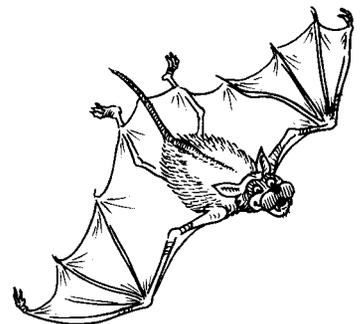
◇ PRACTICE 5. AS . . . AS. (Chart 9-1)

Directions: Write your completions in the blanks.

**PART I.** Complete each expression with the correct phrase.

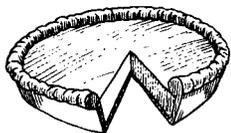
- |                  |                     |                    |
|------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| <i>as a bat</i>  | <i>as ice</i>       | <i>as a pillow</i> |
| <i>as a bird</i> | <i>as a mouse</i>   | ✓ <i>as snow</i>   |
| <i>as a bone</i> | <i>as a picture</i> | <i>as a wink</i>   |
| <i>as pie</i>    |                     |                    |

- very white: as white as snow.
- very cold: as cold \_\_\_\_\_.
- very pretty: as pretty \_\_\_\_\_.
- can't see anything: as blind \_\_\_\_\_.



*bat*

5. very dry: as dry \_\_\_\_\_.
6. very soft: as soft \_\_\_\_\_.
7. very quick: as quick \_\_\_\_\_.
8. very quiet: as quiet \_\_\_\_\_.
9. very free: as free \_\_\_\_\_.
10. very easy: as easy \_\_\_\_\_.



pie



wink

**PART II.** Complete the sentences with the given adjectives and the phrases from Part I.

<i>blind</i>	<i>dry</i>	<i>free</i>	<i>quick</i>	<i>soft</i>
<i>✓ cold</i>	<i>easy</i>	<i>pretty</i>	<i>quiet</i>	<i>white</i>

11. Brrrr! Come inside. Your hands are freezing. They are as cold as ice.
12. I'm just running down to the corner store. I'll be back in a few minutes. I'll be as \_\_\_\_\_.
13. I can't see anything without my glasses on. I'm as \_\_\_\_\_.
14. What laundry detergent do you use? Your white shirts were covered with dirt, and now they're so clean and bright. They're as \_\_\_\_\_.
15. Shhhh! Don't wake up Janet. She's sleeping on the couch. Be as \_\_\_\_\_.
16. Your little girl looks darling in that pink dress and hat. She looks as \_\_\_\_\_.
17. Don't worry. You'll pass the swimming test. It's not hard at all. It'll be as \_\_\_\_\_ for you.
18. Charles looks so relaxed since he quit his job. He has no responsibilities for the next month. He must feel as \_\_\_\_\_.
19. I have back problems and need to sleep on a bed that has a very firm mattress. My husband can sleep on anything, even something that is as \_\_\_\_\_.
20. It hasn't rained in weeks. The grass is brown, and the flowers are dead. The ground is as \_\_\_\_\_.

◇ PRACTICE 6. Comparative and superlative forms. (Charts 9-2 and 9-3)

Directions: Write the comparative and superlative forms of these words.

	COMPARATIVE		SUPERLATIVE	
1. strong	<u>stronger</u>	than	<u>the strongest</u>	of all
2. important	<u>more important</u>	than	<u>the most important</u>	of all
3. soft	_____	than	_____	of all
4. lazy	_____	than	_____	of all
5. wonderful	_____	than	_____	of all
6. calm	_____	than	_____	of all
7. tame	_____	than	_____	of all
8. dim	_____	than	_____	of all
9. convenient	_____	than	_____	of all
10. clever	_____	than	_____	of all
11. good	_____	than	_____	of all
12. bad	_____	than	_____	of all
13. far	_____	than	_____	of all
14. slow	_____	than	_____	of all
15. slowly	_____	than	_____	of all

◇ PRACTICE 7. Comparative forms. (Charts 9-2 and 9-3)

Directions: Complete each sentence with the correct form of the word in parentheses.

- Siberia is (*cold*) colder than South Africa.
- My mother is a few years (*old*) \_\_\_\_\_ my father.
- An airplane is (*expensive*) \_\_\_\_\_ a car.
- Which is (*large*) \_\_\_\_\_ : Greenland or Iceland?
- Red or cayenne pepper tastes (*hot*) \_\_\_\_\_ black pepper.
- A typewriter is (*slow*) \_\_\_\_\_ a computer.
- White chocolate is (*creamy*) \_\_\_\_\_ dark chocolate because it has more fat.
- Is smoking (*bad*) \_\_\_\_\_ alcohol for your health?
- A jaguar is (*fast*) \_\_\_\_\_ a lion.
- Which is (*important*) \_\_\_\_\_ : happiness or wealth?
- For long-distance trips, flying is (*quick*) \_\_\_\_\_ driving or taking a train.

12. Which is (*heavy*) \_\_\_\_\_ : a kilo of wood or a kilo of rocks?\*
13. Driving in a car equipped with a seatbelt and an airbag is (*safe*) \_\_\_\_\_ driving in a car with just a seatbelt.
14. Calculus is (*difficult*) \_\_\_\_\_ arithmetic.

◇ PRACTICE 8. Comparatives. (Charts 9-2 and 9-3)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the correct comparative form (*more/-er*) of the given adjectives and adverbs.

<i>careful</i>	✓ <i>generous</i>	<i>soft</i>
✓ <i>cold</i>	<i>lazy</i>	<i>softly</i>
<i>comfortable</i>	<i>pretty</i>	<i>slowly</i>
<i>friendly</i>		

1. The average temperature in Moscow is colder than the average temperature in Hong Kong.
2. Your father seems to give you plenty of money for living expenses. He is more generous than mine.
3. Children seem to be able to appear out of nowhere. When I'm near a school, I always drive \_\_\_\_\_ than I have to.
4. In my experience, old shoes are usually a lot \_\_\_\_\_ than new shoes.
5. People in villages often seem to enjoy talking to strangers. They seem to be \_\_\_\_\_ than people in large cities.
6. Babies don't like loud noises. Most people speak \_\_\_\_\_ than usual when they're talking to a baby.
7. I like to sit on pillows. They are a lot \_\_\_\_\_ than a hardwood seat.
8. Sandy, when you drive to the airport today, you have to be \_\_\_\_\_ than you were the last time you went. You almost had an accident because you weren't paying attention to your driving.
9. I like to grow flowers in my garden. They're a lot \_\_\_\_\_ than bushes.
10. I don't like to work hard, but my sister does. I'm a lot \_\_\_\_\_ than my sister.

\*This is a trick question. Answer: They weigh the same.

◇ PRACTICE 9. Comparatives and superlatives. (Charts 9-2 and 9-3)

Directions: Complete the sentences with *better*, *the best*, *worse*, or *the worst*.

1. I just finished a terrible book. It's the worst book I've ever read.
2. The weather was bad yesterday, but it's terrible today. The weather is worse today than it was yesterday.
3. This cake is really good. It's \_\_\_\_\_ cake I've ever eaten.
4. My grades this term are great. They're much \_\_\_\_\_ than last term.
5. Being separated from my family in time of war is one of \_\_\_\_\_ experiences I can imagine.
6. I broke my nose in a football game yesterday. Today it's very painful. For some reason, the pain is \_\_\_\_\_ today than it was yesterday.
7. The fire spread and burned down an entire city block. It was \_\_\_\_\_ fire we've ever had in our town.
8. I think my cold is almost over. I feel a lot \_\_\_\_\_ than I did yesterday. I can finally breathe again.

◇ PRACTICE 10. FARTHER and FURTHER. (Chart 9-3)

Directions: Choose the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.

1. The planet Earth is \_\_\_\_\_ from the sun than the planet Mercury is.  
Ⓐ farther                      Ⓑ further
2. I have no \_\_\_\_\_ need of this equipment. I'm going to sell it.  
A. farther                      Ⓑ further
3. I'm tired. I walked \_\_\_\_\_ than I should have.  
A. farther                      B. further
4. A: Tell us more.  
B: I have no \_\_\_\_\_ comment.  
A. farther                      B. further
5. I'll be available by phone if you have any \_\_\_\_\_ questions.  
A. farther                      B. further
6. A: I heard that you and Tom are engaged to be married.  
B: Nothing could be \_\_\_\_\_ from the truth!  
A. farther                      B. further

◇ PRACTICE 11. Adjectives vs. adverbs in the comparative. (Chart 9-3)

*Directions:* Complete each sentence with the comparative + the correct adjective or adverb. If it is an adjective, circle ADJ. If it is an adverb, circle ADV.

1. *slow* I like to drive fast, but my brother William doesn't. As a rule, he drives  
*slowly* more slowly than I do. ADJ **ADV**
2. *slow* Alex is a slower driver than I am. **ADJ** ADV  
*slowly*
3. *serious* Some workers are \_\_\_\_\_ about their jobs than  
*seriously* others. ADJ ADV
4. *serious* Some workers approach their jobs \_\_\_\_\_ than  
*seriously* others. ADJ ADV
5. *polite* Why is it that my children behave \_\_\_\_\_ at other  
*politely* people's houses than at home? ADJ ADV
6. *polite* Why are they \_\_\_\_\_ at Mrs. Miranda's house than at  
*politely* home? ADJ ADV
7. *careful* I'm a cautious person when I express my opinions, but my sister will say anything  
*carefully* to anyone. I'm much \_\_\_\_\_ when I speak to others than  
my sister is. ADJ ADV
8. *careful* I always speak \_\_\_\_\_ in public than my sister  
*carefully* does. ADJ ADV
9. *clear* I can't understand Mark's father very well when he talks, but I can understand  
*clearly* Mark. He speaks much \_\_\_\_\_ than his  
father. ADJ ADV
10. *clear* Mark is a much \_\_\_\_\_ speaker than his  
*clearly* father. ADJ ADV

◇ PRACTICE 12. Completing a comparative. (Chart 9-4)

*Directions:* Complete the comparisons with a pronoun and an appropriate auxiliary verb.

1. Bob arrived at ten. I arrived at eleven.  
→ He arrived earlier than I did.
2. Linda is a good painter. Steven is better.  
→ He is a better painter than she is.
3. Alex knows a lot of people. I don't know many people at all.  
→ He knows a lot more people than \_\_\_\_\_.

4. I won the race. Anna came in second.  
→ I ran faster than \_\_\_\_\_.
5. My parents were nervous about my motorcycle ride. I was just a little nervous.  
→ They were a lot more nervous than \_\_\_\_\_.
6. My aunt will stay with us for two weeks. My uncle has to return home to his job after a couple of days.  
→ She will be here with us a lot longer than \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Ms. Ross speaks clearly. Mr. Mudd mumbles.  
→ She speaks a lot more clearly than \_\_\_\_\_.
8. I've been here for two years. Sam has been here for two months.  
→ I've been here a lot longer than \_\_\_\_\_.
9. I had a good time at the picnic yesterday. Mary didn't enjoy it.  
→ I had a lot more fun at the picnic than \_\_\_\_\_.
10. I can reach the top shelf of the bookcase. Tim can only reach the shelf next to the top.  
→ I can reach higher than \_\_\_\_\_.

◇ PRACTICE 13. Completing comparisons with pronouns. (Chart 9-4)

*Directions:* Complete the comparisons both formal and informal pronouns: subject pronoun + verb OR object pronoun.

1. I have a brother. His name David. He's really tall. I'm just medium height.  
→ He's taller than  I am (formal) OR me (informal) .
2. My brother is sixteen. I'm seventeen.  
→ I'm older than \_\_\_\_\_.
3. My sister is really pretty. I've never thought I was pretty.  
→ She's a lot prettier than \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I'm pretty smart, though. My sister isn't interested in school.  
→ I'm smarter than \_\_\_\_\_.
5. My mom tells me that I shouldn't compare myself to my sister. She says we are both individuals in our own right and have many fine qualities. My mom is wise. I don't think I'm wise yet.  
→ My mom is much wiser than \_\_\_\_\_.
6. My cousin Rita was born two days after I was.  
→ She is two days younger than \_\_\_\_\_.

◇ PRACTICE 14. VERY vs. A LOT / MUCH / FAR. (Chart 9-5)

Directions: Circle the correct answer or answers. More than one answer may be correct.

1. This watch is not \_\_\_\_\_ expensive.  
A. very      B. a lot      C. much      D. far
2. That watch is \_\_\_\_\_ more expensive than this one.  
A. very      B. a lot      C. much      D. far
3. My nephew is \_\_\_\_\_ polite.  
A. very      B. a lot      C. much      D. far
4. My nephew is \_\_\_\_\_ more polite than my niece.  
A. very      B. a lot      C. much      D. far
5. Ted is \_\_\_\_\_ taller than his brother.  
A. very      B. a lot      C. much      D. far
6. Ted is \_\_\_\_\_ tall.  
A. very      B. a lot      C. much      D. far
7. I think astronomy is \_\_\_\_\_ more interesting than geology.  
A. very      B. a lot      C. much      D. far
8. I think astronomy is \_\_\_\_\_ interesting.  
A. very      B. a lot      C. much      D. far
9. It took me a lot longer to get over my cold than it took you to get over your cold. My cold was \_\_\_\_\_ worse than yours.  
A. very      B. a lot      C. much      D. far

◇ PRACTICE 15. NOT AS ... AS and LESS ... THAN. (Chart 9-6)

Directions: All of the sentences contain **not as ... as**. If possible, change them to sentences with the same meaning using **less ... than**.

1. I don't live as close to my brother as I do to my sister.  
→ (no change possible using **less**)
2. I don't visit my brother as often as I visit my sister.  
→ *I visit my brother less often than I visit my sister.*
3. Sam isn't as nice as his brother.
4. Sam isn't as generous as his brother.
5. I'm not as eager to go to the circus as the children are.
6. A notebook isn't as expensive as a textbook.
7. Wood isn't as hard as metal.
8. Some people think that life in a city isn't as peaceful as life in a small town.
9. The moon isn't nearly as far away from the earth as the sun is.
10. I don't travel to Europe on business as frequently as I used to.

◇ PRACTICE 16. Unclear comparisons. (Chart 9-7)

Directions: Check the sentences that have unclear comparisons. Make the necessary corrections.

1.  Sam enjoys football more than his best friend <sup>does</sup>.
2.  Andy writes better financial reports than his boss.
3.  The coach helped Anna more than Nancy.
4.  Sara likes tennis more than her husband.
5.  Cathy leaves more generous tips at restaurants than her husband.
6.  Kelly eats more organic food than his roommate.
7.  Charles knows Judy better than Kevin.

◇ PRACTICE 17. Using MORE with nouns. (Charts 9-3 and 9-8)

Directions: Choose from the given words to complete the sentences with the comparative (*more/-er*). If the word you use in the comparative is an adjective, circle ADJ. If it is an adverb, circle ADV. If it is a noun, circle NOUN.

<i>books</i>	<i>friends</i>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <i>newspapers</i>
<i>carefully</i>	<i>homework</i>	<i>pleasant</i>
<i>easily</i>	<i>loud</i>	<i>snow</i>

1. My husband always wants to know everything that is going on in the world. He reads many more newspapers than I do. ADJ ADV **(NOUN)**
2. University students study hard. They have a lot \_\_\_\_\_ than high school students. ADJ ADV NOUN
3. There is far \_\_\_\_\_ in winter in Alaska than there is in Texas. ADJ ADV NOUN
4. I'm lonely. I wish I had \_\_\_\_\_ to go places with and spend time with. ADJ ADV NOUN
5. A warm, sunny day is \_\_\_\_\_ than a cold windy day. ADJ ADV NOUN
6. Rob picks up languages with little difficulty. For me, learning a second language is slow and difficult. I guess some people just learn languages a lot \_\_\_\_\_ than others. ADJ ADV NOUN
7. The New York City Public Library has many \_\_\_\_\_ than the public library in Sweetwater, Oregon. ADJ ADV NOUN
8. I have been driving \_\_\_\_\_ since my accident. ADJ ADV NOUN
9. Karen doesn't need a microphone when she speaks to the audience. She's the only person I know whose voice is \_\_\_\_\_ than mine. ADJ ADV NOUN

◇ PRACTICE 18. Repeating a comparative. (Chart 9-9)

Directions: Complete the sentences with words from the list. Repeat the comparative.

<i>angry</i>	<i>expensive</i>	<i>cold</i>	<i>long</i>
<i>sleepy</i>	<i>friendly</i>	<i>fast</i>	
<i>big</i>	<i>✓ good</i>	<i>loud</i>	

1. His health is improving. He's getting better and better.
2. They just had their sixth child. Their family is getting \_\_\_\_\_.
3. As we continued traveling north, the weather got \_\_\_\_\_.  
Eventually, everything we saw was frozen.
4. As the soccer game progressed, the crowd became \_\_\_\_\_.  
My ears started ringing!
5. I was really mad! I got \_\_\_\_\_ until my brother touched  
my arm and told me to calm down.
6. We were so glad we had arrived early at the ticket office. As we waited for it to open, the line  
got \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Textbooks are costly. They are getting \_\_\_\_\_  
every year.
8. We stayed up all night to work on our geology project. We became \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ as the night wore on, but we stayed awake and finally  
finished in time for class.
9. The people I met in my new job became \_\_\_\_\_ as  
we became better acquainted. Soon I began spending time with them after work.
10. When Joan was training for the marathon race, she was pretty slow in the beginning, but she  
got \_\_\_\_\_ as time went by. Eventually her time was so  
good that her coach thought she might have a chance to win.

◇ PRACTICE 19. Double comparatives. (Chart 9-10)

Directions: Complete the sentences with double comparatives.

1. I exercise every day. Exercise makes me strong. The more I exercise,  
the stronger I get.

2. If butter is soft, it is easy to spread on bread. The the butter is,  
the it is to spread on bread.
3. I know many things now that I wasn't aware of when I was younger. It seems that  
the I get, the I get.
4. I'm trying to make my life simpler. It makes me feel more relaxed.  
The my life, the I feel.
5. I spend a long time each day looking at a computer screen. My eyes get very tired.  
The I look at a computer screen, the  
my eyes get.
6. When the wind blows hard, it whistles through the trees a lot. The  
the wind blows, the it whistles through the trees.

◇ PRACTICE 20. Double comparatives. (Chart 9-10)

Directions: Complete the sentences with double comparatives, using the ideas in parentheses.

1. (*I became bored. He talked.*)  
I met a man at a party last night. I tried to be interested in what he was saying, but the  
more he talked, the more bored I became.
2. (*You understand more. You are old.*)  
There are many advantages to being young, but the \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_.
3. (*I became confused. I thought about it.*)  
At first I thought I understood what she'd said, but the \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_.
4. (*The air is very polluted. The chances of developing respiratory diseases are great.*)  
Pollution poses many dangers. For example, the \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_.
5. (*Bill talked very fast. I became confused.*)  
Bill was trying to explain some complicated physics problems to help me prepare for an exam.  
He kept talking faster and faster. The \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_.
6. (*The fans clapped and cheered. The basketball team made more shots.*)  
The fans in the stadium were excited and noisy, and it seemed to make their team play better.  
The \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_.

◇ PRACTICE 21. Using superlatives. (Chart 9-11)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the given ideas. Use the superlative. If you don't know the right answer, guess.

✓familiar	large eyes	long necks
intelligent	large ears	

1. Kangaroos are the most familiar of all Australian grassland animals.
2. Giraffes have \_\_\_\_\_ of all animals.
3. African elephants have \_\_\_\_\_ of all animals.
4. Horses have \_\_\_\_\_ of all four-legged animals.
5. Bottle-nosed dolphins are \_\_\_\_\_ animals that live in water. Apes and monkeys are \_\_\_\_\_ animals that live on land (besides human beings).

◇ PRACTICE 22. Using superlatives. (Chart 9-11)

Directions: Make comparisons.

**PART I.** Complete the sentences with superlatives and the appropriate word: *in*, *of*, or *ever*.

1. Physics is (*difficult*) the most difficult course I have ever taken.
2. Isn't my hometown (*friendly*) the friendliest place of all the towns you have visited?
3. What is (*embarrassing*) the most embarrassing experience you have had in your life?
4. My friends say that my grandmother is (*wise*) \_\_\_\_\_ person they have \_\_\_\_\_ met.
5. My wife is (*good*) \_\_\_\_\_ cook \_\_\_\_\_ the world.
6. My three children all have artistic talent, but Jimmy is (*artistic*) \_\_\_\_\_ all.
7. My bedroom on the third floor is (*hot*) \_\_\_\_\_ room \_\_\_\_\_ the house.
8. July is (*warm*) \_\_\_\_\_ month \_\_\_\_\_ the year.
9. Min-Sok is one of (*bright*) \_\_\_\_\_ students I've \_\_\_\_\_ taught.
10. Which is (*high*) \_\_\_\_\_ mountain \_\_\_\_\_ the world, K2 or Mt. Everest?

11. My mother found Dr. John to be (*knowledgeable*) \_\_\_\_\_  
doctor \_\_\_\_\_ all the doctors she has gone to.

12. What is (*important*) \_\_\_\_\_ thing you could do \_\_\_\_\_  
your life?

**PART II.** Complete with *least* and the appropriate word: *in, of, or ever*.

13. Ed is not lazy, but he is certainly (*ambitious*) the least ambitious of all  
the people I have worked with.

14. That painting didn't cost much. It is (*expensive*) \_\_\_\_\_  
work of art we have \_\_\_\_\_ bought.

15. Antarctica is (*populated*) \_\_\_\_\_ continent \_\_\_\_\_  
the world.

16. Kim seems addicted to the Internet. I think (*amount*) \_\_\_\_\_ of time  
she has \_\_\_\_\_ spent on it is four hours.

◇ PRACTICE 23. AS . . . AS, MORE/-ER, and MOST/-EST. (Charts 9-1 → 9-11)

*Directions:* Make comparisons.

**PART I.** Compare the cost of the items in parentheses. Use the given expressions.

1. (*a pencil vs. \* a telephone*)

A pencil is less expensive than a telephone.

2. (*a paper clip vs. a diamond ring*)

\_\_\_\_\_ is much more expensive than \_\_\_\_\_.

3. (*a cup of coffee vs. a can of coffee beans*)

\_\_\_\_\_ is not as expensive as \_\_\_\_\_.

4. (*radios vs. CD players vs. big screen TVs*)

\_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ are both less expensive than \_\_\_\_\_.

5. (*a compact car vs. a house*)

\_\_\_\_\_ is not nearly as expensive as \_\_\_\_\_.

6. (*footballs vs. soccer balls vs. ping-pong balls vs. basketballs*)

\_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_  
are all more expensive than \_\_\_\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_

\**vs.* is an abbreviation for *versus*, which means "as opposed to, as compared to."

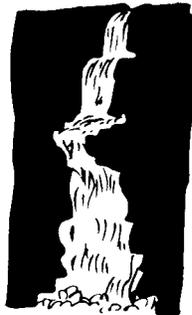
**PART II.** Compare the waterfalls by using the given expressions.

7. Angel Falls is much higher than Niagara Falls\*.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ is almost as high \_\_\_\_\_.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ is the highest \_\_\_\_\_.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ is not nearly as high \_\_\_\_\_.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ is not quite as high \_\_\_\_\_.

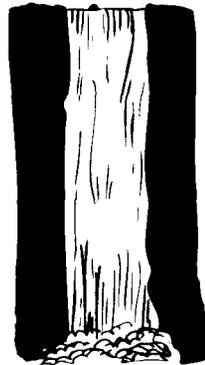
**Waterfalls of the World**



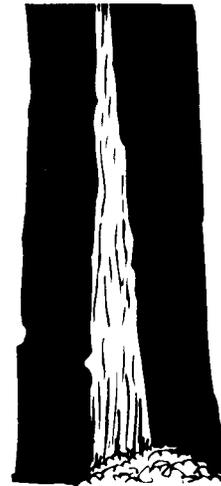
Niagara Falls  
United States and Canada  
53 meters



Giessbach Falls  
Switzerland  
604 meters



Cuquenán Falls  
Venezuela  
610 meters



Angel Falls  
Venezuela  
807 meters

**PART III.** Compare the weight of the items in parentheses. Use the given expressions.

12. (*air, iron*) Air is lighter than iron.
13. (*iron, wood*) \_\_\_\_\_ is heavier \_\_\_\_\_.
14. (*water, iron, wood, air*) Of the four elements, \_\_\_\_\_ is the heaviest \_\_\_\_\_.
15. (*water, air*) \_\_\_\_\_ is not as heavy \_\_\_\_\_.
16. (*water, iron, wood, air*) Of the four elements, \_\_\_\_\_ is the lightest \_\_\_\_\_.
17. (*water, air*) \_\_\_\_\_ is not nearly as light \_\_\_\_\_.
18. (*water, iron, wood*) \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ are both heavier \_\_\_\_\_.

\*A singular verb is used after Angel Falls because it is the name of a place. Angel Falls is in Venezuela. Similarly, the United States takes a singular verb because it is the name of a place: *The United States is a big country.*

◇ PRACTICE 24. Using NEVER with comparatives. (Chart 9-4)

Directions: Circle the letter of the sentence that is closest in meaning to the given sentence.

1. I've never taken a harder test in this class.
  - a. The test was hard.
  - b. The test wasn't hard.
2. I've never taken a hard test in this class.
  - a. The tests in this class are hard.
  - b. The tests in this class aren't hard.
3. Professor Jones has never given a difficult test.
  - a. The test was difficult.
  - b. The test wasn't difficult.
4. Professor Smith has never given a more difficult test.
  - a. His tests are difficult.
  - b. His tests aren't difficult.
5. I've never heard of a worse economic situation in Leadville.
  - a. Leadville has a bad economic situation.
  - b. Leadville doesn't have a bad economic situation.
6. I've never heard of a bad economic situation in Leadville.
  - a. Leadville has bad economic situations.
  - b. Leadville doesn't have bad economic situations.
7. We've never stayed in a more comfortable hotel room.
  - a. The room was comfortable.
  - b. The room wasn't comfortable.
8. We've never stayed in a comfortable room at that hotel.
  - a. The rooms are comfortable.
  - b. The rooms aren't comfortable.

◇ PRACTICE 25. Using EVER and NEVER in comparisons. (Charts 9-4 and 9-11)

Directions: Complete the sentences with comparatives and superlatives.

1. Pierre told a really *funny* story. It is the funniest story I've ever heard (in my life). I've never heard a funnier story (than that one).
2. John felt very *sad* when he saw the child begging for money. In fact, he has never felt \_\_\_\_\_ (than he did then). That is \_\_\_\_\_ he has ever felt (in his life).
3. Jan just finished a really *good* book. She thinks it was \_\_\_\_\_ book she has ever read. She says that she has never read a \_\_\_\_\_.

4. The villagers fought the rising flood all through the night. They were *exhausted* when the river finally crested. They have never had a \_\_\_\_\_ experience. That was \_\_\_\_\_ experience they have ever had.
5. When her daughter was born, Rachel felt extremely *happy*. In fact, she has never felt \_\_\_\_\_ (than she did then). That was \_\_\_\_\_ she has ever felt (in her life).
6. Oscar told a very *entertaining* story after dinner. In fact, he has never told a \_\_\_\_\_ story. It is one of \_\_\_\_\_ stories I have ever heard in my life.
7. Mari studied very *hard* for her college entrance exams. In fact, she has never studied \_\_\_\_\_ . That was \_\_\_\_\_ she has ever studied in her life.
8. The weather is really *hot* today! In fact, so far this year the weather has never been \_\_\_\_\_ . This is \_\_\_\_\_ weather we've had so far this year.

◇ PRACTICE 26. Review of comparatives and superlatives. (Charts 9-1 → 9-11)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences. Use any appropriate form of the words in parentheses and add any other necessary words.

1. Sometimes I feel like all of my friends are (*intelligent*) more intelligent than I am, and yet, sometimes they tell me that they think I am (*smart*) the smartest person in the class.
2. One of (*popular*) \_\_\_\_\_ holidays \_\_\_\_\_ Japan is New Year's.
3. A mouse is (*small*) \_\_\_\_\_ a rat.
4. Europe is first in agricultural production of potatoes. (*potatoes*) \_\_\_\_\_ are grown in Europe \_\_\_\_\_ on any other continent.
5. Mercury is (*close*) \_\_\_\_\_ planet to the sun. It moves around the sun (*fast*) \_\_\_\_\_ any other planet in the solar system.
6. In terms of area, (*large*) \_\_\_\_\_ state \_\_\_\_\_ the United States is Alaska, but it has one of (*small*) \_\_\_\_\_ populations \_\_\_\_\_ all the states.
7. Nothing is (*important*) \_\_\_\_\_ good health. Certainly, gaining wealth is much (*important*) \_\_\_\_\_ enjoying good health.

8. I need more facts. I can't make my decision until I get (*information*) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_.
9. Rebecca is a wonderful person. I don't think I've ever met a (*kind*) \_\_\_\_\_  
and (*generous*) \_\_\_\_\_ person.
10. You can trust her. You will never meet a (*honest*) \_\_\_\_\_ person  
\_\_\_\_\_ she is.
11. I'm leaving! This is (*bad*) \_\_\_\_\_ movie I've ever seen! I won't sit  
through another second of it.
12. One of (*safe*) \_\_\_\_\_ places to be during a lightning storm is inside a car.
13. Small birds have a much (*fast*) \_\_\_\_\_ heartbeat \_\_\_\_\_ large birds.
14. Are your feet exactly the same size? Almost everyone's left foot is (*big*) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ their right foot.\*
15. Both Bangkok and Venice are famous for their waterways, but Bangkok has (*extensive*)  
\_\_\_\_\_ canals \_\_\_\_\_ Venice has.

◇ PRACTICE 27. Review of comparatives and superlatives. (Charts 9-1 → 9-11)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences. Use any appropriate form of the words in parentheses and add any other necessary words.

1. I feel (*safe*) safer in a plane than I do in a car.
2. Jakarta is (*large*) \_\_\_\_\_ city \_\_\_\_\_ Indonesia.
3. Mountain climbing takes (*strength*) \_\_\_\_\_ walking on a  
level path.
4. Cheese usually tastes (*good*) \_\_\_\_\_ at room temperature than it does just after  
you take it out of the refrigerator.
5. The (*short*) \_\_\_\_\_ distance between two points is a straight line.
6. The (*thin*) \_\_\_\_\_ a lemon's rind is, the (*juicy*) \_\_\_\_\_  
the lemon is.
7. Mr. Hochingnauong feels (*comfortable*) \_\_\_\_\_ speaking his  
native language \_\_\_\_\_ he does speaking English.

\*Grammar note: In formal English, a singular pronoun is used to refer to *everyone*:

Almost *everyone's* left foot is bigger than *his or her* right foot.

In everyday informal usage, a plural pronoun is frequently used:

Almost *everyone's* left foot is bigger than *their* right foot.

8. My friend has studied many languages. He thinks Japanese is (*difficult*) \_\_\_\_\_ all the languages he has studied.
9. One of the (*bad*) \_\_\_\_\_ nuclear accidents \_\_\_\_\_ the world occurred at Chernobyl in 1986.
10. I think learning a second language is (*hard*) \_\_\_\_\_ learning chemistry or mathematics.
11. The (*low*) \_\_\_\_\_ temperature ever recorded in Alaska was minus 80°F (-27°C) in 1971.
12. Computers are complicated machines, but probably (*complex*) \_\_\_\_\_ thing \_\_\_\_\_ the universe is the human brain.
13. I've seen a lot of funny movies over the years, but the one I saw last night was (*funny*) \_\_\_\_\_ all.
14. Riding a bicycle can be dangerous. (*people*) \_\_\_\_\_ were killed in bicycle accidents last year \_\_\_\_\_ have been killed in airplane accidents in the last four years.
15. Some people build their own boats from parts that they order from a manufacturer. They save money that way. It is (*expensive*) \_\_\_\_\_ to build your own boat \_\_\_\_\_ to buy a boat.

◇ PRACTICE 28. LIKE, ALIKE. (Chart 9-12)

Directions: Complete the sentences with *like* or *alike*.

1. My mother and my father rarely argue because they think alike.
2. The Browns designed their summer cabin to look like the inside of a boat.
3. Joe and John are twins, but they don't look \_\_\_\_\_.
4. They dress \_\_\_\_\_ because they have the same taste in clothes.
5. This lamp doesn't look \_\_\_\_\_ the one I ordered.
6. Mike is 30, but he continually acts \_\_\_\_\_ a child.
7. Professor Miller's lectures are all \_\_\_\_\_: repetitive and boring.
8. This coffee doesn't taste \_\_\_\_\_ the coffee we sampled at the store.
9. The clouds to the east look \_\_\_\_\_ rain clouds.
10. My grandmother and mother sound \_\_\_\_\_ on the phone.

◇ PRACTICE 29. THE SAME AS, SIMILAR TO, DIFFERENT FROM. (Chart 9-12)

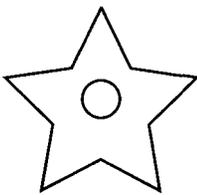
*Directions:* Complete the sentences with the correct preposition: **as**, **to**, or **from**.

1. My coat is different from yours.
2. Our apartment is similar to my cousin's.
3. The news report was the same as the report we heard on Channel Six last night.
4. How is the North Pole different \_\_\_\_\_ the South Pole?
5. Your jacket is exactly the same \_\_\_\_\_ mine.
6. I enjoyed reading your letters from China. My experiences in Beijing were similar \_\_\_\_\_ yours.
7. For many students, their grades in college are similar \_\_\_\_\_ their grades in high school.
8. The movie on our flight to London was the same \_\_\_\_\_ the movie on our flight to Paris.
9. Some herbal teas are somewhat similar \_\_\_\_\_ green tea.
10. Courtship and dating patterns in Europe are very different \_\_\_\_\_ those in many Middle Eastern and Asian countries.
11. Except for a few minor differences in grammar, spelling, and vocabulary, American English is the same \_\_\_\_\_ British English.
12. The English spoken in the United States is only slightly different \_\_\_\_\_ the English spoken in Britain, Canada, and Australia.

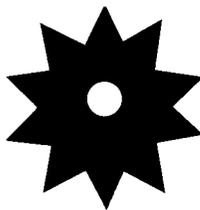
◇ PRACTICE 30. LIKE, ALIKE, SIMILAR (TO), DIFFERENT (FROM). (Chart 9-12)

*Directions:* Make comparisons.

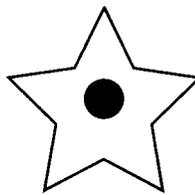
**PART I.** Compare the figures. Use the words in parentheses.



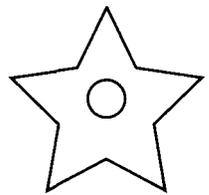
A



B



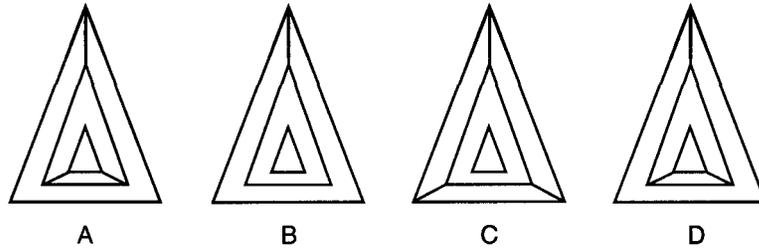
C



D

1. like A is like D.
2. alike \_\_\_\_\_.
3. similar (to) \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
4. different (from) \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_.

**PART II.** Compare the figures. Use *the same (as)*, *similar (to)*, or *different (from)*.



5. All of the triangles are \_\_\_\_\_ each other.
6. A and D are \_\_\_\_\_ each other.
7. A and C are \_\_\_\_\_.
8. A isn't \_\_\_\_\_ C.
9. B and C are \_\_\_\_\_ D.

◇ **PRACTICE 31. THE SAME, SIMILAR, DIFFERENT, LIKE, ALIKE.** (Chart 9-12)

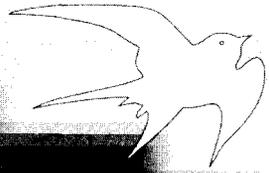
*Directions:* Complete the sentences with *the same*, *similar*, *different*, *like*, or *alike*.

1. Dana swims like a fish. She never wants to come out of the water.
2. The lake doesn't have a ripple on it. It looks \_\_\_\_\_ glass.
3. There are six girls in our family, but none of us look \_\_\_\_\_. Our brothers also look different.
4. A: Some people can tell we're sisters. Do you think we look \_\_\_\_\_?  
B: Somewhat. The color of your hair is not \_\_\_\_\_, but your eyes are exactly \_\_\_\_\_ color. You also have \_\_\_\_\_ shaped face.
5. A: I'm sorry, but I believe you have my umbrella.  
B: Oh? Yes, I see. It looks almost exactly \_\_\_\_\_ mine, doesn't it?
6. A: How do you like the spaghetti sauce I made? I tried to make it exactly \_\_\_\_\_ yours.  
B: I can tell. Your sauce is very \_\_\_\_\_ the one I make, but I think it's missing one spice.  
A: Oh? What's that?  
B: That's a secret! But I'll tell if you promise to keep it a secret.
7. Some people think my sister and I are twins. We look \_\_\_\_\_ and talk \_\_\_\_\_, but our personalities are quite \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Homonyms are words that have \_\_\_\_\_ pronunciation but different spelling, such as "pair" and "pear" or "sea" and "see." For many people, "been" and "bean" are homonyms and have \_\_\_\_\_ pronunciation. For other people, however, "been" and "bean" are \_\_\_\_\_ words with different pronunciations. These people pronounce "been" like "bin" or "ben."

◇ PRACTICE 32. Error analysis. (Chapter 9)

Directions: Correct the errors.

1. My brother is older <sup>than</sup> ~~from~~ me.
2. A sea is more deeper than a lake.
3. A donkey isn't as big to a horse.
4. Ellen is happiest person I've ever met.
5. When I feel embarrassed, my face gets red and more red.
6. One of a largest animal in the world is the hippopotamus.
7. The traffic on the highway is more bad from than it was a few months ago.
8. Jack is the same old from Jerry.
9. Peas are similar from beans, but they have several differences.
10. Last winter was pretty mild. This winter is cold and rainy. It's much rain than last winter.
11. Mrs. Peters, the substitute teacher, is very friendly than the regular instructor.
12. Although alligators and crocodiles are similar, alligators are less big than crocodiles.
13. Mohammed and Tarek come from different countries, but they became friends easily because they speak a same language, Arabic.
14. Mothers of young children are busyer than mothers of teenagers.
15. We'd like to go sailing, but the wind is not as strong today that it was yesterday.
16. We asked for a non-smoking room, but the air and furniture in our hotel room smelled cigarette smoke.



# CHAPTER 10

## The Passive

### ◇ PRACTICE 1. Active vs. passive. (Chart 10-1)

*Directions:* Circle ACTIVE if the given sentence is active; circle PASSIVE if it is passive. Underline the verb.

1. ACTIVE PASSIVE Farmers grow rice.
2. ACTIVE PASSIVE Rice is grown by farmers.
3. ACTIVE PASSIVE Sara wrote the letter.
4. ACTIVE PASSIVE The letter was written by Sara.
5. ACTIVE PASSIVE The teacher explained the lesson.
6. ACTIVE PASSIVE The lesson was explained by the teacher.
7. ACTIVE PASSIVE Bridges are designed by engineers.
8. ACTIVE PASSIVE Engineers design bridges.

### ◇ PRACTICE 2. Active vs. passive. (Chart 10-1)

*Directions:* Change the active verbs in *italics* to passive.

1. Mr. Catt *delivers* our mail. Our mail \_\_\_\_\_ is \_\_\_\_\_ delivered by Mr. Catt.
2. The children *have eaten* the cake. The cake \_\_\_\_\_ by the children.
3. Linda *wrote* that letter. That letter \_\_\_\_\_ by Linda.
4. The jeweler *is going to fix* my watch. My watch \_\_\_\_\_ by the jeweler.
5. Ms. Bond *will teach* our class. Our class \_\_\_\_\_ by Ms. Bond.
6. Anne *is going to bring* dinner. Dinner \_\_\_\_\_ by Anne.

7. Our team *won* the final game. The final game \_\_\_\_\_ by our team.
8. Dr. Pitt *will treat* the patient. The patient \_\_\_\_\_ by Dr. Pitt.
9. Ms. Davis *has planted* several trees. Several trees \_\_\_\_\_ by Ms. Davis.
10. The police *catch* criminals. Criminals \_\_\_\_\_ by the police.

◇ PRACTICE 3. Review of past participles. (Charts 2-6 and 2-7)

*Directions:* Write the past participles of the verbs. The list contains both regular and irregular verbs.

Simple Form	Simple Past	Past Participle	Simple Form	Simple Past	Past Participle
1. bring	brought	<u>brought</u>	14. play	played	_____
2. build	built	_____	15. read	read*	_____
3. buy	bought	_____	16. save	saved	_____
4. eat	ate	_____	17. send	sent	_____
5. plan	planned	_____	18. speak	spoke	_____
6. give	gave	_____	19. spend	spent	_____
7. grow	grew	_____	20. take	took	_____
8. hit	hit	_____	21. teach	taught	_____
9. hurt	hurt	_____	22. go	went	_____
10. leave	left	_____	23. visit	visited	_____
11. lose	lost	_____	24. wear	wore	_____
12. make	made	_____	25. write	wrote	_____
13. find	found	_____	26. do	did	_____

◇ PRACTICE 4. Passive form. (Charts 10-1, 10-2, and 10-5)

*Directions:* Use the given form of *be* (*was, is, going to be, etc.*) and complete the sentences with the past participles of any verbs in the list in Practice 3.

1. *was* There's no more candy. All the candy was eaten by the children.
2. *is* Arabic \_\_\_\_\_ by the people of Syria and Iraq.

\*The simple past and past participle of *read* are pronounced "red," as the color red.

3. *are* Books \_\_\_\_\_ by authors.
4. *was* My friend \_\_\_\_\_ in an accident. He broke his nose.
5. *is going to be* Bombay, India, \_\_\_\_\_ by thousands of tourists this year.
6. *has been* *War and Peace* is a famous book. It \_\_\_\_\_ by millions of people.
7. *will be* The championship game \_\_\_\_\_ in Milan next week.
8. *can be* Everyone \_\_\_\_\_ to read. I'll teach you if you'd like.
9. *are going to be* Our pictures \_\_\_\_\_ by a professional photographer at the wedding.
10. *have been* Oranges \_\_\_\_\_ by farmers in Jordan since ancient times.
11. *is* Special fire-resistant clothing \_\_\_\_\_ by firefighters.
12. *will be* A new bridge across the White River \_\_\_\_\_ by the city government next year.

◇ PRACTICE 5. Passive vs. active meaning. (Charts 10-1 and 10-2)

*Directions:* Circle the letter of the sentence that has the same meaning as the given sentence.

1. My grandmother makes her own bread.
  - (a.) This bread is made by my grandmother.
  - b. Someone makes my grandmother's bread.
2. Bob was taken to the hospital by car.
  - a. Bob drove to the hospital.
  - b. Someone drove Bob to the hospital.
3. Suzanne has just been asked to her first dance.
  - a. Suzanne has asked someone to the dance.
  - b. Someone has asked Suzanne to the dance.
4. You will be informed of the test results.
  - a. You will inform someone of the test results.
  - b. Someone will inform you of the test results.
5. You are not allowed to enter.
  - a. You do not allow people to enter.
  - b. Someone says you cannot enter.

6. The child was saved after five minutes in the water.

a. Someone saved the child.

b. The child saved herself.

◇ PRACTICE 6. Tense forms of the passive. (Charts 10-1 and 10-2)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the passive form of the given verbs.

**PART I.** Use the SIMPLE PRESENT with:

✓ collect	grow	understand
eat	pay	write

1. Taxes are collected by the government.

2. Books \_\_\_\_\_ by authors.

3. Rice \_\_\_\_\_ by farmers in Korea.

4. Small fish \_\_\_\_\_ by big fish.

5. I \_\_\_\_\_ for my work by my boss.

6. The meaning of a smile \_\_\_\_\_ by everyone.



**PART II.** Use the SIMPLE PAST with:

build	collect	destroy	write
-------	---------	---------	-------

7. Yesterday the students' papers were \_\_\_\_\_ by the teacher at the end of the test.

8. The Great Wall of China \_\_\_\_\_ by Chinese emperors more than 2500 years ago.

9. The book *War and Peace* \_\_\_\_\_ by Leo Tolstoy, a famous Russian novelist.

10. Several small buildings \_\_\_\_\_ by the earthquake in Los Angeles.

**PART III.** Use the PRESENT PERFECT with:

read	speak	visit	wear
------	-------	-------	------

11. The pyramids in Egypt have \_\_\_\_\_ by millions of tourists.

12. Spanish \_\_\_\_\_ by people in Latin America for nearly 600 years.

13. Mark Twain's books \_\_\_\_\_ by millions of people through the years.

14. Perfume \_\_\_\_\_ by both men and women since ancient times.

**PART IV** Use *will* with:

<i>discover</i>	<i>visit</i>	<i>save</i>
-----------------	--------------	-------------

15. New information about the universe will \_\_\_\_\_ by scientists in the twenty-first century.
16. Hawaii \_\_\_\_\_ by thousands of tourists this year.
17. Tigers \_\_\_\_\_ from extinction by people who care.

**PART V** Use *be going to* with:

<i>elect</i>	<i>hurt</i>	<i>offer</i>
--------------	-------------	--------------

18. Your friend is going \_\_\_\_\_ by your unkind remark when she hears about it.
19. New computer courses \_\_\_\_\_ by the university next year.
20. A new leader \_\_\_\_\_ by the people in my country next month.

◇ **PRACTICE 7. Passive to active. (Charts 10-1 and 10-2)**

*Directions:* Change the passive sentences to active. Keep the same verb tense.

1. Taxes are collected by the government.  
→ *The government collects taxes.*
2. Small fish are eaten by big fish.
3. The meaning of a smile is understood by everyone.
4. *War and Peace* was written by Leo Tolstoy.
5. The cat was chased by the dog.
6. ABC Corporation is going to be bought by XYZ Inc.
7. The pyramids in Egypt have been visited by millions of tourists.
8. New information about the universe will be discovered by scientists in the twenty-first century.

◇ **PRACTICE 8. Passive to active. (Charts 5-2, 10-1, and 10-2)**

*Directions:* Change the passive sentences to active. Keep the same tense. Some of the sentences are questions.

1. The letter was signed by Mr. Rice.  
→ *Mr. Rice signed the letter.*

2. Was the letter signed by Mr. Foster?  
→ *Did Mr. Foster sign the letter?*
3. The fax was sent by Ms. Owens.
4. Was the other fax sent by Mr. Chu?
5. Will Adam be met at the airport by Mr. Berg?
6. Have you been invited to the reception by Mrs. Jordan?
7. I have been invited to the reception by Mr. Lee.
8. Is the homework going to be collected by the teacher?

◇ PRACTICE 9. Transitive vs. intransitive. (Chart 10-3)

*Directions:* Circle TRANSITIVE if the verb takes an object; circle INTRANSITIVE if it does not. Underline the object of the verb.

- |     |                   |                     |   |
|-----|-------------------|---------------------|---|
| 1.  | <u>TRANSITIVE</u> | INTRANSITIVE        | Alex wrote <u>a letter</u> .                                    |
| 2.  | TRANSITIVE        | <u>INTRANSITIVE</u> | Alex waited for Amy. ( <i>There is no object of the verb.</i> ) |
| 3.  | TRANSITIVE        | INTRANSITIVE        | Rita lives in Mexico.   |
| 4.  | TRANSITIVE        | INTRANSITIVE        | Sam walked to his office.                                       |
| 5.  | TRANSITIVE        | INTRANSITIVE        | Kate caught the ball.   |
| 6.  | TRANSITIVE        | INTRANSITIVE        | My plane arrived at six-thirty.                                 |
| 7.  | TRANSITIVE        | INTRANSITIVE        | Emily is crying.  |
| 8.  | TRANSITIVE        | INTRANSITIVE        | A falling tree hit my car.                                      |
| 9.  | TRANSITIVE        | INTRANSITIVE        | I returned the book to the library yesterday.                   |
| 10. | TRANSITIVE        | INTRANSITIVE        | A bolt of lightning appeared in the sky last night.             |

◇ PRACTICE 10. Active and passive. (Charts 10-1 → 10-3)

*Directions:* Underline the object of the verb if the given sentence has one. Then change the sentence to the passive. Some sentences cannot be changed to the passive.

- | ACTIVE                              | PASSIVE                           |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. A noise awakened <u>me</u> .     | <u>I was awakened by a noise.</u> |
| 2. It rained hard yesterday.        | <u>(no change)</u>                |
| 3. Alice discovered the mistake.    | _____                             |
| 4. We stayed at a hotel last night. | _____                             |

5. I slept only four hours last night.
6. Anita fixed the chair.
7. Did Susan agree with Prof. Hill?
8. Ann's cat died last week.
9. That book belongs to me.
10. The airplane arrived twenty minutes late.
11. The teacher announced a quiz.
12. I agree with Larry.
13. Do you agree with me?
14. Jack went to the doctor's office.

---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---

◇ PRACTICE 11. Review: identifying passives with transitive and intransitive verbs.  
(Charts 10-1 → 10-3)

*Directions:* Check the sentences that are passive.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ I came by plane.
2.  I was invited to the party by Alex.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Many people died during the earthquake.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Many people were killed by collapsing buildings.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ The earthquake has killed many people.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ The game will be won by the Bulls.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ The Bulls will win the game.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ Gina's baby cried for more than an hour.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ Most of the fresh fruit at the market was bought by customers.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ Some customers bought boxes full of fresh fruit.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ Accidents always occur at that intersection.

◇ PRACTICE 12. The BY-phrase. (Chart 10-4)

*Directions:* Underline the passive verbs. Answer the questions. If you don't know the exact person or people who performed the action, write "unknown."

1. Soft duck feathers are used to make pillows.

*Who uses duck feathers to make pillows?* unknown

2. The mail was opened by Shelley.

*Who opened the mail?* Shelley

3. Eric Wong's new book will be translated into many languages.

*Who will translate Eric Wong's new book?* \_\_\_\_\_

4. Rebecca's bicycle was stolen yesterday from in front of the library.

*Who stole Rebecca's bicycle?* \_\_\_\_\_

5. Our wedding photos were taken by a professional photographer.

*Who took our wedding photos?* \_\_\_\_\_

6. Malawi is a small country in southeastern Africa. A new highway is going to be built in Malawi next year.

*Who is going to build the new highway?* \_\_\_\_\_

7. There are no more empty apartments in our building. The apartment next to ours has been rented by a young family with two small children.

*Who rented the apartment next to ours?* \_\_\_\_\_

8. The apartment directly above ours was empty for two months, but now it has also been rented.

*Who rented the apartment directly above ours?* \_\_\_\_\_

◇ PRACTICE 13. The BY-phrase. (Chart 10-4)

*Directions:* Cross out the unnecessary *by*-phrases (those that do not give important information).

1. We were helped right away at the appliance store ~~by someone~~.

2. We were helped at the appliance store by a friendly and knowledgeable salesperson.

*(no change)*

3. Our mail was delivered early today by someone.

4. My favorite lamp was broken by the children when they were playing ball in the house.

5. Our house was built just last year by Baker Construction Company.

6. Our neighbors' house was built ten years ago by someone who builds houses.

7. The child will be operated on tomorrow by three specialists at Hope Hospital.

8. The child will be operated on tomorrow by someone.

◇ PRACTICE 14. Active to passive. (Charts 10-1 → 10-4)

*Directions:* Change the active sentences to passive. Use the *by*-phrase only if necessary.

1. Someone has canceled the soccer game.

→ *The soccer game has been canceled.*

2. The president has canceled the meeting.

→ *The meeting has been canceled by the president.*

3. Someone serves beer and wine at that restaurant.

4. Something confused me in class yesterday.

5. The teacher's directions confused me.
6. No one has washed the dishes yet.
7. Someone should wash them soon.
8. Did someone wash this sweater in hot water?
9. No one should wash wool sweaters in hot water.
10. Luis invited me to the party.
11. Has anyone invited you to the party?



◇ PRACTICE 15. Review: active vs. passive. (Charts 10-1 → 10-4)

*Directions:* Create sentences with the given words. Use the present tense. Some are passive. Some are not.

1. Sometimes keys / hide / under cars  
→ *Sometimes keys are hidden under cars.*
2. Cats / hide / under cars  
→ *Cats hide under cars.*
3. Students / teach / by teachers
4. Students / study / a lot
5. Cereal / often eat / at breakfast
6. Cats / eat / cat food
7. Mice / eat / by cats
8. Songs / sing / to children / by their mothers
9. Children / sing / songs / in school
10. Thai food / cook / in Thai restaurants
11. Chefs / cook / in restaurants

◇ PRACTICE 16. Progressive tenses in passive. (Chart 10-5)

*Directions:* Underline the progressive verb. Then complete each sentence with the correct passive form.

1. Some people are considering a new plan.  
→ A new plan is being considered.

2. The grandparents are watching the children.  
→ The children \_\_\_\_\_ by their grandparents.
3. Some painters are painting Mr. Rivera's apartment this week.  
→ Mr. Rivera's apartment \_\_\_\_\_ this week.
4. We can't use the language lab today because someone is fixing the equipment.  
→ We can't use the language lab today because the equipment \_\_\_\_\_.
5. We couldn't use the language lab yesterday because someone was fixing the equipment.  
→ We couldn't use the language lab yesterday because the equipment \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Eric's cousins are meeting him at the airport this afternoon.  
→ Eric \_\_\_\_\_ by his cousins at the airport this afternoon.
7. I watched while the movers were moving the furniture from my apartment to a truck.  
→ I watched while the furniture \_\_\_\_\_ from my apartment to a truck.
8. Everyone looked at the flag while they were singing the national anthem.  
→ Everyone looked at the flag while the national anthem \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Scientists are still discovering new species of plants and animals.  
→ New species of plants and animals \_\_\_\_\_.

◇ PRACTICE 17. Passive forms of progressive verbs. (Chart 10-5)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with the given verbs. Use the present progressive or the past progressive. All the sentences are passive.

<i>build</i>	<i>clean</i>	<i>fly</i>	<i>✓play</i>	<i>read</i>	<i>watch</i>
--------------	--------------	------------	--------------	-------------	--------------

1. A soccer game is being played in Wellstone Arena today.
2. The office was by the janitor when I got there early this morning.
3. A new house \_\_\_\_\_ in our neighborhood right now.
4. The book \_\_\_\_\_ aloud to the children by the teacher in the first grade class right now.
5. The protestors \_\_\_\_\_ by the police during the anti-war demonstration.
6. The small plane \_\_\_\_\_ by the co-pilot when it crashed.

◇ PRACTICE 18. Passive forms of progressive verbs. (Chart 10-5)

*Directions:* Circle the letter of the sentence with the same meaning as the given sentence.

1. A mouse is being chased.
  - a. A mouse is trying to catch something.
  - b. Something is trying to catch a mouse.
2. The soldiers are being trained.
  - a. The soldiers are training someone.
  - b. Someone is training the soldiers.
3. The earthquake victims are being helped by the medics.
  - a. The medics are receiving help.
  - b. The victims are receiving help.
4. The children were trying to find their parents after the school play.
  - a. The children were looking for their parents.
  - b. The parents were looking for their children.
5. The airline passengers were being asked to wait while the plane was cleaned.
  - a. The passengers made a request.
  - b. Someone asked the passengers to wait.

◇ PRACTICE 19. Review: active vs. passive. (Chart 10-1 → 10-5)

*Directions:* Write "C" if the sentence is correct. Write "I" if it is incorrect. Make any necessary corrections.

1. I It ~~was~~ happened many years ago.
2. C Rice is grown in California.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ I was go to school yesterday.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Two firefighters have injured while they were fighting the fire.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Sara was accidentally broken the window.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ Kara was eaten a snack when she got home from school.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Timmy was eating when the phone rang.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ I am agree with you.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ The little boy was fallen down while he was running in the park.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ The swimmer was died from a shark attack.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ The swimmer was killed by a shark.
12. \_\_\_\_\_ I was slept for nine hours last night.

◇ PRACTICE 20. Passive modals. (Chart 10-6)

*Directions:* Change the sentences from active to passive. Include the *by*-phrase only if it contains important information.

1. Someone might cancel class.  
→ *Class might be canceled.*
2. A doctor can prescribe medicine.
3. Mr. Hook must sign this report.
4. Someone may build a new post office on First Street.
5. People have to place stamps in the upper right-hand corner of an envelope.
6. Someone ought to paint that fence.
7. All of the students must do the assignment.

◇ PRACTICE 21. Passive modals. (Chart 10-6)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences by using the words in the list with the modals in parentheses. All of the completions are passive.

<i>build</i>	<i>kill</i>	<i>✓ put off</i>	<i>teach</i>	<i>write</i>
<i>divide</i>	<i>know</i>	<i>sell</i>	<i>tear down</i>	

1. Don't postpone things you need to do. Important work shouldn't be put off until the last minute. (*should not*)
2. Your application letter \_\_\_\_\_ in ink, not pencil. (*must*)
3. Dogs \_\_\_\_\_ to do tricks. (*can*)
4. Mrs. Papadopolous didn't want her son to go to war because he \_\_\_\_\_ . (*could*)
5. My son's class is too big. It \_\_\_\_\_ into two classes. (*ought to*)
6. A: Hey, Tony. These bananas are getting too ripe. They \_\_\_\_\_ today. Reduce the price. (*must*)  
B: Right away, Mr. Rice.
7. It takes time to correct an examination that is taken by ten thousand students nationwide. The test results \_\_\_\_\_ for at least four weeks. (*will not*)
8. The big bank building on Main Street was severely damaged in the earthquake. The structure is no longer safe. The building \_\_\_\_\_. (*has to*) Then a new bank \_\_\_\_\_ in the same place. (*can*)

◇ PRACTICE 22. Passive modals. (Chart 10-6)

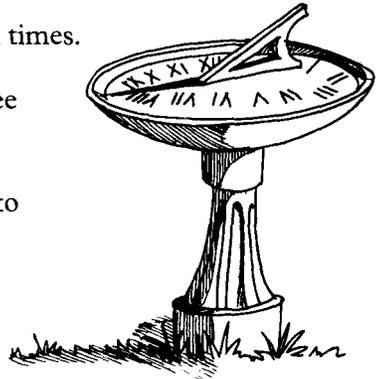
Directions: Complete the sentences by changing the active modals to passive modals.

1. This book (*have to return*) has to be returned to the library today.
2. That book (*should return*) \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow.
3. This letter (*must send*) \_\_\_\_\_ today.
4. This package (*could send*) \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow.
5. That package (*should send*) \_\_\_\_\_ by express mail.
6. That box (*can put away*) \_\_\_\_\_ now.
7. These boxes (*may throw away*) \_\_\_\_\_ soon.
8. Those boxes (*might pick up*) \_\_\_\_\_ this afternoon.
9. This room (*will clean up*) \_\_\_\_\_ soon.

◇ PRACTICE 23. Summary: active vs. passive. (Charts 10-1 → 10-6)

Directions: Circle ACTIVE if the given sentence is active; circle PASSIVE if it is passive. Underline the verb.

1.  ACTIVE    PASSIVE    People have used sundials since ancient times.
2. ACTIVE     PASSIVE    Sundials have been used for almost three thousand years.
3. ACTIVE    PASSIVE    Sundials, clocks, and watches are used to tell time.
4. ACTIVE    PASSIVE    Some watches show the date as well as the time.
5. ACTIVE    PASSIVE    On digital watches, the time is shown by lighted numbers.
6. ACTIVE    PASSIVE    The first watches were made in Europe six hundred years ago.
7. ACTIVE    PASSIVE    The earliest watches were worn around a person's neck.
8. ACTIVE    PASSIVE    Pocket watches became popular in the 1600s.
9. ACTIVE    PASSIVE    Today most people wear wristwatches.
10. ACTIVE    PASSIVE    Close to seventy million watches are sold in the United States each year.
11. ACTIVE    PASSIVE    How many watches are made and sold throughout the world in one year?



12. ACTIVE PASSIVE Somewhere in the world, a watch is being sold at this very moment.
13. ACTIVE PASSIVE Many different styles of watches can be bought today.
14. ACTIVE PASSIVE Do you own a watch?
15. ACTIVE PASSIVE Where was it made?

◇ PRACTICE 24. Summary: active vs. passive. (Charts 10-1 → 10-6)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses; use active or passive.

1. I don't have my car today. It's in the garage. It (*repair*) is being  
repaired right now.
2. Kate didn't have her car last week because it was in the garage. While it (*repair*)  
\_\_\_\_\_, she took the bus to work.
3. The mechanic (*repair*) \_\_\_\_\_ Tina's car last week.
4. Glass (*make*) \_\_\_\_\_ from sand.
5. You (*should carry, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ large sums of money with you.
6. Large sums of money (*ought to keep*) \_\_\_\_\_ in a bank, don't  
you think?
7. At our high school, the students' grades (*send*) \_\_\_\_\_ to their parents  
four times each year.
8. I'm sorry, but the computer job is no longer available. A new computer programmer  
(*hire, already*) \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Household cleaning agents (*must use*) \_\_\_\_\_ with care. For  
example, mixing chlorine bleach with ammonium (*can produce*) \_\_\_\_\_  
toxic gases.
10. What products (*manufacture*) \_\_\_\_\_ in your country?
11. Aluminum\* is a valuable metal that (*can use*) \_\_\_\_\_ again and again.  
Because this metal (*can recycle*) \_\_\_\_\_, aluminum cans  
(*should throw away, not*) \_\_\_\_\_.
12. Endangered wildlife (*must protect*) \_\_\_\_\_ from extinction.
13. People with the moral courage to fight against injustices (*can find*) \_\_\_\_\_  
in every corner of the world.

\*Aluminum in American English = aluminium in British English.

◇ PRACTICE 25. Summary: active vs. passive. (Charts 10-1 → 10-6)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses; use active or passive.

1. Flowers (*love*) are loved throughout the world. Their beauty (*bring*) brings joy to people's lives. Flowers (*use, often*) \_\_\_\_\_ to decorate homes or tables in restaurants. Public gardens (*can find*) \_\_\_\_\_ in almost every country in the world.
2. Around 250,000 different kinds of flowers (*exist*) \_\_\_\_\_ in the world. The majority of these species (*find*) \_\_\_\_\_ only in the tropics. Nontropical areas (*have*) \_\_\_\_\_ many fewer kinds of flowering plants than tropical regions.
3. Flowers may spread from their native region to other similar regions. Sometimes seeds (*carry*) \_\_\_\_\_ by birds or animals. The wind also (*carry*) \_\_\_\_\_ some seeds. In many cases throughout history, flowering plants (*introduce*) \_\_\_\_\_ into new areas by humans.
4. Flowers (*appreciate*) \_\_\_\_\_ mostly for their beauty, but they can also be a source of food. For example, honey (*make*) \_\_\_\_\_ from the nectar which (*gather*) \_\_\_\_\_ from flowers by bees. And some flower buds (*eat*) \_\_\_\_\_ as food; for example, broccoli and cauliflower are actually flower buds.
5. Some very expensive perfumes (*make*) \_\_\_\_\_ from the petals of flowers. Most perfumes today, however, (*come, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ from natural fragrances. Instead, they are synthetic; they (*make*) \_\_\_\_\_ from chemicals in a laboratory.
6. Some kinds of flowers (*may plant*) \_\_\_\_\_ in pots and (*grow*) \_\_\_\_\_ indoors. Most flowers, however, (*survive*) \_\_\_\_\_ best outdoors in their usual environment.

◇ PRACTICE 26. Using past participles as adjectives. (Chart 10-7)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

PART I. Jack is . . .

1. married to Katie.
2. excited \_\_\_\_\_ vacation.
3. exhausted \_\_\_\_\_ work.
4. frightened \_\_\_\_\_ heights.
5. disappointed \_\_\_\_\_ his new car.

6. tired \_\_\_\_\_ rain.
7. pleased \_\_\_\_\_ his new boss.
8. involved \_\_\_\_\_ charity work.
9. worried \_\_\_\_\_ his elderly parents.
10. acquainted \_\_\_\_\_ a famous movie star.

**PART II.** Jack's friend is . . .

11. interested \_\_\_\_\_ sports.
12. done \_\_\_\_\_ final exams.
13. terrified \_\_\_\_\_ spiders.
14. related \_\_\_\_\_ a famous movie star.
15. opposed \_\_\_\_\_ private gun ownership.
16. pleased \_\_\_\_\_ his part-time job.
17. divorced \_\_\_\_\_ his wife.

**PART III.** Jack's house is . . .

18. made \_\_\_\_\_ wood.
19. located \_\_\_\_\_ the suburbs.
20. crowded \_\_\_\_\_ antique furniture.
21. prepared \_\_\_\_\_ emergencies.

◇ **PRACTICE 27.** Using past participles as adjectives. (Chart 10-7)

*Directions:* Each sentence has errors with the adjectives used as past participles. Correct the errors.

1. The little girl is <sup>excited about</sup> ~~excite in~~ her coming birthday party.
2. Mr. and Mrs. Rose devoted each other.
3. Could you please help me? I need directions. I lost.
4. The students are boring in their chemistry project.
5. The paper bags at this store is composed in recycled products.
6. Your friend needs a doctor. He hurt.
7. How well are you prepare the driver's license test?
8. Mary has been engaging with Paul for five years. Will they ever get married?

◇ PRACTICE 28. -ED vs. -ING. (Chart 10-8)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the appropriate *-ed* or *-ing* form of the words in parentheses.



Ben is reading a book. He really likes it. He can't put it down. He has to keep reading.

1. The book is really interesting. (*interest*)
2. Ben is really \_\_\_\_\_ . (*interest*)
3. The story is \_\_\_\_\_ . (*excite*)
4. Ben is \_\_\_\_\_ about the story. (*excite*)
5. Ben is \_\_\_\_\_ by the characters in the book. (*fascinate*)
6. The people in the story are \_\_\_\_\_ . (*fascinate*)
7. Ben doesn't like to read books when he is \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ . (*bore, confuse*)
8. Ben didn't finish the last book he started because it was \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ . (*bore, confuse*)
9. What is the most \_\_\_\_\_ book you've read lately? (*interest*)
10. I just finished a \_\_\_\_\_ mystery story that had a very \_\_\_\_\_ ending. (*fascinate, surprise*)

◇ PRACTICE 29. -ED vs. -ING. (Chart 10-8)

Directions: Choose the correct adjective.

1. Don't bother to read that book. It's boring, bored.
2. The students are *interesting*, *interested* in learning more about the subject.
3. Ms. Green doesn't explain things well. The students are *confusing*, *confused*.

4. Have you heard the latest news? It's really *exciting*, *excited*.
5. I don't understand these directions. I'm *confusing*, *confused*.
6. I read an *interesting*, *interested* article in the newspaper this morning.
7. I heard some *surprising*, *surprised* news on the radio.
8. I'm *boring*, *bored*. Let's do something. How about going to a movie?
9. Mr. Sawyer bores me. I think he is a *boring*, *bored* person.
10. Mr. Ball fascinates me. I think he is a *fascinating*, *fascinated* person.
11. Most young children are *fascinating*, *fascinated* by animals.
12. Young children think that animals are *fascinating*, *fascinated*.
13. That was an *embarrassing*, *embarrassed* experience.
14. I read a *shocking*, *shocked* report yesterday on the number of children who die from starvation in the world every day. I was really *shocking*, *shocked*.
15. The children went to a circus. For them, the circus was *exciting*, *excited*. The *exciting*, *excited* children jumped up and down.



◇ PRACTICE 30. -ED vs. -ING. (Chart 10-8)

Directions: Choose the correct adjective.

1. The street signs in our city are *confused*, *confusing*.
2. The drivers are *frustrated*, *frustrating*.
3. The professor's lecture on anatomy was *confused*, *confusing* for the students.
4. The student was very *embarrassed*, *embarrassing* by all the attention she got for her high test scores.
5. Sophie said it was *embarrassed*, *embarrassing* to have so many people congratulate her.
6. I am really *interested*, *interesting* in eighteenth-century art.
7. Eighteenth-century art is really *interested*, *interesting*.
8. What an *exhausted*, *exhausting* day! I am so *tired*, *tiring* from picking strawberries.
9. Some of the new horror movies are *frightened*, *frightening* because they are so realistic.
10. Young children shouldn't see them. They would become too *frightened*, *frightening*.

◇ PRACTICE 31. -ED vs. -ING. (Chart 10-8)

Directions: In each group, one sentence is incorrect. Write "I" beside the incorrect sentence.

1. a. \_\_\_\_\_ Science fascinates me.  
b. \_\_\_\_\_ Science is fascinating to me.  
c. I Science is fascinated to me.
2. a. \_\_\_\_\_ The baby is exciting about her new toy.  
b. \_\_\_\_\_ The baby is excited about her new toy.  
c. \_\_\_\_\_ The new toy is exciting to the baby.
3. a. \_\_\_\_\_ The book is really interesting.  
b. \_\_\_\_\_ The book is really interested.  
c. \_\_\_\_\_ The book interests me.
4. a. \_\_\_\_\_ I am exhausting from working in the fields.  
b. \_\_\_\_\_ I am exhausted from working in the fields.  
c. \_\_\_\_\_ Working in the fields exhausts me.  
d. \_\_\_\_\_ Working in the fields is exhausting.
5. a. \_\_\_\_\_ Your grandmother is amazing to me.  
b. \_\_\_\_\_ Your grandmother amazes me.  
c. \_\_\_\_\_ Your grandmother is amazed to me.  
d. \_\_\_\_\_ I am amazed by your grandmother.

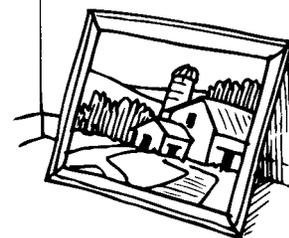
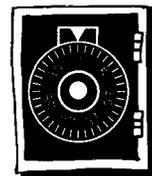
◇ PRACTICE 32. GET + adjective and past participle. (Chart 10-9)

Directions: Complete the sentences using words from the list.

<i>arrested</i>	<i>dressed</i>	<i>invited</i>	<i>lost</i>	<i>stolen</i>
<i>bored</i>	<i>hungry</i>	<i>late</i>	<i>rich</i>	<i>wet</i>
<i>✓sick</i>	<i>dizzy</i>			

1. Just a few days before the Jensens were going to leave for a family reunion in Hawaii, everyone got sick with the flu. They had to cancel their trip.
2. When Jane gave us directions to her house, I got \_\_\_\_\_. So I asked her to explain again how to get there.
3. Some people are afraid of heights. They get \_\_\_\_\_ and have trouble keeping their balance.
4. I didn't like the movie last night. It wasn't interesting. I got \_\_\_\_\_ and wanted to leave early.
5. When's dinner? I'm getting \_\_\_\_\_.
6. We should leave for the concert soon. It's getting \_\_\_\_\_. We should leave in the next five minutes if we want to be on time.
7. I want to make a lot of money. Do you know a good way to get \_\_\_\_\_ quick?
8. Jake got \_\_\_\_\_ for stealing a car yesterday. He's in jail now.
9. I overslept this morning. When I finally woke up, I jumped out of bed, got \_\_\_\_\_, picked up my books, and ran to class.
10. Anita got \_\_\_\_\_ when she stood near the pool of dolphins. They splashed her more than once.
11. Yes, I have an invitation to Joan and Paul's wedding. Don't worry. You'll get \_\_\_\_\_ to the wedding, too.
12. Tarik was afraid his important papers or his wife's jewelry might get \_\_\_\_\_, so he had a wall safe installed in his home.

3



◇ PRACTICE 33. GET + adjective and past participle. (Chart 10-9)

Directions: Complete the sentences with an appropriate form of *get*.

1. Shake a leg! Step on it! Get busy. There's no time to waste.
2. Tom and Sue got married last month.
3. Let's stop working for a while. I am getting tired.
4. I don't want to get old, but I guess it happens to everybody.
5. I \_\_\_\_\_ interested in biology when I was in high school, so I decided to major in it in college.
6. My father started \_\_\_\_\_ bald when he was in his twenties. I'm in my twenties, and I'm starting \_\_\_\_\_ bald. It must be in the genes.
7. Brrr. It \_\_\_\_\_ cold in here. Maybe we should turn on the furnace.
8. When I was in the hospital, I got a card from my aunt and uncle. It said, " \_\_\_\_\_ well soon."
9. When I went downtown yesterday, I \_\_\_\_\_ lost. I didn't remember to take my map of the city with me.
10. A: Why did you leave the party early?  
B: I \_\_\_\_\_ bored.
11. A: I \_\_\_\_\_ hungry. Let's eat soon.  
B: Okay.
12. A: What happened?  
B: I don't know. Suddenly I \_\_\_\_\_ dizzy, but I'm okay now.
13. A: Do you want to go for a walk?  
B: Well, I don't know. It \_\_\_\_\_ dark outside right now. Let's wait and go for a walk tomorrow.
14. I always \_\_\_\_\_ nervous when I have to give a speech.
15. A: Where's Bud? He was supposed to be home two hours ago. He always calls when he's late. I \_\_\_\_\_ worried. Maybe we should call the police.  
B: Relax. He'll be home soon.
16. A: Hurry up and \_\_\_\_\_ dressed. We have to leave in ten minutes.  
B: I'm almost ready.

17. A: I'm going on a diet.

B: Oh?

A: See? This shirt is too tight. I \_\_\_\_\_ fat.

18. A: Janice and I are thinking about \_\_\_\_\_ married in June.

B: That's a nice month for a wedding.

◇ PRACTICE 34. BE USED/ACCUSTOMED TO. (Charts 2-11 and 10-10)

*Directions:* Choose the correct completion. More than one completion may be correct.

1. Frank has lived alone for twenty years. He \_\_\_\_\_ alone.

A. used to live      (B.) is used to living      (C.) is accustomed to living

2. I \_\_\_\_\_ with my family, but now I live alone.

(A.) used to live      B. am used to living      C. am accustomed to living

3. Rita rides her bike to work every day. She \_\_\_\_\_ her bike to work.

A. used to ride      B. is used to riding      C. is accustomed to riding

4. Tom rode his bike to work for many years, but now he takes the bus. Tom \_\_\_\_\_ his bike to work.

A. used to ride      B. is used to riding      C. is accustomed to riding

5. Carl showers every day. He \_\_\_\_\_ a shower every day.

A. used to take      B. is used to taking      C. is accustomed to taking

6. Carl \_\_\_\_\_ a bath only once a week, but now he showers every day.

A. used to take      B. is used to taking      C. is accustomed to taking

7. Ari \_\_\_\_\_ a small breakfast every day because he was always in a hurry.

A. used to eat      B. is used to eating      C. is accustomed to eating

8. Maria \_\_\_\_\_ a large breakfast because she likes to take her time in the morning.

A. used to eat      B. is used to eating      C. is accustomed to eating

◇ PRACTICE 35. USED TO vs. BE USED TO. (Chart 10-11)

*Directions:* Add an appropriate form of *be* if necessary. If no form of *be* is needed, write  $\emptyset$  in the blank.

1. Trains    $\emptyset$    used to be the main means of cross-continental travel. Today, most people take airplanes for long-distance travel.

2. Ms. Stanton's job requires her to travel extensively throughout the world. She   is   used to traveling by plane.

3. You and I are from different cultures. You \_\_\_\_\_ used to having fish for breakfast. I \_\_\_\_\_ used to having cheese and bread for breakfast.

4. People \_\_\_\_\_ used to throw away or burn their newspapers after reading them, but now many people recycle them.
5. Jeremy wakes up at 5:00 every morning for work. After a year of doing this, he \_\_\_\_\_ used to getting up early, even on weekends.
6. Mrs. Hansen \_\_\_\_\_ used to do all of the laundry and cooking for her family. Now the children are older and Mrs. Hansen has gone back to teaching, so the whole family shares these household chores.
7. Before modern dentistry, people \_\_\_\_\_ used to pull painful teeth.
8. Cindy swims only in swimming pools. She \_\_\_\_\_ used to swim in lakes and rivers, but now she finds them too cold.

◇ PRACTICE 36. USED TO vs. BE USED TO. (Chart 10-11)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with **used to** or **be used to** and the correct form of the verb in parentheses.

1. Kate grew up on a farm. She (*get*) used to get up at dawn and go to bed as soon as the sun went down. Now she works in the city at an advertising agency and has different sleeping hours.
2. Hiroki's workweek is seven days long. He (*work*) \_\_\_\_\_ on Saturdays and Sundays.
3. Luis spends weekends with his family now. He (*attend*) \_\_\_\_\_ soccer games before he was married, but now he enjoys staying home with his young children.
4. Sally went back to school to become a computer programmer. She (*work*) \_\_\_\_\_ as a typist, but now she has a job that she likes better.
5. Joan has taught kindergarten for eight years. She (*teach*) \_\_\_\_\_ small children and uses many creative techniques with them.
6. Before I went overseas, I had a very simple, uninteresting diet. After visiting many different countries, however, I (*eat*) \_\_\_\_\_ much spicier, tastier dishes now.

◇ PRACTICE 37. BE SUPPOSED TO. (Chart 10-12)

*Directions:* Create sentences with a similar meaning by using **be supposed to**.

1. Someone expected me to return this book to the library yesterday, but I didn't.  
→ *I was supposed to return this book to the library.*
2. Our professor expects us to read Chapter 9 before class tomorrow.

3. Someone expected me to go to a party last night, but I stayed home.
4. The teacher expects us to do Exercise 10 for homework.
5. The weather bureau has predicted rain for tomorrow. According to the weather bureau, it . . . .
6. The directions on the pill bottle say, "Take one pill every six hours." According to the directions on the bottle, I . . . .
7. My mother expects me to dust the furniture and (to) vacuum the carpet.

◇ PRACTICE 38. BE SUPPOSED TO. (Chart 10-12)

Directions: Complete the sentences with **be supposed to** and any appropriate verb from the list.

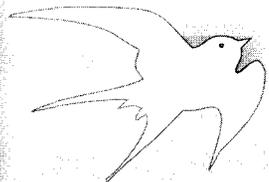
<i>take off</i>	<i>register</i>	<i>sweep</i>	<i>give</i>
<i>be</i>	<i>clean</i>	<i>cook</i>	<i>send</i>

1. A: What are you doing home? You are supposed to be at work.  
B: I called in sick.
2. A: The floor is still dirty. You \_\_\_\_\_ it this morning before you left for school, weren't you?  
B: I know. I forgot.
3. Sarah's late paying her taxes. She \_\_\_\_\_ her check to the government last month.
4. When you eat in a restaurant, you \_\_\_\_\_ your order to the waitress or waiter.
5. I know you'd rather be playing tennis, but you \_\_\_\_\_ the house today. The house is dirty, and it's your turn.
6. A: Where \_\_\_\_\_ I \_\_\_\_\_ for my English class?  
I'm new here.  
B: Down the hall to your right.
7. Jack \_\_\_\_\_ dinner tonight, but he didn't get home until 9:00 P.M.
8. A: You're tracking mud all over the house.  
B: Sorry. We \_\_\_\_\_ our shoes at the door, aren't we?

◇ PRACTICE 39. Error analysis. (Chapter 10)

*Directions:* Correct the errors.

1. The moving boxes <sup>were</sup> ^ packed by Pierre.
2. My uncle was died in the war.
3. Miami located in Florida.
4. I was very worried about my son.
5. Mr. Rivera interested in finding a new career.
6. Did you tell everyone the shocked news?
7. After ten years, I finally used to this wet and rainy climate.
8. The newspaper suppose to come every morning before eight.
9. The Millers have been marry with each other for 60 years.
10. I am use to drink coffee with cream, but now I drink it black.
11. What was happen at the party last night?
12. Several people almost get kill when the fireworks exploded over them.
13. A new parking garage being build for our office.
14. I have been living in England for several years, so I accustom driving on the left side of the road.



# CHAPTER 11

## Count/Noncount Nouns and Articles

### ◇ PRACTICE 1. A vs. AN: singular count nouns. (Chart 11-1)

Directions: Write *a* or *an* in the blanks.

- |                         |                          |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. <u>  a  </u> game    | 14. _____ hour           |
| 2. <u>  an  </u> office | 15. _____ star           |
| 3. _____ car            | 16. _____ eye            |
| 4. _____ friend         | 17. _____ new car        |
| 5. _____ mountain       | 18. _____ old car        |
| 6. _____ rock           | 19. _____ used car       |
| 7. _____ army           | 20. _____ uncle          |
| 8. _____ egg            | 21. _____ house          |
| 9. _____ island         | 22. _____ honest mistake |
| 10. _____ ocean         | 23. _____ hospital       |
| 11. _____ umbrella      | 24. _____ hand           |
| 12. _____ university    | 25. _____ ant            |
| 13. _____ horse         | 26. _____ neighbor       |

### ◇ PRACTICE 2. Preview: count and noncount nouns. (Charts 11-2 → 11-5)

Directions: Draw a line through the expressions of quantity that **cannot** be used to complete the sentences.

NONCOUNT NOUNS: *fruit, mail, traffic*

COUNT NOUNS: *apples, letters, cars*

- |                               |                                |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. I ate _____ <b>fruit</b> . | 2. I ate _____ <b>apples</b> . |
| a. some                       | a. some                        |
| <del>b. several</del>         | b. several                     |
| c. a little                   | c. a little                    |
| <del>d. a few</del>           | d. a few                       |
| <del>e. too many</del>        | e. too many                    |
| f. too much                   | f. too much                    |
| g. a lot of                   | g. a lot of                    |
| <del>h. two</del>             | h. two                         |

3. I get \_\_\_\_\_ **mail** every day.

- a. a lot of
- b. some
- c. a little
- d. a few
- e. too much
- f. too many
- g. several
- h. three

5. There is \_\_\_\_\_ **traffic** in the street.

- a. several
- b. some
- c. too many
- d. a little
- e. a lot of
- f. a few
- g. too much
- h. five

4. I get \_\_\_\_\_ **letters** every day.

- a. a lot of
- b. some
- c. a little
- d. a few
- e. too much
- f. too many
- g. several
- h. three

6. There are \_\_\_\_\_ **cars** in the street.

- a. several
- b. some
- c. too many
- d. a little
- e. a lot of
- f. a few
- g. too much
- h. five

◇ PRACTICE 3. Count and noncount nouns. (Charts 11-2 → 11-4)

*Directions:* Which of the words can follow **one** and which can follow **some**? Write the correct form of the noun in the blanks. If the noun does not have a singular form, write Ø.

	one ...	some ...
1. word	<u>word</u>	<u>words</u>
2. vocabulary	<u>Ø</u>	<u>vocabulary</u>
3. slang	<u>                    </u>	<u>                    </u>
4. homework	<u>                    </u>	<u>                    </u>
5. assignment	<u>                    </u>	<u>                    </u>
6. grammar	<u>                    </u>	<u>                    </u>
7. dress	<u>                    </u>	<u>                    </u>
8. clothes	<u>                    </u>	<u>                    </u>
9. clothing	<u>                    </u>	<u>                    </u>
10. parent	<u>                    </u>	<u>                    </u>
11. family	<u>                    </u>	<u>                    </u>
12. knowledge	<u>                    </u>	<u>                    </u>
13. information	<u>                    </u>	<u>                    </u>
14. fact	<u>                    </u>	<u>                    </u>
15. luck	<u>                    </u>	<u>                    </u>
16. garbage	<u>                    </u>	<u>                    </u>

◇ PRACTICE 4. Count and noncount nouns. (Charts 11-2 → 11-4)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the words below. Use the plural form as necessary.

✓ <i>apple trees</i>	<i>grass</i>	<i>machine</i>	<i>rice</i>
✓ <i>bracelets</i>	<i>hardware</i>	<i>machinery</i>	<i>ring</i>
✓ <i>bread</i>	<i>jewel</i>	<i>mountain</i>	<i>sandwich</i>
✓ <i>corn</i>	<i>jewelry</i>	<i>pea</i>	<i>scenery</i>
<i>equipment</i>	<i>lake</i>	<i>plant</i>	<i>tool</i>

- I went to the grocery store and bought some bread, corn,
- I stood on a hill in the countryside and saw some apple trees,
- I went to a jewelry store and saw some bracelets,
- At the auto repair shop, I saw some \_\_\_\_\_

◇ PRACTICE 5. Count and noncount nouns. (Charts 11-2 → 11-5)

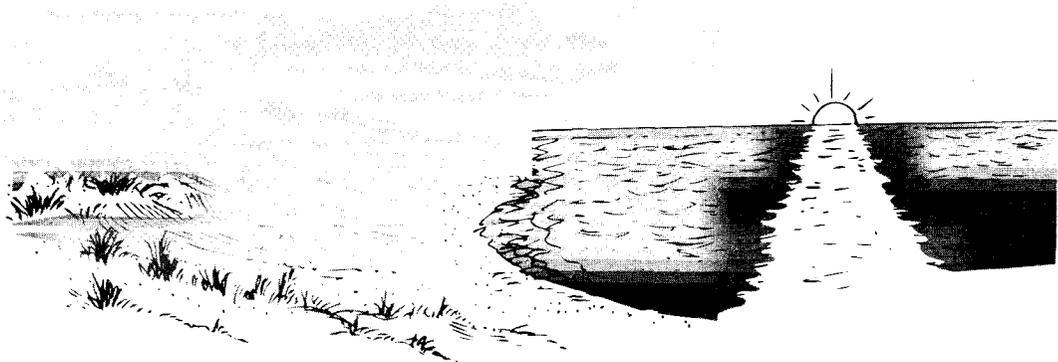
Directions: Fill in the blanks with *one*, *much*, or *many*.

- |                           |                      |
|---------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. <u>one</u> chair       | 14. _____ games      |
| 2. <u>much</u> furniture  | 15. _____ water      |
| 3. <u>many</u> vegetables | 16. _____ parent     |
| 4. _____ clothing         | 17. _____ sand       |
| 5. _____ vegetable        | 18. _____ professors |
| 6. _____ clothes          | 19. _____ dust       |
| 7. _____ fruit            | 20. _____ money      |
| 8. _____ facts            | 21. _____ stuff      |
| 9. _____ grammar          | 22. _____ thing      |
| 10. _____ word            | 23. _____ things     |
| 11. _____ idioms          | 24. _____ English    |
| 12. _____ vocabulary      | 25. _____ toast      |
| 13. _____ cars            |                      |

◇ PRACTICE 6. Count and noncount nouns. (Charts 11-2 → 11-4)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the correct form, singular or plural, of the given nouns. If a verb is needed, circle the correct one in the parentheses.

1. *snow* In Alaska in the winter, there (is, are) a lot of snow on the ground.
2. *weather* There (*is*, are) a lot of cold \_\_\_\_\_ in Alaska.
3. *sunshine* \_\_\_\_\_ (*is*, are) a source of vitamin D.
4. *knowledge* Prof. Nash has a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ about that subject.
5. *fun* We had a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ on the picnic.
6. *factory*,\*  
*pollution* Sometimes \_\_\_\_\_ cause \_\_\_\_\_.
7. *pride*,  
*child*\*\* Parents take \_\_\_\_\_ in the success of their \_\_\_\_\_.
8. *people*,  
*intelligence* I admire \_\_\_\_\_ who use their \_\_\_\_\_ to the fullest extent.
9. *peace* There have been many conflicts and wars throughout the history of the world, but almost all people prefer \_\_\_\_\_.
10. *hospitality* Thank you for your \_\_\_\_\_.
11. *beef* The \_\_\_\_\_ we had for dinner last night (*was*, *were*) very good.
12. *fog* During the winter months along the coast, there (*is*, *are*) usually a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ in the morning.



\*See Chart 6-1, p. 157, in the student book for variations in the pronunciation of words with a final -s.

\*\*Some nouns have irregular plurals. See Chart 6-2, p. 158.

◇ PRACTICE 7. MANY vs. MUCH. (Chart 11-5)

Directions: Complete the sentences with *much* or *many* and the singular or plural form of the noun. If a verb is needed, circle the correct one in the parentheses.

1. *apple*            How many apples did you buy?
2. *fruit*            How much fruit did you buy?
3. *mail*             How \_\_\_\_\_ did you get yesterday?
4. *letter*            How \_\_\_\_\_ did you get yesterday?
5. *English*          Anna's husband doesn't know \_\_\_\_\_.
6. *slang*             Sometimes I can't understand my roommate because he uses too  
\_\_\_\_\_.
7. *word*             How \_\_\_\_\_ (*is, are*) there in your dictionary?
8. *coffee*           Louise drinks too \_\_\_\_\_.
9. *sandwich*        Billy has a stomach ache. He ate too \_\_\_\_\_.
10. *sugar*            You shouldn't eat too \_\_\_\_\_.
11. *course*           How \_\_\_\_\_ are you taking this semester?
12. *homework*      How \_\_\_\_\_ do you have to do tonight?
13. *news*            There (*isn't, aren't*) \_\_\_\_\_ in the paper today.
14. *article*          How \_\_\_\_\_ (*is, are*) there on the front  
page of today's paper?
15. *fun*              I didn't have \_\_\_\_\_ at the party. It was boring.
16. *star*             How \_\_\_\_\_ (*is, are*) there in the universe?
17. *sunshine*        There (*isn't, aren't*) \_\_\_\_\_ in Seattle in winter.
18. *pollution*      (*Is, Are*) there \_\_\_\_\_ in Miami?
19. *luck*             We didn't have \_\_\_\_\_ when we went fishing.
20. *kind*            There (*is, are*) \_\_\_\_\_ of flowers.
21. *violence*        I think there (*is, are*) too \_\_\_\_\_ on television.
22. *makeup*         I think that Mary wears too \_\_\_\_\_.
23. *car*             How \_\_\_\_\_ pass in front of this building in 30 seconds?
24. *traffic*          (*Is, Are*) there \_\_\_\_\_ in front of your apartment building?

◇ PRACTICE 8. HOW MANY and HOW MUCH. (Chart 11-5)

*Directions:* Complete the questions with **many** or **much**. Add final **-s/-es** if necessary to make a noun plural. (Some of the count nouns have irregular plural forms.) If a verb is needed, circle the correct one in the parentheses. If final **-s/-es** is not necessary, put a slash (/) in the blank.

1. How many **letter** s (*is, (are)*) there in the English alphabet?\*
2. How much **mail** / did you get yesterday?
3. How many **man** men (*has, (have)*) a full beard at least once in their life?
4. How many **family** ies (*is, (are)*) there in your apartment building?
5. How \_\_\_\_\_ **sentence** \_\_\_\_\_ (*is, are*) there in this exercise?
6. How \_\_\_\_\_ **chalk** \_\_\_\_\_ (*is, are*) there in the classroom?
7. How \_\_\_\_\_ **English** \_\_\_\_\_ does Stefan know?
8. How \_\_\_\_\_ English **literature** \_\_\_\_\_ have you studied?
9. How \_\_\_\_\_ English **word** \_\_\_\_\_ do you know?
10. How \_\_\_\_\_ **gasoline** \_\_\_\_\_ does it take to fill the tank in your car?  
(*British:* How \_\_\_\_\_ **petrol** \_\_\_\_\_ does it take to fill the tank?)
11. How \_\_\_\_\_ **homework** \_\_\_\_\_ did the teacher assign?
12. How \_\_\_\_\_ **grandchild** \_\_\_\_\_ does Mrs. Cunningham have?
13. How \_\_\_\_\_ **page** \_\_\_\_\_ (*is, are*) there in this book?
14. How \_\_\_\_\_ **library** \_\_\_\_\_ (*is, are*) there in the United States?†
15. How \_\_\_\_\_ **glass** \_\_\_\_\_ of water do you drink every day?
16. How \_\_\_\_\_ **fun** \_\_\_\_\_ did you have at the amusement park?
17. How \_\_\_\_\_ **education** \_\_\_\_\_ does Ms. Martinez have?
18. How \_\_\_\_\_ **soap** \_\_\_\_\_ should I use in the dishwasher?
19. How \_\_\_\_\_ **island** \_\_\_\_\_ (*is, are*) there in Indonesia?\*\*\*
20. How \_\_\_\_\_ **people** \_\_\_\_\_ will there be by the year 2050?††
21. How \_\_\_\_\_ **zero** \_\_\_\_\_ (*is, are*) there in a billion?\*\*\*

\*Answer: twenty-six (26). There are twenty-six letters in the English alphabet.

†Answer: approximately fifteen thousand (15,000).

\*\*Answer: more than thirteen thousand seven hundred (13,700).

††Answer: estimated at more than thirteen billion (13,000,000,000).

\*\*\*Answer: nine (9).

◇ PRACTICE 9. Review: count and noncount nouns. (Charts 11-1 → 11-5)

*Directions:* Circle all the words that can be used with each given noun.

1. flower	a	an	some	much	many
2. flowers	a	an	some	much	many
3. coin	a	an	some	much	many
4. money	a	an	some	much	many
5. coins	a	an	some	much	many
6. salt	a	an	some	much	many
7. error	a	an	some	much	many
8. mistake	a	an	some	much	many
9. honest mistake	a	an	some	much	many
10. mistakes	a	an	some	much	many
11. dream	a	an	some	much	many
12. interesting dream	a	an	some	much	many
13. questions	a	an	some	much	many
14. soap	a	an	some	much	many
15. bar of soap	a	an	some	much	many
16. beauty	a	an	some	much	many
17. cup of tea	a	an	some	much	many
18. unsafe place	a	an	some	much	many
19. fruit	a	an	some	much	many
20. pieces of fruit	a	an	some	much	many

◇ PRACTICE 10. A FEW vs. A LITTLE. (Chart 11-5)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with **a few** or **a little**. Add a final **-s** to the noun if necessary. Otherwise, write a slash (/) in the blank.

- Let's listen to a little music / during dinner.
- Let's sing a few song s around the campfire.
- We all need help at times.
- Ingrid is from Sweden, but she knows English.
- I need more apple to make a pie.
- I like honey in my coffee.
- I have a problem. Could you give me advice?
- I need suggestion.

9. He asked \_\_\_\_\_ **question** \_\_\_\_\_ .
10. We talked to \_\_\_\_\_ **people** \_\_\_\_\_ on the plane.
11. Please give me \_\_\_\_\_ more **minute** \_\_\_\_\_ .
12. Ann opened the curtains to let in \_\_\_\_\_ **light** \_\_\_\_\_ from outdoors.
13. I have \_\_\_\_\_ **homework** \_\_\_\_\_ to do tonight.
14. Pedro already knew \_\_\_\_\_ English **grammar** \_\_\_\_\_ before he took this course.
15. I picked \_\_\_\_\_ **flower** \_\_\_\_\_ from my garden.
16. I've made \_\_\_\_\_ **progress** \_\_\_\_\_ in the last couple of weeks.

◇ PRACTICE 11. Error analysis. (Charts 11-1 → 11-5)

*Directions:* Correct the errors.

1. Kim has applied to <sup>a</sup>an university in England.
2. For Anita's wedding anniversary, her husband gave her a jewelry and a poetry he wrote.
3. The politician wanted specific suggestion for her speech on the economy.
4. Some of the homeworks for my English class was easy, but many of the assignment were unclear.
5. Diane has been to Rome several time recently. She always has wonderful time.
6. Many parents need advices about raising children.
7. The boys played together in the sands and dirt for hours.
8. A person doesn't need many equipment to play baseball: just ball and a bat.
9. Many happiness can come from enjoying the simple thing in life.

◇ PRACTICE 12. Count and noncount nouns. (Charts 6-2 and 11-1 → 11-6)

*Directions:* Add final **-s/-es** as necessary. Do not make any other changes. The number in parentheses at the end of each item is the number of nouns that need final **-s/-es**.

1. Plant<sup>s</sup><sub>^</sub> are the oldest living thing<sup>s</sup><sub>^</sub> on earth. (2) = [2 nouns need final **-s/-es**.]
2. Scientist divide living thing into two group: plant and animal. Generally speaking, plant stay in one place, but animal move around. (7)

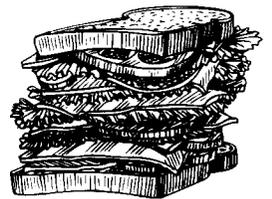
3. Flower, grass, and tree grow every place where people live. Plant also grow in desert, in ocean, on mountaintop, and in polar region. (7)
4. Plant are useful to people. We eat them. We use them for clothing. We build house from them. Plant are also important to our health. We get many kind of beneficial drug from plant. In addition, plant provide beauty and enjoyment to all our lives. (7)
5. Crop are plant that people grow for food. Nature can ruin crop. Bad weather—such as too much rain or too little rain—can destroy field of corn or wheat. Natural disaster such as flood and storm have caused farmer many problem since people first began to grow their own food. (9)
6. Food is a necessity for all living thing. All animal and plant need to eat. Most plant take what they need through their root and their leaf. The majority of insect live solely on plant. Many bird have a diet of worm and insect. Reptile eat small animal, egg, and insect. (15)

◇ PRACTICE 13. Units of measure with noncount nouns. (Chart 11-7)

*Directions:* Use the words in the list to complete the sentences. Use the plural form if necessary. Some sentences have more than one possible completion.

<i>bar</i>	<i>gallon</i>	<i>piece</i>	<i>sheet</i>
<i>bottle</i>	<i>glass</i>	<i>pound</i>	<i>spoonful</i>
<i>bowl</i>	<i>loaf</i>	<i>quart</i>	<i>tube</i>
<i>cup</i>	<i>kilo</i>		

1. I drank a cup of coffee.
2. I bought two pounds of cheese.
3. I had a \_\_\_\_\_ of soup for lunch.
4. I drank a \_\_\_\_\_ of orange juice.
5. I had a \_\_\_\_\_ of toast and an egg for breakfast.
6. I put ten \_\_\_\_\_ of gas in my car.
7. I bought a \_\_\_\_\_ of milk at the supermarket.
8. I need a \_\_\_\_\_ of chalk.
9. I drank a \_\_\_\_\_ of beer.
10. I used two \_\_\_\_\_ of bread to make a sandwich.
11. There is a \_\_\_\_\_ of fruit on the table.
12. There are 200 \_\_\_\_\_ of lined paper in my notebook.



13. I bought one \_\_\_\_\_ of bread at the store.
14. I put a \_\_\_\_\_ of honey in my tea.
15. I need to buy a new \_\_\_\_\_ of toothpaste.
16. There is a \_\_\_\_\_ of soap in the bathroom.
17. Let me give you a \_\_\_\_\_ of advice.
18. I just learned an interesting \_\_\_\_\_ of information.
19. There were a dozen\* \_\_\_\_\_ of mail in my mailbox today.
20. A three-piece suit is made up of three \_\_\_\_\_ of clothing: slacks, a jacket, and a vest.

◇ PRACTICE 14. Units of measure with noncount nouns. (Chart 11-7)

*Directions:* What units of measure are usually used with the following nouns? More than one unit of measure can be used with some of the nouns.

<i>bag</i>	<i>bottle</i>	<i>box</i>	<i>can/tin**</i>	<i>jar</i>
------------	---------------	------------	------------------	------------

1. a jar of pickles.
2. a \_\_\_\_\_ of aspirin.
3. a \_\_\_\_\_ of laundry detergent
4. a \_\_\_\_\_ of instant coffee
5. a \_\_\_\_\_ of sardines
6. a \_\_\_\_\_ of sugar
7. a \_\_\_\_\_ of peanut butter
8. a \_\_\_\_\_ of soy sauce
9. a \_\_\_\_\_ of uncooked noodles
10. a \_\_\_\_\_ of refried beans

◇ PRACTICE 15. MUCH vs. MANY. (Charts 11-5 → 11-7)

*Directions:* Complete the questions with **much** or **many**.

1. A: How many suitcases did you take with you on the plane to Tahiti?  
B: Three. (I took three suitcases on the plane to Tahiti.)
2. A: How much suntan oil did you take with you?  
B: A lot. (I took a lot of suntan oil with me.)
3. A: How \_\_\_\_\_ did you take?  
B: Two pairs. (I took two pairs of sandals.)
4. A: How \_\_\_\_\_ did you take?  
B: One tube. (I took one tube of toothpaste.)

\*A dozen = twelve. It is followed by a plural noun: *a dozen eggs*.

\*\**a can = a tin* in British English.

5. A: How \_\_\_\_\_ did you have?  
 B: Twenty. (I had twenty kilos of luggage.)
6. A: How \_\_\_\_\_ did you pay in overweight baggage charges?  
 B: A lot. (I paid a lot of money for overweight baggage.)

◇ PRACTICE 16. A/AN vs. SOME. (Chart 11-8)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with **a/an** or **some**.

1. I wrote   a   letter.
2. I got   some   mail.
3. We bought \_\_\_\_\_ equipment for our camping trip.
4. You need \_\_\_\_\_ tool to cut wood.
5. I ate \_\_\_\_\_ food.
6. I had \_\_\_\_\_ apple.
7. I wore \_\_\_\_\_ old clothing.
8. I wore \_\_\_\_\_ old shirt.
9. Jim asked me for \_\_\_\_\_ advice.
10. I gave Jim \_\_\_\_\_ suggestion.
11. I read \_\_\_\_\_ interesting story in the paper.
12. The paper has \_\_\_\_\_ interesting news today.
13. I read \_\_\_\_\_ poem after dinner.
14. I read \_\_\_\_\_ poetry after dinner.
15. I know \_\_\_\_\_ song from India.
16. I know \_\_\_\_\_ Indian music.
17. I learned \_\_\_\_\_ new word.
18. I learned \_\_\_\_\_ new slang.

◇ PRACTICE 17. A vs. SOME. (Chart 11-8)

*Directions:* Write **a** or **some** in the blank before each singular noun. Then write a sentence with the plural form of the noun if possible.

**Singular Objects**

**Plural Objects**

1. I saw   a   bird.
2. I ate   some   corn.
3. Would you like \_\_\_\_\_ tea?
4. I picked \_\_\_\_\_ flower.

- I saw some birds.
- ∅ (none possible)
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_

5. I drank \_\_\_\_\_ water. \_\_\_\_\_
6. I fed grass to \_\_\_\_\_ horse. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Pat is wearing \_\_\_\_\_ jewelry. \_\_\_\_\_
8. I bought \_\_\_\_\_ honey. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Tom bought \_\_\_\_\_ new shirt. \_\_\_\_\_
10. I need \_\_\_\_\_ soap to wash the dishes. \_\_\_\_\_

◇ PRACTICE 18. A/AN vs. THE: singular count nouns. (Chart 11-8)

Directions: Complete the sentences with *a/an* or *the*.

1. A: A dog makes a good pet.  
B: I agree.
2. A: Did you feed the dog?  
B: Yes, I did.
3. My dorm room has \_\_\_\_\_ desk, \_\_\_\_\_ bed, \_\_\_\_\_ chest of drawers, and two chairs.
4. A: Jessica, where's the stapler?  
B: On \_\_\_\_\_ desk. If it's not there, look in \_\_\_\_\_ top drawer.
5. A: Sara, put your bike in \_\_\_\_\_ basement before dark.  
B: Okay, Dad.
6. Our apartment building has \_\_\_\_\_ basement. Sara keeps her bike there at night.
7. Almost every sentence has \_\_\_\_\_ subject and \_\_\_\_\_ verb.
8. Look at this sentence: *Jack lives in Miami*. What is \_\_\_\_\_ subject, and what is \_\_\_\_\_ verb?
9. A: I can't see you at four. I'll be in \_\_\_\_\_ meeting then. How about four-thirty?  
B: Fine.
10. A: What time does \_\_\_\_\_ meeting start Tuesday?  
B: Eight.
11. Jack's car ran out of gas. He had to walk \_\_\_\_\_ long distance to find \_\_\_\_\_ telephone and call his brother for help.
12. \_\_\_\_\_ distance from \_\_\_\_\_ sun to \_\_\_\_\_ earth is 93,000,000 miles.
13. A: Jake, \_\_\_\_\_ telephone is ringing. Can you get it?  
B: Sure.
14. A: Did you feed \_\_\_\_\_ cat?  
B: Yes. I fed him a couple of hours ago.

15. A: Does Jane have \_\_\_\_\_ cat?  
 B: No, she has \_\_\_\_\_ dog. She doesn't like cats.
16. A: I wrote \_\_\_\_\_ poem. Would you like to read it?  
 B: Sure. What's it about?
17. A: Was \_\_\_\_\_ lecture interesting?  
 B: Yes. \_\_\_\_\_ speaker gave \_\_\_\_\_ interesting talk.
18. A: Where should we go for \_\_\_\_\_ cup of coffee after class?  
 B: Let's go to \_\_\_\_\_ cafe around \_\_\_\_\_ corner from the First National Bank.
19. A: Where do you live?  
 B: We live on \_\_\_\_\_ quiet street in the suburbs.
20. A: I'm hungry, and I'm tired of walking. How much farther is it to \_\_\_\_\_ restaurant?  
 B: Just a couple of blocks. Let's cross \_\_\_\_\_ street here.  
 A: Are you sure you know where you're going?
21. A: Did Bob find \_\_\_\_\_ job?  
 B: Yes. He's working at \_\_\_\_\_ restaurant.  
 A: Oh? Which one?

◇ PRACTICE 19. Ø vs. THE. (Chart 11-8)

*Directions:* Write Ø or *the* in the blanks. Add capital letters as necessary.

1. A: \_\_\_\_\_ Ø \_\_\_\_\_ D dogs make good pets.  
 B: I agree.
2. A: Did you feed \_\_\_\_\_ the dogs?  
 B: Yes, I did.
3. A: \_\_\_\_\_ Ø \_\_\_\_\_ F fruit is good for you.  
 B: I agree.
4. A: \_\_\_\_\_ The fruit in this bowl is ripe.  
 B: Good. I think I'll have a piece.
5. John, where's \_\_\_\_\_ milk? Is it in \_\_\_\_\_ refrigerator or on \_\_\_\_\_ table?
6. \_\_\_\_\_ milk comes from cows and goats.
7. Tom usually has \_\_\_\_\_ wine with dinner.
8. Dinner's ready. Shall I pour \_\_\_\_\_ wine?
9. We usually have \_\_\_\_\_ meat for dinner.

10. \_\_\_\_\_ meat we had for dinner last night was tough.
11. A: Mom, please pass \_\_\_\_\_ potatoes.  
B: Here you are. Anything else? Want some more chicken, too?
12. \_\_\_\_\_ potatoes are \_\_\_\_\_ vegetables.
13. \_\_\_\_\_ frogs are \_\_\_\_\_ small animals without \_\_\_\_\_ tails that live on land or in water. \_\_\_\_\_ turtles also live on land or in water, but they have \_\_\_\_\_ tails and \_\_\_\_\_ hard shells.
14. A: Nicole, what are those animals doing in here!?  
B: We're playing. \_\_\_\_\_ frogs belong to Jason. \_\_\_\_\_ turtles are mine.



15. Do you like \_\_\_\_\_ weather in this city?
16. \_\_\_\_\_ copper is used in electrical wiring.
17. People used to use \_\_\_\_\_ candles for \_\_\_\_\_ light, but now they use \_\_\_\_\_ electricity.
18. There are many kinds of \_\_\_\_\_ books. We use \_\_\_\_\_ textbooks and \_\_\_\_\_ workbooks in school. We use \_\_\_\_\_ dictionaries and \_\_\_\_\_ encyclopedias for reference. For \_\_\_\_\_ entertainment, we read \_\_\_\_\_ novels and \_\_\_\_\_ poetry.
19. \_\_\_\_\_ books on this desk are mine.

◇ PRACTICE 20. Using THE for second mention. (Charts 11-6 → 11-8)

*Directions:* Use **a/an**, **some**, or **the** in the sentences. REMINDER: Use **the** when a noun is mentioned for the second time.

1. I drank some coffee and some milk. The coffee was hot. The milk was cold.
2. I had \_\_\_\_\_ soup and \_\_\_\_\_ sandwich for lunch. \_\_\_\_\_ soup was too salty, but \_\_\_\_\_ sandwich was pretty good.

3. Yesterday I bought \_\_\_\_\_ clothes. I bought \_\_\_\_\_ suit, \_\_\_\_\_ shirt, and \_\_\_\_\_ tie. \_\_\_\_\_ suit is gray and comes with a vest. \_\_\_\_\_ shirt is pale blue, and \_\_\_\_\_ tie has black and gray stripes.
4. A: I saw \_\_\_\_\_ accident yesterday.  
 B: Oh? Where?  
 A: On Grand Avenue. \_\_\_\_\_ man in \_\_\_\_\_ Volkswagen drove through a stop sign and hit \_\_\_\_\_ bus.  
 B: Was anyone hurt in \_\_\_\_\_ accident?  
 A: I don't think so. \_\_\_\_\_ man who was driving \_\_\_\_\_ Volkswagen got out of his car and seemed to be okay. His car was only slightly damaged. No one in \_\_\_\_\_ bus was hurt.
5. Yesterday I saw \_\_\_\_\_ man and \_\_\_\_\_ woman. They were having \_\_\_\_\_ argument. \_\_\_\_\_ man was yelling at \_\_\_\_\_ woman, and \_\_\_\_\_ woman was shouting at \_\_\_\_\_ man. I don't know what \_\_\_\_\_ argument was about.
6. Yesterday while I was walking to work, I saw \_\_\_\_\_ birds in \_\_\_\_\_ tree. I also saw \_\_\_\_\_ cat under \_\_\_\_\_ tree. \_\_\_\_\_ birds didn't pay any attention to \_\_\_\_\_ cat, but \_\_\_\_\_ cat was watching \_\_\_\_\_ birds intently.

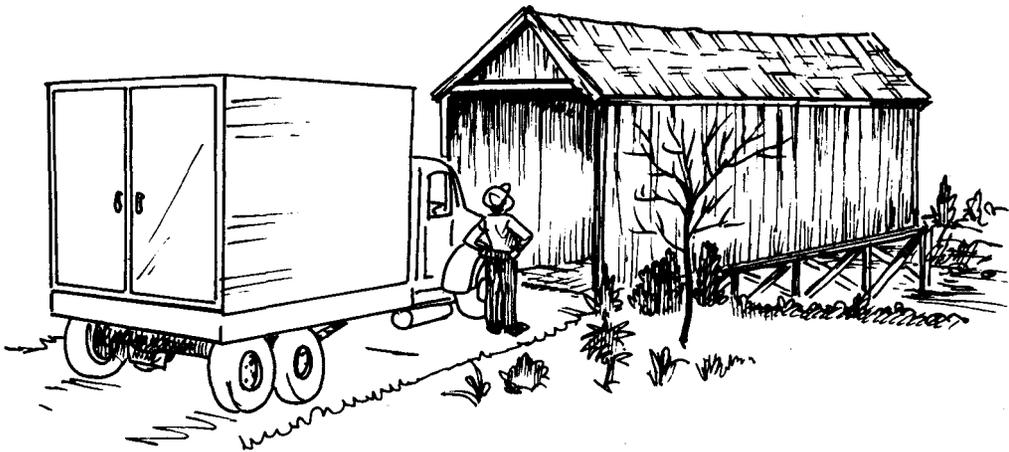


◇ PRACTICE 21. Using THE for second mention. (Charts 11-6 → 11-8)

Directions: Write *a/an*, *some*, or *the* in the blanks.

One day last month while I was driving through the countryside, I saw   a   man and   1   truck next to   3   covered bridge.   4   bridge crossed   5   small river. I stopped and asked   6   man, "What's the matter? Can I be of help?"

"Well," said   7   man, "my truck is about a half-inch\* too tall. Or   8   top of   9   bridge is a half-inch too short. Either way, my truck won't fit under   10   bridge."



"Hmmm. There must be   11   solution to this problem," I said.

"I don't know. I guess I'll have to turn around and take another route," he replied.

After a few moments of thought, I said, "Aha! I have   12   solution!"

"What is it?" asked the man.

"Let a little air out of your tires. Then   13   truck won't be too tall and you can cross   14   bridge over   15   river."

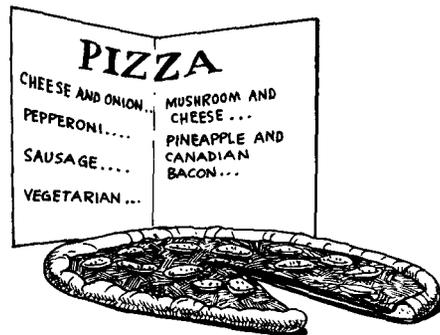
"Hey, that's   16   great idea. Let's try it!" So   17   man let a little air out of   18   tires and was able to cross   19   river and go on his way.

\*One-half inch = 1.2 centimeters.

◇ PRACTICE 22. Summary: A/AN vs. THE vs. Ø. (Chart 11-8)

Directions: Complete the sentences with *a/an*, *the*, or *Ø*. Add capital letters as necessary.

- A: What would you like for breakfast?  
B: An egg and some toast.  
A: How would you like the egg?  
B: Fried, sunny side up.
- Ø eggs are nutritious.
- It is \_\_\_\_\_ scientific fact: \_\_\_\_\_ steam rises when \_\_\_\_\_ water boils.
- \_\_\_\_\_ gas is expensive nowadays.
- \_\_\_\_\_ gas I got yesterday cost more than I've ever paid.
- \_\_\_\_\_ newspapers are \_\_\_\_\_ important source of \_\_\_\_\_ information.
- \_\_\_\_\_ sun is \_\_\_\_\_ star. We need \_\_\_\_\_ sun for \_\_\_\_\_ heat, \_\_\_\_\_ light, and \_\_\_\_\_ energy.
- \_\_\_\_\_ ducks are my favorite farm animals.
- \_\_\_\_\_ pizza originated in Italy. It is a pie with \_\_\_\_\_ cheese, \_\_\_\_\_ tomatoes, and other things on top. \_\_\_\_\_ "pizza" means "pie" in \_\_\_\_\_ Italian.



- A: Hey, Nick. Pass \_\_\_\_\_ pizza. I want another piece.  
B: There are only two pieces left. You take \_\_\_\_\_ big piece, and I'll take \_\_\_\_\_ small one.
- \_\_\_\_\_ gold is \_\_\_\_\_ excellent conductor of \_\_\_\_\_ electricity. It is used in many of the electrical circuits on \_\_\_\_\_ spaceship.
- A: Where's Alice?  
B: She's in \_\_\_\_\_ kitchen making \_\_\_\_\_ sandwich.
- A: Where'd \_\_\_\_\_ plumber go? \_\_\_\_\_ sink's still leaking!  
B: Relax. He went to shut off \_\_\_\_\_ water supply to \_\_\_\_\_ house. He'll fix \_\_\_\_\_ leak when he gets back.

14. A: Do you see \_\_\_\_\_ man who is standing next to Janet?  
B: Yes. Who is he?  
A: He's \_\_\_\_\_ president of this university.
15. A one-dollar bill has a picture of \_\_\_\_\_ president of the United States. It's a picture of George Washington.
16. A: What did you buy when you went shopping?  
B: I bought \_\_\_\_\_ blouse and \_\_\_\_\_ jewelry.  
A: What color is \_\_\_\_\_ blouse?  
B: Red.
17. A: Where's my bookbag?  
B: It's on \_\_\_\_\_ floor over there, in \_\_\_\_\_ corner next to \_\_\_\_\_ sofa.
18. We need to buy \_\_\_\_\_ furniture. I'd like to get \_\_\_\_\_ sofa and \_\_\_\_\_ easy chair.
19. \_\_\_\_\_ furniture is expensive these days.
20. \_\_\_\_\_ vegetarian doesn't eat \_\_\_\_\_ meat.
21. Only one of \_\_\_\_\_ continents in \_\_\_\_\_ world is uninhabited. Which one?
22. Last week, I took \_\_\_\_\_ easy exam. It was in my economics class. I had \_\_\_\_\_ right answers for all of \_\_\_\_\_ questions on \_\_\_\_\_ exam. My score was 100%.
23. Anyone who goes to \_\_\_\_\_ job interview should wear \_\_\_\_\_ nice clothes.
24. A mouse has \_\_\_\_\_ long, thin, almost hairless tail. \_\_\_\_\_ rats also have \_\_\_\_\_ long, skinny tails.
25. Years ago, people used \_\_\_\_\_ wood or \_\_\_\_\_ coal for \_\_\_\_\_ heat, but now most people use \_\_\_\_\_ gas, \_\_\_\_\_ oil, or \_\_\_\_\_ electricity.
26. I had \_\_\_\_\_ interesting experience yesterday. \_\_\_\_\_ man in \_\_\_\_\_ blue suit came into my office and handed me \_\_\_\_\_ bouquet of \_\_\_\_\_ flowers. I had never seen \_\_\_\_\_ man before in my life, but I thanked him for \_\_\_\_\_ flowers. Then he walked out \_\_\_\_\_ door.
27. A: What is your favorite food?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_ ice cream—it's cold, sweet, and smooth.
28. We had \_\_\_\_\_ steamed rice, \_\_\_\_\_ fish, and \_\_\_\_\_ vegetables for lunch yesterday. \_\_\_\_\_ rice was cooked just right. \_\_\_\_\_ fish was very tasty. \_\_\_\_\_ vegetables were fresh.

29. Karen is \_\_\_\_\_ exceptionally talented person.
30. A: Where's \_\_\_\_\_ letter I wrote to Ted?  
 B: It's gone. \_\_\_\_\_ strong wind blew it on \_\_\_\_\_ floor, and \_\_\_\_\_ dog tore it up. I threw \_\_\_\_\_ scraps in \_\_\_\_\_ wastebasket.
31. A: I'm looking for \_\_\_\_\_ tape player. Where is it?  
 B: It's on one of \_\_\_\_\_ shelves next to my desk.  
 A: Ah! There it is. Thanks.  
 B: You're welcome.  
 A: Hmm. I don't think it works. Maybe \_\_\_\_\_ batteries are dead.
32. \_\_\_\_\_ chalk is \_\_\_\_\_ necessity in a classroom.
33. \_\_\_\_\_ efficient transportation system is \_\_\_\_\_ essential part of a healthy economy.

◇ PRACTICE 23. Using THE or Ø with names. (Chart 11-9)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with *the* or *Ø*.

1. Although Ingrid has been to Orly Airport several times, she has never visited Ø Paris.
2. The Atlantic Ocean is smaller than the Pacific.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Dr. James was the youngest person at her university to get a Ph.D.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Mt. Rainier in Washington State is in \_\_\_\_\_ Cascade Mountain Range.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Nile is the longest river in \_\_\_\_\_ Africa.
6. Is \_\_\_\_\_ Toronto or \_\_\_\_\_ Montreal the largest city in Canada?
7. During her tour of Africa, Helen climbed \_\_\_\_\_ Mt. Kilimanjaro and visited several national parks in \_\_\_\_\_ Kenya.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ New Zealand is made up of two islands: North Island and South Island.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ Himalayas extend through several countries: \_\_\_\_\_ Pakistan, \_\_\_\_\_ India, \_\_\_\_\_ Tibet, and \_\_\_\_\_ Nepal.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ President Davis was surprised to be elected to a fourth term.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ Ho Chi Minh City in \_\_\_\_\_ Vietnam was formerly called \_\_\_\_\_ Saigon.
12. \_\_\_\_\_ Andes Mountains in South America extend for 5000 miles.

◇ PRACTICE 24. Using THE or Ø with names. (Chart 11-9)

Directions: Answer the questions. Choose from the list below. Use *the* if necessary. (Not all names on the list will be used.)

<i>Africa</i>	<i>Europe</i>	<i>Mont Blanc</i>	<i>Shanghai</i>
<i>Alps</i>	<i>Gobi Desert</i>	<i>Mt. Vesuvius</i>	<i>South America</i>
<i>Amazon River</i>	<i>Indian Ocean</i>	<i>Netherlands</i>	<i>Taipei</i>
<i>Beijing</i>	<i>Lagos</i>	<i>Nile River</i>	<i>Thames River</i>
<i>Black Sea</i>	<i>Lake Baikal</i>	<i>North America</i>	<i>Tibet</i>
<i>Dead Sea</i>	<i>Lake Tanganyika</i>	<i>Sahara Desert</i>	<i>United Arab Emirates</i>
<i>Elbe River</i>	<i>Lake Titicaca</i>	<i>Saudi Arabia</i>	<i>Urals</i>

GEOGRAPHY TRIVIA

Question	Answer
1. What is the lowest point on Earth?	<u>the Dead Sea</u>
2. What is the second-longest river in the world?	_____
3. What is the most populated city in China?	_____
4. What is the largest desert in the world?	_____
5. What river runs through London?	_____
6. On what continent is the Volga River?	_____
7. What mountains border France and Italy?	_____
8. What lake is in East Central Africa?	_____
9. On what continent is Mexico?	_____
10. What is the third-largest ocean in the world?	_____
11. What country is also known as Holland?	_____
12. What is the third-largest continent in the world?	_____
13. What country is located in the Himalayas?	_____
14. What mountains are part of the boundary between Europe and Asia?	_____
15. What is the capital of Nigeria?	_____
16. What country consists of seven kingdoms?	_____

◇ PRACTICE 25. Capitalization. (Chart 11-10)

Directions: Add capital letters where necessary.

1. I'm taking <sup>B</sup>~~b~~ iology 101 this semester.
2. I'm taking history, biology, english, and calculus this semester.
3. Some lab classes meet on saturday.
4. Marta lives on a busy street. Marta lives at 2358 olive street.
5. We went to canada last summer. we went to montreal in july.
6. My roommate likes vietnamese food, and i like thai food.
7. The religion of saudi arabia is islam.
8. Shelia works for the xerox corporation. it is a very large corporation.
9. Pedro is from latin america.
10. My uncle lives in st. louis. I'm going to visit uncle bill next spring.
11. We went to a park. we went to waterfall park.
12. Are you going to the university of oregon or oregon state university?
13. Alice goes to a university in oregon.
14. The next assignment in literature class is to read *the adventures of tom sawyer*.
15. Many countries have holidays to celebrate the date they became independent. In france, they call it "bastille day."

◇ PRACTICE 26. Capitalization. (Chart 11-10)

Directions: Add capital letters where necessary.

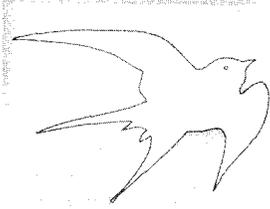
1. Do you know <sup>R</sup>~~r~~ obert <sup>J</sup>~~j~~ ones?
2. Do you know my uncle? (*no change*)
3. I like uncle joe and aunt sara.
4. I'd like you to meet my aunt.
5. susan w. miller is a professor.
6. I am in prof. miller's class.
7. The weather is cold in january.
8. The weather is cold in winter.
9. I have three classes on monday.

10. I would like to visit los angeles.
11. It's the largest city in california.
12. I like to visit large cities in foreign countries.
13. There are fifty states in the united states of america.
14. It used to take weeks or months to cross an ocean.
15. Today we can fly across the atlantic ocean in hours.
16. Mark lives on a busy street near the local high school.
17. Mark lives on market street near washington high school.
18. Our family stayed at a very comfortable hotel.
19. Our family stayed at the hilton hotel in bangkok.
20. Yoko is japanese, but she can also speak german.

◇ PRACTICE 27. Error analysis. (Chapter 11)

*Directions:* Correct the errors.

1. The mail carrier brought only one <sup>letter</sup> ~~mail~~ today.
2. Mr. Dale gave his class long history assignment for the weekend.
3. Tariq speaks several language, including Arabic and Spanish.
4. Dr. kim gives all her patients toothbrush and toothpaste at their dental appointments.
5. I usually have glass water with my lunch.
6. A helpful policeman gave us an information about the city.
7. This cookie recipe calls for two cup of nut.
8. Much vegetable are believed to have cancer-fighting ingredients.
9. Only applicants with the necessary experiences should apply for the computer position.
10. When Vicki likes a movie, she sees it several time.
11. A popular children's story is *Snow White And The Seven Dwarfs*.
12. Is it possible to stop all violences in the world?



# CHAPTER 12

## Adjective Clauses

### ◇ PRACTICE 1. Using WHO in adjective clauses. (Charts 12-1 and 12-2)

Directions: Underline the adjective clause in the long sentence. Then change the long sentence into two short sentences.\*

1. Long sentence: I thanked the man who helped me move the refrigerator.

Short sentence 1: I thanked the man.

Short sentence 2: He helped me move the refrigerator.
2. Long sentence: A woman who was wearing a gray suit asked me for directions.

Short sentence 1: \_\_\_\_\_ me for directions.

Short sentence 2: \_\_\_\_\_ a gray suit.
3. Long sentence: The woman who aided the rebels put her life in danger.

Short sentence 1: \_\_\_\_\_ her life in danger.

Short sentence 2: \_\_\_\_\_ the rebels.
4. Long sentence: I saw a man who was wearing a blue coat.

Short sentence 1: \_\_\_\_\_ a man.

Short sentence 2: \_\_\_\_\_ a blue coat.
5. Long sentence: The girl who broke the vase apologized to Mrs. Cook.

Short sentence 1: \_\_\_\_\_ to Mrs. Cook.

Short sentence 2: \_\_\_\_\_ the vase.



\*In grammar terminology, the “long sentence” is called a **complex sentence**, and the “short sentence” is called a **simple sentence**.

- A complex sentence has an independent clause and one or more dependent clauses. For example:  
*I thanked the man who helped me.* = a complex sentence consisting of one independent clause (*I thanked the man*) and one dependent clause (*who helped me*).
- A simple sentence has only an independent clause. For example:  
*I thanked the man.* = a simple sentence consisting of one independent clause.  
*He helped me.* = a simple sentence consisting of one independent clause.

◇ PRACTICE 2. Using WHO in adjective clauses. (Chart 12-2)

*Directions:* Combine the two short sentences into one long sentence using “short sentence 2” as an adjective clause. Use **who**. Underline the adjective clause.

1. *Short sentence 1:* The woman was polite.  
*Short sentence 2:* She answered the phone.  
*Long sentence:* The woman who answered the phone was polite.
2. *Short sentence 1:* The man has a good voice.  
*Short sentence 2:* He sang at the concert.  
*Long sentence:*
3. *Short sentence 1:* We enjoyed the actors.  
*Short sentence 2:* They played the leading roles.  
*Long sentence:*
4. *Short sentence 1:* The girl is hurt.  
*Short sentence 2:* She fell down the stairs.  
*Long sentence:*
5. *Short sentence 1:* I read about the soccer player.  
*Short sentence 2:* He was injured in the game yesterday.  
*Long sentence:*

◇ PRACTICE 3. Using WHO and WHOM in adjective clauses. (Chart 12-2)

*Directions:* Underline the adjective clause. Identify the subject and verb of the adjective clause. Then complete the change from one long sentence to two short sentences, and identify the subject and verb of the second short sentence.

1. *Long sentence:* The people <sup>S</sup> who live next to me <sup>V</sup> are nice.  
*Short sentence 1:* The people are nice.  
*Short sentence 2:* <sup>S</sup> They <sup>V</sup> live next to me.
2. *Long sentence:* The people <sup>S</sup> whom Kate visited yesterday <sup>V</sup> were French.  
*Short sentence 1:* The people were French.  
*Short sentence 2:* <sup>S</sup> Kate <sup>V</sup> visited them yesterday.
3. *Long sentence:* The people whom I saw at the park were having a picnic.  
*Short sentence 1:* The people were having a picnic.  
*Short sentence 2:*
4. *Long sentence:* The students who go to this school are friendly.  
*Short sentence 1:* The students are friendly.  
*Short sentence 2:*

5. *Long sentence:* The woman whom you met last week lives in Mexico.  
*Short sentence 1:* The woman lives in Mexico.  
*Short sentence 2:*

◇ PRACTICE 4. Using WHO and WHOM in adjective clauses. (Chart 12-2)

*Directions:* Change the two short sentences into one long sentence with an adjective clause. Use **who** or **whom**. Underline the adjective clause.

1. *Short sentence 1:* The woman was polite.  
*Short sentence 2:* Jack met her.  
*Long sentence:* The woman whom Jack met was polite.
2. *Short sentence 1:* I like the woman.  
*Short sentence 2:* She manages my uncle's store.  
*Long sentence:* I like the woman who manages my uncle's store.
3. *Short sentence 1:* The singer was wonderful.  
*Short sentence 2:* We heard him at the concert.  
*Long sentence:*
4. *Short sentence 1:* The people brought a small gift.  
*Short sentence 2:* They came to dinner.  
*Long sentence:*
5. *Short sentence 1:* What is the name of the woman?  
*Short sentence 2:* Tom invited her to the dance.  
*Long sentence:*

◇ PRACTICE 5. Using WHO and WHO(M) in adjective clauses. (Chart 12-2)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with **who** or **who(m)**.\*

1. I know a man who works at the post office.
2. One of the people who(m) I watched at the race track lost a huge amount of money.
3. My neighbor is a kind person \_\_\_\_\_ is always willing to help people in trouble.
4. My mother is a woman \_\_\_\_\_ I admire tremendously.
5. I thanked the man \_\_\_\_\_ helped me.
6. The woman \_\_\_\_\_ I helped thanked me.
7. The doctor \_\_\_\_\_ lives on my street is a surgeon.
8. I talked to the people \_\_\_\_\_ were sitting next to me.

\*There are parentheses around the "m" in *who(m)* to show that, in everyday informal English, *who* may be used as an object pronoun instead of *whom*.

9. I saw the woman \_\_\_\_\_ was walking her dog.
10. Do you like the mechanic \_\_\_\_\_ fixed your car?
11. Mr. Polanski is a mechanic \_\_\_\_\_ you can trust.
12. There are many good people in the world \_\_\_\_\_ you can trust to be honest and honorable.
13. The children \_\_\_\_\_ live down the street in the yellow house are always polite.
14. The children \_\_\_\_\_ I watched at the park were feeding ducks in a pond.
15. My husband is a person \_\_\_\_\_ enjoys good food and good friends.

◇ PRACTICE 6. Using **THAT** or  $\emptyset$  in adjective clauses. (Chart 12-3)

*Directions:* Write **S** if **who** or **that** is the subject of the adjective clause. Write **O** if **who** or **that** is the object of the adjective clause. Cross out the words **who** or **that** where possible.

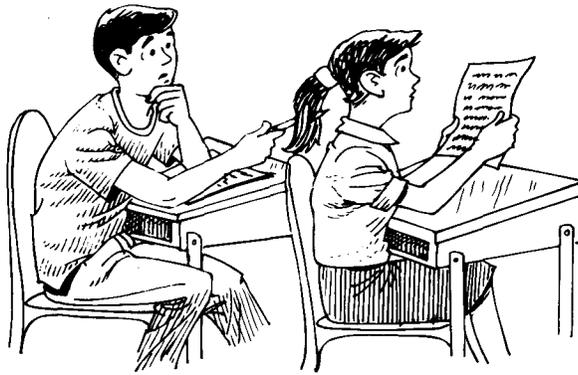
1.   O   The secretary ~~that~~ I hired is very efficient.
2.   S   The secretary **who** works in the office next door is interviewing for my old job.
3.        The students **who** worked together in study groups got the highest scores on the test.
4.        The students **who** the teacher helped did very well on the test.
5.        The man **that** lives next door is a famous scientist.
6.        The children **that** came to the party wore animal costumes.
7.        The teachers **who** went to the workshop felt encouraged to try new techniques.
8.        The teachers **that** I had for science were very well trained.
9.        The policeman **who** caught the thief had been watching him for days.
10.        The policeman **that** we met on the street told us about several interesting tourist spots.

◇ PRACTICE 7. Using **THAT** or  $\emptyset$  in adjective clauses. (Chart 12-3)

*Directions:* Cross out the word **that** if possible.

1. That man ~~that~~ I saw was wearing a black hat.
2. The people that visited us stayed too long. (*no change*)
3. The fruit that I bought today at the market is fresh.
4. My high school English teacher is a person that I will never forget.
5. The puppy that barked the loudest got the most attention in the pet store.

6. The girl that sits in front of Richard has long black hair that she wears in a ponytail.



7. The forest that lies below my house provides a home for deer and other wildlife.

8. The animals that live in our neighborhood behaved strangely before the earthquake.

◇ PRACTICE 8. Using WHO, WHO(M), THAT, or Ø in adjective clauses. (Chart 12-3)

*Directions:* In the box, write every possible pronoun that can be used to connect the adjective clause to the main clause: **who**, **who(m)**, or **that**. Also, write **Ø** if the pronoun can be omitted.

1. The woman

who  
that

sat next to me on the plane was very nice.

2. The woman

who(m)  
that  
Ø

I met on the plane was very nice.

3. Two people

I didn't know walked into the classroom.

4. The people

walked into the classroom were strangers.

5. My cousin's wife is the woman

is talking to Mr. Horn.

6. I like the woman

my brother and I visited.

◇ PRACTICE 9. WHO and WHO(M) vs. WHICH. (Charts 12-2 → 12-4)

Directions: Choose the correct answer.

1. The magazine \_\_\_\_\_ I read on the plane was interesting.  
A. who      B. who(m)      C. which
2. The artist \_\_\_\_\_ drew my picture is very good.  
A. who      B. who(m)      C. which
3. I really enjoyed the experiences \_\_\_\_\_ I had on my trip to Nigeria.  
A. who      B. who(m)      C. which
4. Most of the games \_\_\_\_\_ we played as children no longer amuse us.  
A. who      B. who(m)      C. which
5. All of the people \_\_\_\_\_ I called yesterday can come to the meeting on Monday.  
A. who      B. who(m)      C. which
6. The teacher \_\_\_\_\_ was ill canceled her math class.  
A. who      B. who(m)      C. which
7. The flight \_\_\_\_\_ I took to Singapore was on time.  
A. who      B. who(m)      C. which
8. I read an article \_\_\_\_\_ discussed the current political crisis.  
A. who      B. who(m)      C. which

◇ PRACTICE 10. Adjective clauses. (Charts 12-2 → 12-4)

Directions: Complete the definitions with the given information. Use adjective clauses in the definitions.

*She leaves society and lives completely alone.*  
*It has a hard shell and can live in water or on land.*  
*✓She designs buildings.*  
*It forms when water boils.*  
*She doesn't eat meat.*  
*It grows in hot climates and produces large bunches of yellow fruit.*  
*It cannot be understood or explained.*  
*It can be shaped and hardened to form many useful things.*

1. An architect is someone who/that designs buildings.
2. A vegetarian is a person \_\_\_\_\_
3. Steam is a gas \_\_\_\_\_
4. A turtle is an animal \_\_\_\_\_
5. A hermit is a person \_\_\_\_\_
6. A banana tree is a plant \_\_\_\_\_

7. Plastic is a synthetic material \_\_\_\_\_
8. A mystery is something \_\_\_\_\_

◇ PRACTICE 11. WHICH and THAT. (Chart 12-4)

*Directions:* Write **S** if **which** or **that** is the subject of the adjective clause. Write **O** if **which** or **that** is the object of the adjective clause. Cross out the words **which** or **that** where possible.

1.   O   The medicine ~~which~~ the doctor prescribed for me was very expensive.
2.   S   The medicine **which** is on the shelf is no longer good.
3.        The computer **that** I bought recently has already crashed several times.
4.        The car **which** my husband drives is very reliable.
5.        The house **which** sits on top of the hill has won several architecture awards.
6.        The restaurant **that** offered low-cost dinners to senior citizens has recently closed.
7.        The baseball **which** all the players autographed will be donated to charity.
8.        The windstorm **that** is moving toward us is very powerful.
9.        The trees **that** shade our house are over 300 years old.
10.        The trees **that** we planted last year have doubled in size.

◇ PRACTICE 12. Using WHICH, THAT, and Ø in adjective clauses. (Chart 12-4)

*Directions:* Write the pronouns that can be used to connect the adjective clause to the main clause: **which** or **that**. Also write **Ø** if the pronoun can be omitted.

1. I really enjoyed the show 

which that Ø
--------------------

 we saw last night.
2. Tim liked the show 



 was playing at the Fox Theater.
3. The plane 



 I took to Korea arrived on time.
4. The plane 



 flew to the Gold Coast left on time.

5. The books  Jane ordered came in the mail today.

6. Jane was glad to get the books  came in the mail today.

◇ PRACTICE 13. Error analysis: object pronouns in adjective clauses. (Charts 12-3 and 12-4)

*Directions:* Cross out the incorrect pronouns in the adjective clauses.

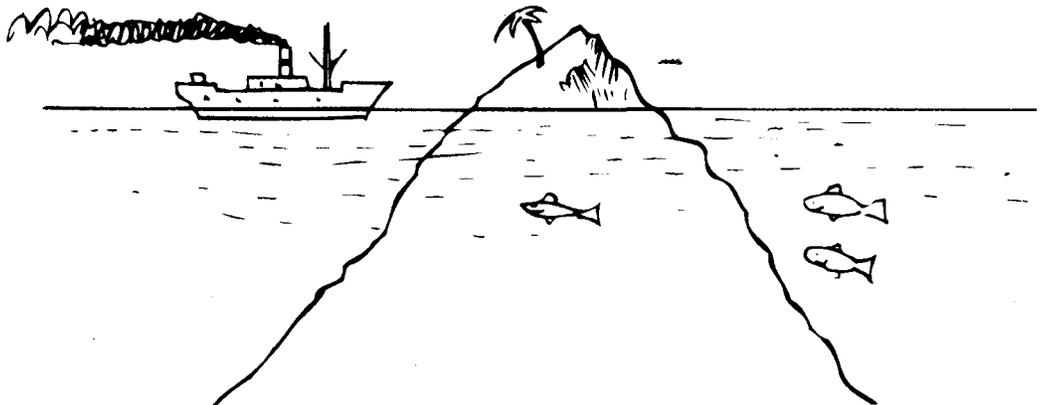
1. I enjoy the relatives I visited ~~them~~ in Mexico City last year.
2. The coffee that I drank it was cold and tasteless.
3. The tennis shoes I was wearing them in the garden got wet and muddy.
4. My cousin Ahmed is a person I've known and loved him since he was born.
5. I have a great deal of respect for the wonderful woman I married her eleven years ago.
6. The dog which we have had him for several years is very gentle with young children.

◇ PRACTICE 14. Pronoun usage in adjective clauses. (Charts 12-2 → 12-4)

*Directions:* Choose the correct answers. NOTE: There is more than one correct answer for each sentence.

1. I liked the teacher \_\_\_\_\_ I had for chemistry in high school.  
Ⓐ whom      B. which      Ⓒ. that      Ⓓ. Ø
2. The university scientist \_\_\_\_\_ did research in the Amazon River basin found many previously unknown species of plants.  
A. who      B. whom      C. which      D. that      E. Ø
3. The children enjoyed the sandwiches \_\_\_\_\_ Mr. Rice made for them.  
A. who      B. whom      C. which      D. that      E. Ø
4. Have you ever read any books by the author \_\_\_\_\_ the teacher mentioned in class this morning?  
A. whom      B. which      C. that      D. Ø
5. The fans \_\_\_\_\_ crowded the ballpark roared their approval.  
A. who      B. whom      C. which      D. that      E. Ø
6. Have you been to the Clayton Art Gallery? It has a new exhibit \_\_\_\_\_ includes the work of several local artists.  
A. who      B. whom      C. which      D. that      E. Ø
7. The operation \_\_\_\_\_ the surgeon performed on my uncle was very dangerous.  
A. who      B. whom      C. which      D. that      E. Ø

8. Bricks are made of soil \_\_\_\_\_ has been placed in molds, pounded down, and dried.  
 A. who            B. whom            C. which            D. that            E. Ø
9. The actors \_\_\_\_\_ we saw at Stratford performed out-of-doors.  
 A. whom            B. which            C. that            D. Ø
10. Many of the games \_\_\_\_\_ children play teach them about the adult world.  
 A. who            B. whom            C. which            D. that            E. Ø
11. When Jason arrived at the reunion, the first person \_\_\_\_\_ he encountered was Sally Sellers, one of his best friends when he was in high school.  
 A. whom            B. which            C. that            D. Ø
12. Fire swept through an old apartment building in the center of town. I know some of the people \_\_\_\_\_ the firefighters rescued. The people lost all their possessions. They were grateful simply to be alive.  
 A. whom            B. which            C. that            D. Ø
13. Most of the islands in the Pacific are the tops of volcanic mountains \_\_\_\_\_ rise from the floor of the ocean.  
 A. who            B. whom            C. which            D. that            E. Ø



◇ PRACTICE 15. Subject-verb agreement in adjective clauses. (Chart 12-5)

*Directions:* In each sentence, choose the correct form of the verb in *italics*. Use the simple present. Underline the noun that determines whether the verb in the adjective clause is singular or plural.

- The students who *is, (are)* in my class come from many countries.
- The people who *is, are* standing in line to get into the theater are cold and wet.
- Water is a chemical compound that *consists, consist* of oxygen and hydrogen.
- There are two students in my class who *speaks, speak* Portuguese.
- I met some people who *knows, know* my brother.
- The student who *is, are* talking to the teacher is from Peru.

7. Do you know the people that *lives, live* in that house?
8. A carpenter is a person who *makes, make* things out of wood.
9. Sculptors are artists who *make, makes* things from clay or other materials.



◇ PRACTICE 16. Prepositions in adjective clauses. (Chart 12-6)

*Directions:* The adjective clauses in the following sentences need prepositions. Add the prepositions and give all the possible patterns for the adjective clause. Write Ø if nothing is needed.

1. The bus that we were waiting for was an hour late.  
 The bus which we were waiting for was an hour late.  
 The bus Ø we were waiting for was an hour late.  
 The bus for which we were waiting Ø was an hour late.
2. The music \_\_\_\_\_ I listened \_\_\_\_\_ was pleasant.  
 The music \_\_\_\_\_ I listened \_\_\_\_\_ was pleasant.  
 The music \_\_\_\_\_ I listened \_\_\_\_\_ was pleasant.  
 The music \_\_\_\_\_ I listened \_\_\_\_\_ was pleasant.
3. Ecology is one of the subjects \_\_\_\_\_ I am very interested \_\_\_\_\_.  
 Ecology is one of the subjects \_\_\_\_\_ I am very interested \_\_\_\_\_.  
 Ecology is one of the subjects \_\_\_\_\_ I am very interested \_\_\_\_\_.  
 Ecology is one of the subjects \_\_\_\_\_ I am very interested \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The man \_\_\_\_\_ Maria was arguing \_\_\_\_\_ was very angry.  
 The man \_\_\_\_\_ Maria was arguing \_\_\_\_\_ was very angry.  
 The man \_\_\_\_\_ Maria was arguing \_\_\_\_\_ was very angry.  
 The man \_\_\_\_\_ Maria was arguing \_\_\_\_\_ was very angry.

◇ PRACTICE 17. Prepositions in adjective clauses. (Chart 12-6 and Appendix 2)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with pronouns and prepositions as necessary. Give all possible patterns for the adjective clauses.

*Example:* The movie . . . we went . . . was good.

→ *The movie that we went to was good.*

*The movie which we went to was good.*

*The movie Ø we went to was good.*

*The movie to which we went was good.*

1. I enjoyed meeting the people . . . you introduced me . . . yesterday.
2. English grammar is a subject . . . I am quite familiar . . . .
3. The woman . . . Mr. Low told us . . . works for the government.
4. The people . . . I work . . . are very creative.
5. The train . . . you are waiting . . . is usually late.
6. The job . . . I am interested . . . requires several years of computer experience.

◇ PRACTICE 18. Prepositions in adjective clauses. (Chart 12-6 and Appendix 2)

*Directions:* Supply appropriate prepositions in the blanks. Write Ø if no preposition is necessary. Draw brackets around the adjective clause.

1. I enjoyed the CD [we listened to at Sara's apartment.]
2. I paid the shopkeeper for the glass cup [I accidentally broke Ø.]
3. The bus we were waiting \_\_\_\_\_ was only three minutes late.
4. Mrs. Chan is someone I always enjoy talking \_\_\_\_\_ about politics.
5. I showed my roommate the letter I had just written \_\_\_\_\_.
6. One of the subjects I've been interested \_\_\_\_\_ for a long time is astronomy.
7. The people I talked \_\_\_\_\_ at the reception were interesting.
8. One of the places I want to visit \_\_\_\_\_ next year is Mexico City.
9. The book catalogue I was looking \_\_\_\_\_ had hundreds of interesting titles.
10. The book I wanted \_\_\_\_\_ wasn't available at the library.
11. I really enjoyed the music we were listening \_\_\_\_\_ at Jim's yesterday.
12. Botany is a subject I'm not familiar \_\_\_\_\_.
13. The bags I was carrying \_\_\_\_\_ were really heavy.
14. My parents are people I can always rely \_\_\_\_\_ for support and help.
15. Taking out the garbage is one of the chores our fourteen-year-old is responsible \_\_\_\_\_.

16. The newspaper I was reading \_\_\_\_\_ had the latest news about the election.
17. The furniture I bought \_\_\_\_\_ was expensive.
18. English grammar is one of the subjects \_\_\_\_\_ which I enjoy studying the most.
19. The friend I waved \_\_\_\_\_ didn't wave back. Maybe he just didn't see me.
20. The people \_\_\_\_\_ whom Alex was waiting were over an hour late.

◇ PRACTICE 19. Adjective clauses with WHOSE. (Chart 12-7)

Directions: Underline the adjective clause in each long sentence. Then change the long sentence into two short sentences.

1. Long sentence: I know a man whose daughter is a pilot.

Short sentence 1: I know a man.

Short sentence 2: His daughter is a pilot.

2. Long sentence: The woman whose husband is out of work found a job at Mel's Diner.

Short sentence 1: \_\_\_\_\_

Short sentence 2: \_\_\_\_\_

3. Long sentence: The man whose wallet I found gave me a reward.

Short sentence 1: \_\_\_\_\_

Short sentence 2: \_\_\_\_\_

◇ PRACTICE 20. Adjective clauses with WHOSE. (Chart 12-7)

Directions: Follow these steps:

1. Underline the possessive pronoun.
2. Draw an arrow to the noun it refers to.
3. Replace the possessive pronoun with **whose**.
4. Combine the two sentences into one.

1. The firefighters are very brave. Their department has won many awards.  
→ *The firefighters whose department has won many awards are very brave.*

2. I talked to the boy. His kite was caught in a tree.  
→ *I talked to the boy whose kite was caught in a tree.*

3. The family is staying in a motel. Their house burned down.

4. I watched a little girl. Her dog was chasing a ball in the park.

5. The reporter won an award. Her articles explained global warming.

6. I know a man. His daughter entered college at the age of fourteen.
7. We observed a language teacher. Her teaching methods included role-playing.
8. The teachers are very popular. Their methods include role-playing.

◇ PRACTICE 21. Meaning of adjective clauses. (Charts 12-1 → 12-7)

*Directions:* Check all the sentences that are true.

1. The policeman who gave Henry a ticket seemed very nervous.
  - a.  Henry received a ticket.
  - b.  Henry seemed nervous.
  - c.  The policeman seemed nervous.
2. A co-worker of mine whose wife is a pilot is afraid of flying.
  - a.  My co-worker is a pilot.
  - b.  My co-worker's wife is afraid of flying.
  - c.  The pilot is a woman.
3. The man that delivers office supplies to our company bought a Ferrari.
  - a.  Our company bought a Ferrari.
  - b.  A man delivers office supplies.
  - c.  A man bought a Ferrari.
4. The doctor who took care of my father had a heart attack recently.
  - a.  My father had a heart attack.
  - b.  The doctor treated a heart attack patient.
  - c.  The doctor had a heart attack.
5. The forest fire which destroyed two homes in Woodville burned for two weeks across a wide area.
  - a.  The forest fire burned for two weeks.
  - b.  Two homes burned for two weeks.
  - c.  The forest fire destroyed Woodville.
6. The salesman who sold my friend a used car was arrested for changing the mileage on cars.
  - a.  My friend bought a car.
  - b.  My friend was arrested.
  - c.  The salesman changed the mileage on cars.
7. The waiter who took Julie's order is her best friend's cousin.
  - a.  The waiter is Julie's cousin.
  - b.  Julie's best friend is the waiter's cousin.
  - c.  Julie's best friend is a waiter.

◇ PRACTICE 22. Adjective clauses. (Charts 12-1 → 12-7)

Directions: Use the given information to complete the sentences with adjective clauses. Omit the pronoun from the adjective clause if possible.

*I share their views.*  
*Their children were doing poorly in her class.*  
*They disrupted the global climate and caused mass extinctions of animal life.*  
*Ted bought them for his wife on their anniversary.*  
*I slept on it at the hotel last night.*  
*They had backbones.*  
*✓ It is used to carry boats with goods and/or passengers.*

1. A waterway is a river or stream which/that is used to carry boats with goods and/or passengers.
2. The second grade teacher talked to all the parents \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The flowers \_\_\_\_\_ wilted in the heat before he got home.
4. The candidates \_\_\_\_\_ will get my votes.
5. According to scientists, the first animals \_\_\_\_\_ were fish. They appeared on the earth about 500 million years ago.
6. Approximately 370 million years ago, seventy percent of Earth's marine species mysteriously vanished. Approximately 65 million years ago, the dinosaurs and two-thirds of all marine animal species became extinct. According to some scientific researchers, Earth was struck by speeding objects from space \_\_\_\_\_.



◇ PRACTICE 23. Adjective clauses. (Charts 12-1 → 12-7)

Directions: Which of the following can be used in the blanks: *who*, *who(m)*, *which*, *that*, *whose*, or  $\emptyset$ ?

1. What do you say to people who/that ask you personal questions that you don't want to answer?
2. In my country, any person \_\_\_\_\_ is twenty-one years old or older can vote. I turned twenty-one last year. The person I voted for in the national election lost. I hope the next candidate for \_\_\_\_\_ I vote has better luck. I'd like to vote for a winning candidate.

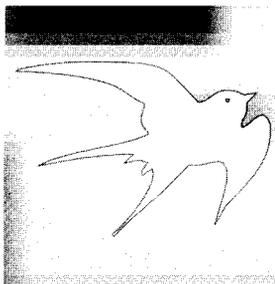
3. Vegetarians are people \_\_\_\_\_ do not eat meat. True vegetarians do not eat flesh \_\_\_\_\_ comes from any living creature, including fish. Some vegetarians even exclude any food \_\_\_\_\_ is made from animal products, such as milk and eggs.
4. People \_\_\_\_\_ live in New York City are called New Yorkers.
5. Tina likes the present \_\_\_\_\_ I gave her for her birthday.
6. George Washington is the president \_\_\_\_\_ picture is on a one-dollar bill.
7. Have you seen the movie \_\_\_\_\_ is playing at the Fox Theater?
8. Do you know the woman \_\_\_\_\_ Michael is engaged to?
9. That's Tom Jenkins. He's the boy \_\_\_\_\_ parents live in Switzerland.
10. A thermometer is an instrument \_\_\_\_\_ measures temperature.
11. A high-strung person is someone \_\_\_\_\_ is always nervous.
12. The man \_\_\_\_\_ I told you about is standing over there.

◇ PRACTICE 24. Error analysis. (Chapter 12)

*Directions:* Correct the errors.

1. A movie that look<sup>s</sup> interesting opens tomorrow.
2. My family lived in a house which it was built in 1900.
3. The little boy was lost who asked for directions.
4. I don't know people who their lives are carefree.
5. It is important to help people who has no money.
6. At the airport, I was waiting for friends which I hadn't seen them for a long time.
7. The woman live next door likes to relax by doing crossword puzzles every evening.
8. My teacher has two cats who their names are Ping and Pong.
9. A beautiful garden that separates my house from the street.
10. I asked the children who was sitting on the bench to help us.

11. The school that my children attend it is very good academically.
12. I enjoyed the songs which we sang them.
13. One of the places that I like to visit Central Park.
14. The movie we saw it last evening was very exciting.
15. I sent the parents who I hiked with their son a picture of us on Mt. Fuji.
16. Do you know the man who work in that office?
17. A mother who's daughter is in my class often brings cookies for the children.
18. The CD player who I bought can hold several CDs at once.
19. The bed which I sleep is very comfortable.
20. I would like to tell you about several problems which I have had them since I came here.



# CHAPTER 13

## Gerunds and Infinitives

### ◇ PRACTICE 1. Verb + gerund. (Chart 13-1)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

1. Joan often talks about (*move*) moving overseas.
2. The Browns sometimes discuss (*live*) \_\_\_\_\_ in a smaller town.
3. Christine enjoys (*take*) \_\_\_\_\_ care of her young niece.
4. Nathan keeps (*buy*) \_\_\_\_\_ lottery tickets, but he never wins.
5. My manager considered (*give*) \_\_\_\_\_ pay raises but decided not to.
6. I always put off (*do*) \_\_\_\_\_ my math homework.
7. The students finished (*review*) \_\_\_\_\_ for the test at 3:00 A.M.
8. Ann stopped (*run*) \_\_\_\_\_ and walked the rest of the way home.
9. Dana quit (*drive*) \_\_\_\_\_ after she had a serious car accident.
10. My dentist thinks about (*retire*) \_\_\_\_\_, but he enjoys his work too much.
11. Last week, Joan and David postponed (*get married*) \_\_\_\_\_ for the second time.
12. Do you mind (*work*) \_\_\_\_\_ another shift tonight?

### ◇ PRACTICE 2. GO + gerund. (Chart 13-2)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with a form of **go** and one of the given words.

<i>camp</i>	<i>fish</i>	<i>sail</i>	<i>sightsee</i>	<i>skydive</i>
<i>✓dance</i>	<i>hike</i>	<i>shop</i>	<i>ski</i>	<i>swim</i>

1. I love to dance. Last night, my husband and I danced for hours.  
→ Last night, my husband and I went dancing.
2. Later this afternoon, Ted is going to take a long walk in the woods.  
→ Ted \_\_\_\_\_ later today.
3. Yesterday, Alice visited many stores and bought some clothes and makeup.  
→ Yesterday, Alice \_\_\_\_\_.

4. Let's go to the beach and jump in the water.

→ Let's \_\_\_\_\_.

5. My grandfather takes his fishing pole to a farm pond every Sunday.

→ My grandfather \_\_\_\_\_ every Sunday.

6. When I visit a new city, I like to look around at the sights.

→ When I visit a new city, I like to \_\_\_\_\_.

7. I love to put up a small tent by a stream, make a fire, and listen to the sounds of the forest during the night.

→ I love to \_\_\_\_\_.



8. I want to take the sailboat out on the water this afternoon.

→ I want to \_\_\_\_\_ this afternoon.

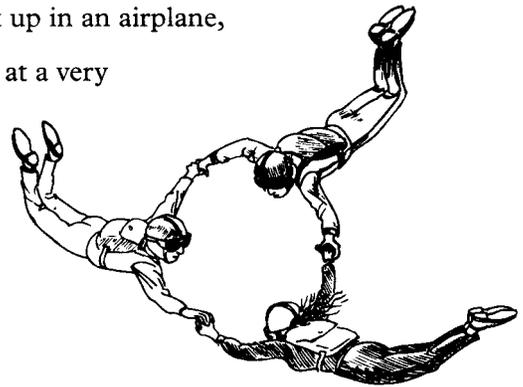
9. Once a year, we take our skis to our favorite mountain resort and enjoy an exciting weekend.

→ Once a year, we \_\_\_\_\_ at our favorite mountain resort.

10. Last year on my birthday, my friends and I went up in an airplane, put on parachutes, and jumped out of the plane at a very high altitude.

→ Last year on my birthday, my friends and I

\_\_\_\_\_.



◇ PRACTICE 3. Identifying gerunds and infinitives. (Charts 13-1 and 13-3)

Directions: Underline the gerunds and infinitives in the sentences. Circle GER for gerunds. Circle INF for infinitives.

1. GER (INF) Ann promised to wait for me.
2. (GER) INF I kept walking even though I was tired.
3. GER INF Alex offered to help me.
4. GER INF Karen finished writing a letter and went to bed.
5. GER INF Don't forget to call me tomorrow.
6. GER INF David discussed quitting his job several times.
7. GER INF The police officers planned to work overtime during the conference.
8. GER INF Kevin would like to grow organic vegetables in his garden.

◇ PRACTICE 4. Gerunds and infinitives. (Charts 13-1, 13-3, and 13-4)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the gerund or infinitive form of the verb.

**PART I.** Complete the sentences with *work*.

1. I agreed to work.
2. I put off working.
3. I would love \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I thought about \_\_\_\_\_.
5. I promised \_\_\_\_\_.
6. I began \_\_\_\_\_.
7. I decided \_\_\_\_\_.
8. I offered \_\_\_\_\_.
9. I quit \_\_\_\_\_.
10. I refused \_\_\_\_\_.
11. I stopped \_\_\_\_\_.
12. I finished \_\_\_\_\_.

**PART II.** Complete the sentences with *leave*.

13. She expected \_\_\_\_\_.
14. She wanted \_\_\_\_\_.
15. She considered \_\_\_\_\_.
16. She talked about \_\_\_\_\_.
17. She postponed \_\_\_\_\_.
18. She put off \_\_\_\_\_.
19. She refused \_\_\_\_\_.
20. She needed \_\_\_\_\_.
21. She thought about \_\_\_\_\_.
22. She hoped \_\_\_\_\_.

**PART III.** Complete the sentences with *know*.

23. They seemed \_\_\_\_\_.
24. They expected \_\_\_\_\_.
25. They would like \_\_\_\_\_.
26. They don't mind \_\_\_\_\_.
27. They would love \_\_\_\_\_.
28. They want \_\_\_\_\_.
29. They can't stand \_\_\_\_\_.
30. They needed \_\_\_\_\_.
31. They appeared \_\_\_\_\_.
32. They hated \_\_\_\_\_.

◇ PRACTICE 5. Verb + gerund vs. infinitive. (Charts 13-1 → 13-3)

Directions: Choose the correct completion.

1. I would like \_\_\_\_\_ you and some of my other friends for dinner sometime.  
A. inviting                      **B. to invite**
2. I enjoyed \_\_\_\_\_ with my family at the lake last summer.  
A. being                          B. to be
3. Ron agreed \_\_\_\_\_ me move out of my apartment this weekend.  
A. helping                        B. to help
4. My parents can't afford \_\_\_\_\_ all of my college expenses.  
A. paying                         B. to pay
5. Liang-Siok, would you mind \_\_\_\_\_ this letter on your way home?  
A. mailing                         B. to mail
6. Do you expect \_\_\_\_\_ this course? If so, you'd better work harder.  
A. passing                        B. to pass

7. Adam offered \_\_\_\_\_ for me tonight because I feel awful.  
A. working                      B. to work
8. I refuse \_\_\_\_\_ your proposal. I've made up my mind.  
A. considering                  B. to consider
9. I wish you would consider \_\_\_\_\_ my proposal. I know I can do the job.  
A. accepting                    B. to accept
10. I don't think I'll ever finish \_\_\_\_\_ this report. It just goes on and on.  
A. reading                      B. to read
11. I would enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ you in Cairo while you're studying there.  
A. visiting                      B. to visit
12. The children seem \_\_\_\_\_ why they have to stay home tonight.  
A. understanding                B. to understand
13. Don't forget \_\_\_\_\_ all of the doors before you go to bed.  
A. locking                      B. to lock
14. I'm really sorry. I didn't mean \_\_\_\_\_ your feelings.  
A. hurting                         B. to hurt
15. Why do you keep \_\_\_\_\_ me the same question over and over again?  
A. asking                        B. to ask
16. I've decided \_\_\_\_\_ for another job. I'll never be happy here.  
A. looking                        B. to look
17. You need \_\_\_\_\_ harder if you want to get a promotion.  
A. trying                         B. to try
18. Why do you pretend \_\_\_\_\_ his company? I know you don't like him.  
A. enjoying                       B. to enjoy
19. Let's get together tonight. I want to talk about \_\_\_\_\_ a new business.  
A. opening                        B. to open
20. I have a secret. Do you promise \_\_\_\_\_ no one?  
A. telling                         B. to tell
21. The president plans \_\_\_\_\_ everyone a bonus at the end of the year.  
A. giving                         B. to give
22. I have a good job, and I hope \_\_\_\_\_ myself all through school.  
A. supporting                    B. to support
23. I can't wait \_\_\_\_\_ work today. I'm taking off on vacation tonight.  
A. finishing                      B. to finish
24. My neighbor and I get up at six every morning and go \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. jogging                        B. to jog

◇ PRACTICE 6. Verb + gerund or infinitive. (Charts 13-1 → 13-4)

Directions: Choose the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.

1. I want \_\_\_\_\_ the comedy special on TV tonight.  
A. watching                      (B) to watch
2. I'm a people-watcher. I like \_\_\_\_\_ people in public places.  
(A) watching                      (B) to watch
3. I've already begun \_\_\_\_\_ ideas for my new novel.  
A. collecting                      B. to collect
4. A group of Chinese scientists plan \_\_\_\_\_ their discovery at the conference next spring.  
A. presenting                      B. to present
5. Whenever I wash my car, it starts \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. raining                          B. to rain
6. Angela and I continued \_\_\_\_\_ for several hours.  
A. talking                          B. to talk
7. I love \_\_\_\_\_ on the beach during a storm.  
A. walking                          B. to walk



8. I would love \_\_\_\_\_ a walk today.  
A. taking                          B. to take
9. Are you sure you don't mind \_\_\_\_\_ Johnny for me while I go to the store?  
A. watching                      B. to watch
10. Annie hates \_\_\_\_\_ in the rain.  
A. driving                          B. to drive
11. My roommate can't stand \_\_\_\_\_ to really loud rock music.  
A. listening                      B. to listen
12. I don't like \_\_\_\_\_ in front of other people.  
A. singing                          B. to sing



20. Shhh. I'm trying (*concentrate*) \_\_\_\_\_ . I'm doing a problem for my accounting class, and I can't afford (*make*) \_\_\_\_\_ any mistakes.
21. I'm sleepy. I'd like (*go*) \_\_\_\_\_ home and take a nap.
22. When are you going to start (*do*) \_\_\_\_\_ the research for your term paper?
23. Why did Marcia refuse (*help*) \_\_\_\_\_ us?
24. Khalid tries (*learn*) \_\_\_\_\_ at least 25 new words every day.
25. I considered (*drive*) \_\_\_\_\_ to Minneapolis. Finally I decided (*fly*) \_\_\_\_\_ .
26. Our teacher agreed (*postpone*) \_\_\_\_\_ the test until Friday.
27. I expect (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_ in class tomorrow.
28. I enjoy (*teach*) \_\_\_\_\_ .
29. Mr. Carter continued (*read*) \_\_\_\_\_ his book even though the children were making a lot of noise.
30. Would you like (*go*) \_\_\_\_\_ (*dance*) \_\_\_\_\_ tonight?
31. The Knickerbockers talked about (*build*) \_\_\_\_\_ a new house.
32. Children like (*play*) \_\_\_\_\_ make-believe games. Yesterday Tommy pretended (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_ a doctor, and Bobby pretended (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_ a patient.
33. My cousin offered (*take*) \_\_\_\_\_ me to the airport.

◇ PRACTICE 8. Preposition + gerund. (Chart 13-5)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with the correct preposition and underline the gerund.

**PART I.** Liz . . .

1. is afraid of flying.
2. apologized \_\_\_\_\_ hurting her friend's feelings.
3. believes \_\_\_\_\_ helping others.
4. is good \_\_\_\_\_ listening to her friends' concerns.
5. is tired \_\_\_\_\_ working weekends.
6. is nervous \_\_\_\_\_ walking home from work late at night.
7. dreams \_\_\_\_\_ owning a farm with horses, cows, and sheep.

**PART II.** Leonard . . .

8. is responsible \_\_\_\_\_ closing the restaurant where he works at night.
9. thanked his father \_\_\_\_\_ lending him some money.
10. plans \_\_\_\_\_ becoming an accountant.
11. forgave his roommate \_\_\_\_\_ taking his car without asking.
12. insists \_\_\_\_\_ eating only fresh fruits and vegetables.
13. is looking forward \_\_\_\_\_ finishing school.
14. stopped his best friend \_\_\_\_\_ making a bad decision.
15. is worried \_\_\_\_\_ not having enough time for family and friends.

◇ **PRACTICE 9. Preposition + gerund. (Chart 13-5 and Appendix 2)**

*Directions:* Complete the sentences. Use prepositions and gerunds.

1. Bill interrupted me. He apologized for that.  
→ Bill apologized for interrupting me.
2. I like to learn about other countries and cultures. I'm interested \_\_\_\_\_ that.  
→ I'm interested \_\_\_\_\_ about other countries and cultures.
3. I helped Ann. She thanked me \_\_\_\_\_ that.  
→ Ann thanked me \_\_\_\_\_ her.
4. Nadia wanted to walk to work. She insisted \_\_\_\_\_ that.  
→ We offered Nadia a ride, but she insisted \_\_\_\_\_ to work.
5. Nick lost my car keys. I forgave him \_\_\_\_\_ that.  
→ I forgave Nick \_\_\_\_\_ my car keys when he borrowed my car.
6. Sara wants to go out to eat just because she feels \_\_\_\_\_ it.  
→ She feels \_\_\_\_\_ out to eat.
7. I'm not a good artist. I try to draw faces, but I'm not very good \_\_\_\_\_ it.  
→ I'm not good \_\_\_\_\_ faces.
8. Mr. and Mrs. Reed have always saved for a rainy day. They believe \_\_\_\_\_ that.  
→ Mr. and Mrs. Reed believe \_\_\_\_\_ for a rainy day.
9. I may fall on my face and make a fool of myself. I'm worried \_\_\_\_\_ that.  
→ I'm worried \_\_\_\_\_ on my face and \_\_\_\_\_ a fool of myself when I walk up the steps to receive my diploma.

10. The children are going to go to Disneyland. They're excited \_\_\_\_\_ that.  
→ The children are excited \_\_\_\_\_ to Disneyland.
11. Their parents are going to Disneyland, too. They are looking forward \_\_\_\_\_ that.  
→ Their parents are looking forward \_\_\_\_\_ there too.
12. Max doesn't like to stay in hotels because he is scared of heights. He is afraid \_\_\_\_\_ that.  
→ Max is afraid \_\_\_\_\_ in hotels.

◇ PRACTICE 10. Review: gerund vs. infinitive. (Charts 13-1 → 13-5)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with the gerund or infinitive form of the verb. Some verbs may require a preposition.

**PART I.** Use the verb *ask*.

1. Marie is thinking about asking the Petersons over for dinner.
2. Yoko intends to ask for a day off from work this week.
3. Mika insists \_\_\_\_\_ questions that have already been answered.
4. Chris is excited \_\_\_\_\_ the new girl in his class to the first school dance.
5. Tarik is new at school. He is nervous \_\_\_\_\_ anyone to the dance.
6. My father promised \_\_\_\_\_ the doctor for more information on his illness.
7. Mrs. Kim is responsible \_\_\_\_\_ parents to help in their children's classroom.
8. Jody would love \_\_\_\_\_ her former boyfriend to her wedding, but her fiance has said "no."
9. Jerry hates \_\_\_\_\_ for directions when he's lost.
10. Mansour is very independent and doesn't like \_\_\_\_\_ others for help with anything.

**PART II.** Use the verb *fix*.

11. Hiro agreed \_\_\_\_\_ the window after he broke it.
12. Hiro began \_\_\_\_\_ it, but he soon needed more parts.
13. Janet intends \_\_\_\_\_ her bicycle herself.
14. Janet learned how \_\_\_\_\_ her bicycle from her mother.
15. Her mother learned \_\_\_\_\_ bicycles from her father.
16. My parents talk \_\_\_\_\_ their sailboat before summer.
17. The little boy tried \_\_\_\_\_ his parent's leaky faucet.

18. His father attempted \_\_\_\_\_ his son's repairs, but couldn't.
19. A plumber promised \_\_\_\_\_ the faucet the next day.
20. The plumber finished \_\_\_\_\_ the faucet in ten minutes.

◇ PRACTICE 11. Review. (Charts 13-1 → 13-5)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with verbs from the list. Use each verb only once.

<i>adopt</i>	<i>cash</i>	<i>install</i>	<i>stay</i>	<i>use</i>
<i>be</i>	<i>go</i>	<i>lower</i>	<i>take</i>	<i>✓write</i>

1. Ruth puts off writing thank-you notes for gifts because she doesn't know what to say.
2. The city intends \_\_\_\_\_ a new traffic light at its most dangerous intersection.
3. I meant \_\_\_\_\_ my paycheck on the way home, but I forgot.
4. Would you mind \_\_\_\_\_ at the office late tonight so we can finish our budget review?
5. The bus drivers are on strike. They refuse \_\_\_\_\_ back to work until they get a new contract.
6. The Adamses want another child. They are discussing \_\_\_\_\_ a baby from another country.
7. Sue can't afford \_\_\_\_\_ a vacation this year because she didn't get a pay raise.
8. My mother is an old-fashioned cook. She doesn't believe \_\_\_\_\_ frozen or canned foods.
9. Little Daniel pretends \_\_\_\_\_ a monster whenever someone comes to the door.
10. Politicians always promise \_\_\_\_\_ taxes, but my taxes keep rising.

◇ PRACTICE 12. Review. (Charts 13-1 → 13-5)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with the appropriate gerund or infinitive of the word in *italics*. (Some sentences can take either a gerund or an infinitive.) Some sentences require a preposition as well.

1. Matthew wanted to *go* to a different doctor for his back pain. He considered \_\_\_\_\_ going to a specialist.
2. Jim would rather walk than *drive* to work. Instead of driving, Jim walks along bike trails to his office.

3. I need to drive to the airport, but I don't want to *park* there. I'm not planning \_\_\_\_\_ there because it's too expensive.
4. I never *watch* commercials on TV. In fact, I can't stand \_\_\_\_\_ TV commercials, so I generally watch videotaped shows.
5. Joanne's hobby is *cooking*. She loves \_\_\_\_\_ gourmet meals for friends and relatives.
6. Here's some fresh bread I just *baked*. I enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ a variety of breads. They're so much better than store-bought.
7. Martina is nervous about *going* to the dentist for a filling. She has been afraid \_\_\_\_\_ the dentist since she was a little girl.
8. Walter's dream is to *become* a doctor in a rural area. He has dreamed \_\_\_\_\_ a doctor since he was hospitalized as a child.
9. Nathan *has* a chocolate milkshake every afternoon for a snack. He often feels like \_\_\_\_\_ two, but he doesn't.
10. Every morning, rain or shine, Debbie rises early and stretches. Then she goes outside and *runs* for 30 minutes. Every morning, Debbie goes \_\_\_\_\_ for half an hour.
11. Marta's neighbors *watered* her plants while she was out of town, and she thanked them with a bouquet of flowers when she returned. Marta thanked her neighbors \_\_\_\_\_ her flowers while she was gone.
12. Sandy *spoke* harshly to her secretary one morning without meaning to. She immediately apologized \_\_\_\_\_ harshly.
13. Mark *washes* all his clothes in hot water. Although his roommates tell him hot water could damage some clothes, he doesn't listen. He insists \_\_\_\_\_ all his clothes in hot water.
14. The little girl didn't see the car rolling slowly toward her. No one was in it, and fortunately a neighbor jumped into the car and stopped it before it could *hit* her. The neighbor stopped the car \_\_\_\_\_ the girl.
15. When Rita came to work, her eyes *were* red and she appeared upset, but she said everything was OK. Later, she was laughing and looked more relaxed. Rita seemed \_\_\_\_\_ better.

16. If the construction company doesn't complete the highway repairs on time, it will have to pay a fine for every day it is late. Crews are working around the clock to *repair* the highway. They believe they will finish \_\_\_\_\_ it on time.
17. Richard's company is reorganizing. Some people will lose their jobs, and others will *get* new positions. Richard really likes this firm and hopes \_\_\_\_\_ a new position.
18. Christine grew up in a family of ten children. She enjoys her brothers and sisters, but doesn't want to *have* such a large family herself. She plans \_\_\_\_\_ a smaller family.
19. Noelle started her own company and hasn't had a vacation in three years. She doesn't feel she can *take* a vacation until the company is financially stable. She is looking forward \_\_\_\_\_ a vacation when the company is more financially secure.
20. Tang has been studying medicine abroad for two years and hasn't *seen* his family in all that time. He is going home next week and is very excited \_\_\_\_\_ his family.

◇ PRACTICE 13. BY + gerund. (Chart 13-6)

*Directions:* Describe what the people did by using **by** + a gerund.

1. MARY: How did you comfort the child?  
SUE: I held him in my arms.  
→ Sue comforted the child by holding him in her arms.
2. PAT: How did you improve your vocabulary?  
NADIA: I read a lot of books.  
→ Nadia improved her vocabulary \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of books.
3. KIRK: How did Grandma amuse the children?  
SALLY: She read them a story.  
→ Grandma amused the children \_\_\_\_\_ them a story.
4. MASAKO: How did you improve your English?  
PEDRO: I watched TV a lot.  
→ Pedro improved his English \_\_\_\_\_ TV a lot.
5. JEFFREY: How did you catch up with the bus?  
JIM: I ran as fast as I could.  
→ Jim caught up with the bus \_\_\_\_\_ as fast as he could.
6. MR. LEE: How did you earn your children's respect?  
MR. FOX: I treated them with respect at all times.  
→ Mr. Smith earned his children's respect \_\_\_\_\_ them with respect at all times.

◇ PRACTICE 14. BY + gerund. (Chart 13-6)

Directions: Complete the sentences in Column A with **by** + an appropriate idea from Column B.

Example: I arrived on time

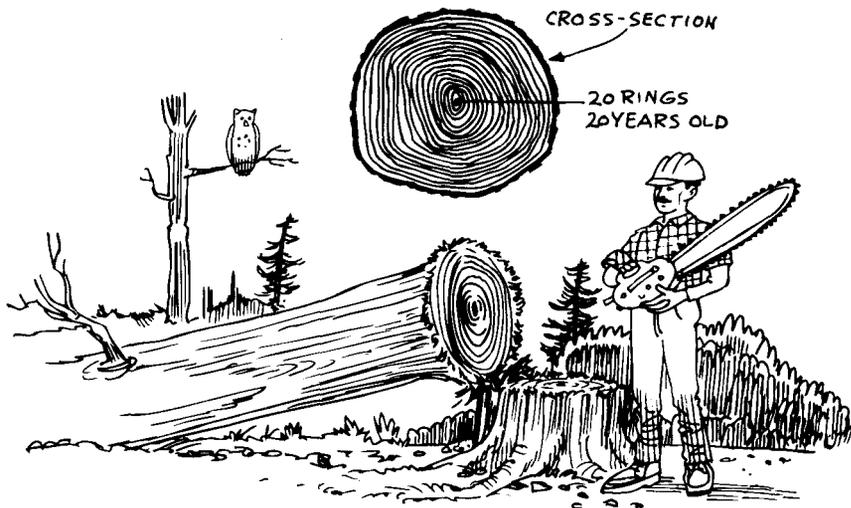
→ I arrived on time by taking a taxi instead of a bus.

**Column A**

1. I arrived on time
2. I put out the fire
3. Giraffes can reach the leaves at the tops of trees
4. I fixed the chair
5. Sylvia was able to buy an expensive stereo system
6. A hippopotamus can cross a river
7. I figured out how to cook the noodles
8. Pam finished her project on time
9. You can figure out how old a tree is

**Column B**

- A. tighten the loose screws
- B. count its rings
- C. read the directions on the package
- D. walk on the bottom of the riverbed
- E. pour water on it
- F. work all through the night
- G. stretch their long necks
- H. save her money for two years
- ✓I. take a taxi instead of a bus

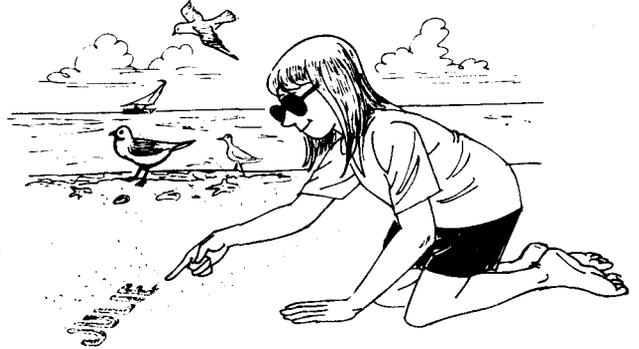


◇ PRACTICE 15. BY vs. WITH. (Chart 13-6)

Directions: Complete the sentences with **by** or **with**.

1. Alice greeted me with a smile.
2. Ms. Williams goes to work every day by bus.
3. I pounded the nail into the wood \_\_\_\_\_ a hammer.
4. Tom went to the next city \_\_\_\_\_ train.
5. I got in touch with Bill \_\_\_\_\_ phone.
6. Po eats \_\_\_\_\_ chopsticks.
7. I didn't notice that the envelope wasn't addressed to me. I opened it \_\_\_\_\_ mistake.
8. I sent a message to Ann \_\_\_\_\_ fax.
9. Jack protected his eyes from the sun \_\_\_\_\_ his hand.

10. Janice put out the fire \_\_\_\_\_ a bucket of water.
11. I pay my bills \_\_\_\_\_ mail.
12. I solved the math problem \_\_\_\_\_ a calculator.
13. We traveled to Boston \_\_\_\_\_ car.
14. The rider kicked the sides of the horse \_\_\_\_\_  
her heels.
15. Jim was extremely angry. He hit the wall \_\_\_\_\_ his fist.
16. At the beach, Julie wrote her name  
in the sand \_\_\_\_\_ her finger.



◇ PRACTICE 16. Gerund as subject; IT + infinitive. (Chart 13-7)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences by using *a gerund as the subject* or *it + infinitive*. Add the word *is* where appropriate. Use the verbs in the list.

<i>complete</i>	<i>eat</i>	<i>live</i>
<i>drive</i>	<i>learn</i>	<i>swim</i>

1. a. It is easy for anyone to learn how to cook an egg.  
b. Learning how to cook an egg is easy for anyone.
2. a. \_\_\_\_\_ nutritious food \_\_\_\_\_ important for your health.  
b. \_\_\_\_\_ important for your health \_\_\_\_\_ nutritious food.
3. a. \_\_\_\_\_ on the wrong side of the road \_\_\_\_\_ against the law.  
b. \_\_\_\_\_ against the law \_\_\_\_\_ on the wrong side of the road.
4. a. \_\_\_\_\_ fun for both children and adults \_\_\_\_\_ in the ocean.  
b. \_\_\_\_\_ in the ocean \_\_\_\_\_ fun for both children and adults.
5. a. \_\_\_\_\_ expensive \_\_\_\_\_ in a dormitory?  
b. \_\_\_\_\_ in a dormitory expensive?
6. a. \_\_\_\_\_ difficult \_\_\_\_\_ these sentences correctly?  
b. \_\_\_\_\_ these sentences correctly difficult?

◇ PRACTICE 17. Purpose: TO vs. FOR. (Chart 13-8)

Directions: Rewrite the sentences. Use *it . . . for someone* + an infinitive phrase. Use the adjective in parentheses.

1. Shy people have a hard time meeting others at social events. (*difficult*)  
\_\_\_\_\_ others at social events.  
*It is difficult for shy people to meet*
2. Babies enjoy looking at black-and-white objects. (*interesting*)  
\_\_\_\_\_ at black-and-white objects.
3. In many cultures, young children sleep in the same room as their parents. (*customary*)  
In many cultures, \_\_\_\_\_ in the same room as their parents.
4. Airline pilots need to have good eyesight. (*necessary*)  
\_\_\_\_\_ good eyesight.
5. Many teenagers can't wake up early. (*hard*)  
\_\_\_\_\_ early.
6. Elderly people need to keep their minds active. (*important*)  
\_\_\_\_\_ their minds active.
7. People don't like listening to monotone speakers. (*boring*)  
\_\_\_\_\_ to monotone speakers.
8. Students need to have strategies to remember new information. (*necessary*)  
\_\_\_\_\_ strategies to remember new information.
9. Scientists will never know the origin of every disease in the world. (*impossible*)  
\_\_\_\_\_ the origin of every disease in the world.
10. Parents should teach their children by modeling good behavior. (*important*)  
\_\_\_\_\_ their children by modeling good behavior.
11. People are often more critical of others than of themselves. (*easy*)  
\_\_\_\_\_ more critical of others than of themselves.
12. Small children shouldn't cross a busy street without help (*dangerous*)  
\_\_\_\_\_ a busy street without help.

◇ PRACTICE 18. Purpose: TO vs. FOR. (Chart 13-9)

Directions: Complete the sentences with *to* or *for*.

**PART I.** Yesterday, I called the doctor's office . . .

1. for an appointment.
2. to make an appointment.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ get a prescription.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ a prescription.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ ask a question.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ get some advice.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ some advice.

**PART II.** Yesterday, Chuck stayed after class . . .

8. \_\_\_\_\_ get help from the teacher.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ talk with the teacher.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ a talk with the teacher.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ extra help.
12. \_\_\_\_\_ finish a project.
13. \_\_\_\_\_ work with other students.
14. \_\_\_\_\_ a meeting with other students.
15. \_\_\_\_\_ help plan a class party.

◇ PRACTICE 19. Purpose: TO vs. FOR. (Chart 13-9)

Directions: Complete the sentences with *to* or *for*.

1. We wear coats in the winter to keep warm.
2. We wear coats in the winter for warmth.
3. Mark contacted a lawyer \_\_\_\_\_ legal advice.
4. Mark contacted a lawyer \_\_\_\_\_ discuss a legal problem.
5. Sam went to the hospital \_\_\_\_\_ an operation.
6. I hired a cab \_\_\_\_\_ take me to the boat dock.
7. Frank went to the library \_\_\_\_\_ review for the test.
8. I play tennis twice a week \_\_\_\_\_ exercise and relaxation.
9. Jennifer used some medicine \_\_\_\_\_ cure an infection on her arm.
10. I lent Yvette money \_\_\_\_\_ her school expenses.
11. I went to my manager \_\_\_\_\_ permission to take the rest of the day off.

◇ PRACTICE 20. (IN ORDER) TO. (Chart 13-9)

Directions: Combine the given phrases in *italics* to create sentences using (*in order*) *to*.

1. *watch the news* + *turn on the TV*

After he got home from work, Jack turned on the TV (in order) to watch the news.

2. *wash his clothes* + *go to the laundromat*

Every weekend Martin \_\_\_\_\_

3. *run + get to class on time*

Every morning Jeannette \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

4. *let in some fresh air + open the bedroom windows*

Every night I \_\_\_\_\_

5. *ask them for some money + write a letter to his parents*

Sometimes Pierre \_\_\_\_\_

6. *listen to a baseball game + have the radio on*

Some afternoons at work, my co-workers \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

7. *study in peace and quiet + go to the library*

Some evenings, I \_\_\_\_\_

◇ PRACTICE 21. TOO vs. ENOUGH. (Chart 13-10)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses and *too* or *enough*.

1. I have a tight schedule tomorrow, so I can't go to the park.

a. (*time*) I don't have enough time to go to the park.

b. (*busy*) I'm too busy to go to the park.

2. I'm pretty short. I can't touch the ceiling.

a. (*tall*) I'm not \_\_\_\_\_ to touch the ceiling.

b. (*short*) I'm \_\_\_\_\_ to touch the ceiling.

3. Tom has been out of work for months. He can't pay any of his bills.

a. (*money*) Tom doesn't have \_\_\_\_\_ to pay his bills.

b. (*poor*) Tom is \_\_\_\_\_ to pay his bills.

4. This tea is very hot. I need to wait a while until I can drink it.

a. (*hot*) This tea is \_\_\_\_\_ to drink.

b. (*cool*) This tea isn't \_\_\_\_\_ to drink.

5. I feel sick. I don't want to eat anything.

a. (*sick*) I feel \_\_\_\_\_.

b. (*well*) I don't feel \_\_\_\_\_.

6. Susie is only six years old. She can't stay home by herself.

a. (*old*) \_\_\_\_\_.

b. (*young*) \_\_\_\_\_.

◇ PRACTICE 22. TOO vs. ENOUGH. (Chart 13-10)

Directions: Complete the sentences with *too*, *enough*, or  $\emptyset$ .

1. I think this problem is  $\emptyset$  important enough to require our immediate attention.
2. Nora is not too tired  $\emptyset$  to finish the project before she goes home.
3. I can't take the citizenship test next week. I haven't had \_\_\_\_\_ time \_\_\_\_\_ to study for it.
4. The sun is \_\_\_\_\_ bright \_\_\_\_\_ to look at directly.
5. You can do this math problem by yourself. You're \_\_\_\_\_ smart \_\_\_\_\_ to figure it out.
6. Our company is \_\_\_\_\_ successful \_\_\_\_\_ to start several new branches overseas.
7. My niece doesn't drive yet. She's \_\_\_\_\_ young \_\_\_\_\_ to get a driver's license.
8. Robert is an amazing runner. His coach thinks he is \_\_\_\_\_ good \_\_\_\_\_ to begin training for an Olympic marathon.
9. Only one person volunteered to help us. We don't have \_\_\_\_\_ help \_\_\_\_\_ to finish this task.
10. Look at the children watching the clowns. They can't sit still. They're \_\_\_\_\_ excited \_\_\_\_\_ to stay in their chairs.
11. I would love to go hiking with you in the mountains, but I don't think I have \_\_\_\_\_ energy or strength \_\_\_\_\_ to hike for two days.
12. The heat outside is terrible! It's \_\_\_\_\_ hot \_\_\_\_\_ to fry an egg on the sidewalk!

◇ PRACTICE 23. Gerund vs. infinitive. (Chapter 13)

Directions: Underline the gerunds and infinitives.

1. Do you enjoy being alone sometimes, or do you prefer to be with other people all the time?
2. My son isn't old enough to stay home alone.
3. Jim offered to help me with my work.
4. I called my friend to thank her for the lovely gift.

5. Mary talked about going downtown tomorrow, but I'd like to stay home.
6. It is interesting to learn about earthquakes.
7. Approximately one million earthquakes occur around the world in a year's time. Six thousand can be felt by humans. Of those, one hundred and twenty are strong enough to cause serious damage to buildings, and twenty are violent enough to destroy a city.
8. It's important to recognize the power of nature. A recent earthquake destroyed a bridge in California. It took five years for humans to build the bridge. It took nature fifteen seconds to knock it down.
9. Predicting earthquakes is difficult. I read about one scientist who tries to predict earthquakes by reading the daily newspaper's lost-and-found ads for lost pets. He believes that animals can sense an earthquake before it comes. He thinks they then begin to act strangely. Dogs and cats respond to the threat by running away to a safer place. By counting the number of ads for lost pets, he expects to be able to predict when an earthquake will occur.

◇ PRACTICE 24. Gerund vs. infinitive. (Chapter 13)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses: gerund or infinitive.

1. (*study*) Studying English is fun.
2. My boss makes a habit of (*jot*)\* \_\_\_\_\_ quick notes to her employees when they've done a good job.
3. From the earth, the sun and the moon appear (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_ almost the same size.
4. A: I don't like airplanes.  
B: Why? Are you afraid of (*fly*) \_\_\_\_\_?  
A: No, I'm afraid of (*crash*) \_\_\_\_\_.
5. A: Let's quit (*argue*) \_\_\_\_\_. We're getting nowhere. Let's just agree (*disagree*) \_\_\_\_\_ and still (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_ friends.  
B: Sounds good to me. And I apologize for (*raise*) \_\_\_\_\_ my voice. I didn't mean (*yell*) \_\_\_\_\_ at you.  
A: That's okay. I didn't intend (*get*) \_\_\_\_\_ angry at you either.
6. A: David, why did you want (*sneak*) \_\_\_\_\_ into the movie theater without (*pay*) \_\_\_\_\_?  
B: I don't know, Mom. My friends talked me into (*do*) \_\_\_\_\_ it, I guess.

\**Jot* = write quickly and briefly.

A: That's not a very good reason. You are responsible for your actions, not your friends.

B: I know. I'm sorry.

A: How does this make you feel? Do you like yourself for *(try)* \_\_\_\_\_ *(sneak)* \_\_\_\_\_ into the theater?

B: No. It doesn't make me feel good about myself.

A: You're young. We all have lessons like this to learn as we grow up. Just remember: It's essential for you *(have)* \_\_\_\_\_ a good opinion of yourself. It's very important for all of us *(like)* \_\_\_\_\_ ourselves. When we do something wrong, we stop *(like)* \_\_\_\_\_ ourselves, and that doesn't feel good. Do you promise never *(do)* \_\_\_\_\_ anything like that again?

B: Yes. I promise! I'm really sorry, Mom.

7. People in the modern world are wasteful of natural resources. For example, every three months, people in North America throw away enough aluminum *(build)* \_\_\_\_\_ an entire airplane.

8. I am so busy! I have just enough time *(do)* \_\_\_\_\_ what I need *(do)* \_\_\_\_\_, but not enough time *(do)* \_\_\_\_\_ what I'd like *(do)* \_\_\_\_\_.

9. A: What do you feel like *(do)* \_\_\_\_\_ this afternoon?

B: I feel like *(go)* \_\_\_\_\_ *(shop)* \_\_\_\_\_ at the mall.

A: I feel like *(go)* \_\_\_\_\_ to a used car lot and *(pretend)* \_\_\_\_\_ *(be)* \_\_\_\_\_ interested in *(buy)* \_\_\_\_\_ a car.

B: You're kidding. Why would you want *(do)* \_\_\_\_\_ that?

A: I like cars. Maybe we could even take one out for a test drive. You know I'm planning *(get)* \_\_\_\_\_ a car as soon as I can afford *(buy)* \_\_\_\_\_ one. I can't wait *(have)* \_\_\_\_\_ my own car. Maybe we'll find the car of my dreams at a used car lot. Come on. It sounds like fun.

B: Nah. Not me. You go ahead. *(pretend)* \_\_\_\_\_ *(be)* \_\_\_\_\_ interested in *(buy)* \_\_\_\_\_ a used car isn't my idea of fun.

10. A: Have you called Amanda yet?

B: No. I keep *(put)* \_\_\_\_\_ it off.

A: Why?

B: She's mad at me for *(forget)* \_\_\_\_\_ *(send)* \_\_\_\_\_ her a card on her birthday.

A: It's silly for her (*get*) \_\_\_\_\_ mad about something like that. Just call her and say you are sorry about (*remember, not*) \_\_\_\_\_ to wish her a happy birthday. She can't stay mad at you forever.

11. One of my good friends, Larry, has the bad habit of (*interrupt*) \_\_\_\_\_ others while they're talking.
12. In days of old, it was customary for a servant (*taste*) \_\_\_\_\_ the king's food before the king ate (*make*) \_\_\_\_\_ sure it was not poisoned.

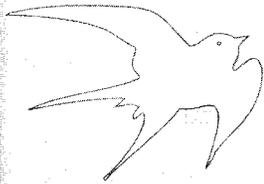


◇ PRACTICE 25. Error analysis. (Chapter 13)

*Directions:* Correct the errors.

1. I decided not <sup>to buy</sup> ~~buying~~ a new car.
2. The Johnsons are considering to sell their antique store.
3. Sam finally finished build his vacation home in the mountains.
4. My wife and I go to dancing at the community center every Saturday night.
5. Suddenly, it began to raining and the wind started to blew.
6. The baby is afraid be away from her mother for any length of time.
7. I am excited for start college this September.
8. You can send your application fax.
9. My country is too beautiful.

10. Is exciting a sports car to drive.
11. My grandparents enjoy to traveling across the country in a motor home.
12. Elena made this sweater with her hands.
13. Swimming it is one of the sports we can participate in at school.
14. That was very good, but I'm too full no eat any more.
15. My mother-in-law went to a tourist shop for buying a disposable camera.
16. Instead to get her degree in four years, Michelle decided traveling abroad first.
17. Swim with a group of people is more enjoyable than swim alone.
18. Is interesting meet new people.
19. Is hard me to stay up past 9:00.
20. The professor thanked his students do well on the test.



# CHAPTER 14

## Noun Clauses

### ◇ PRACTICE 1. Information questions and noun clauses. (Charts 5-2 and 14-2)

*Directions:* If the sentence contains a noun clause, underline it and circle NOUN CLAUSE. If the question word introduces a question, circle QUESTION. Add appropriate final punctuation: a period (.) or a question mark (?).

- |   |             |          |
|---|-------------|----------|
| 1. I don't know <u>where Jack bought his boots.</u> | NOUN CLAUSE | QUESTION |
| 2. Where did Jack buy his boots?                    | NOUN CLAUSE | QUESTION |
| 3. I don't understand why Ann left                  | NOUN CLAUSE | QUESTION |
| 4. Why did Ann leave                                | NOUN CLAUSE | QUESTION |
| 5. I don't know where your book is                  | NOUN CLAUSE | QUESTION |
| 6. Where is your book                               | NOUN CLAUSE | QUESTION |
| 7. When did Bob come                                | NOUN CLAUSE | QUESTION |
| 8. I don't know when Bob came                       | NOUN CLAUSE | QUESTION |
| 9. What does "calm" mean                            | NOUN CLAUSE | QUESTION |
| 10. Tarik knows what "calm" means                   | NOUN CLAUSE | QUESTION |
| 11. I don't know how long the earth has existed     | NOUN CLAUSE | QUESTION |
| 12. How long has the earth existed                  | NOUN CLAUSE | QUESTION |

### ◇ PRACTICE 2. Noun clauses. (Chart 14-2)

*Directions:* Underline the noun clause in each sentence. Draw brackets around and identify the subject (S) and verb (V) of the noun clause.

1. I don't know where [Patty] [went] last night.
2. Do you know where [Joe's parents] [live]?\*

\*A question mark is used at the end of this noun clause because the main subject and verb of the sentence (*Do you know*) are a question. *Do you know* asks a question; *where Joe lives* is a noun clause.

3. I know where Joe lives.
4. Do you know what time the movie begins?
5. She explained where Brazil is.
6. I don't believe what Estefan said.
7. I don't know when the packages will arrive.
8. Please tell me how far it is to the post office.
9. I don't know who knocked on the door.
10. I wonder what happened at the party last night.

◇ PRACTICE 3. Information questions and noun clauses. (Charts 5-2 and 14-2)

*Directions:* Underline the noun clause. Change the underlined noun clause to a question.

1. QUESTION: Why did Tim leave?  
NOUN CLAUSE: I don't know why Tim left.
2. QUESTION: Where  
NOUN CLAUSE: I don't know where he went.
3. QUESTION: \_\_\_\_\_  
NOUN CLAUSE: I don't know where he lives.
4. QUESTION: \_\_\_\_\_  
NOUN CLAUSE: I don't know where he is now.
5. QUESTION: \_\_\_\_\_  
NOUN CLAUSE: I don't know what time he will return.
6. QUESTION: \_\_\_\_\_  
NOUN CLAUSE: I don't know how far it is to his house.
7. QUESTION: \_\_\_\_\_  
NOUN CLAUSE: I don't know who lives next door to him.
8. QUESTION: \_\_\_\_\_  
NOUN CLAUSE: I don't know what happened to him.

◇ PRACTICE 4. Information questions and noun clauses. (Charts 5-2 and 14-2)

*Directions:* Complete the question and noun clause forms of the given sentences.

1. Marcos left at 11:00.  
When did Marcos leave?  
Could you tell me when Marcos left?

2. He said good-bye.  
What \_\_\_\_\_  
I didn't hear \_\_\_\_\_
3. The post office is on Second Street.  
Where \_\_\_\_\_  
Could you please tell me \_\_\_\_\_
4. It's half-past six.  
What time \_\_\_\_\_  
Could you please tell me \_\_\_\_\_
5. David arrived two days ago.  
When \_\_\_\_\_  
I don't know \_\_\_\_\_
6. Anna is from Peru.  
What country \_\_\_\_\_  
I'd like to know \_\_\_\_\_
7. Kathy was absent because she was ill.  
Why \_\_\_\_\_ absent?  
Do you know \_\_\_\_\_ absent?
8. Pedro lives next door.  
Who \_\_\_\_\_ next door?  
Do you know \_\_\_\_\_ next door?
9. Eric invited Sonya to the party.  
Who(m) \_\_\_\_\_ to the party?  
Do you know \_\_\_\_\_ to the party?
10. The Bakers borrowed our camping equipment.  
Who \_\_\_\_\_ our camping equipment?  
Do you remember \_\_\_\_\_ our camping equipment?
11. The restrooms are located down the hall.  
Where \_\_\_\_\_  
Could you please tell me \_\_\_\_\_

◇ PRACTICE 5. Noun clauses. (Chart 14-2)

Directions: Complete the sentences by changing the given questions to noun clauses.

1. *Who(m) did Helen talk to?* Do you know who (m) Helen talked to?
2. *Who lives in that apartment?* Do you know \_\_\_\_\_
3. *What did he say?* Tell me \_\_\_\_\_
4. *What kind of car does Pat have?* I can't remember \_\_\_\_\_
5. *How old are their children?* I can't ever remember \_\_\_\_\_
6. *Why did you say that?* I don't understand \_\_\_\_\_
7. *Where can I catch the bus?* Could you please tell me \_\_\_\_\_
8. *Who did Sara talk to?* I don't know \_\_\_\_\_
9. *How long has Ted been living here?* Do you know \_\_\_\_\_
10. *What does this word mean?* Could you please tell me \_\_\_\_\_

◇ PRACTICE 6. Information questions and noun clauses. (Charts 5-2 and 14-2)

Directions: Complete the sentences using the words in parentheses.

1. A: Why (*you, were*) were you late?  
 B: What?  
 A: I want to know why (*you, were*) you were late.
2. A: Where (*Tom, go*) \_\_\_\_\_ last night?  
 B: I'm sorry. I didn't hear what (*you, say*) \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A: I want to know where (*Tom, go*) \_\_\_\_\_ last night.
3. A: What (*a bumblebee, is*) \_\_\_\_\_?  
 B: Excuse me?  
 A: I want to know what (*a bumblebee, is*) \_\_\_\_\_.  
 B: It's a big bee.
4. A: Whose car (*Oscar, borrow*) \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday?  
 B: I don't know whose car (*Oscar, borrow*) \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.
5. A: Could you please tell me where (*Mr. Gow's office, is*) \_\_\_\_\_?  
 B: I'm sorry. I didn't understand.  
 A: Where (*Mr. Gow's office, is*) \_\_\_\_\_?  
 B: Ah. Down the hall on the right.



6. A: Rachel left the hospital two weeks ago. When (*she, come*) \_\_\_\_\_  
back to work?
- B: I have no idea. I don't know when (*she, come*) \_\_\_\_\_ back to work.
- A: Why (*she, be*) \_\_\_\_\_ in the hospital?
- B: I don't know that either. I haven't heard. I'll ask Tom. Maybe he knows why (*she, be*)  
\_\_\_\_\_ in the hospital.

◇ PRACTICE 7. Noun clauses with WHO, WHAT, WHOSE + BE. (Chart 14-3)

*Directions:* Draw brackets around and identify the subject (s) and verb (v) of each noun clause.

1. I don't know who [<sup>s</sup>that man] [<sup>v</sup>is].
2. I don't know [<sup>s</sup>who] [<sup>v</sup>called].
3. I don't know who those people are.
4. I don't know who that person is.
5. I don't know who lives next door to me.
6. I don't know who my teacher will be next semester.
7. I don't know who will teach us next semester.
8. I don't know what a lizard is.
9. I don't know what happened in class yesterday.
10. I don't know whose hat this is.
11. I don't know whose hat is on the table.

◇ PRACTICE 8. Noun clauses with WHO, WHAT, WHOSE + BE. (Chart 14-3)

*Directions:* Add the word **is** to each sentence in the correct place. If nothing is needed, write a slash (/) in the blank.

1. I don't know who \_\_\_\_/\_\_\_\_ that man is .
2. I don't know who is in that room \_\_\_\_/\_\_\_\_ .
3. I don't know what \_\_\_\_\_ a crow \_\_\_\_\_ .
4. I don't know who \_\_\_\_\_ in the doctor's office \_\_\_\_\_ .

5. I don't know who \_\_\_\_\_ that person \_\_\_\_\_.
6. I don't know what \_\_\_\_\_ our new address \_\_\_\_\_.
7. I don't know what \_\_\_\_\_ on the carpet \_\_\_\_\_.
8. I don't know what \_\_\_\_\_ the date \_\_\_\_\_ today.
9. I don't know what \_\_\_\_\_ day it \_\_\_\_\_.
10. I don't know whose office \_\_\_\_\_ at the end of the hall \_\_\_\_\_.

◇ PRACTICE 9. Noun clauses with WHO, WHAT, WHOSE + BE. (Chart 14-3)

Directions: Complete the sentences by changing the questions to noun clauses.

1. *Who is she?* I don't know \_\_\_\_\_.
2. *Who are they?* I don't know \_\_\_\_\_.
3. *Whose book is that?* I don't know \_\_\_\_\_.
4. *Whose glasses are those?* Could you tell me \_\_\_\_\_.
5. *What is a wrench?* Do you know \_\_\_\_\_.
6. *Who is that woman?* I wonder \_\_\_\_\_.
7. *What is a clause?* Don't you know \_\_\_\_\_.
8. *What is in that drawer?* I don't know \_\_\_\_\_.
9. *Who is in that room?* I don't know \_\_\_\_\_.
10. *What is on TV tonight?* I wonder \_\_\_\_\_.
11. *What is a carrot?* Do you know \_\_\_\_\_.
12. *Who am I?* He doesn't know \_\_\_\_\_.

◇ PRACTICE 10. Noun clauses with WHO, WHAT, WHOSE + BE. (Chart 14-3)

Directions: Complete the dialogues by changing the questions to noun clauses.

1. A: Whose car is that?  
B: I don't know whose car that is.
2. A: Whose car is in front of Sam's house?  
B: I don't know whose car is in front of Sam's house.
3. A: Who are the best students?  
B: Ask the teacher \_\_\_\_\_.
4. A: What time is dinner?  
B: I'm not sure \_\_\_\_\_.

5. A: Who's next in line?  
B: I don't know \_\_\_\_\_.
6. A: Whose purse is this?  
B: Ask the woman in black \_\_\_\_\_.
7. A: What are the main ideas of the story?  
B: Ask a student \_\_\_\_\_.
8. A: Whose shoes are those under the chair?  
B: I don't know \_\_\_\_\_.
9. A: What causes tornadoes?  
B: I'm not sure \_\_\_\_\_.

◇ PRACTICE 11. Noun clauses and yes/no questions. (Charts 5-2 and 14-4)

*Directions:* Change each yes/no question to a noun clause.

1. YES/NO QUESTION: Is Tom coming?  
NOUN CLAUSE: I wonder if (whether) Tom is coming.
2. YES/NO QUESTION: Has Jin finished medical school yet?  
NOUN CLAUSE: I don't know \_\_\_\_\_.
3. YES/NO QUESTION: Does Daniel have any time off soon?  
NOUN CLAUSE: I don't know \_\_\_\_\_.
4. YES/NO QUESTION: Is the flight on time?  
NOUN CLAUSE: Can you tell me \_\_\_\_\_?
5. YES/NO QUESTION: Is there enough gas in the car?  
NOUN CLAUSE: Do you know \_\_\_\_\_?
6. YES/NO QUESTION: Is Yuki married?  
NOUN CLAUSE: I can't remember \_\_\_\_\_.
7. YES/NO QUESTION: Are the Petersons going to move?  
NOUN CLAUSE: I wonder \_\_\_\_\_.
8. YES/NO QUESTION: Did Khaled change jobs?  
NOUN CLAUSE: I don't know \_\_\_\_\_.

◇ PRACTICE 12. Noun clauses and yes/no questions. (Charts 5-2 and 14-4)

Directions: Complete the sentences using noun clauses. Use *if*.

1. A: Are you going to need help moving furniture to your new apartment?  
B: I don't know if I'm going to need help. Thanks for asking. I'll let you know.
2. A: Is chicken okay for dinner tonight?  
B: I'm sorry. I couldn't hear you with the TV on.  
A: I want to know \_\_\_\_\_ okay for dinner tonight.
3. A: Does the new teaching position include health insurance?  
B: Oh, I'm sorry. Were you talking to me? I wasn't listening.  
A: Yes. I'd like to know \_\_\_\_\_ health insurance.
4. A: Will there be a movie on this flight?  
B: I'll ask the flight attendant. Excuse me, we're wondering \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ on this flight.
5. A: Does Greg have to come with us?  
B: Shhh. Don't ask \_\_\_\_\_ with us. Of course he does.  
He's your brother!
6. A: Do penguins ever get cold?  
B: That's an interesting question. I don't know \_\_\_\_\_  
cold.
7. A: Can I drive the car to the store, Dad?  
B: Are you serious? Of course not! Why do you ask \_\_\_\_\_ the car  
to the store? You haven't passed your driver's test.
8. A: Has Nasser already left the party?  
B: Sorry, it's so noisy here. I didn't catch that.  
A: I need to know \_\_\_\_\_ the party.

◇ PRACTICE 13. Noun clauses. (Charts 5-2, 14-2, and 14-4)

Directions: Change the questions to noun clauses.

1. *Is Karen at home?* Do you know if (whether) Karen is \_\_\_\_\_ at home?
2. *Where did Karen go?* Do you know where Karen went? \_\_\_\_\_
3. *How is Pat feeling today?* I wonder \_\_\_\_\_ today.
4. *Is Pat feeling better today?* I wonder \_\_\_\_\_ better today.
5. *Does the bus stop here?* Do you know \_\_\_\_\_ here?
6. *Where does the bus stop?* I wonder \_\_\_\_\_

7. *Why is Elena absent today?* The teacher wants to know \_\_\_\_\_  
today.
8. *Is Elena going to be absent again tomorrow?* I wonder \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ again tomorrow.
9. *Should I buy that book?* I wonder \_\_\_\_\_ that book.
10. *Which book should I buy?* I wonder \_\_\_\_\_
11. *Are we going to have a test tomorrow?* Let's ask the teacher \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ a test tomorrow.
12. *Is there a Santa Claus?* The little boy wants to know \_\_\_\_\_ a Santa Claus.



◇ PRACTICE 14. Noun clauses. (Charts 14-2 and 14-4)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs. Pay special attention to the use of final *-s/-es*.

1. Does it rain a lot here?

Could you tell me if it rains a lot here?

2. How hot does it get in the summer?

Could you tell me how hot it \_\_\_\_\_ in the summer?

3. What do people like to do here?

Could you tell me what people \_\_\_\_\_ to do here?

4. Does Bus #10 run on holidays?

Could you tell me if Bus #10 \_\_\_\_\_ on holidays?

5. Do the buses run on holidays?

Could you tell me if the buses \_\_\_\_\_ on holidays?

6. How long does it take to get to the city?

Could you tell me how long it \_\_\_\_\_ to get to the city?

7. What do people enjoy most about this area?

Could you tell me what people \_\_\_\_\_ most about this area?

8. Does it seem like an expensive place to live?

Could you tell me if it \_\_\_\_\_ like an expensive place to live?

◇ PRACTICE 15. THAT-clauses. (Charts 14-5 and 14-6)

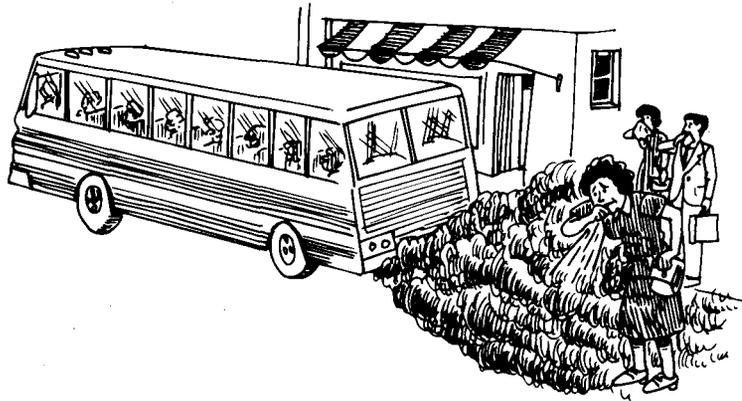
*Directions:* Add the word **that** to the sentences at the appropriate places to mark the beginning of a noun clause.

1. I'm sorry <sup>that</sup> ^ you won't be here for Joe's party.
2. I predict Jim and Sue will get married before the end of the year.
3. I'm surprised you sold your bicycle.
4. Are you certain Mr. McVay won't be here tomorrow?
5. Did you notice Marco shaved off his mustache?
6. John is pleased Claudio will be here for the meeting.
7. Anna was convinced I was angry with her, but I wasn't.
8. It's a fact the Nile River flows north.
9. A: Guido is delighted you can speak Italian.  
B: I'm surprised he can understand my Italian. It's not very good.
10. A: How do you know it's going to be nice tomorrow?  
B: I heard the weather report.  
A: So? The weather report is often wrong, you know. I'm still worried it'll rain on our picnic.
11. A: Mrs. Lane hopes we can go with her to the museum tomorrow.  
B: I don't think I can go. I'm supposed to babysit my little brother tomorrow.  
A: Oh, too bad. I wish you could join us.

12. A: Do you think technology benefits humankind?

B: Of course. Everyone knows modern inventions make our lives better.

A: I'm not sure that's true. For example, cars and buses provide faster transportation, but they pollute our air. Air pollution can cause lung disease and other illnesses.



◇ PRACTICE 16. THAT-clauses. (Charts 14-5 and 14-6)

Directions: Complete the sentences with clauses from the list.

*All people are equal.*

*Flying in an airplane is safer than riding in a car.*

*He always twirls his mustache when he's nervous.*

*High school students in the United States don't study as hard as the students in my country do.*

*A huge monster was chasing me.*

*I should study tonight.*

*I will get married someday.*

*I will have a peanut butter sandwich.*

*John "Cat Man" Smith stole Mrs. Adams' jewelry.*

*More than half of the people in the world go hungry every day.*

*People are pretty much the same everywhere.*

*Plastic trash kills thousands of marine animals every year.*

1. I'm hungry. I guess (that) I will have a peanut butter sandwich.
2. I have a test tomorrow. I suppose \_\_\_\_\_, but I'd rather go to a movie.
3. Why are you afraid to fly in an airplane? Read this report. It proves \_\_\_\_\_
4. Right now I'm single. I can't predict my future exactly, but I assume \_\_\_\_\_
5. Last night I had a bad dream. In fact, it was a nightmare. I dreamed \_\_\_\_\_

6. The police are investigating the burglary. They don't have much evidence, but they suspect \_\_\_\_\_
7. My cousin feels that people in the United States are unfriendly, but I disagree with him. I've discovered \_\_\_\_\_
8. I've learned many things about life in the United States since I came here. For example, I've learned \_\_\_\_\_
9. I always know when Paul is nervous. Have you ever noticed \_\_\_\_\_
10. I believe that it is wrong to judge another person on the basis of race, religion, or sex. I believe \_\_\_\_\_
11. World hunger is a serious problem. Do you realize \_\_\_\_\_
12. Don't throw that plastic bag into the sea! Don't you know \_\_\_\_\_

◇ PRACTICE 17. THAT-clauses. (Charts 14-5 and 14-6)

*Directions:* Write sentences with the given information. Combine one of the verbs in parentheses with a noun clause.

1. Smoking in public places should be prohibited. (*feel / don't feel*)  
→ *I feel (don't feel) that smoking in public places should be prohibited.*
2. I'm living in this country. (*regret / don't regret*)
3. When will I die? (*would like to know / wouldn't like to know*)
4. There will be peace in the world soon. (*doubt / don't doubt*)
5. What was I like as a child? (*remember / can't remember*)
6. Why does the world exist? (*wonder / don't wonder*)
7. Someone may make unwise decisions about my future. (*am afraid / am not afraid*)
8. What do I want to do with my life? (*know / don't know*)

◇ PRACTICE 18. THAT-clauses. (Chart 14-6)

*Directions:* Write two sentences for each situation. Use the words in parentheses with a noun clause.

1. The Jensens celebrated the graduation of their granddaughter Alice from the university. After graduation, she was offered a good job in chemical research in a nearby town. (*be pleased*)  
→ *The Jensens are pleased that their granddaughter graduated from the university. They are pleased that she was offered a good job.*
2. Po was asleep. Around one in the morning the smoke alarm in his apartment rang. He woke up and discovered that his apartment building was on fire. (*be lucky*)
3. Ming Soo didn't study for her math exam. Afterward, she thought she had failed, but got one of the highest grades in the class. Her teacher had known she would do well and praised her for earning such a high grade. (*be surprised*)
4. Karen lent her cousin Mark some money. She heard that he left town. He owed a lot of people money. She needs the money she gave her cousin. Her children need new shoes, but she can't afford to buy them. (*be sorry*)

◇ PRACTICE 19. THAT-clauses. (Chart 14-7)

*Directions:* Give the meaning of **so** by writing a *that*-clause.

1. A: Does Alice have a car?  
B: I don't think **so**. (= *I don't think* that Alice has a car .)
2. A: Is the library open on Sunday?  
B: I believe **so**. (= *I believe* \_\_\_\_\_ .)
3. A: Does Ann speak Spanish?  
B: I don't think **so**. (= *I don't think* \_\_\_\_\_ .)
4. A: Did Alex pass his French course?  
B: I think **so**. (= *I think* \_\_\_\_\_ .)
5. A: Is Mr. Kozari going to be at the meeting?  
B: I hope **so**. (= *I hope* \_\_\_\_\_ .)
6. A: Are the photos ready to be picked up at the photo shop?  
B: I believe **so**. (= *I believe* \_\_\_\_\_ .)

◇ PRACTICE 20. Quoted speech. (Chart 14-8)

*Directions:* All of the sentences contain quoted speech. Punctuate them by adding quotation marks (“...”), commas (,), periods (.), and question marks (?). Also use capital letters as necessary.

*Example:* My roommate said the door is open could you close it

→ My roommate said, “**T**he door is open. **C**ould you close it?”

1. Alex said do you smell smoke
2. Something is burning he said
3. He said do you smell smoke something is burning
4. Do you smell smoke he said something is burning



5. Rachel said the game starts at seven
6. The game starts at seven we should leave here at six she said
7. She said the game starts at seven we should leave here at six can you be ready to leave then



◇ PRACTICE 21. Quoted speech. (Chart 14-8)

*Directions:* All of the sentences contain quoted speech. Punctuate them by adding quotation marks (“...”), commas (,), periods (.), and question marks (?). Also use capital letters as necessary.

*Example:* Jack said please wait for me

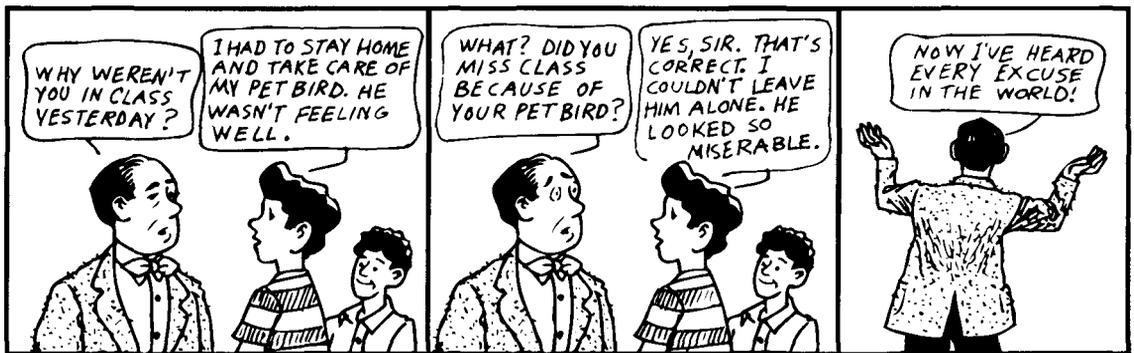
→ Jack said, “**P**lease wait for me.”

1. Mrs. Hill said my children used to take the bus to school

2. She said we moved closer to the school
3. Now my children can walk to school Mrs. Hill said
4. Do you live near the school she asked
5. Yes, we live two blocks away I replied
6. How long have you lived here Mrs. Hill wanted to know
7. I said we've lived here for five years how long have you lived here
8. We've lived here for two years Mrs. Hill said how do you like living here
9. It's a nice community I said it's a good place to raise children

◇ PRACTICE 22. Quoted speech. (Chart 14-8)

Directions: Punctuate the quoted passage. Add quotation marks (“...”), commas (,), periods (.), and question marks (?). Also use capital letters as necessary.



“Why weren’t you in class yesterday?” Mr. Garcia asked me.

I had to stay home and take care of my pet bird I said. He wasn’t feeling well.

What? Did you miss class because of your pet bird Mr. Garcia demanded to know.

I replied yes, sir. That’s correct. I couldn’t leave him alone. He looked so miserable.

Now I’ve heard every excuse in the world Mr. Garcia said. Then he threw his arms in the air and walked away.

◇ PRACTICE 23. Quoted speech. (Chart 14-8)

*Directions:* Punctuate the quoted passage. Add quotation marks (“...”), commas (,), periods (.), and question marks (?). Also use capital letters as necessary.

One day my friend Laura and I were sitting in her apartment. We were having a cup of tea together and talking about the terrible earthquake that had just occurred in Iran. Laura asked me, “Have you ever been in an earthquake?”

Yes, I have I replied.

Was it a big earthquake she asked.

I’ve been in several earthquakes, and they’ve all been small ones I answered. Have you ever been in an earthquake?

There was an earthquake in my village five years ago Laura said. I was in my house. Suddenly the ground started shaking. I grabbed my little brother and ran outside. Everything was moving. I was scared to death. And then suddenly it was over.

I’m glad you and your brother weren’t hurt I said.

Yes, we were very lucky. Has everyone in the world felt an earthquake sometime in their lives Laura wondered. Do earthquakes occur everywhere on the earth?

Those are interesting questions I said but I don’t know the answers.

◇ PRACTICE 24. Reported speech: changing pronouns. (Chart 14-9)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with the correct pronouns.

1. Mr. Lee said, “I’m not happy with my new assistant.”

Mr. Lee said that he wasn’t happy with his new assistant.

2. Tom said to his wife, “My parents invited us over for dinner next weekend.”

Tom said that \_\_\_\_\_ parents had invited \_\_\_\_\_ over for dinner next weekend.

3. The little girl said, “I don’t want to wear my raincoat outside.”

The little girl said that \_\_\_\_\_ didn’t want to wear \_\_\_\_\_ raincoat outside.

4. Jim said, "A policeman gave Anna and me tickets for jaywalking and told us to cross the street at the pedestrian crosswalk."

Jim said that a policeman had given Anna and \_\_\_\_\_ tickets for jaywalking and told \_\_\_\_\_ to cross the street at the pedestrian crosswalk.

5. The Johnsons said to me, "We will send you an e-mail when we arrive in Nepal."

The Johnsons said that \_\_\_\_\_ would send \_\_\_\_\_ an e-mail when \_\_\_\_\_ arrived in Nepal.

6. Jane said, "I want my daughter to feel good about herself."

Jane said that \_\_\_\_\_ wanted \_\_\_\_\_ daughter to feel good about herself.

7. Mary and Jack said to me, "We are going to be out of town on the day of your party."

Mary and Jack said that \_\_\_\_\_ were going to be out of town on the day of \_\_\_\_\_ party.

8. Bob said to us, "I will join you after I help my neighbors move some furniture."

Bob told us that \_\_\_\_\_ would join \_\_\_\_\_ after \_\_\_\_\_ helped \_\_\_\_\_ neighbors move some furniture.

◇ PRACTICE 25. Reported speech: changing verbs. (Chart 14-10)

Directions: Complete each sentence with the correct form of the verb.

1. Juan said, "I will meet you at the corner of 5<sup>th</sup> and Broadway."

Formal: Juan said (that) he would meet \_\_\_\_\_ us at the corner of 5<sup>th</sup> and Broadway.  
Informal: Juan said (that) he will meet \_\_\_\_\_

2. Maria said, "I'm going to be about 15 minutes late for work."

Formal: Maria said she \_\_\_\_\_ about 15 minutes late for work.  
Informal: Maria said she \_\_\_\_\_

3. Bob said, "My new car has a dent."

Formal: Bob said his new car \_\_\_\_\_ a dent.  
Informal: Bob said his new car \_\_\_\_\_

4. Phil said, "I need to borrow some money."

Formal: Phil said he \_\_\_\_\_ to borrow some money.  
Informal: Phil said he \_\_\_\_\_

5. Sandy said, "I have flown on an airplane only once."

*Formal:* Sandy said she \_\_\_\_\_ on an airplane only once.  
*Informal:* Sandy said she \_\_\_\_\_

6. Sami and Jun said, "We are planning a surprise party for Naoko."

*Formal:* Sami and Jun said they \_\_\_\_\_ a surprise party for Naoko.  
*Informal:* Sami and Jun said they \_\_\_\_\_

7. Naoko said, "I don't want any gifts for my birthday."

*Formal:* Naoko said she \_\_\_\_\_ any gifts for her birthday.  
*Informal:* Naoko said she \_\_\_\_\_

8. Ms. Wall said, "I can babysit next weekend."

*Formal:* Ms. Wall said she \_\_\_\_\_ next weekend.  
*Informal:* Ms. Wall said she \_\_\_\_\_

◇ PRACTICE 26. Reported speech. (Charts 14-9 and 14-10)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences. Write the opposite of the quoted speech. Use formal sequence of tenses.

1. A: I have a lot of time.

B: Oh? I misunderstood you. I heard you say (that) you didn't have a lot of time.

2. A: I found my credit cards.

B: I misunderstood you. I heard you say \_\_\_\_\_ your credit cards.

3. A: The Smiths canceled their party.

B: I misunderstood you. I heard you say \_\_\_\_\_ their party.

4. A: It will rain tomorrow.

B: I misunderstood you. I heard you say \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow.

5. A: The Whites got a new dog.

B: I misunderstood you. I heard you say \_\_\_\_\_ a new dog.

6. A: Mei exercises every day.

B: I misunderstood you. I heard you say \_\_\_\_\_ every day.

7. A: My computer is working.

B: I misunderstood you. I heard you say \_\_\_\_\_.

8. A: Ali isn't coming on Friday.

B: I misunderstood you. I heard you say \_\_\_\_\_ on Friday.

◇ PRACTICE 27. Reporting questions. (Charts 14-9 → 14-11)

*Directions:* Change the quoted questions to reported questions. Use formal tense sequences.

1. Eric said to me, "How old are you?"

→ Eric asked me how old I was.

2. Ms. Rush said to Mr. Long, "Are you going to be at the meeting?"

→ Ms. Rush asked Mr. Long if he was going to be at the meeting.

3. Larry said to Ms. Ho, "Do you have time to help me?"

→ Larry asked Ms. Ho \_\_\_\_\_ time to help him.

4. Don said to Robert, "Did you change your mind about going to Reed College?"

→ Don asked Robert \_\_\_\_\_ mind about going to Reed College.

5. Igor said to me, "How long have you been a teacher?"

→ Igor asked me \_\_\_\_\_ a teacher.

6. I said to Tina, "Can you speak Swahili?"

→ I asked Tina \_\_\_\_\_ Swahili.

7. Kathy said to Mr. May, "Will you be in your office around three?"

→ Kathy asked Mr. May \_\_\_\_\_ around three.

8. The teacher said to Ms. Chang, "Why are you laughing?"

→ The teacher asked Ms. Chang \_\_\_\_\_.

9. My uncle said to me, "Have you ever considered a career in business?"

→ My uncle asked me \_\_\_\_\_ a career in business.

◇ PRACTICE 28. Quoting questions. (Charts 14-8 → 14-11)

*Directions:* Change the reported speech to quotations. Use quotation marks.

1. Eric asked me if I had ever gone skydiving.

→ Eric said, "Have you ever gone skydiving?"

2. Chris wanted to know if I would be at the meeting.

→ Chris said, \_\_\_\_\_

3. Kate wondered whether I was going to quit my job.

→ Kate said, \_\_\_\_\_

4. Anna asked her friend where his car was.

→ Anna said, \_\_\_\_\_

5. Brian asked me what I had done after class yesterday.

→ Brian said, \_\_\_\_\_

6. Luigi asked me if I knew Italian.

→ Luigi said, \_\_\_\_\_

7. Debra wanted to know if I could guess what she had in her pocket.

→ Debra asked, \_\_\_\_\_

8. My boss wanted to know why I wasn't working at my desk.

→ My boss angrily asked me, \_\_\_\_\_

◇ PRACTICE 29. Reporting questions. (Charts 14-9 → 14-11)

Directions: Look at the picture and complete the sentences with noun clauses. Use verbs that are appropriate for later reporting (rather than immediate reporting).



A new student, Mr. Sheko, joined an English class. The teacher asked the students to interview him. Later, Mr. Sheko told his friend about the interview.

1. They asked me where I was from.
2. They asked me \_\_\_\_\_
3. They asked me \_\_\_\_\_
4. They asked me \_\_\_\_\_
5. They asked me \_\_\_\_\_
6. They asked me \_\_\_\_\_
7. They asked me \_\_\_\_\_
8. They asked me \_\_\_\_\_
9. They asked me \_\_\_\_\_

◇ PRACTICE 30. Reported speech. (Charts 14-9 → 14-11)

Directions: Complete the reported speech sentences. Use the formal sequence of tenses.

1. David said to me, "I'm going to call you on Friday."

→ David said (that) he was going to call me  
on Friday.

2. John said to Ann, "I have to talk to you."

→ John told Ann \_\_\_\_\_  
to \_\_\_\_\_.



3. Diane said to me, "I can meet you after work."

→ Diane said \_\_\_\_\_ after work.

4. Maria said to Bob, "I wrote you a note."

→ Maria told Bob \_\_\_\_\_  
a note.



5. I said to David, "I need your help to prepare for the exam."

→ I told David \_\_\_\_\_ help to  
prepare for the exam.

6. Anna asked Mike, "When will I see you again?"

→ Anna asked Mike when \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ again.



7. Mr. Fox said to me, "I'm going to meet Jack and you at the restaurant."

→ Mr. Fox said \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ Jack and \_\_\_\_\_ at the restaurant.



8. Laura said to George, "What are you doing?"

→ Laura asked George \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_.

9. A strange man looked at me and said, "I'm sure I've met you before."

→ A strange man looked at me and said \_\_\_\_\_  
before. I was sure I'd never seen him before in my entire life.

◇ PRACTICE 31. SAY vs. TELL vs. ASK. (Chart 14-11)

Directions: Complete the sentences with *said*, *told*, or *asked*.

1. Ann told me that she was hungry.
2. Ann said that she was hungry.
3. Ann \_\_\_\_\_ me if I wanted to go out to lunch with her.
4. When the storm began, I \_\_\_\_\_ the children to come into the house.
5. When I talked to Mr. Grant, he \_\_\_\_\_ he would be at the meeting.
6. Ali \_\_\_\_\_ his friends that he had won a scholarship to college. His friends \_\_\_\_\_ they weren't surprised.
7. My supervisor \_\_\_\_\_ me if I could postpone my vacation. I \_\_\_\_\_ him what the reason was. He \_\_\_\_\_ that our sales department needed me for a project.
8. My neighbor and I had a disagreement. I \_\_\_\_\_ my neighbor that he was wrong. My neighbor \_\_\_\_\_ me that I was wrong.
9. Fumiko \_\_\_\_\_ the teacher that Fatima wasn't going to be in class.
10. Ellen \_\_\_\_\_ if I could join her for a movie. I \_\_\_\_\_ I wasn't feeling well, but I \_\_\_\_\_ her what movie she was going to. The next day, Ellen \_\_\_\_\_ me she had enjoyed the movie.



◇ PRACTICE 32. Reported speech. (Chapter 14)

Directions: Complete the dialogues by changing the quoted speech to reported speech. Use *said*, *told*, *asked*, or *replied*. Practice using the formal sequence of tenses.

1. Bob said, "Where do you live?" Bob asked me where I lived.
2. He said, "Do you live in the dorm?" He \_\_\_\_\_ in the dorm.
3. I said, "I have my own apartment." I \_\_\_\_\_ my own apartment.
4. He said, "I'm looking for a new apartment." He \_\_\_\_\_ for a new apartment.
5. He said, "I don't like living in the dorm." He \_\_\_\_\_ in the dorm.
6. I said, "Do you want to move in with me?" I \_\_\_\_\_

7. He said, "Where is your apartment?" He \_\_\_\_\_
8. I said, "I live on Seventh Avenue." I \_\_\_\_\_ on Seventh Avenue.
9. He said, "I can't move until the end of May." He \_\_\_\_\_ until the end of May.
10. He said, "I will cancel my dorm contract at the end of May." He \_\_\_\_\_ dorm contract at the end of May.
11. He said, "Is that okay?" He \_\_\_\_\_
12. I said, "I'm looking forward to having you as a roommate." I \_\_\_\_\_ as a roommate.

◇ PRACTICE 33. Reported speech. (Chapter 14)

Directions: Check **all** the sentences that are correct.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ The teacher asked are you finished?  
 The teacher asked if I was finished.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ The teacher asked if was I finished?  
 \_\_\_\_\_ The teacher asked that I was finished?  
 The teacher asked, "Are you finished?"
2. \_\_\_\_\_ Aki said he was finished.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ Aki said that he was finished.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ Aki replied that he was finished.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ Aki answered that he was finished.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ Aki said whether was he finished.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Ann told Tom, she needed more time.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ Ann told Tom she needed more time.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ Ann told to Tom she needed more time.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ Ann told she needed more time.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ Ann said Tom she needed more time.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ Ann said she needed more time.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Donna answered that she was ready.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ Donna answered was she ready.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ Donna replied she was ready.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ Donna answered, "I am ready."  
 \_\_\_\_\_ Donna answered if she was ready.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Mr. Wong wanted to know if Ted was coming.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ Mr. Wong wanted to know is Ted coming?  
 \_\_\_\_\_ Mr. Wong wondered if Ted was coming.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ Mr. Wong wondered was Ted coming.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ Mr. Wong wondered, "Is Ted coming?"

◇ PRACTICE 34. Reported speech. (Chapter 14)

Directions: Read the dialogues and complete the sentences. Use the formal sequence of tenses.

1. A: *Oh no! I forgot my briefcase! What am I going to do?*  
 B: *I don't know.*

→ When Bill got on the bus, he realized (that) he had forgotten his briefcase.

2. A: *Where's your bicycle, Jimmy?*  
 B: *I sold it to a friend of mine.*  
 A: *You what?!*  
 → Yesterday I asked my fourteen-year-old son \_\_\_\_\_.  
 He \_\_\_\_\_ it to a friend. I was flabbergasted.
3. A: *The bus is supposed to be here in three minutes. Hurry up! I'm afraid we'll miss it.*  
 B: *I'm ready. Let's go.*  
 → I told my friend to hurry because I was afraid \_\_\_\_\_ the bus.
4. A: *Can you swim?*  
 B: *Yes.*  
 A: *Thank heaven.*  
 → When the canoe tipped over, I asked my friend \_\_\_\_\_.
5. A: *Do you want to go downtown?*  
 B: *I can't. I have to study.*  
 → When I asked Kathy \_\_\_\_\_ to go downtown, she said  
 \_\_\_\_\_ because she \_\_\_\_\_.
6. A: *Ow! My finger really hurts! I'm sure I broke it.*  
 B: *Let me see.*  
 → When Nancy fell down, she was sure \_\_\_\_\_ her finger.
7. A: *Where's Jack? I'm surprised he isn't here.*  
 B: *He went to Chicago to visit his sister.*  
 → When I got to the party, I asked my friend where Jack \_\_\_\_\_.  
 I was surprised \_\_\_\_\_ there. My friend told me  
 \_\_\_\_\_ to Chicago to visit his sister.
8. A: *Will you be home in time for dinner?*  
 B: *I'll be home around 5:30.*  
 → My wife asked me \_\_\_\_\_ home in time for dinner. I told her  
 \_\_\_\_\_ home around 5:30.
9. A: *Have you ever been to Mexico?*  
 B: *Yes, I have. Several times.*  
 → I asked George \_\_\_\_\_ ever \_\_\_\_\_ to Mexico. He said  
 \_\_\_\_\_ there several times.
10. A: *Where's my cane?*  
 B: *I don't know. Do you need it?*  
 A: *I want to walk to the mailbox.*  
 B: *I'll find it for you.*

→ Grandfather asked me \_\_\_\_\_ . I told him \_\_\_\_\_ . Then I asked him \_\_\_\_\_ it. He said \_\_\_\_\_ to the mailbox. I told him \_\_\_\_\_ for him.



◇ PRACTICE 35. Reported speech. (Charts 14-9 → 14-11)

*Directions:* Write a report on the people in the pictures and what they say. Use the formal sequence of tenses.

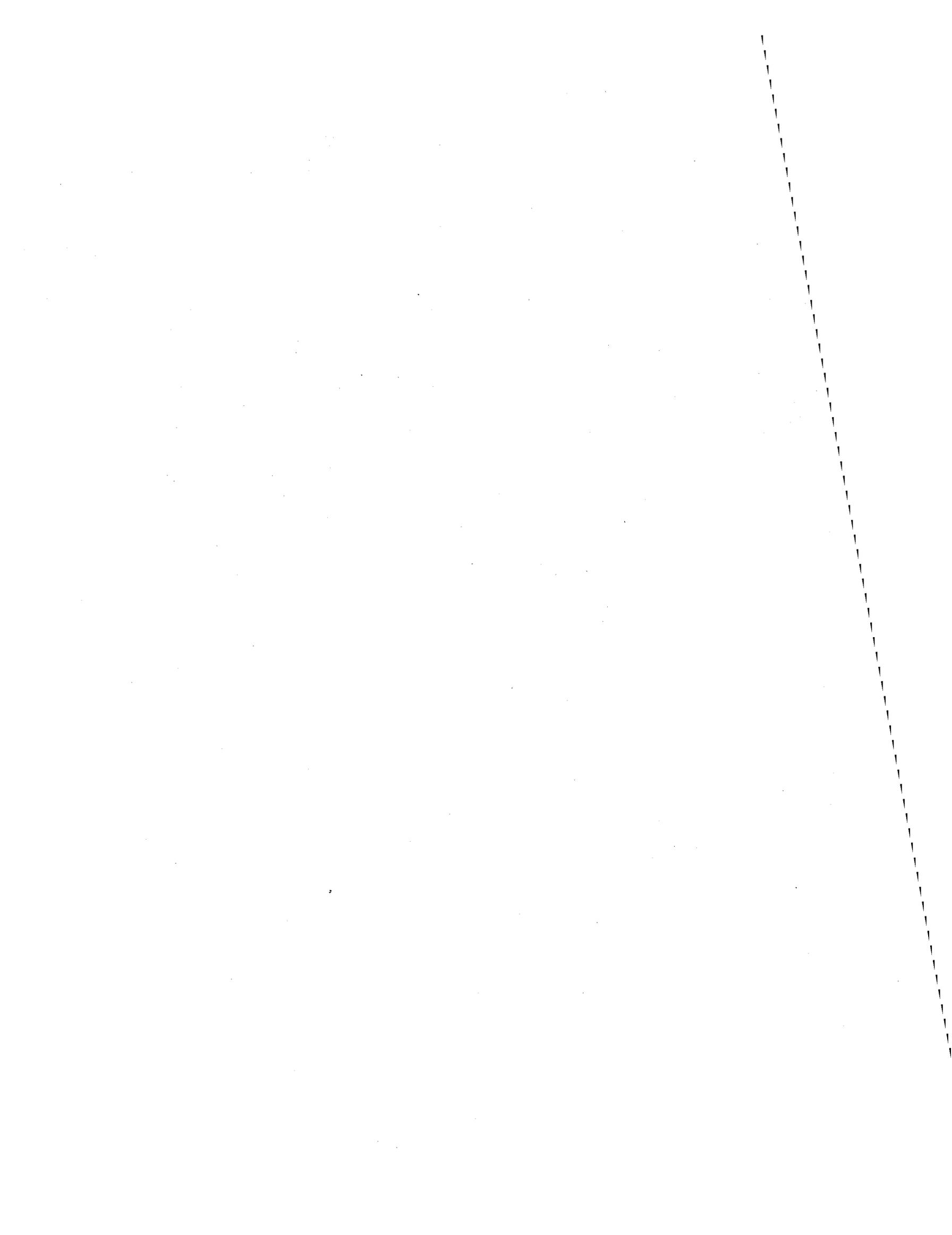
BEFORE SCHOOL IN THE MORNING



◇ PRACTICE 36. Error analysis. (Chapter 14)

*Directions:* Correct the errors.

1. Excuse me. May I ask if how old are you?
2. I wonder did Rashed pick up something for dinner?
3. I'm unsure what does Lawrence do for a living.
4. Fernando said, "the best time for me to meet would be Thursday morning.
5. Eriko said to me was I coming to the graduation party. I say her that I wasn't.
6. I hope so that I will do well on my final exams.
7. Antonio asked his mother what does she want for her birthday?
8. I'm not sure if the price include sales tax.
9. My mother said to me that: "How many hours you spent on your homework?
10. Pedro asked is that okay? (2 answers: direct and indirect speech)
11. Mika told she would going to stay home today.
12. I'd like to know how do you do that.
13. My parents knew what did Sam and I do.
14. Beth said she had working hard all week but now had some time off.
15. Is a fact that life always changes.



# APPENDIX 1

## Phrasal Verbs

### ◇ PRACTICE 1. Phrasal verbs: separable. (Group A)

*Directions:* Complete each sentence with a correct particle from the list. Particles may be used more than once or not at all.

<i>away</i>	<i>in</i>	<i>on</i>	<i>up</i>
<i>down</i>	<i>off</i>	<i>out</i>	

1. I'd like to listen to some music. Would you please *turn* the radio on ?
2. My husband *makes* \_\_\_\_\_ bedtime stories for our children.
3. My arms hurt, so I *put* the baby \_\_\_\_\_ for a minute. But he started crying right away, so I *picked* him \_\_\_\_\_ again.
4. A: We need a plumber to fix our leaky water faucet. You need to call one today.  
B: I will.  
A: Don't *put* it \_\_\_\_\_ .  
B: I won't. I'll call today. I promise.
5. A: Why are you wearing your new suit?  
B: I just *put* it \_\_\_\_\_ to see what it looks like.  
A: It looks fine. *Take* it \_\_\_\_\_ and hang it up before it gets wrinkled.
6. A: I found this notebook in the wastebasket. It's yours, isn't it?  
B: Yes. I *threw* it \_\_\_\_\_. I don't need it anymore.  
A: Okay. I thought maybe it had fallen in the wastebasket accidentally.
7. A: I need Jan's address again.  
B: I gave you her address just yesterday.  
A: I'm afraid I've lost it. Tell me again, and I'll *write* it \_\_\_\_\_.  
B: Just a minute. I have to *look* it \_\_\_\_\_ in my address book.

8. A: You'll never believe what happened in physics class today!  
 B: What happened?  
 A: We had a big test. When I first looked it over, I realized that I couldn't *figure* \_\_\_\_\_ any of the answers. Our teacher had *handed* \_\_\_\_\_ the wrong test! We hadn't covered that material yet.
9. A: You're all wet!  
 B: I know. A passing truck went through a big puddle and splashed me.  
 A: You'd better *take* those clothes \_\_\_\_\_ and *put* \_\_\_\_\_ something clean and dry before you go to work.
10. A: *Wake* \_\_\_\_\_ ! It's seven o'clock! Rise and shine!  
 B: What are you doing!? *Turn* the light \_\_\_\_\_ and close the window curtain!  
 A: My goodness but we're grumpy this morning. Come on. It's time to get up, dear. You don't want to be late.



◇ PRACTICE 2. Phrasal verbs: separable. (Group A)

Directions: Circle all the correct completions for each sentence.

- Lisa took off *her toys* her socks *her notebooks*.
- Akiko turned off the TV *the butter* the stove.
- Jonas put on *his new shoes* *a fire* *the dishes*.
- Benjamin made up *a story* *a fairy tale* *an excuse*.

5. Susanna threw out *some air* *some rotten food* *an old shirt*.
6. Antonio put off *a doctor's appointment* *a meeting* *a trip*.
7. Max figured out *a puzzle* *a math problem* *a riddle*.
8. Kyong handed in *some candy* *a report* *some late homework*.
9. The secretary wrote down *a message* *a pencil* *a phone number*.
10. The mail carrier put down *a box* *the mail truck* *a sack of mail*.
11. I took off *my coat* *my bicycle* *my wedding ring*.
12. Mustafa turned off *the light* *the computer* *the car engine*.

◇ PRACTICE 3. Phrasal verbs: nonseparable. (Group B)

*Directions:* Complete each sentence with a correct particle from the list. Particles may be used more than once.

<i>from</i>	<i>into</i>	<i>on</i>	<i>over</i>
<i>in</i>	<i>off</i>	<i>out of</i>	

1. A: Why are your pants so dirty?  
B: I lost my balance when I got out of the car, and I fell in the mud.
2. A: I was so embarrassed in class today.  
B: What happened?  
A: The teacher called \_\_\_\_\_ me, and I didn't know the answer.
3. A: The bus is coming. When do I pay?  
B: Don't pay when you get on. Pay the driver when you get \_\_\_\_\_.
4. A: You look great! I thought you had the flu.  
B: I did, but I got \_\_\_\_\_ it very quickly.
5. A: Why haven't we gotten a reply to our letter to the telephone company?  
B: I don't know. I'll look \_\_\_\_\_ it.
6. A: Guess who I ran \_\_\_\_\_ today?  
B: Who?  
A: Melanie Nelson, from high school. She's married now and has seven children.
7. A: Mommy, where do butterflies come \_\_\_\_\_?  
B: Well, first they are caterpillars. Then, when the caterpillars become large, they turn into butterflies.

8. A: Hurry! Get \_\_\_\_\_ the car. We've got to be at the train station in ten minutes.  
 B: OK. I'm ready. Let's go.
9. A: I went downtown by mistake today.  
 B: How on earth did that happen?  
 A: I got \_\_\_\_\_ the wrong bus. It didn't stop until we were in the city.

◇ PRACTICE 4. Phrasal verbs: nonseparable. (Group B)

*Directions:* Complete each sentence in Column A with the correct phrase from Column B.

*Example:* Annette speaks both French and English because she comes . . .

→ *Annette speaks both French and English because she comes from Quebec.*

**Column A**

1. Annette speaks both French and English because she comes . . .
2. When Sylvia lost her job, it took her several weeks to get . . .
3. Our office will need several days to look . . .
4. When a plane lands, the first-class passengers get . . .
5. While I was walking in the mall, I ran . . .
6. When he left the hotel, David got . . .
7. Mrs. Riley, our math teacher, often calls . . .

**Column B**

- A. into your request for medical records.
- ✓B. from Quebec.
- C. over the shock.
- D. in a taxi and went to the airport.
- E. on unprepared students.
- F. into several friends from high school.
- G. off first.

◇ PRACTICE 5. Phrasal verbs: separable. (Group C)

*Directions:* Complete each sentence with a correct particle from the list. Particles may be used more than once.

<i>away</i>	<i>down</i>	<i>on</i>	<i>up</i>
<i>back</i>	<i>off</i>	<i>out</i>	

1. You still owe me the money I lent you. When are you going to *pay* me back ?
2. *Turn* \_\_\_\_\_ the radio! It's too loud! I can't hear myself think.
3. Debra *put* \_\_\_\_\_ the fire in the wastebasket with a fire extinguisher.
4. After I wash and dry the dishes, I *put* them \_\_\_\_\_. I put them in the cupboard where they belong.
5. Before you buy shoes, you should *try* them \_\_\_\_\_ to see if they fit.
6. I can't hear the TV. Could you please *turn* it \_\_\_\_\_? No, don't shut it \_\_\_\_\_! I wanted you to make it louder, not turn it off. I want to hear the news.

7. A: That's mine! *Give* it \_\_\_\_\_!  
 B: No, it's not. It's mine!  
 C: Now children, don't fight.
8. A: I don't hear anyone on the other end of the phone.  
 B: Just *hang* \_\_\_\_\_. It's probably a wrong number.
9. A: I hear that Tom *asked* you \_\_\_\_\_ for next Saturday night.  
 B: Yes, he did. He *called* me \_\_\_\_\_ a couple of hours ago and invited me to the symphony concert.  
 A: The concert's been *called* \_\_\_\_\_ because the musicians are on strike. Didn't you hear about it?  
 B: No, I didn't. I'd better *call* Tom \_\_\_\_\_ and ask him what he wants to do instead.
10. I don't mind if you look at these maps, but please *put* them \_\_\_\_\_ in the drawer when you're finished.

◇ PRACTICE 6. Phrasal verbs: separable. (Groups A, B, C)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with a given particle where possible. If not possible, write "X."

1. *out* a. Paulo asked \_\_\_\_\_ *out* one of his classmates.  
 b. Paulo asked one of his classmates \_\_\_\_\_ *out*.
2. *on* a. The teacher called \_\_\_\_\_ *on* Ted for the answer.  
 b. The teacher called Ted \_\_\_\_\_ *X* for the answer.
3. *into* a. The police are looking \_\_\_\_\_ the murder, but need help from the public to solve it.  
 b. The police are looking the murder \_\_\_\_\_, but need help from the public to solve it.
4. *into* a. Khalifa ran \_\_\_\_\_ his cousin at the store.  
 b. Khalifa ran his cousin \_\_\_\_\_ at the store.
5. *up* a. Claire turned \_\_\_\_\_ the ringer on the phone.  
 b. Claire turned the ringer on the phone \_\_\_\_\_.
6. *away* a. Dr. Benson threw \_\_\_\_\_ a valuable coin by mistake.  
 b. Dr. Benson threw a valuable coin \_\_\_\_\_ by mistake.
7. *down* a. Yumi's baby cries whenever she puts him \_\_\_\_\_.  
 b. Yumi's baby cries whenever she puts \_\_\_\_\_ him.
8. *up* a. Would you please wake \_\_\_\_\_ me in one hour?  
 b. Would you please wake me \_\_\_\_\_ in one hour?

9. *away* a. You can leave the dishes. I'll put them \_\_\_\_\_ later.  
 b. You can leave the dishes. I'll put \_\_\_\_\_ them later.
10. *up* a. When Joan feels lonely, she calls \_\_\_\_\_ a friend and talks for a while.  
 b. When Joan feels lonely, she calls a friend \_\_\_\_\_ and talks for a while.
11. *off* a. The hill was so steep that I had to get \_\_\_\_\_ my bicycle and walk.  
 b. The hill was so steep that I had to get my bicycle \_\_\_\_\_ and walk.
12. *from* a. This fruit is very fresh. It came \_\_\_\_\_ my garden.  
 b. This fruit is very fresh. It came my garden \_\_\_\_\_.

◇ PRACTICE 7. Phrasal verbs: separable. (Group D)

*Directions:* Complete each sentence with a correct particle from the list. Particles may be used more than once or not at all.

<i>around</i>	<i>down</i>	<i>in</i>	<i>out</i>	<i>up</i>
<i>back</i>	<i>from</i>	<i>off</i>	<i>over</i>	

1. When I finish writing on one side of the paper, I *turn* it \_\_\_\_\_ *over* \_\_\_\_\_ and write on the back.
2. When the teacher finds a mistake in our writing, she *points* it \_\_\_\_\_ so we can correct it.
3. When I write words in this practice, I am *filling* \_\_\_\_\_ the blanks.
4. When I discover new information, I *find* something \_\_\_\_\_.
5. When I need to see information from my computer on paper, I *print* it \_\_\_\_\_.
6. When buildings are old and dangerous, we *tear* them \_\_\_\_\_.
7. When I turn and go in the opposite direction, I *turn* \_\_\_\_\_.
8. When I remove a piece of paper from a spiral notebook, I *tear* the paper \_\_\_\_\_ of my notebook.
9. When I write something that I don't want anybody else to see, I tear the paper into tiny pieces. I *tear* \_\_\_\_\_ the paper.
10. When I write information on an application form, I *fill* the form \_\_\_\_\_.
11. When I make a mistake in something I write, I erase the mistake if I'm using a pencil. If I'm using a pen, I *cross* the mistake \_\_\_\_\_ by drawing a line through it.
12. When my teacup is empty, I *fill* it \_\_\_\_\_ again if I'm still thirsty.
13. When I check my homework carefully before I give it to the teacher, I *look* it \_\_\_\_\_.

◇ PRACTICE 8. Phrasal verbs: separable and nonseparable. (Groups A, B, C, D)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with the particles in *italics*. The particles may be used more than once or not at all.

1. *out, away, back, down, off, on*

Carol . . .

- a. put off her vacation because she was sick.
- b. put \_\_\_\_\_ her boots to go out in the rain.
- c. put the phone \_\_\_\_\_ when she saw a spider crawling toward her.
- d. put her things \_\_\_\_\_ in her suitcase after the customs officer checked them.
- e. put \_\_\_\_\_ the stovetop fire with a small fire extinguisher.
- f. put \_\_\_\_\_ all the groceries she bought before she started dinner.

2. *out, in, up*

James . . .

- a. handed \_\_\_\_\_ his financial report before the due date.
- b. handed \_\_\_\_\_ cigars when his son was born.

3. *into, off, on, up, over, out of*

Linda . . .

- a. got \_\_\_\_\_ the flu in three days and felt wonderful.
- b. got \_\_\_\_\_ the bus and walked home.
- c. got \_\_\_\_\_ the bus and sat down behind the driver.
- d. got \_\_\_\_\_ a taxi to go to the airport.
- e. got \_\_\_\_\_ the taxi, paid the driver, and left a nice tip.

4. *in, down, up, out*

- a. This book has a few pages missing. The baby tore them \_\_\_\_\_.
- b. Before I throw my credit card receipts away, I tear them \_\_\_\_\_. I don't want anyone to read them.
- c. The building across the street will be torn \_\_\_\_\_ to make room for a parking garage.

5. *over, into, up*

- a. The neighbors asked the sheriff to look \_\_\_\_\_ a crime in their neighborhood.
- b. The sheriff looked \_\_\_\_\_ a suspect's address on the computer.
- c. The sheriff took the suspect's I.D., looked it \_\_\_\_\_, and decided it was fake.

6. *off, down, up, back*

- a. I called Rita \_\_\_\_\_ several times, but got no answer. I'm a little worried.
- b. The meeting was called \_\_\_\_\_ because the chairperson was sick.
- c. Jack called and left a message. I'll call him \_\_\_\_\_ after dinner.

7. *over, up, in, off, back*

- a. My ears are ringing! Please turn \_\_\_\_\_ the music.
- b. It's cold, and I'm tired. Let's turn \_\_\_\_\_ and go home.
- c. Could I turn \_\_\_\_\_ the TV? I can't hear the news.
- d. Joe, the meat needs to be cooked on the other side. Would you turn it \_\_\_\_\_, please?

8. *in, out, up*

- a. I forgot to fill \_\_\_\_\_ a couple of blanks on the test.  
I hope I passed.
- b. Can I take this application home and fill it \_\_\_\_\_?  
I don't have much time now.
- c. Jack carries a thermos bottle to work. He fills \_\_\_\_\_  
his cup when he gets thirsty.



◇ PRACTICE 9. Phrasal verbs: separable. (Group E)

*Directions:* Complete each sentence with a correct particle from the list. Particles may be used more than once or not at all.

<i>away</i>	<i>back</i>	<i>off</i>	<i>on</i>	<i>out</i>	<i>over</i>	<i>up</i>
-------------	-------------	------------	-----------	------------	-------------	-----------

- 1. It's pretty chilly in here. You might want to leave your jacket on.
- 2. Mrs. Jefferson became a widow at a young age. She had to bring \_\_\_\_\_ six children by herself.
- 3. Give us a few hours. We'll work this problem \_\_\_\_\_ and let you know our solution.
- 4. Those are trick birthday candles. Every time you blow them \_\_\_\_\_, they light again.
- 5. My roommate gives homeless people his old clothes. He tries to help them \_\_\_\_\_ as often as possible.
- 6. A: Robert has taken Diane \_\_\_\_\_ several times. They go to restaurants and movies, but he doesn't seem serious about her.  
B: I know. Diane keeps trying to talk \_\_\_\_\_ their future, but he isn't interested in doing that.

7. A: It's hard to understand our company's policies. All the senior managers are getting large bonuses while the company is laying \_\_\_\_\_ people in every department.  
 B: I know. I need to think \_\_\_\_\_ whether I want to continue with this job.
8. A: What is your store's return policy?  
 B: You can bring clothes \_\_\_\_\_ within two weeks, and you need your receipt.
9. A: Are you going to meet with your supervisor this morning?  
 B: Yes. I'm going to try to bring \_\_\_\_\_ the idea of a raise.
10. A: What time are you coming home?  
 B: Around midnight.  
 A: OK. I'll leave some lights \_\_\_\_\_.
11. A: We did something that will cheer you \_\_\_\_\_.  
 B: What's that?  
 A: We cleaned \_\_\_\_\_ your yard and garden while you were in the hospital. You'll see as soon as we get there.  
 B: Thanks! What a wonderful surprise.

◇ PRACTICE 10. Phrasal verbs: separable. (Group E)

Directions: Complete the sentences with a phrasal verb from the list.

<i>blow out</i>	<i>cheer up</i>	<i>give away</i>	<i>take back</i>	<i>think over</i>
<i>bring up</i>	<i>clean up</i>	<i>✓lay off</i>	<i>take out</i>	<i>work out</i>

1. Michael is worried. His company is planning to lay 20% of its workforce off, and he doesn't have much seniority.
2. If you decide these shoes won't work for you, you can \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_ within seven days.
3. That was so nice of you to water my plants while I was gone. I'd like to \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ to dinner to thank you.
4. There are ten candles on this cake, Jenny. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ them all \_\_\_\_\_?
5. Pauline has many clothes in her closet that she doesn't wear. Why doesn't she \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_?

6. I have some news that will \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_. We're getting two weeks additional vacation!
7. Let's set aside some time this weekend and finally \_\_\_\_\_ this place \_\_\_\_\_. This apartment is a mess.
8. The Smiths had a lot of arguments during the first year of their marriage, but I think they've finally \_\_\_\_\_ their differences \_\_\_\_\_. They seem pretty happy now.
9. Buying this house is a huge decision. We really need more time to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
10. You'd better not \_\_\_\_\_ the subject of politics \_\_\_\_\_ with Ron. He becomes very upset when someone disagrees with his point of view.

◇ PRACTICE 11. Phrasal verbs: intransitive. (Group F)

*Directions:* Complete each sentence with a correct particle from the list. The particles may be used more than once or not at all.

<i>back</i>	<i>in</i>	<i>off</i>	<i>out</i>	<i>to</i>
<i>down</i>	<i>of</i>	<i>on</i>	<i>over</i>	<i>up</i>

1. The plane shook a little when it *took* off. It made me nervous.
2. Emily's parents are upset because she *goes* \_\_\_\_\_ with friends every night and doesn't seem to have enough time for her studies.
3. Ken *grew* \_\_\_\_\_ in a small town and isn't used to the fast pace of the city.
4. I'm afraid we can't hear you in the back of the room. Could you please *speak* \_\_\_\_\_?
5. The computer teacher was so confusing. I didn't learn a thing! I think I'll just *start* \_\_\_\_\_ with a new teacher next term.
6. I'm exhausted. All week long I've been *getting* \_\_\_\_\_ between 4:00 and 5:00 A.M. for work.
7. A: Professor Wilson, do you have a minute?  
B: Sure. *Come* \_\_\_\_\_ and *sit* \_\_\_\_\_.
8. A: I don't feel like cooking tonight.  
B: Me neither. Let's *eat* \_\_\_\_\_.

9. A: Sorry I'm late. The bus *broke* \_\_\_\_\_ on the highway, and we had to wait for another.  
B: No problem. The meeting just started.
10. A: Mrs. Taylor is in the hospital again.  
B: What happened?  
A: She *fell* \_\_\_\_\_ and broke her hip.
11. A: The children are all *dressed* \_\_\_\_\_. They look so nice.  
B: Yes. They're having their school pictures taken today.
12. A: I'm really excited about Victoria and Nathan's wedding next month. They're such a great couple.  
B: I'm afraid I have bad news. They *broke* \_\_\_\_\_ two days ago.
13. A: Ever since I *gave* \_\_\_\_\_ smoking, I want to eat all the time.  
B: Try chewing gum. It helped me when I quit.
14. A: Look who just *showed* \_\_\_\_\_.  
B: Rover, what are you doing here? Dogs were not invited to this party!
15. A: Our new house will be finished April 1.  
B: We can help you *move* \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_ your old apartment.  
A: That would be wonderful.
16. A: Where's Julia?  
B: At the doctor's. She *broke* \_\_\_\_\_ in a rash last night, and she doesn't know what it is.
17. A: Don't stop now. Finish the story for us. Please!  
B: Okay, children. I'll *go* \_\_\_\_\_ if you promise to listen quietly.
18. A: Buddy, if you get all ready for bed, you can *stay* \_\_\_\_\_ and watch your favorite cartoon.  
B: O.K., Mom.
19. A: How was your dental appointment?  
B: I tried to *sit* \_\_\_\_\_ and relax. Even though it didn't hurt, I was nervous the whole time.
20. A: I feel very dizzy. I think I *stood* \_\_\_\_\_ too fast.  
B: Keep your head down and rest for a minute.
21. A: Someone keeps calling and *hanging* \_\_\_\_\_.  
B: Call the phone company. They have a way for you to find out who it is.

◇ PRACTICE 12. Phrasal verbs: intransitive. (Group F)

Directions: Complete each sentence with a correct particle from the list. Particles may be used more than once.

<i>of</i>	<i>out</i>	<i>up</i>
-----------	------------	-----------

1. *Lazy Leo* . . .

- broke up with his girlfriend because she didn't want to wash his clothes.
- stayed \_\_\_\_\_ all night and didn't come home until morning.
- showed \_\_\_\_\_ late for class without his homework.
- goes \_\_\_\_\_ with friends to parties on school nights.
- eats \_\_\_\_\_ at restaurants because he doesn't like to cook.
- moved \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_ his apartment without telling the manager.

2. *Serious Sally* . . .

- goes to bed very early. She never stays \_\_\_\_\_ past 9:00.
- gets \_\_\_\_\_ at 5:00 every morning.
- speaks \_\_\_\_\_ in class when no one will answer.
- dresses \_\_\_\_\_ for school.
- never gives \_\_\_\_\_ when she gets frustrated.
- grew \_\_\_\_\_ as an only child.

◇ PRACTICE 13. Phrasal verbs: three-word. (Group G)

Directions: Complete each sentence with **two** particles.

- When I cross a busy street, I'm careful. I look out for cars and trucks.
- Some friends visited me last night. I hadn't expected them. They just *dropped* \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ me.
- When I put my name on a list for a class, I *sign* \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- If I like people and enjoy their company, that means that I *get* \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ them.
- My cousin never does anything useful. He just *fools* \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_ his  
friends all day, wasting time.
- When somebody uses the last spoonful of sugar in the kitchen, we don't have any more sugar.  
That means we have *run* \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_ sugar and need to go to the market.
- I'm glad when I finish my homework. When I *get* \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_ my  
homework, I can go out and play tennis or do whatever else I feel like doing.

8. In some places, it's important to be careful about pickpockets. There are places where tourists have to *watch* \_\_\_\_\_ pickpockets.
9. If you return from a trip, that means you *get* \_\_\_\_\_ a trip.
10. Sometimes students have to quit school because they need to get a job, fail their courses, or lose interest in their education. There are various reasons why students *drop* \_\_\_\_\_ school.
11. Maria was born and raised in Brazil. In other words, she *grew* \_\_\_\_\_ Brazil.

◇ PRACTICE 14. Phrasal verbs: three-word. (Group G)

*Directions:* Complete each sentence with the correct word from the list.

<i>assignment</i>	✓ <i>gymnastics class</i>	<i>paint</i>	<i>snakes</i>
<i>cord</i>	<i>Hawaii</i>	<i>rocks</i>	<i>their neighbors</i>

1. Martin signed up for a gymnastics class. It starts next week.
2. The Hansens get along well with \_\_\_\_\_. They even take vacations together.
3. I can't finish the living room walls because I've run out of \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The highway sign said to watch out for \_\_\_\_\_. They roll down the hills and sometimes hit cars.
5. As soon as I get through with this \_\_\_\_\_, we can go to lunch. I have just one more problem to figure out.
6. Don't fool around with that \_\_\_\_\_. You might get an electric shock.
7. You look very rested and relaxed. When did you get back from \_\_\_\_\_?
8. Look out for \_\_\_\_\_ on the path. They're not poisonous, but they might startle you.

◇ PRACTICE 15. Phrasal verbs: three-word. (Group H)

*Directions:* Complete each sentence with **two** particles.

1. Before we consider buying a home in this area, we'd like to *find* out more about the schools.
2. The mountain climbers *set* \_\_\_\_\_ the summit at dawn and reached it by lunchtime.

3. A: Marty is 43 tomorrow, and she's decided to *go* \_\_\_\_\_ school.  
 B: Good for her! It's never too late.
4. A: What do teenagers like to do around here for fun?  
 B: Some like to *hang* \_\_\_\_\_ friends at the mall, but I wouldn't recommend it. The management doesn't approve.
5. A: Please *keep* Susie \_\_\_\_\_ the dog.  
 B: Is she afraid?  
 A: No, that's the problem. She'll try to kiss him.
6. A: I'm going grocery shopping. Do you want to *come* \_\_\_\_\_ me?  
 B: No, thanks. I've got too much to do. But wait a minute. I *cut* some coupons \_\_\_\_\_ the paper for you. Let me get them.
7. A: Let's invite the Tangs to *come* \_\_\_\_\_ our beach house on Saturday.  
 B: Good idea. I'll call them now.
8. A: We're going out for pizza at Little Italy. Do you want to come along?  
 B: Sure. I wasn't going to do anything except *sit* \_\_\_\_\_ my cat tonight!
9. A: Let's *go* \_\_\_\_\_ Brian's tonight.  
 B: Shall we call first or surprise him?
10. A: Why don't we *get* \_\_\_\_\_ Eriko next week?  
 B: Great! We can talk to her about our new plans for the company.

◇ PRACTICE 16. Phrasal verbs: three-word. (Group H)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with words from the list that will give the same meanings as the underlined words.

<i>along with</i>	<i>back to</i>	<i>out for</i>	<i>over to</i>
<i>around</i>	<i>✓ out about</i>	<i>out of</i>	<i>together with</i>

1. I'd like to get information about the company before I apply for a job there.  
 I'd like to find out about the company before I apply for a job there.
2. The two brothers left for the lake before sunrise. They wanted to be the first ones there.  
 The two brothers set \_\_\_\_\_ the lake before sunrise. They wanted to be the first ones to arrive.

3. After Maria had her first child, she took a year off before she returned to work.

After Maria had her first child, she took a year off before she went \_\_\_\_\_ work.

4. Jimmy really needs to find a job. He spends his days sitting at home doing nothing.

Jimmy really needs to find a job. He spends his days sitting \_\_\_\_\_ at home.

5. Mark won't be home for dinner. He plans to join his co-workers for a party.

Mark won't be home for dinner. He plans to get \_\_\_\_\_ his co-workers for a party.

6. Who wants to accompany me to the doctor's?

Who will go \_\_\_\_\_ me to my doctor's appointment?

7. The dog was growling, so the dog catcher approached him very carefully.

The dog was growling, so the dog catcher went \_\_\_\_\_ him very carefully.

8. Here's the article I told you about. I removed it from this morning's paper.

I cut it \_\_\_\_\_ this morning's paper.

◇ PRACTICE 17. Review: phrasal verbs. (Appendix 1)

Directions: Choose the correct particle.

1. Professor Brown always *calls* \_\_\_\_\_ the students who sit in the back of the class to answer.

- A. on                      B. off                      C. out                      D. back

2. Tommy takes other children's toys and doesn't want to *give* them \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. away                      B. back                      C. in                      D. to

3. Laurie needs to *wake* her roommate \_\_\_\_\_ every morning because she sleeps through her alarm.

- A. in                      B. on                      C. up                      D. over

4. Bobby, let's take a few minutes and *pick* \_\_\_\_\_ the toys in your room. They're all over the floor.

- A. over                      B. on                      C. up                      D. away

5. Not enough people *signed up* \_\_\_\_\_ the gardening class, so it had to be canceled.

- A. for                      B. in                      C. into                      D. with

6. This cold has lasted too long. I feel like I'll never *get* \_\_\_\_\_ it.

- A. with                      B. over                      C. away                      D. back

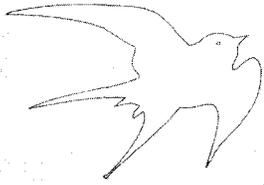
7. Aren't you going to *try* \_\_\_\_\_ these shoes before you buy them?

- A. in                      B. on                      C. up                      D. of

8. *Keep away* \_\_\_\_\_ the stove! It's still hot.

- A. off                      B. from                      C. out                      D. of

9. We'll feel more confident about the success of our new business after we *pay* \_\_\_\_\_ our loan.  
A. back      B. up      C. in      D. together
10. Look how nice Jenny's bedroom looks! She spent all morning *cleaning* it \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. over      B. back      C. up      D. away
11. Steven had problems early in his career, but he seems to have *worked* them \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. up      B. over      C. off      D. out
12. *Watch out* \_\_\_\_\_ the cat. She might scratch you.  
A. for      B. in      C. on      D. of
13. The fire department recommends keeping a fire extinguisher in your house to *put* \_\_\_\_\_ fires.  
A. off      B. out      C. back      D. down
14. It took Tim only 20 minutes to *figure* \_\_\_\_\_ the entire crossword puzzle.  
A. on      B. in      C. up      D. out
15. Although Mrs. Warren had been very wealthy, the size of her estate was quite small when she died. She had *given* \_\_\_\_\_ most of her money to charities.  
A. away      B. in      C. into      D. from
16. I *cut* your picture *out* \_\_\_\_\_ the newspaper today. Did you know you were going to be in it?  
A. in      B. off      C. of      D. from
17. Even though Kimberly's been home from the hospital for a week, she doesn't want anyone to *come* \_\_\_\_\_ to her house. She's still quite weak.  
A. over      B. about      C. into      D. from
18. This hike is pretty exhausting. I don't think I can *go* \_\_\_\_\_ any farther. I need to rest.  
A. out      B. in      C. to      D. on
19. There's a gas station. I'll wash the windows while you *fill* \_\_\_\_\_ the tank.  
A. on      B. in      C. out      D. up
20. A fight *broke* \_\_\_\_\_ among students after school. Fortunately, no one was injured.  
A. out      B. down      C. in      D. off
21. Sometimes when I recite a poem, I forget a line. So I go back to the beginning and *start* \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. over      B. to      C. with      D. back
22. The school administrators have started new programs to prevent students from *dropping out* \_\_\_\_\_ high school.  
A. in      B. off      C. of      D. for
23. Mr. Robinson is happy to lend his adult children money as long as they *pay* it \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. up      B. back      C. down      D. for
24. My computer printer isn't working. I can't *print* \_\_\_\_\_ any of my work.  
A. out      B. in      C. over      D. back



# APPENDIX 2

## Preposition Combinations

### ◇ PRACTICE 1. Preposition combinations. (Group A)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with prepositions.

1. My eight-year-old son Mark is afraid of thunder and lightning.
2. My mother really likes my friend Ahmed because he is always polite \_\_\_\_\_ her.
3. Fifty miles is equal \_\_\_\_\_ eighty kilometers.
4. A: How do I get to your house?  
B: Are you familiar \_\_\_\_\_ the red barn on Coles Road? My house is just past that and on the left.  
A: Oh, sure. I know where it is.
5. It's so hot! I'm thirsty \_\_\_\_\_ a big glass of ice water.
6. My boss was nice \_\_\_\_\_ me after I made that mistake, but I could tell she wasn't pleased.
7. Mr. Watts is often angry \_\_\_\_\_ some silly little thing that isn't important.
8. A: Harry, try some of this pasta. It's delicious.  
B: No, thanks. My plate is already full \_\_\_\_\_ food.
9. Four council members were absent \_\_\_\_\_ the meeting last night.
10. A: Why are you friendly with Mr. Parsons? He's always so mean to everybody.  
B: He's always been very kind \_\_\_\_\_ me, so I have no reason to treat him otherwise.
11. My sister is very angry \_\_\_\_\_ me. She won't even speak to me.
12. Is everybody ready \_\_\_\_\_ dinner? Let's eat before the food gets cold.
13. Ben's wife got a promotion at work. He is really happy \_\_\_\_\_ her.

◇ PRACTICE 2. Preposition combinations. (Group A)

*Directions:* Create a sentence by matching each phrase in Column A with a phrase in Column B. Use each phrase only once.

**Column A**

1. Our dog is afraid B
2. The class is curious \_\_\_\_\_
3. Mr. White is angry \_\_\_\_\_
4. Several nurses have been absent \_\_\_\_\_
5. After gardening all day, Helen was thirsty \_\_\_\_\_
6. The workers are angry \_\_\_\_\_
7. The baseball coach was happy \_\_\_\_\_
8. The kitchen cupboard is full \_\_\_\_\_
9. I'm not ready \_\_\_\_\_
10. It's important to be kind \_\_\_\_\_

**Column B**

- A. about his team's win.
- ✓B. of cats.
- C. for a glass of lemonade.
- D. for the start of school.
- E. from work due to illness.
- F. about the snake in the cage.
- G. to everyone.
- H. of canned foods.
- I. about their low pay.
- J. at his dog for chewing his slippers.

◇ PRACTICE 3. Preposition combinations. (Group B)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with prepositions.

1. What are you laughing at ?
2. I can't stop staring \_\_\_\_\_ Tom's necktie. The colors are wild!
3. A: I don't believe \_\_\_\_\_ flying saucers. Do you?  
B: I don't know. I think anything is possible.
4. Ted is going to help me \_\_\_\_\_ my homework tonight.
5. Do you mind if I apply \_\_\_\_\_ your job after you quit?
6. Kyong is excited about going back home to see her family. She leaves \_\_\_\_\_ Korea next Monday.
7. I admire Carmen \_\_\_\_\_ her courage and honesty in admitting that mistake.
8. A: Where did you get that new car?  
B: I borrowed it \_\_\_\_\_ my neighbor.
9. A: What are you two arguing \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
B: Modern art.
10. A: Where will you go to school next year?  
B: Well, I applied \_\_\_\_\_ admission at five different universities, but I'm worried that none of them will accept me.
11. I hate to argue \_\_\_\_\_ my older sister. I hardly ever win.

12. I'll introduce you \_\_\_\_\_ my cousins when they come to my wedding next week.
13. Ivan discussed his calculus problems \_\_\_\_\_ his college advisor.

◇ PRACTICE 4. Preposition combinations. (Group B)

*Directions:* Choose the correct preposition.

1. You're shivering. Would you like to borrow a jacket \_\_\_\_\_ me?  
 (A) from            B. for            C. with
2. I'm applying \_\_\_\_\_ a new management position in my company.  
 A. to            B. in            C. for
3. It's unfortunate that the Bakers are always arguing \_\_\_\_\_ something.  
 A. with            B. about            C. at
4. Russ believes \_\_\_\_\_ his ability to succeed under difficult conditions.  
 A. in            B. on            C. at
5. Poor Mr. Miller. No one laughed \_\_\_\_\_ his story even though it was supposed to be funny.  
 A. over            B. at            C. from
6. It's rather amazing. Gail and Brian plan to get married soon, but they were just introduced \_\_\_\_\_ each other a month ago.  
 A. to            B. with            C. at
7. Please wake me up at 5:00 A.M. tomorrow. I need to leave \_\_\_\_\_ work early.  
 A. from            B. to            C. for
8. People say they admire me \_\_\_\_\_ my truthfulness, but sometimes I wonder if I may be too honest.  
 A. about            B. with            C. for
9. It's very difficult to discuss serious matters \_\_\_\_\_ Mark. He always tries to make jokes.  
 A. with            B. about            C. at
10. I'm trying not to stare \_\_\_\_\_ that man, but his toupee keeps falling off.  
 A. at            B. with            C. to

◇ PRACTICE 5. Preposition combinations. (Group C)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with prepositions.

1. A: Why are you friendly with/to George? I thought you didn't like him.  
 B: I'm not crazy \_\_\_\_\_ his attitude, but I'm his supervisor, so I have to encourage him to do better work.
2. A: Do you think it's bad that I drink so much coffee every day?  
 B: I believe too much of almost anything is bad \_\_\_\_\_ you.

3. I don't know why they fired me. It certainly isn't clear \_\_\_\_\_ me.
4. A: Dad, I got ninety-five percent on my algebra exam!  
B: I'm proud \_\_\_\_\_ you. I knew you could do it.
5. A: You seem to be interested \_\_\_\_\_ aerobic exercise and jogging.  
B: I think regular physical exercise is good \_\_\_\_\_ everyone.
6. That sweater is very similar \_\_\_\_\_ mine. Did you buy it at the mall?
7. A: You were up awfully late last night.  
B: I couldn't sleep. I was hungry \_\_\_\_\_ something sweet, but I couldn't find anything in the kitchen.
8. I have no doubt that I'm doing the right thing. I'm sure \_\_\_\_\_ it.
9. George Gershwin, an American composer, is most famous \_\_\_\_\_ his *Rhapsody in Blue*, an orchestral piece that combines jazz with classical music.
10. A: Why is Gary avoiding you? Is he angry about something?  
B: I don't know. I'm not aware \_\_\_\_\_ anything I did that would upset him.
11. A: Who is responsible \_\_\_\_\_ this dog? We don't allow dogs in this office!  
B: He belongs to the boss's wife.  
A: Oh.
12. My car is a lot like yours, but different \_\_\_\_\_ Margaret's.
13. Don't be nervous \_\_\_\_\_ your job interview. Just be yourself.
14. Teachers need to be patient \_\_\_\_\_ their students.
15. Ken carelessly dropped the football before he could score, so his team lost. He was very sad \_\_\_\_\_ that.

◇ PRACTICE 6. Review: preposition combinations. (Groups A and C)

Directions: Complete the sentences with prepositions.

1. Dr. Nelson, a heart specialist, is . . .
  - a. proud \_\_\_\_\_ her work.
  - b. famous \_\_\_\_\_ her medical expertise.
  - c. sure \_\_\_\_\_ her skills.
  - d. familiar \_\_\_\_\_ the latest techniques.
  - e. patient \_\_\_\_\_ her patients.
  - f. aware \_\_\_\_\_ the stresses of her job.

g. interested \_\_\_\_\_ her patients' lives.

h. nice \_\_\_\_\_ her patients' families.

2. Her patient, Mrs. Green, is . . .

a. sad \_\_\_\_\_ her illness.

b. nervous \_\_\_\_\_ an upcoming surgery.

c. aware \_\_\_\_\_ her chances for survival.

d. full \_\_\_\_\_ hope.

e. not afraid \_\_\_\_\_ dying.

f. curious \_\_\_\_\_ alternative medicines.

g. ready \_\_\_\_\_ unexpected side-effects.

h. hungry \_\_\_\_\_ a home-cooked meal.

◇ PRACTICE 7. Preposition combinations. (Group D)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with prepositions.

1. How much did you pay for that beautiful table?

2. A: Did you talk \_\_\_\_\_ the manager \_\_\_\_\_ returning that dress?

B: No. She didn't arrive \_\_\_\_\_ the store while I was there. I waited \_\_\_\_\_ her for a half an hour and then left.

3. I listened \_\_\_\_\_ you very carefully, but I didn't understand anything you said.

4. When I graduated \_\_\_\_\_ college, my mother and father told everyone we knew that I had graduated.

5. A: We don't have all day! How long is it going to take for someone to wait \_\_\_\_\_ us?  
I'm hungry.

B: We just got here. Be patient. Do you have to complain \_\_\_\_\_ everything?

6. When did you arrive \_\_\_\_\_ Mexico City?

7. A: This sauce is delicious!

B: Well, it consists \_\_\_\_\_ tomatoes, garlic, olive oil, and lemon juice all blended together.

8. There were ten people at the meeting and ten different opinions. No one agreed \_\_\_\_\_ anyone else \_\_\_\_\_ the best way to solve the club's financial problems.

9. I have to complain \_\_\_\_\_ the manager. Both the food and the service are terrible.

10. We've invited only family members \_\_\_\_\_ our wedding. I hope our friends aren't offended.

11. The soccer coaches disagree \_\_\_\_\_ one another \_\_\_\_\_ the best way to get their team mentally prepared for a game.

◇ PRACTICE 8. Preposition combinations. (Groups B and D)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with the verb in parentheses and the correct preposition.

1. Margo **got to** the airport early so she wouldn't miss her flight.  
(*arrive*) Margo arrived at the airport early so she wouldn't miss her flight.
2. The store manager had time to **help** a few customers.  
(*wait*) The store manager had time to \_\_\_\_\_ a few customers.
3. Sigrid **asked me to go** to the symphony with her.  
(*invite*) Sigrid \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ the symphony.
4. Water **is made of** hydrogen and oxygen.  
(*consist*) Water \_\_\_\_\_ hydrogen and oxygen.
5. Sara **stood at the bus stop** for 20 minutes before the bus came.  
(*wait*) Sara \_\_\_\_\_ the bus for 20 minutes.
6. The restaurant owner **discussed** the management changes with her staff.  
(*talk*) The restaurant owner \_\_\_\_\_ the management changes with her staff.
7. Joseph **is going to** Athens for graduate work in archeology.  
(*leave*) Joseph \_\_\_\_\_ Athens for graduate work in archeology.
8. Why is that man **continuing to look at** me?  
(*stare*) Why \_\_\_\_\_ that man \_\_\_\_\_ me?
9. Barb **assisted** her friend **with** her finances.  
(*help*) Barb \_\_\_\_\_ her friend \_\_\_\_\_ her finances.
10. I **checked** ten books **out of** the library. I'll return them next week.  
(*borrow*) I \_\_\_\_\_ ten books \_\_\_\_\_ the library.

◇ PRACTICE 9. Preposition combinations. (Group E)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with prepositions.

1. Molly is always looking for her keys. She seems so disorganized.
2. Something's the matter \_\_\_\_\_ Dan. He's crying.
3. Do whatever you want. It doesn't matter \_\_\_\_\_ me.
4. Look \_\_\_\_\_ those clouds. It's going to rain.
5. Are you looking forward \_\_\_\_\_ your trip to Mexico?
6. A: Does this watch belong \_\_\_\_\_ you?  
B: Yes. Where did you find it? I searched \_\_\_\_\_ it everywhere.

7. I woke up frightened after I dreamed \_\_\_\_\_ falling off the roof of a building.
8. Tomorrow I'm going to ask my father \_\_\_\_\_ a ride to school.
9. Tomorrow I'm going to ask my father \_\_\_\_\_ his work. I don't know much \_\_\_\_\_ his new job.
10. Please empty that bowl of fruit and separate the fresh apples \_\_\_\_\_ the old apples.
11. Mr. Sanchez looks a lot \_\_\_\_\_ a famous movie actor I've seen.
12. My brother Ben warned me \_\_\_\_\_ taking a shortcut through the back streets. I got lost and was late for a job interview.

◇ PRACTICE 10. Preposition combinations. (Group E)

*Directions:* Create sentences by matching each phrase in Column A with a phrase in Column B. Use each phrase only once.

**Column A**

1. The sheriff is searching G
2. The baby keeps looking \_\_\_\_\_
3. Once again, Rita is looking \_\_\_\_\_
4. In this picture, Paula looks \_\_\_\_\_
5. The Browns are looking forward \_\_\_\_\_
6. Before you do the wash, you need to separate the darks \_\_\_\_\_
7. Sometimes Joey is afraid to sleep. He often dreams \_\_\_\_\_
8. Something's the matter \_\_\_\_\_
9. The sign on the highway warned drivers \_\_\_\_\_
10. Do you know much \_\_\_\_\_

**Column B**

- A. about monsters and dragons.
- B. to their 20<sup>th</sup> wedding anniversary.
- C. for her glasses. She always misplaces them.
- D. about housing prices in this area?
- E. about high winds on the bridge.
- F. with this car. It's making strange noises.
- ✓G. for the escaped prisoner.
- H. from the whites.
- I. at the TV screen. The picture is fuzzy.
- J. like her maternal grandmother. The resemblance is very strong.

◇ PRACTICE 11. Preposition combinations. (Group F)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with prepositions.

1. Please don't argue. I insist on lending you the money for your vacation.
2. That thin coat you're wearing won't protect you \_\_\_\_\_ the bitter, cold wind.
3. A: What's the matter? Don't you approve \_\_\_\_\_ my behavior?  
B: No, I don't. I think you're rude.
4. A: Can I depend \_\_\_\_\_ you to pick up my mother at the airport tomorrow?  
B: Of course you can!
5. A: The police arrested a thief in my uncle's store yesterday.  
B: What's going to happen \_\_\_\_\_ him? Will he go to jail?

6. My friend Ken apologized \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ forgetting to pick me up in his car after the movie last night. I forgave him \_\_\_\_\_ leaving me outside the theater in the rain, but I'm not going to rely \_\_\_\_\_ him for transportation in the future.
7. A: Thank you \_\_\_\_\_ helping me move to my new apartment last weekend.  
B: You're welcome.
8. It isn't fair to compare Mr. Wong \_\_\_\_\_ Ms. Chang. They're both good teachers, but they have different teaching methods.
9. I've had a bad cold for a week and just can't get rid \_\_\_\_\_ it.
10. Excuse me \_\_\_\_\_ interrupting you, but I have a call on the other line. Could I get back to you in a second?
11. A: I need to be excused \_\_\_\_\_ the office meeting tomorrow morning.  
B: I was going to announce your promotion at the meeting. Can you change your plans?  
A: I'd love to. It's a dental appointment.
12. People don't die \_\_\_\_\_ embarrassment, but sometimes they wish they could.
13. I'm sorry. The office staff is very busy right now. It will be a half hour before someone can take care \_\_\_\_\_ your request.

◇ PRACTICE 12. Preposition combinations. (Group F)

*Directions:* Write "C" beside the correct sentences. Write "X" beside those that are incorrect. In some cases, both may be correct.

1. a.   C   John needs to be excused from the meeting.  
b.   C   John excused his associate for the accounting error.
2. a.   C   Do you approve of your government's international policies?  
b.   X   Do you approve on the new seat-belt law?
3. a. \_\_\_\_\_ I apologized for the car accident.  
b. \_\_\_\_\_ I apologized to Mary's parents.
4. a. \_\_\_\_\_ Why did you get rid over your truck? It was in great condition.  
b. \_\_\_\_\_ I got rid of several boxes of old magazines.
5. a. \_\_\_\_\_ Pierre died of a heart attack.  
b. \_\_\_\_\_ Pierre's father also died from heart problems.
6. a. \_\_\_\_\_ It's not a good idea to compare one student to another.  
b. \_\_\_\_\_ I wish my parents wouldn't compare me with my brother.

7. a. \_\_\_\_\_ We can rely on Lesley to keep a secret.  
 b. \_\_\_\_\_ There are several people whom my elderly parents rely in for assistance.
8. a. \_\_\_\_\_ You can relax. I took care about your problem.  
 b. \_\_\_\_\_ The nurses take wonderful care of their patients at Valley Hospital.

◇ PRACTICE 13. Preposition combinations. (Group G)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with prepositions.

1. Please try to concentrate on my explanation. I can't repeat it.
2. I spoke \_\_\_\_\_ my brother \_\_\_\_\_ your problem, and he said that there was nothing he could do to help you.
3. All right, children, here is your math problem: add ten \_\_\_\_\_ twelve, subtract two \_\_\_\_\_ that total; divide ten \_\_\_\_\_ that answer; and multiply the result \_\_\_\_\_ five. What is the final answer?\*
4. I feel pretty good about my final examination in English. I'm hoping \_\_\_\_\_ a good grade.
5. A: Did you hear \_\_\_\_\_ the plans to build a new hotel in the middle of town? It's wonderful!  
 B: Yes, I heard, but I disagree \_\_\_\_\_ you. I think it's terrible! It means the town will be full of tourists all the time.
6. A: Have you heard \_\_\_\_\_ your friend in Thailand recently?  
 B: Yes. She's having a difficult time. She's not accustomed \_\_\_\_\_ hot weather.
7. A: I must tell you \_\_\_\_\_ a crazy thing that happened last night. Have you heard?  
 B: What? What happened?  
 A: A hundred monkeys escaped \_\_\_\_\_ the zoo.  
 B: You've got to be kidding! How did that happen?
8. A: Do you ever wonder \_\_\_\_\_ the future of our natural environment?  
 B: Yes, especially when I read about the deforestation of the rainforests.
9. A: Is Carol hiding \_\_\_\_\_ me? Is she afraid of me?  
 B: No, but since she turned two years old, she loves to play hide-and-seek. She hides \_\_\_\_\_ everyone now.

\*Answer: 10

10. A: Can I tell you \_\_\_\_\_ the new preschool later? Someone's at the door.

B: Sure.



◇ PRACTICE 14. Preposition combinations. (Group G)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the verb in parentheses and the correct preposition.

1. The skiers **wanted** snow for the holiday weekend, but it rained instead.

(hope) The skiers hoped for snow for the holiday weekend.

2. Jenny often **thinks about** people she went to high school with. She's curious about what happened to them.

(wonder) Jenny often \_\_\_\_\_ people she went to high school with.

3. I **cut** the pie **into** eight equal pieces.

(divide) I \_\_\_\_\_ the pie \_\_\_\_\_ eight equal pieces.

4. Could you **put** another egg **in** the mixture? It's a little dry.

(add) Could you \_\_\_\_\_ another egg \_\_\_\_\_ the mixture? It's a little dry.

5. An artist **focuses on** the way light strikes his subject.

(concentrate) An artist \_\_\_\_\_ the way light strikes his subject.

6. The prisoners **got away from** their guards and ran into the woods.

(escape) The prisoners \_\_\_\_\_ their guards and ran into the woods.

7. I **am used to** humid weather in the summer.

(accustom) I \_\_\_\_\_ humid weather in the summer.

8. Ben **got the news about** his father's death from his secretary.

(hear) Ben \_\_\_\_\_ the news \_\_\_\_\_ his father's death from his secretary.

◇ PRACTICE 15. Review: preposition combinations. (Appendix 2)

Directions: Circle the correct preposition in each sentence. In some cases, both prepositions are correct.

1. The taxi driver apologized (to) for Ann for the accident.
2. My mother died (from, of) cancer.
3. Jack was excused *from, for* school for several days so he could travel with his father.
4. Mary always compares her country *with, to* this country.
5. Susie dreamed *of, about* winning the lottery.
6. The mountain climbers were warned *of, about* the avalanche danger.
7. Maria needed ten dollars immediately. She asked her sister *about, for* some money.
8. Beth looks *like, for* her sister. They could almost be twins.
9. Dennis tried talking *to, about* Roman, but the noise in the restaurant was so loud that neither he nor Roman could hear each other.
10. This dish tastes like it has meat in it, but it consists only *in, of* vegetables.
11. Mary and Joe argue *about, with* everything. They always disagree *with, about* each other.
12. Are you sure *of, about* your data?
13. Our dentist is very patient *to, with* children.
14. Professor Case always seems angry *at, with* his students, but maybe he's upset about something else.
15. We discussed our house plans *with, about* several architects.
16. The apartment owner spoke *to, with* several tenants about a possible rent increase.
17. We heard *about, from* the plane crash on the radio.
18. If you multiply any number *from, by* zero, the answer is always zero.
19. Shhh! I'm concentrating *in, on* my homework.

◇ PRACTICE 16. Review: preposition combinations. (Appendix 2)

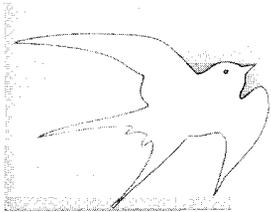
Directions: Choose the correct preposition.

1. What time do you need to be ready \_\_\_\_\_ work?  
A. at                      B. about                      C. on                      (D) for
2. One pound is equal \_\_\_\_\_ 2.2 kilos.  
A. for                      B. to                      C. in                      D. on

3. Too many vitamins may be bad \_\_\_\_\_ your health.  
A. in                    B. about                C. for                    D. with
4. That box looks very heavy. Can I help you \_\_\_\_\_ it?  
A. with                B. in                    C. about                D. on
5. Our cat got rid \_\_\_\_\_ all the mice in our basement.  
A. about                B. of                    C. in                    D. off
6. Everyone admires Mr. Kim \_\_\_\_\_ his generosity with his time and money.  
A. for                    B. from                C. with                D. about
7. I need to hide this chocolate \_\_\_\_\_ the children or they will eat it in one day.  
A. with                B. from                C. to                    D. at
8. Billy, stop that! It's not polite to stare \_\_\_\_\_ people.  
A. to                    B. at                    C. in                    D. on
9. Angela has applied \_\_\_\_\_ several jobs in the airline industry, but she hasn't gotten an interview yet.  
A. to                    B. with                C. of                    D. for
10. This car can't belong \_\_\_\_\_ Mike. It's too nice!  
A. about                B. with                C. to                    D. at
11. Monica loves vegetables, but she's not crazy \_\_\_\_\_ fruit.  
A. over                B. of                    C. at                    D. about
12. Jack paid \_\_\_\_\_ my dinner.  
A. with                B. for                    C. on                    D. in
13. I tried to tell Jessica \_\_\_\_\_ my trip, but she didn't seem interested. I wonder if she was jealous.  
A. to                    B. about                C. with                D. off
14. We're really happy \_\_\_\_\_ Professor James. He just received an award for excellence in teaching.  
A. for                    B. to                    C. over                D. in
15. People say I shouldn't care what other students think, but their opinions matter \_\_\_\_\_ me.  
A. to                    B. for                    C. with                D. on
16. Annie eats vegetables only if they are separated \_\_\_\_\_ the other foods on her plate.  
A. between            B. from                C. with                D. to
17. Kristi forgave her twin sister \_\_\_\_\_ taking her cell phone without asking.  
A. about                B. from                C. for                    D. with
18. Doctors say that even ten minutes of exercise a day is good \_\_\_\_\_ you.  
A. at                    B. for                    C. with                D. about
19. I'm sorry. Your explanation still isn't clear \_\_\_\_\_ me.  
A. about                B. with                C. to                    D. in

20. My sister complained \_\_\_\_\_ the manager.  
A. to                    B. with                    C. at                    D. for
21. She complained \_\_\_\_\_ the slow service in the restaurant.  
A. for                    B. about                    C. over                    D. by
22. What happened \_\_\_\_\_ your hand? It's swollen.  
A. on                    B. to                    C. in                    D. about
23. The problem with your answer is that you multiplied six \_\_\_\_\_ eight instead of subtracting it.  
A. by                    B. from                    C. to                    D. over
24. Paul is so smart. He graduated \_\_\_\_\_ the university in just three years.  
A. of                    B. at                    C. from                    D. to





# Index

## A

- A/an**, 228–229, 234
- A** vs. **an**, 218
- Accustomed to**, 214
- Active verbs, 193, 195, 197–198, 200, 203, 205–207
- Adjective clauses (*a man who lives*), 240–255
- Adjectives (*good, beautiful*), 114–115
  - following *be*, 115
  - comparative (*more/-er*) and superlative (*most/-est*), 174–177
  - with *much, a lot, far*, 179
  - following *get* (*get hungry*), 212–213
  - nouns used as (*a flower garden*), 116
  - participial (*interesting, interested*), 209–211
  - possessive (*my, our*), 120
- Adverb clauses, 161
  - with *because*, 161–162, 164–166
  - with *even though/although*, 163–164, 166
  - if*-clauses, 53
  - since*-clauses, 75
  - time clauses (*before he came*), 36, 54, 73–75
- Adverbs (*quickly*):
  - comparative (*more/-er*) and superlative (*most/-est*), 177
  - frequency (*always, sometimes*), 7–9
  - midsentence (*still, already*), 77–78
  - negative (*seldom, never*), 186
- A few/a little**, 224
- After**, 36, 54
- A little/a few**, 224
- A lot, much, far**, 179
- A lot (of)**, 218
- Alike**, 189
- Almost**, 170
- Already**, 77–78
- Although**, 163–164, 166
- Always**, etc. (frequency adverbs), 7–9
- Am, is, are + -ing** (*am eating*), 3, 5–6, 13–17
- And**, 152, 157
  - auxiliary verbs following, 157–158
  - with parallel verbs, 152
  - with *so, too, either, neither*, 160
  - with subject–verb agreement, 114
- Another**, 126–127
- Anymore**, 77–78

- Apostrophe (*Tom's*), 120
- Articles (*the, a, an*), 218, 224, 228–237
- As ... as** comparisons, 169–172, 184
  - not as ... as* vs. *less*, 179
- Ask** vs. **say** vs. **tell**, 299
- As soon as**, 54
- At**, as time preposition, 112–113
- Auxiliary verbs:
  - after *and* and *but*, 157–158
  - modal, 132–133
  - in questions, 89–95
  - in short responses to yes/no questions, 86–89
  - in tag questions, 103–104

## B

- Be**:
  - in questions, 15
  - simple past (*was, were*), 18, 30–32
  - simple present (*am, is, are*), 1–2, 31–32
- Be about to**, 59
- Be + adjective**, 115
  - followed by *that*-clause (*am sorry that*), 287
- Because**, 161–162, 164–166
- Before**, 36, 54
- Be going to**, 43–45, 56
  - vs. *will*, 43–46, 49–50
- Be + -ing** (*is/was eating*), 3, 34–35
- Be + past participle** (*be interested in*), 194–197, 208
  - (SEE ALSO Passive)
  - followed by noun clauses (*be worried that*), 287–290
- Be supposed to**, 215–216
- Better**:
  - and *best*, 176
  - had better*, 138–139
  - like ... better*, 146
- Be used to/accustomed to**, 214
- But**, 154–158
- By**:
  - with passive (*by*-phrase), 199–200
  - followed by *-ing* (*by doing*), 267–268
  - with reflexive pronoun (*by myself*), 123–124
  - vs. *with*, 268

## C

- Can**, 132–133  
ability, 134  
permission, 136  
polite question, 137
- Capitalization, 238, 153
- Clauses (SEE Adjective clauses; Adverb clauses; *If*-clauses; Noun clauses, Time clauses)
- Commas:  
with adverb clauses, 36, 161–162  
in connecting ideas:  
with *and*, 153–157  
with *but* and *or*, 154  
vs. periods, 153–154  
in quoted speech, 291–293, 296  
in a series, 153–157
- Comparatives (*more/-er*), 174–177, 180  
with adjectives and adverbs, 177  
double (*the more . . . the more*), 181–182  
with modifiers, 179  
with nouns, 180  
with pronouns, 178  
repeated (*more and more*), 181
- Comparisons, 169–192  
*as . . . as*, 169–172, 184  
comparatives (*more/-er*), 174–177, 187–188  
*ever*, *never*, 186  
*same*, *similar*, *different*, *like*, *alike*, 189  
superlatives (*most/-est*), 183–184, 187–188
- Conjunctions (*and*, *but*, *or*, *so*), 152–157
- Continuous verbs (SEE Progressive verbs)
- Contractions of verbs:  
with *not*:  
*didn't*, 19–20  
*hasn't*, *haven't*, 64–65  
*isn't*, *aren't*, 2, 7  
*mustn't*, 141  
*shouldn't*, 138  
*won't*, 46  
with pronouns:  
*had*, 80–82, 139  
*have*, *has*, 64–65  
*will*, 44, 46  
with question words, 98–99
- Could**, 132–133  
past ability, 136  
in polite questions, 137  
possibility, present/future, 136
- Count/noncount nouns, 218–221, 224–227  
noncount nouns, 226–227

## D

- Dependent clause (SEE Adjective clauses; Adverb clauses; Noun clauses)
- Different from**, 189
- Direct speech (SEE Quoted speech)
- Distance (*to . . . from*, *how far*), 100, 279
- Do** as main verb in *what*-questions, 95

## Does, do, did:

- in negative (*I don't . . .*), 2, 15, 19–20, 87–89  
with *have to*, 141  
in questions (*Did you . . .?*), 2–4, 15, 21, 87–89  
with *what*, 95  
in short answers (*Yes, I do*), 15, 19, 87–89
- Double comparatives (*the sooner, the better*), 181–182

## E

- Ed** (*asked*, *played*), 209  
past participle, 209  
as adjective (*a confused person*), 209–211  
pronunciation, 23–24  
spelling, 23–25
- Either**, 160
- Enough**, 272–273
- Er/more** and **-est/most**, 175, 177, 180, 183–184
- Even though**, 163–164, 166
- Ever**, 186
- Every**, 114
- Expressions of quantity (*some*, *many*), 222, 227–228

## F

- Far**, **much**, **a lot**, 179
- Farther/further**, 176
- A few/a little**, 224
- For** (purpose) (*I went to the store for milk*), 271
- For** (someone) to do (*something*), with **it** (*It is important for you to study*), 270
- For** and **since** (time) (*I stayed for two days*), 73–74
- Frequency:  
adverbs (*always*, *sometimes*), 7–9  
expressions (*every day*), 101  
questions about, with *how often*, 100
- From . . . to**, to express distance, 100, 279
- Future time, 43–63  
*be going to* and *will*, 43  
in *if*-clauses, 53–54  
immediate (*be about to*), 59  
present verbs used to express (*It begins tomorrow*), 58  
in time clauses (*Before he comes, we will . . .*), 52

## G

- Gerunds (*riding*, *working*), 256–258, 264–265, 273–277  
following *by*, 267–268  
following prepositions, 262–263  
as subjects (*Riding horses is fun*), 269  
verbs followed by (*enjoy working*), 258–261
- Get** + adjective/past participle (*get hungry*, *get tired*), 212–213
- Go** + **-ing** (*go shopping*), 256

## H

Habitual past (*used to do something*), 39

### Had:

contracted with pronouns, 139

in past perfect (*She had already eaten*), 80–82

**Had better** (*You'd better study*), 138–139

**Have**, auxiliary in present perfect (*They have eaten*), 64–65

progressive vs. non-action, 12

**Have got to**, 141

**Have to**, 140–141, 143

*do not have to*, 141, 143

Helping verbs (SEE Auxiliary verbs; Negatives; Questions; individual items)

**How**, 99

*how far*, 100, 279

*how long*, 100

*how many/how much*, 223

*how often*, 100

## I

**If**-clauses, 53

expressing future time in, 53–54

as noun clauses, 284–286

**If/whether** in noun clauses, 284–286, 296

Immediate future (*be about to*), 59

Imperative sentences (*Stop!*), 144–145

**In**, as time preposition, 112

Indirect speech (SEE Reported speech)

Infinitives (*to eat*), 257–258, 264–265, 273–277

with *it* (*It is easy to cook eggs*), 269–270

with modals (*have to study*), 140–141, 143

purpose (*in order to*), 271

with *too* and *enough*, 272–273

verbs followed by, 258–261

Information questions, 89–92

with noun clauses, 278–281

### -Ing:

gerund (*Swimming is fun*), 256–258, 264–265

present participle (*They are swimming*), 24–26

as adjective (*an interesting book*), 209–211

in tenses (SEE Progressive verbs)

spelling, 24–26

**In order to**, 271

**Interested** vs. **interesting**, 209–211

Intransitive and transitive verbs, 198–199

Irregular noun plurals (*tomatoes, fish*), 108–110, 120

Irregular verbs (*eat, ate, eaten*), 27–29, 66, 68, 71

**It**, to express distance (*It is two miles . . .*), 100

**It + infinitive** (*It is easy to do*), 269–270

**It + take** (length of time), 100

## J

**Just as . . . as**, 169–170

## L

**The least**, 183

**Less . . . than**, 179

**Let's**, 145

**Like**, 146–147

vs. *alike*, 189

**Like . . . better**, 146

(**A little/a few**), 224

Logical conclusion, 144

## M

**Many/much**, 222, 227

**May**, 132–135

permission, 135

polite question, 137

possibility, 48, 135

**Maybe**, 48, 135

Measure, units of (*a cup of, a piece of*), 226–227

Midsentence adverbs (*usually, seldom*), 77–78

**Might**, 132–137

Modal auxiliaries, 132–151 (SEE ALSO individual items)

in passive, 204–205

**More/-er . . . than**, 175, 177, 180

**The most/-est**, 183–184

**Much, a lot, far**, 179

**Must**, 132–133

logical conclusion, 144

necessity, 140–141, 143–144

**Must not**, 141

## N

**Nearly**, 169–170

Negatives:

adverbs (*seldom, never*), 7–9, 186

*be + not*, 3

*be + not + going to*, 47

past progressive (*was/were not*), 34–35, 201–203

present perfect (*has/have not*), 64–65, 67

present progressive (*am/is/are not*), 3

*should + not (shouldn't)*, 138

simple past (*did not*), 20, 30

simple present (*does/do not*), 1–2

*will + not (won't)*, 46

(SEE ALSO Contractions of verbs)

**Neither**, 160

Noncount nouns (*furniture, mail*), 218–221, 225–227

also used as count nouns (*paper vs. a paper*), 225

units of measure with (*two cups of tea*), 226–227

Non-action (nonprogressive) verbs (*know, want, belong*), 12

**Not** (SEE Negatives)

**Not as . . . as**, 179

Noun clauses, 278–286

with *if/whether*, 284–286, 296

with question words (*what he said*), 278, 285–286  
reported speech, sequence of tenses, 294–302  
with *that* (*I think that . . .*), 287–290

#### Nouns:

as adjectives (*a flower garden*), 116  
count/noncount (*chairs/furniture*), 218–221, 224–225  
plural forms, 108–110, 117  
possessive (*Tom's*), 120  
as subjects and objects, 111–112

### O

Object pronouns, personal (*him, them*), 118–119  
in adjective clauses (*whom I met*), 247

#### Objects:

of a preposition (*on the desk*), 111–112  
of a verb (*is reading a book*), 111–112

**On**, as time preposition (*on Monday*), 112

**One of** + plural noun, 187

**Or**, 154–157

**Other**, 126–129

**Ought to**, 138–139

### P

Parallel structure with *and, but, or*, 152–154

with verbs (*walks and talks, is walking and talking*), 59

Participial adjectives (*interested vs. interesting*),  
209–211

Particles, in phrasal verbs (*put away*), 305–320

Partitives (SEE Units of measure)

Passive (*It was mailed by Bob*), 193–207

use of *by*-phrase, 199–200

modal auxiliaries (*should be mailed*), 204–205

stative (*be married to*), 208

summary of forms, 194, 196

Past habit (*I used to live in . . .*), 39

#### Past participles:

as adjectives (*be tired, be surprised*), 207–208

vs. *-ing* (*interested vs. interesting*), 209–211

following *get* (*get tired*), 212–213

of irregular verbs, 19

in passive, 194

Past perfect (*had left*), 80–82

Past progressive (*was eating*), 34–35, 201–203

Past time, 18–42 (SEE ALSO Tenses)

Period, 153

Personal pronouns (*she, him, they*), 118–119

Phrasal verbs, 305–320

intransitive, 314–316

nonseparable, 306–308, 311

separable, 305–306, 308–313

three-word, 316–318

Plural nouns, 108–110, 117 (SEE ALSO Singular and plural)

Polite questions using modals (*May I? Would you?*), 137,  
145, 286

#### Possessive:

in adjective clauses (*whose*), 251

nouns (*Tom's*), 120

pronouns and adjectives (*mine and my*), 122

**Prefer**, 146–147

Prepositional phrases (*on the desk*), 111–112

Prepositions (*at, from, under*), 111–112

combinations with verbs and adjectives, 321–333

followed by gerunds, 262–263

placement in adjective clauses, 249–250

objects of, 111–112

as particles in phrasal verbs (*put off, put on*), 305–320

of place, 111–112

vs. time, word order, 113

in stative passive (*be married to*), 208

of time (*in, on, at*), 112

Present participle (*eating*), 24–26

as adjective (*interesting*), 209–211

vs. gerund, 256

Present perfect (*have eaten*), 64–65, 67–68, 70, 80

Present time, 1–17 (SEE ALSO Tenses)

**Probably**, 46–47

#### Progressive verbs:

vs. non-action (*I am thinking vs. I think*), 12

in passive (*is being done*), 201–203

past (*was doing*), 34–35, 201–203

present (*is doing*), 3, 5–6, 56

present perfect (*has been doing*), 75–76

#### Pronouns:

in adjective clauses (*who, which*), 240–247

contractions with (SEE Contractions of verbs)

as expressions of quantity (*many, some*), 228

personal (*I, them*), 118–119

possessive (*mine, theirs*), 122

reflexive (*myself, themselves*), 123–124

#### Pronunciation:

*-ed*, 23–24

*-s/-es*, 11–12, 108–109

Purpose (*in order to, for*), 271

#### Punctuation:

apostrophe (*Tom's*), 120 (SEE ALSO Contractions of verbs)

comma:

in adverb clauses, 36, 161–162

vs. a period, 153–154

in quoted speech, 291–293

in a series with *and*, 153–157

period, 153–154

quotation marks, 291–293, 296

### Q

Quantity, expressions of (*a lot, several*), 222, 227–228

Question forms, 86fn.

present perfect (*have you done?*), 64

present perfect progressive (*have they been driving?*),  
75–76

present progressive (*are you doing?*), 3, 5–6

simple past (*did you do?*), 30–31

simple present (*do you do?*), 3–4, 31

with *will* (*will you do?*), 45–46

Questions, 85–107  
information (*why, when*), 89–95  
polite (*would you please?*), 137, 145, 286  
tag (*You know Bob, don't you?*), 103–104  
yes/no, 19–20, 86–89, 284–285  
Question words (SEE Noun clauses; individual items)  
**Quite**, 170  
Quotation marks, 291–293, 296  
Quoted speech, 291–293, 296

## R

Reflexive pronouns (*myself*), 123–124  
Relative clauses (SEE Adjective clauses)  
Reported speech, 293–302

## S

**-S/-es**:  
with plural nouns (*birds*), 108–110, 225  
pronunciation, 11–12, 108–109  
with simple present verbs (*eat*), 10–11  
spelling, 12  
**Same, similar, different, like, alike**, 190–191  
**Say vs. ask vs. tell**, 299  
Sequence of tenses, in noun clauses, 294–302  
**Several**, 218  
Short answers to questions, 15, 19, 87–89  
**Should**, 138–139  
Simple form of a verb, 1–3, 19  
Simple past, 18–22, 32  
vs. past progressive, 35  
vs. present perfect, 68, 70, 74  
Simple present, 1–6, 10–11, 13–17, 32  
to express future time, 58  
in future time clauses, 52–54  
**Since and for**, 73–75  
Singular and plural:  
nouns (*a bird, birds*), 109–110, 117, 130  
nouns used as adjectives (*flower gardens*), 116  
personal pronouns (*I, we*), 118–119  
possessive nouns (*student's, students'*), 120  
present tense verbs (*eat*), 1–6  
verbs in adjective clauses (*man who is, men who are*),  
248  
**So**:  
with *and* (*and so do I*), 160  
conjunction (*It was late, so we left*), 155–157  
substituted for *that*-clause (*I think so*), 290  
**So/too/either/neither**, 160  
**Some**, 228  
Spelling:  
*-ed*, 23–25  
*-ing*, 24–26  
irregular verbs, 27  
*-s/-es*, 12  
Stative passive (*be married to*), 208  
Stative verbs (non-action verbs), 12

**Still**, 77–78  
Subject pronouns, personal (*I, she, they*), 118–119  
in adjective clauses (*a man who is, a book which was*),  
240–241  
Subject–verb agreement, 114  
in adjective clauses, 248  
Subjects, verbs, objects, 111–112  
transitive vs. intransitive verbs, 198–199  
Superlatives, 183–184, 187–188  
**Supposed to**, 215–216  
S-V-O-P-T, 113

## T

Tag questions (*You know Bob, don't you?*), 103–104  
**Take**, with *it* to express length of time, 100  
**Tell vs. say vs. ask**, 299  
Tenses:  
past perfect (*had worked*), 80–82  
past progressive (*were working*), 34–35  
present perfect (*have worked*), 64–65, 68, 70, 74  
present perfect progressive (*have been working*),  
75–76  
present progressive (*is working*), 3, 5–6, 13–17, 32  
future meaning, 56  
simple future (*will work*), 43, 54  
simple past (*worked*), 18–22, 32, 54  
vs. past progressive, 35  
simple present (*works*), 1–6, 32  
future meaning, 58  
vs. present progressive, 13–14  
**Than**:  
in comparatives (*more/-er*), 175, 177, 180  
following *like better, would rather*, 146–147  
**That**:  
in adjective clauses (*a book that I read*), 243–244, 246  
in noun clauses (*He said that . . .*), 287–290  
**The**, 229–234  
with names, 236–237  
**Their, they're, there**, 122  
**There + be**, 114  
Three-word verbs, 316–318 (SEE ALSO Phrasal verbs)  
Time clauses:  
form, 36  
future, 52  
past, 36, 52  
with *since*, 73–75  
**To . . . from**, to express distance, 100, 279  
**To** + simple form (infinitive), 271  
(*in order to*), 271  
**Too** (excess amount), 272–273  
with *and* (*and I do too*), 160  
Transitive and intransitive verbs, 198–199

## U

Units of measure (*a cup of, a piece of*), 226–227  
**Until**, 36, 52  
**Used to** (past habit), 39  
vs. *be used to*, 214–215

## V

### Verbs:

reporting, 293–302

vs. subjects and objects, 111–112, 198–199

transitive/intransitive, 198–199

(SEE ALSO Auxiliary verbs; Modal auxiliaries; Passive;  
Phrasal verbs; Tenses; individual items)

**Very**, 179

## W

**Was, were**, 21, 34–35

+ *-ing* (*was eating*), 34–35

**What**, 93–95

in noun clauses, 282–283

*what* + a form of *do*, 95

*what kind of*, 96

*what* vs. *which*, 97

*what time* vs. *when*, 90–91

**When**:

in questions, 89–95

in time clauses, 34–37, 54

**Where**, 279

**Whether**, 284–286

**Which**:

in adjective clauses, 245–246

in questions, 97

**While**, 34–37, 54

**Will**, 132–133

vs. *be going to*, 43–46, 49–50

forms, 44–46

future, 43–44

in polite questions, 137

with *probably*, 46–47

**With** vs. **by**, 268

**Who/who(m)**:

in adjective clauses, 240–242, 244–245

in noun clauses, 282–283

in questions, 93–94

*who's* vs. *whose*, 98–99

**Whose**:

in adjective clauses, 251

in noun clauses, 282–283

in questions (vs. *who's*), 98–99

**Why**, 92, 279

**Why don't**, 145

Word order (S-V-O-P-T), 113

**Worse, worst**, 176

**Would**, 133

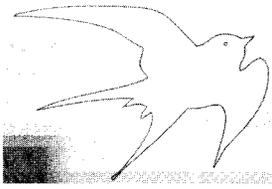
in polite questions, 137, 145

**Would rather**, 146–147

## Y

Yes/no questions, 19–20, 86–89, 284–285

**Yet**, 77–78



# Answer Key

To the student: To make it easy to correct your answers, remove this answer key along the perforations and make a separate answer key booklet for yourself.

## Chapter 1: PRESENT TIME

### ◇ PRACTICE 1, p. 1.

- A: Hi. My name is Kunio.  
 B: Hi. My name is Maria. I 'm glad to meet you.  
 KUNIO: I am glad to meet you, too. Where are you from?  
 MARIA: I am from Mexico. Where are you from?  
 KUNIO: I am from Japan.  
 MARIA: Where are you living now?  
 KUNIO: On Fifth Avenue in an apartment. And you?  
 MARIA: I am living in a dorm.  
 KUNIO: What are you studying?  
 MARIA: Business. After I study English, I am going to attend the School of Business Administration. How about you? What is your major?  
 KUNIO: Engineering.  
 MARIA: What do you like to do in your free time?  
 KUNIO: I read a lot. How about you?  
 MARIA: I like to get on the Internet.  
 KUNIO: Really? What do you do when you're online?  
 MARIA: I visit many different Web sites. It is a good way to practice my English.  
 KUNIO: That's interesting. I like to get on the Internet, too.  
 MARIA: I have to write your full name on the board when I introduce you to the class. How do you spell your name?  
 KUNIO: My first name is Kunio. K-U-N-I-O. My family name is Akiwa.  
 MARIA: Kunio Akiwa. Is that right?  
 KUNIO: Yes, it is. And what is your name again?  
 MARIA: My first name is Maria. M-A-R-I-A. My last name is Lopez.  
 KUNIO: Thanks. It's been nice talking to you.  
 MARIA: I enjoyed it, too.

### ◇ PRACTICE 2, p. 2.

- |               |                           |
|---------------|---------------------------|
| 1. am sitting | 6. sit . . . am sitting   |
| 2. am reading | 7. read . . . am reading  |
| 3. am looking | 8. look . . . am looking  |
| 4. am writing | 9. write . . . am writing |
| 5. am doing   | 10. do . . . am doing     |

### ◇ PRACTICE 3, p. 2.

- |                |                    |
|----------------|--------------------|
| <b>PART I.</b> | <b>PART III.</b>   |
| 1. speak       | 11. Do you speak   |
| 2. speak       | 12. Do they speak  |
| 3. speaks      | 13. Does he speak  |
| 4. speak       | 14. Do we speak    |
| 5. speaks      | 15. Does she speak |

#### **PART II.**

6. do not (don't) speak
7. do not (don't) speak
8. does not (doesn't) speak
9. do not (don't) speak
10. does not (doesn't) speak

### ◇ PRACTICE 4, p. 3.

- |                 |                       |
|-----------------|-----------------------|
| <b>PART I.</b>  | <b>PART III.</b>      |
| 1. am speaking  | 11. Are you speaking  |
| 2. are speaking | 12. Is he speaking    |
| 3. is speaking  | 13. Are they speaking |
| 4. are speaking | 14. Are we speaking   |
| 5. is speaking  | 15. Is she speaking   |

#### **PART II.**

6. am not speaking
7. are not speaking
8. is not speaking
9. are not speaking
10. is not speaking

### ◇ PRACTICE 5, p. 3.

- |            |            |
|------------|------------|
| 1. Is he   | 6. Is he   |
| 2. Does he | 7. Is he   |
| 3. Does he | 8. Does he |
| 4. Is he   | 9. Does he |
| 5. Does he | 10. Is he  |

◇ PRACTICE 6, p. 4.

- |             |             |
|-------------|-------------|
| 1. Is she   | 6. Does she |
| 2. Does she | 7. Is she   |
| 3. Is she   | 8. Is she   |
| 4. Is she   | 9. Does she |
| 5. Does she | 10. Is she  |

◇ PRACTICE 7, p. 4.

- |         |            |
|---------|------------|
| 1. does | 7. do      |
| 2. Do   | 8. Ø ... Ø |
| 3. Ø    | 9. does    |
| 4. Does | 10. Ø      |
| 5. Ø    | 11. Do     |
| 6. Ø    |            |

◇ PRACTICE 8, p. 5.

- |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. is   | 7. Ø    | 13. am  |
| 2. are  | 8. is   | 14. are |
| 3. is   | 9. Are  | 15. Ø   |
| 4. Is   | 10. Do  | 16. am  |
| 5. does | 11. Ø   | 17. Do  |
| 6. Ø    | 12. are |         |

◇ PRACTICE 9, p. 5.

- |         |        |        |
|---------|--------|--------|
| 1. Ø    | 5. Are | 9. Ø   |
| 2. Do   | 6. are | 10. is |
| 3. Does | 7. Ø   | 11. Do |
| 4. Is   | 8. are |        |

◇ PRACTICE 10, p. 6.

- |         |          |               |
|---------|----------|---------------|
| 1. is   | 7. Ø     | 13. is        |
| 2. are  | 8. do    | 14. Ø ... Ø   |
| 3. Ø    | 9. Ø     | 15. is        |
| 4. Does | 10. does | 16. Ø ... are |
| 5. do   | 11. does | 17. Do        |
| 6. Ø    | 12. Ø    | 18. Does      |

◇ PRACTICE 11, p. 7.

- |                  |                         |
|------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. usually ... Ø | 7. sometimes ... Ø      |
| 2. Ø ... usually | 8. never ... Ø          |
| 3. always ... Ø  | 9. Ø ... never          |
| 4. Ø ... always  | 10. Ø ... usually ... Ø |
| 5. usually ... Ø | 11. Ø ... always ... Ø  |
| 6. Ø ... always  | 12. Ø ... always        |

◇ PRACTICE 12, p. 7.

- |                            |                     |
|----------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. a. usually doesn't come | 2. a. usually isn't |
| b. doesn't ever come       | b. is rarely        |
| c. seldom comes            | c. isn't always     |
| d. sometimes comes         | d. frequently isn't |
| e. always comes            | e. is never         |
| f. occasionally comes      | f. isn't ever       |
| g. never comes             | g. is seldom        |
| h. hardly ever comes       |                     |

◇ PRACTICE 13, p. 8.

- |                      |                  |
|----------------------|------------------|
| 1. always wakes      | 5. seldom surfs  |
| 2. sometimes skips   | 6. usually talks |
| 3. frequently visits | 7. rarely does   |
| 4. is usually        | 8. is never      |

◇ PRACTICE 14, p. 8.

- |                     |                      |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1. often OR usually | 7. seldom OR rarely  |
| 2. seldom OR rarely | 8. seldom OR rarely  |
| 3. always           | 9. never             |
| 4. often OR usually | 10. always           |
| 5. sometimes        | 11. often OR usually |
| 6. usually          | 12. seldom           |

◇ PRACTICE 15, p. 9.

- |                               |                              |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. always chooses             | 7. often OR usually gets     |
| 2. seldom OR rarely go        | 8. sometimes gets            |
| 3. sometimes ride             | 9. seldom OR rarely finishes |
| 4. seldom OR rarely exercises | 10. never play               |
| 5. never eat                  | 11. usually arrives          |
| 6. is always                  | 12. always take              |

◇ PRACTICE 16, p. 10.

- |                         |                       |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. <u>likes</u>         | 11. Ø                 |
| 2. <u>watches</u>       | 12. <u>Does</u> ... Ø |
| 3. <u>doesn't</u> ... Ø | 13. <u>doesn't</u>    |
| 4. Ø                    | 14. <u>carries</u>    |
| 5. Ø ... Ø              | 15. <u>plays</u>      |
| 6. <u>Does</u> ... Ø    | 16. <u>lives</u>      |
| 7. <u>likes</u>         | 17. Ø                 |
| 8. <u>washes</u>        | 18. <u>visits</u>     |
| 9. <u>goes</u>          | 19. <u>catches</u>    |
| 10. <u>gets</u>         | 20. Ø                 |

◇ PRACTICE 17, p. 11.

Sam leaves his apartment at 8:00 every morning. He walks to the bus stop and catches the 8:10 bus. It takes him downtown. Then he transfers to another bus, and it takes him to his part-time job. He arrives at work at 8:50. He stays until 1:00, and then he leaves for school. He attends classes until 5:00. He usually studies in the library and tries to finish his homework. Then he goes home around 8:00. He has a long day.

◇ PRACTICE 18, p. 11.

- |         |         |            |
|---------|---------|------------|
| /s/     | /z/     | /əz/       |
| cooks   | stays   | promises   |
| invites | seems   | watches    |
| hates   | travels | misses     |
| picks   | draws   | introduces |

◇ PRACTICE 19, p. 12.

- |         |          |          |
|---------|----------|----------|
| 1. /z/  | 6. /z/   | 11. /əz/ |
| 2. /s/  | 7. /əz/  | 12. /z/  |
| 3. /əz/ | 8. /s/   | 13. /s/  |
| 4. /z/  | 9. /z/   | 14. /z/  |
| 5. /z/  | 10. /əz/ | 15. /s/  |

◇ PRACTICE 20, p. 12.

- |                     |                    |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| <i>simple pres.</i> | <i>pres. prog.</i> |
| 1. buys             | is buying          |
| 2. comes            | is coming          |
| 3. opens            | is opening         |
| 4. begins           | is beginning       |
| 5. stops            | is stopping        |
| 6. dies             | is dying           |

<i>simple pres.</i>	<i>pres. prog.</i>
7. rains	is raining
8. dreams	is dreaming
9. eats	is eating
10. enjoys	is enjoying
11. writes	is writing
12. tries	is trying
13. stays	is staying
14. hopes	is hoping
15. studies	is studying
16. lies	is lying
17. flies	is flying
18. sits	is sitting

◇ PRACTICE 21, p. 12.

- |      |      |       |
|------|------|-------|
| 1. a | 5. a | 9. b  |
| 2. a | 6. a | 10. b |
| 3. a | 7. b | 11. b |
| 4. b | 8. a | 12. a |

◇ PRACTICE 22, p. 13.

- |                |                               |
|----------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. is snowing  | 8. is looking ... sees        |
| 2. takes       | 9. sings                      |
| 3. drive       | 10. bite                      |
| 4. am watching | 11. writes                    |
| 5. prefer      | 12. understand                |
| 6. need        | 13. belongs                   |
| 7. are playing | 14. is shining ... is raining |

◇ PRACTICE 23, p. 14.

- |                         |                       |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. usually doesn't take | 9. is hugging         |
| 2. needs                | 10. are playing       |
| 3. is enjoying          | 11. is waving         |
| 4. are                  | 12. is walking        |
| 5. are eating           | 13. (is) entertaining |
| 6. are drinking         | 14. is smiling        |
| 7. (are) reading        | 15. usually takes     |
| 8. is working           | 16. is                |

◇ PRACTICE 24, p. 15.

- My friend **doesn't** speak English well.
- I **don't** believe you.
- My sister's dog **doesn't** bark.
- Our teacher **always starts** class on time.
- Look! The cat **is getting** up on the counter.
- Does** Marie **have** enough money?
- We **don't like** this rainy weather.
- Mrs. Gray is **worrying** about her daughter. OR Mrs. Gray **worries** about her daughter.
- My brother **doesn't have** enough free time.
- Does** Jim drive to school every day?
- He always **hurries** in the morning. He **doesn't want** to be late.
- Anna **usually has** dinner at eight.

◇ PRACTICE 25, p. 15.

- A: Are  
B: I am OR I'm not
- A: Do  
B: they do OR they don't
- A: Do  
B: I do OR I don't

- A: Does  
B: she does OR she doesn't
- A: Are  
B: they are OR they aren't
- A: Do  
B: they do OR they don't
- A: Is  
B: he is OR he isn't
- A: Are  
B: I am OR I'm not
- A: Is  
B: it is OR it isn't
- A: Do  
B: we do OR we don't

◇ PRACTICE 26, p. 16.

- A: are you doing  
B: am watching ... want  
A: enjoy ... go ... is ... run  
B: are making
- A: Do you read  
B: do ... read ... subscribe ... always look
- am I studying ... do I want ... need
- A: am leaving ... Do you want  
B: am waiting
- B: Is the baby sleeping  
A: is taking  
B: don't want
- goes ... likes ... is preparing
- is ... is blowing ... are falling
- eats ... don't eat ... do you eat
- A: Do you shop  
B: don't ... usually shop  
A: are you shopping  
B: am trying
- lose ... rest ... grow ... keep ... stay ... don't grow ... don't have ... is ... grow

Chapter 2: PAST TIME

◇ PRACTICE 1, p. 18.

- walked ... yesterday
- talked ... last
- opened ... yesterday
- went ... last
- met ... last
- Yesterday ... made ... took
- paid ... last
- Yesterday ... fell
- left ... last

◇ PRACTICE 2, p. 19.

- |             |              |             |
|-------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. started  | 11. fell     | 21. took    |
| 2. went     | 12. heard    | 22. paid    |
| 3. saw      | 13. sang     | 23. left    |
| 4. stood    | 14. explored | 24. wore    |
| 5. arrived  | 15. asked    | 25. opened  |
| 6. won      | 16. brought  | 26. decided |
| 7. had      | 17. broke    | 27. planned |
| 8. made     | 18. ate      | 28. wrote   |
| 9. finished | 19. watched  | 29. taught  |
| 10. felt    | 20. built    | 30. held    |

◇ PRACTICE 3, p. 19.

1. A: Did you answer  
B: I did. I answered OR I didn't. I didn't answer
2. A: Did he see  
B: he did. He saw OR he didn't. He didn't see
3. A: Did they watch  
B: they did. They watched OR they didn't. They didn't watch
4. A: Did you understand  
B: I did. I understood OR I didn't. I didn't understand
5. A: Were you  
B: I was. I was OR I wasn't. I wasn't

◇ PRACTICE 4, p. 20.

1. didn't fly ... walked/took the bus
2. aren't ... are sour
3. didn't walk ... walked on the moon
4. wasn't a baby ... was (*number of years old*)
5. didn't come ... came
6. doesn't come ... comes from coffee beans
7. didn't sleep ... slept inside
8. isn't ... is cold
9. didn't disappear ... disappeared millions of years

◇ PRACTICE 5, p. 21.

- |                 |                       |
|-----------------|-----------------------|
| 1. Did he study | 5. Were they hungry   |
| 2. Was he sick  | 6. Did you go         |
| 3. Was she sad  | 7. Did she understand |
| 4. Did they eat | 8. Did he forget      |

◇ PRACTICE 6, p. 21.

- |         |        |
|---------|--------|
| 1. Did  | 5. Was |
| 2. Were | 6. Did |
| 3. Did  | 7. Was |
| 4. Did  | 8. Did |

◇ PRACTICE 7, p. 22.

- |           |           |            |
|-----------|-----------|------------|
| 1. shook  | 5. held   | 9. thought |
| 2. stayed | 6. fought | 10. called |
| 3. swam   | 7. taught | 11. rode   |
| 4. jumped | 8. froze  | 12. sold   |

◇ PRACTICE 9, p. 23.

- |         |          |          |
|---------|----------|----------|
| 1. /t/  | 8. /t/   | 15. /t/  |
| 2. /d/  | 9. /d/   | 16. /d/  |
| 3. /əd/ | 10. /əd/ | 17. /t/  |
| 4. /d/  | 11. /d/  | 18. /əd/ |
| 5. /əd/ | 12. /t/  | 19. /d/  |
| 6. /əd/ | 13. /t/  | 20. /t/  |
| 7. /d/  | 14. /əd/ |          |

◇ PRACTICE 10, p. 23.

- |                          |              |
|--------------------------|--------------|
| <i>spelling</i>          | <i>pron.</i> |
| 1. <b>walk<u>ed</u></b>  | /t/          |
| 2. <b>patt<u>ed</u></b>  | /əd/         |
| 3. <b>worri<u>ed</u></b> | /d/          |
| 4. <b>stay<u>ed</u></b>  | /d/          |
| 5. <b>visi<u>ted</u></b> | /əd/         |
| 6. <b>d<u>ied</u></b>    | /d/          |
| 7. <b>trad<u>ed</u></b>  | /əd/         |
| 8. <b>plann<u>ed</u></b> | /d/          |
| 9. <b>open<u>ed</u></b>  | /d/          |

- |                           |      |
|---------------------------|------|
| 10. <b>hurri<u>ed</u></b> | /d/  |
| 11. <b>rent<u>ed</u></b>  | /əd/ |
| 12. <b>tr<u>ied</u></b>   | /d/  |
| 13. <b>enjoy<u>ed</u></b> | /d/  |
| 14. <b>stop<u>ped</u></b> | /t/  |
| 15. <b>need<u>ed</u></b>  | /əd/ |

◇ PRACTICE 12 p. 24.

- |                          |             |            |
|--------------------------|-------------|------------|
| <i>double consonant?</i> | <i>-ING</i> | <i>-ED</i> |
| no                       | exciting    | excited    |
| no                       | existing    | existed    |
| no                       | shouting    | shouted    |
| yes                      | patting     | patted     |
| no                       | visiting    | visited    |
| yes                      | admitting   | admitted   |
| no                       | praying     | prayed     |
| no                       | prying      | pried      |
| no                       | tying       | tied       |

◇ PRACTICE 13, p. 25.

- |                         |                |                 |
|-------------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| <i>double consonant</i> | <i>drop -E</i> | <i>add -ING</i> |
| hitting                 | coming         | learning        |
| cutting                 | taking         | listening       |
| hopping                 | hoping         | raining         |
| beginning               | smiling        | staying         |
| winning                 | writing        | studying        |

◇ PRACTICE 14, p. 25.

- |               |            |
|---------------|------------|
| <i>-ING</i>   | <i>-ED</i> |
| 1. riding     | (ridden)   |
| 2. starting   | started    |
| 3. coming     | (came)     |
| 4. happening  | happened   |
| 5. trying     | tried      |
| 6. buying     | (bought)   |
| 7. hoping     | hoped      |
| 8. keeping    | (kept)     |
| 9. tipping    | tipped     |
| 10. failing   | failed     |
| 11. filling   | filled     |
| 12. feeling   | (felt)     |
| 13. dining    | dined      |
| 14. meaning   | (meant)    |
| 15. winning   | (won)      |
| 16. learning  | learned    |
| 17. listening | listened   |
| 18. beginning | (began)    |

◇ PRACTICE 15, p. 26.

- |                              |                    |
|------------------------------|--------------------|
| <i>-ing</i>                  | <i>simple form</i> |
| 1. <b>wait<u>ing</u></b>     | wait               |
| 2. <b>pett<u>ing</u></b>     | pet                |
| 3. <b>bitt<u>ing</u></b>     | bite               |
| 4. <b>sitt<u>ing</u></b>     | sit                |
| 5. <b>writt<u>ing</u></b>    | write              |
| 6. <b>fight<u>ing</u></b>    | fight              |
| 7. <b>wait<u>ing</u></b>     | wait               |
| 8. <b>gett<u>ing</u></b>     | get                |
| 9. <b>start<u>ing</u></b>    | start              |
| 10. <b>permitt<u>ing</u></b> | permit             |
| 11. <b>lift<u>ing</u></b>    | lift               |
| 12. <b>eat<u>ing</u></b>     | eat                |

<i>-ing</i>	<i>simple form</i>
13. tasting	taste
14. cutting	cut
15. meeting	meet
16. visiting	visit

◇ PRACTICE 16, p. 27.

<i>PART I.</i>	<i>PART IV.</i>
bought	broke
brought	wrote
taught	froze
caught	rode
fought	sold
thought	stole
found	

<i>PART II.</i>	<i>PART V.</i>
swam	hit
drank	hurt
sang	read
rang	shut
	cost
	put
	quit

<i>PART III.</i>	<i>PART VI.</i>
blew	paid
drew	said
flew	
grew	
knew	
threw	

◇ PRACTICE 17, p. 28.

1. drank/had	11. ran
2. ate	12. led
3. began ... shut	13. paid
4. rang	14. froze
5. came	15. did
6. built	16. rose
7. fell ... hurt	17. thought
8. stole/took	18. wrote
9. shut	19. kept
10. drove	20. built

◇ PRACTICE 18, p. 29.

1. spoke	11. gave ... spoke
2. dug	12. grew
3. chose	13. forgot
4. lost	14. bought/read
5. quit	15. shook
6. slept	16. stole
7. found	17. felt
8. cut	18. drew
9. met	19. heard
10. taught	20. fell ... broke

◇ PRACTICE 19, p. 30.

<i>question</i>	<i>negative</i>
1. Did I ride	I didn't ride
2. Did she sit	She didn't sit
3. Were we	We weren't
4. Did they try	They didn't try
5. Was he	He wasn't
6. Did they cut	They didn't cut
7. Did she throw	She didn't throw
8. Did we do	We didn't do

◇ PRACTICE 20, p. 31.

1. What did you do last night?
2. What is your friend's name?
3. Is he nice?
4. How was your evening?
5. Where did you go?
6. Did you enjoy it?
7. Was the music loud?
8. What time did you get home?
9. What did you wear?
10. What is he like?
11. What does he look like?
12. Do you want to go out with him again?

◇ PRACTICE 21, p. 32.

	<i>every day</i>	<i>now</i>	<i>yesterday</i>
1. is	is		was
2. think		<b>am thinking</b>	thought
3. play		<b>are playing</b>	<b>played</b>
4. drink		<b>am drinking</b>	drank
5. teaches	is teaching		<b>taught</b>
6. swims	<b>is swimming</b>		swam
7. sleep	<b>are sleeping</b>		<b>slept</b>
8. reads	is reading		<b>read</b>
9. try	<b>are trying</b>		tried
10. eat	<b>are eating</b>		<b>ate</b>

◇ PRACTICE 22, p. 32.

1. A: Did you hear  
B: didn't ... didn't hear ... was
2. A: Do you hear  
B: don't ... don't hear
3. A: Did you build  
B: didn't ... built
4. A: Is a fish  
B: it is  
A: Are they  
B: they are ... don't know
5. A: want ... Do you want  
B: have ... bought ... don't need
6. offer ... is ... offered ... didn't accept
7. took ... found ... didn't know ... isn't ... didn't want ... went ... made ... heated ... seemed ... am not
8. likes ... worry ... is ... trust ... graduated ... went ... didn't travel ... rented ... rode ... was ... worried ... were ... saw ... knew

◇ PRACTICE 23, p. 34.

1. were hiding
2. were singing
3. was watching
4. were talking
5. were reading ... were sitting ... (were) looking

◇ PRACTICE 24, p. 34.

- |                           |                                     |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. was playing ... broke  | 6. picked up ... was hiking         |
| 2. scored ... was playing | 7. tripped ... fell ... was dancing |
| 3. hurt ... was playing   | 8. was dancing ... met              |
| 4. was hiking ... found   | 9. was dancing ... got              |
| 5. saw ... was hiking     |                                     |

◇ PRACTICE 25, p. 35.

1. began ... were walking
2. was washing ... dropped ... broke
3. saw ... was eating ... (was) talking ... joined
4. was walking ... fell ... hit
5. was singing ... didn't hear
6. was walking ... heard ... was
7. A: Did your lights go out  
B: was ... was taking ... found ... ate ... tried ... went ... slept
8. went ... saw ... had ... were walking ... began ... dried ... were passing ... lowered ... started ... stretched ... tried ... didn't let ... was standing ... pointed ... said

◇ PRACTICE 26, p. 36.

1. I gave Alan his allowance after he finished his chores.  
OR  
After Alan finished his chores, I gave him his allowance.
2. The doorbell rang while I was climbing the stairs. OR  
While I was climbing the stairs, the doorbell rang.
3. The firefighters checked the ashes one last time before they went home. OR  
Before they went home, the firefighters checked the ashes one last time.
4. When the Novaks stopped by our table at the restaurant, they showed us their new baby. OR  
The Novaks showed us their new baby when they stopped by our table at the restaurant.
5. We started to dance as soon as the music began. OR  
As soon as the music began, we started to dance.
6. We stayed in our seats until the game ended. OR  
Until the game ended, we stayed in our seats.
7. While my father was listening to a baseball game on the radio, he was watching a basketball game on television.  
OR  
My father was watching a basketball game on television while he was listening to a baseball game on the radio.

◇ PRACTICE 27, p. 37.

- |                  |                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|------------------|
| 1. was           | 17. comes        | 33. is           |
| 2. slept         | 18. sat          | 34. drew         |
| 3. came          | 19. spoke        | 35. played       |
| 4. packed        | 20. ate          | 36. won          |
| 5. took          | 21. took         | 37. won          |
| 6. spent         | 22. was sleeping | 38. taught       |
| 7. got           | 23. bit          | 39. were playing |
| 8. found         | 24. woke         | 40. fell         |
| 9. fed           | 25. heard        | 41. found        |
| 10. threw        | 26. looked       | 42. joined       |
| 11. swam         | 27. saw          | 43. were         |
| 12. caught       | 28. flew         | 44. were         |
| 13. hit          | 29. did          | 45. hurt         |
| 14. stole        | 30. took         | 46. was          |
| 15. were feeding | 31. got          | 47. left         |
| 16. met          | 32. read         | 48. was          |

◇ PRACTICE 28, p. 39.

1. used to hate school
2. used to be a secretary
3. used to have a rat
4. used to go bowling
5. used to have fresh eggs
6. used to crawl under his bed ... put his hands over his ears

7. used to go
8. didn't use/used to wear
9. used to hate ... didn't use/used to have
10. did you use/used to do

◇ PRACTICE 29, p. 40.

1. They **didn't stay** at the park very long last Saturday
2. They ~~are~~ walked to school yesterday.
3. I ~~was~~ **understood** all the teacher's questions yesterday.
4. We didn't **know** what to do when the fire alarm **rang** yesterday.
5. I ~~was~~ really enjoyed the baseball game last week.
6. Mr. Rice didn't **die** in the accident.
7. I **used** to live with my parents, but now I have my own apartment.
8. My friends ~~were~~ went on vacation together last month.
9. I **wasn't** afraid of anything when I **was** a child.
10. The teacher ~~was~~ changed his mind yesterday.
11. Sally **loved** Jim, but he didn't **love** her.
12. Carmen **didn't use/used** to eat fish, but now she does.

◇ PRACTICE 30, p. 41.

- |                  |                   |            |
|------------------|-------------------|------------|
| 1. was preparing | 11. excused       | 21. yelled |
| 2. rang          | 12. reached       | 22. shooed |
| 3. put           | 13. was trying    | 23. sat    |
| 4. rushed        | 14. ran           | 24. stayed |
| 5. opened        | 15. was trying    | 25. began  |
| 6. found         | 16. were swimming | 26. felt   |
| 7. was holding   | 17. said          | 27. rang   |
| 8. needed        | 18. hung          | 28. rang   |
| 9. was dealing   | 19. thanked       |            |
| 10. rang         | 20. shut          |            |

Chapter 3: FUTURE TIME

◇ PRACTICE 1, p. 43.

1. a. arrives  
b. arrived  
c. is going to arrive OR will arrive
2. a. eats  
b. ate  
c. is going to eat OR will eat
3. a. doesn't arrive  
b. didn't arrive  
c. isn't going to arrive OR will not/won't arrive
4. a. Do ... eat  
b. Did ... eat  
c. Are ... going to eat OR Will ... eat
5. a. don't eat  
b. didn't eat  
c. 'm/am not going to eat OR will not/won't eat

◇ PRACTICE 2, p. 44.

- |                    |             |
|--------------------|-------------|
| <i>be going to</i> | <i>will</i> |
| am going to        | will        |
| are going to       | will        |
| is going to        | will        |
| are going to       | will        |
| are going to       | will        |
| are not going to   | will not    |
| is not going to    | will not    |
| am not going to    | will not    |

◇ PRACTICE 3, p. 44.

1. I'm going to eat
2. he isn't going to be
3. they're going to take
4. she's going to walk
5. it isn't going to rain
6. we're going to be
7. you aren't going to hitchhike
8. I'm not going to get
9. he isn't going to wear

◇ PRACTICE 4, p. 44.

The Smiths **will** celebrate their 50th wedding anniversary on December 1 of this year. Their children are planning a party for them at a local hotel. Their family and friends **will** join them for the celebration.

Mr. and Mrs. Smith have three children and five grandchildren. The Smiths know that two of their children **will** be at the party, but the third child, their youngest daughter, is far away in Africa, where she is doing medical research. They believe she **will** not come home for the party.

The Smiths don't know it, but their youngest daughter **will** be at the party. She is planning to surprise them. **It will** be a wonderful surprise for them! They **will** be very happy to see her. The whole family **will** enjoy being together for this special occasion.

◇ PRACTICE 5, p. 45.

1. Will Nick start  
Is Nick going to start
2. Will Mr. Jones give  
Is Mr. Jones going to give
3. Will Jacob quit  
Is Jacob going to quit
4. Will Mr. and Mrs. Kono adopt  
Are Mr. and Mrs. Kono going to adopt
5. Will the Johnsons move  
Are the Johnsons going to move
6. Will Dr. Johnson retire  
Is Dr. Johnson going to retire

◇ PRACTICE 6, p. 46.

1. A: Will you help  
B: I will OR I won't
2. A: Will Paul lend  
B: he will OR he won't
3. A: Will Jane graduate  
B: she will OR she won't
4. A: Will her parents be  
B: they will OR they won't
5. A: Will I benefit  
B: you will OR you won't

◇ PRACTICE 7, p. 46.

1. probably won't
2. will probably
3. will probably
4. probably won't
5. will probably
6. probably won't
7. will probably
8. will probably

◇ PRACTICE 8, p. 47.

**PART I.**

1. I'll probably go
2. she probably won't come
3. he will probably go
4. he probably won't hand
5. they will probably have

**PART II.**

6. I'm probably going to watch
7. I'm probably not going to be
8. it's probably going to be
9. they probably aren't going to come
10. she probably isn't going to ride

◇ PRACTICE 9, p. 47.

- |         |         |
|---------|---------|
| 1. 90%  | 5. 50%  |
| 2. 50%  | 6. 90%  |
| 3. 100% | 7. 100% |
| 4. 90%  | 8. 50%  |

◇ PRACTICE 10, p. 48.

1. are probably going to have
2. are probably not going to invite
3. may get married . . . Maybe . . . will get married
4. may rent
5. will probably decide
6. may not be . . . may be
7. will go
8. probably won't go

◇ PRACTICE 11, p. 49.

- |                  |                       |
|------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. 'll answer it | 5. 'll turn . . . off |
| 2. 'll hold      | 6. 'll leave          |
| 3. 'll take      | 7. 'll get            |
| 4. 'll move      | 8. 'll read           |

◇ PRACTICE 12, p. 49.

1. 'm going to
2. 'll
3. 'm going to
4. 'll
5. 'm going to
6. 'll
7. 'm going to . . . 'll

◇ PRACTICE 13, p. 50.

- |  |                 |
|--|-----------------|
| 1. 'll                                     | 7. 'm going to  |
| 2. 'm going to                             | 8. 'll          |
| 3. 'm going to                             | 9. 's going to  |
| 4. 'm going to                             | 10. 'll put     |
| 5. A: are . . . going to<br>B: 'm going to | 11. 'm going to |
| 6. 'll                                     | 12. 'll         |

◇ PRACTICE 14, p. 52.

*Time clauses:*

1. After I did my homework last night
2. after I do my homework tonight
3. Before Bob left for work this morning
4. Before Bob leaves for work this morning
5. after I get home this evening

Time clauses:

6. after I got home last night
7. as soon as the teacher arrives
8. As soon as the teacher arrived
9. When the rain stops
10. when the rain stopped

◇ PRACTICE 15, p. 52.

1. After I finish . . . I'm going to go
2. I'm not going to go . . . until I finish
3. Before Ann watches . . . she will (she'll) finish
4. Jim is going to read . . . after he gets
5. When I call . . . I'll ask
6. Mrs. Fox will stay . . . until she finishes
7. As soon as I get . . . I'm going to take
8. While I am . . . I'm going to go

◇ PRACTICE 16, p. 53.

1. If it rains tomorrow,
2. If it's hot tomorrow,
3. if he has enough time
4. If I don't get a check tomorrow,
5. if the weather is nice tomorrow
6. If Gina doesn't study for her test,
7. if I have enough money
8. If I don't study tonight,

◇ PRACTICE 17, p. 54.

1. When I see you Sunday afternoon, I'll give you my answer OR  
I'll give you my answer when I see you Sunday afternoon.
2. Before my friends come over, I'm going to clean up my apartment. OR  
I'm going to clean up my apartment before my friends come over.
3. When the storm is over, I'm going to do some errands. OR  
I'm going to do some errands when the storm is over.
4. If you don't learn how to use a computer, you will have trouble finding a job. OR  
You will have trouble finding a job if you don't learn how to use a computer.
5. As soon as Joe finishes his report, he'll meet us at the coffee shop. OR  
Joe will meet us at the coffee shop as soon as he finishes his report.
6. After Sue washes and dries the dishes, she will put them away. OR  
Sue will put the dishes away after she washes and dries them.
7. If they don't leave at seven, they won't get to the theater on time. OR  
They won't get to the theater on time if they don't leave at seven.

◇ PRACTICE 18, p. 54.

PART II.

(1) Tomorrow morning **will be** an ordinary morning. I **'ll get** up at 6:30. I **'ll wash** my face and **brush** my teeth. Then I **'ll** probably put on my jeans and a sweater. I **'ll** go to the kitchen and **start** the electric coffee maker.

(2) Then I **'ll walk** down my driveway to get the morning newspaper. If I **see** a deer in my garden, I **'ll** watch it for a while and then **make** some noise to chase it away before it **destroys** my flowers.

(3) As soon as I **get** back to the kitchen, I'll **pour** myself a cup of coffee and **open** the morning paper. While I'm reading the paper, my teenage daughter **will come** downstairs. We **'ll talk** about her plans for the day. I **'ll help** her with her breakfast and **make** a lunch for her to take to school. After we **say** goodbye, I **'ll eat** some fruit and cereal and **finish** reading the paper.

(4) Then I **'ll go** to my office. My office **is** in my home. My office **has** a desk, a computer, a radio, a fax, a copy machine, and a lot of bookshelves. I **'ll work** all morning. While I'm working, the phone **will ring** many times. I **'ll talk** to many people. At 11:30, I **'ll go** to the kitchen and **make** a sandwich for lunch. As I said, it **will be** an ordinary morning.

◇ PRACTICE 19, p. 56.

1. I'm going to stay . . . I'm staying
2. They're going to travel . . . They're traveling
3. We're going to get . . . We're getting
4. He's going to start . . . He's starting
5. She's going to go . . . She's going
6. My neighbors are going to build . . . My neighbors are building

◇ PRACTICE 20, p. 56.

1. is traveling
2. are arriving
3. 'm/am meeting
4. 'm/am getting
5. is . . . taking
6. 'm/am studying
7. 'm/am leaving
8. is attending . . . 'm/am seeing
9. is speaking
10. are coming . . . 'm/am planning . . . 'm/am preparing
11. 'm/am calling

◇ PRACTICE 21, p. 58.

1. A: does . . . begin/start  
B: begins/starts
2. opens
3. arrives/gets in
4. begins
5. A: does . . . close  
B: closes
6. open . . . starts/begins . . . arrive . . . ends/finishes
7. A: does . . . depart/leave  
B: leaves  
A: does . . . arrive/land

◇ PRACTICE 22, p. 59.

1. is about to rain
2. is about to leave
3. is about to write
4. is about to ring
5. is . . . about to break

◇ PRACTICE 23, p. 59.

1. study
2. set
3. doing
4. go
5. fell
6. is writing ... waiting
7. takes ... buys
8. go ... tell
9. 'm/am taking ... forgetting
10. will discover ... (will) apologize

◇ PRACTICE 24, p. 60.

1. My friends will ~~to~~ join us after work.
2. Maybe the rain **will stop / is going to stop** soon.
3. On Friday, our school **is closing / will close / is going to close** early so teachers can go to a workshop.
4. My husband and I ~~will~~ intend to be at your graduation.
5. Our company is going to **sell** computer equipment to schools.
6. Give grandpa a hug. He's about to **leave**.
7. Mr. Scott is going to retire and **move** to a warmer climate.
8. If your soccer team ~~will~~ **wins** the championship tomorrow, we'll have a big celebration for you.
9. **Maybe I** won't be able to meet you for coffee. OR **I may not** be able to meet you for coffee. OR **I maybe** won't be able to meet you for coffee.
10. I bought this cloth because I **am going to** make some curtains for my bedroom.
11. I **am** (I'm) moving / **will move / am going to move** to London when I ~~will~~ finish my education here.
12. Are you going **to** go to the meeting?
13. I opened the door and **walked** to the front of the room.
14. When will you ~~be going to~~ move into your new apartment? OR  
When **are** you going to move into your new apartment?  
OR  
When **are** you **moving** into your new apartment?

◇ PRACTICE 25, p. 61.

1. go ... am going to finish / will finish ... write
2. was making ... spilled ... caught ... started ... ran ... thought
3. plays ... cuts ... is not doing ... doesn't study ... go ... will flunk / is going to flunk
4. cries ... stomps ... gets ... got ... picked ... threw ... didn't hit ... felt ... apologized ... kissed
5. is beginning ... begins ... don't like ... think ... are going to take / will take ... is ... are going to drive / will drive ... enjoy
6. is going to meet / will meet ... arrives
7. see ... am going to tell / will tell
8. am ... see
9. am ... will stay
10. are going to go / will go ... is
11. is watching ... is ... is going to mow / will mow
12. was ... left
13. get ... run
14. don't need
15. is planning / plans ... Are you going to come / Are you coming
16. A: do you usually get  
B: take
17. was combing ... broke ... finished ... rushed
18. get ... 'm/am going to read / I will read ... watch ... 'm/am not going to do / won't do

19. saw ... ran ... caught ... knocked ... went ... sat ... waited ... got ... understood ... put ... took
20. A: has ... has  
B: does she have  
B: Do you have  
A: 'm/am not going to get ... don't have

Chapter 4: THE PRESENT PERFECT AND THE PAST PERFECT

◇ PRACTICE 1, p. 64.

1. A: Have you ever eaten  
B: have ... have eaten OR haven't ... have never eaten
2. A: Have you ever talked  
B: have ... have talked OR haven't ... have never talked
3. A: Has Erica ever rented  
B: has ... has rented OR hasn't ... has never rented
4. A: Have you ever seen  
B: have ... have seen OR haven't ... have never seen
5. A: Has Joe ever caught  
B: has ... has caught OR hasn't ... has never caught
6. A: Have you ever had  
B: have ... have had OR haven't ... have never had

◇ PRACTICE 2, p. 65.

1. have wanted
2. have been
3. has been
4. have flown
5. have not picked up
6. has changed
7. has already corrected ... hasn't returned
8. hasn't talked
9. have needed ... have looked
10. A: Have you had  
B: have gotten

◇ PRACTICE 3, p. 66.

GROUP I.

<i>simple form</i>	<i>simple past</i>	<i>past participle</i>
hurt	hurt	hurt
put	put	put
quit	quit	quit
upset	upset	upset
cut	cut	cut
shut	shut	shut
let	let	let
set	set	set

GROUP II.

<i>simple form</i>	<i>simple past</i>	<i>past participle</i>
ring	rang	rung
drink	drank	drunk
swim	swam	swum
sing	sang	sung
sink	sank	sunk

**GROUP III.**

<i>simple form</i>	<i>simple past</i>	<i>past participle</i>
win	won	won
feed	fed	fed
weep	wept	wept
stand	stood	stood
keep	kept	kept
sit	sat	sat
stick	stuck	stuck
meet	met	met
have	had	had
find	found	found
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
fight	fought	fought
teach	taught	taught
pay	paid	paid
bring	brought	brought
think	thought	thought

◇ PRACTICE 4, p. 67.

- |                      |                        |
|----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. have used         | 7. has given           |
| 2. has risen         | 8. haven't saved       |
| 3. have never played | 9. Have you ever slept |
| 4. have won          | 10. have never worn    |
| 5. hasn't spoken     | 11. has improved       |
| 6. hasn't eaten      | 12. have looked        |

◇ PRACTICE 5, p. 68.

- |      |       |       |
|------|-------|-------|
| 1. C | 6. F  | 11. F |
| 2. F | 7. F  | 12. F |
| 3. F | 8. F  | 13. F |
| 4. F | 9. C  | 14. C |
| 5. C | 10. C |       |

◇ PRACTICE 6, p. 68.

- |                                |                                 |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. began ... have begun        | 16. led ... has led             |
| 2. bent ... have bent          | 17. lost ... has lost           |
| 3. broadcast ... has broadcast | 18. met ... have met            |
| 4. caught ... have caught      | 19. rode ... have ridden        |
| 5. came ... have come          | 20. rang ... has rung           |
| 6. cut ... have cut            | 21. saw ... have seen           |
| 7. dug ... have dug            | 22. stole ... has stolen        |
| 8. drew ... has drawn          | 23. stuck ... have stuck        |
| 9. fed ... have fed            | 24. swept ... have swept        |
| 10. fought ... have fought     | 25. took ... have taken         |
| 11. forgot ... have forgotten  | 26. upset ... have upset        |
| 12. hid ... have hidden        | 27. withdrew ... have withdrawn |
| 13. hit ... has hit            | 28. wrote ... have written      |
| 14. held ... has held          |                                 |
| 15. kept ... have kept         |                                 |

◇ PRACTICE 7, p. 70.

- |                        |                         |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. went ... have gone  | 7. has played           |
| 2. lived               | 8. has not/hasn't slept |
| 3. has lived           | 9. made                 |
| 4. moved ... worked    | 10. have enjoyed        |
| 5. roomed ... returned | 11. collected           |
| 6. was ... died        |                         |

◇ PRACTICE 8, p. 71.

- |                            |                            |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. a. have gone            | 11. a. have you ever found |
| b. went                    | b. found                   |
| 2. a. gave                 | 12. a. drove               |
| b. Has she ever given      | b. have never driven       |
| 3. a. have fallen          | 13. a. sang                |
| b. fell                    | b. have sung               |
| 4. a. Have you ever broken | 14. a. have never run      |
| b. broke                   | b. ran                     |
| 5. a. have never shaken    | 15. a. told                |
| b. shook                   | b. has told                |
| 6. a. heard                | 16. a. stood               |
| b. have heard              | b. have stood              |
| 7. a. flew                 | 17. a. spent               |
| b. has flown               | b. have already spent      |
| 8. a. has worn             | 18. a. have made           |
| b. wore                    | b. made                    |
| 9. a. Have you ever built  | 19. a. has risen           |
| b. built                   | b. rose                    |
| 10. a. has taught          | 20. a. felt                |
| b. taught                  | b. have felt               |

◇ PRACTICE 9, p. 73.

- |          |           |           |
|----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. since | 6. since  | 11. for   |
| 2. for   | 7. since  | 12. for   |
| 3. since | 8. for    | 13. since |
| 4. for   | 9. since  | 14. for   |
| 5. for   | 10. since |           |

◇ PRACTICE 10, p. 74.

- I have been in this class **for** a month.
- I have known my teacher **since** September.
- Sam has wanted a dog **for** two years.
- Sara has needed a new car **since** last year / **for** a year.
- Our professor has been sick **for** a week / **since** last week.
- They have lived in Canada **since** December.
- I have known Mrs. Brown **since** 1999.
- Tom has worked at a fast-food restaurant **for** three weeks.

◇ PRACTICE 11, p. 74.

*Checked phrases:*

- |                          |                   |
|--------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. two weeks ago         | 2. since Friday   |
| yesterday                | since last week   |
| last year                | for several weeks |
| several months ago       |                   |
| the day before yesterday |                   |
| in March                 |                   |

◇ PRACTICE 12, p. 75.

- have known ... was
- has had ... came
- have not experienced ... came
- began ... has given
- has been ... was
- has not been ... graduated
- started ... have completed
- began ... has not had
- have become ... changed
- has risen ... bought

◇ PRACTICE 13, p. 75.

1. A: has Eric been studying  
B: 's been studying . . . for two hours
2. A: has Kathy been working at the computer  
B: 's been working . . . two o'clock
3. A: has it been raining  
B: 's been raining . . . two days
4. A: has Liz been reading  
B: 's been reading . . . 30 minutes/half an hour
5. A: has Boris been studying English  
B: 's been studying English . . . 2001
6. A: has Nicole been working at the Silk Road Clothing Store  
B: 's been working . . . three months
7. A: has Ms. Rice been teaching at this school  
B: 's been teaching . . . 2001
8. A: has Mr. Fisher been driving a Chevy  
B: 's been driving a Chevy . . . twelve years
9. A: has Mrs. Taylor been waiting to see her doctor  
B: 's been waiting . . . one and a half hours
10. A: have Ted and Erica been playing tennis  
B: have been playing tennis . . . two o'clock

◇ PRACTICE 14, p. 76.

- |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|
| 1. B | 4. B | 7. B |
| 2. B | 5. A | 8. A |
| 3. A | 6. A |      |

◇ PRACTICE 15, p. 77.

- |      |      |       |
|------|------|-------|
| 1. B | 5. C | 9. B  |
| 2. D | 6. A | 10. C |
| 3. A | 7. C |       |
| 4. D | 8. D |       |

◇ PRACTICE 16, p. 78.

- |            |                     |
|------------|---------------------|
| 1. yet     | 11. A: yet          |
| 2. yet     | B: still            |
| 3. still   | 12. yet . . . still |
| 4. yet     | 13. already         |
| 5. still   | 14. still           |
| 6. still   | 15. anymore         |
| 7. yet     | 16. still           |
| 8. still   | 17. already         |
| 9. anymore | 18. yet . . . still |
| 10. still  |                     |

◇ PRACTICE 17, p. 79.

- |                         |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| 1. need                 | 13. don't have                               |
| 2. is                   | 14. haven't had                              |
| 3. Have you ever worked | 15. quit                                     |
| 4. have worked          | 16. Are you looking                          |
| 5. had                  | 17. 'm/am going                              |
| 6. did you work         | 18. is looking                               |
| 7. have worked          | 19. 'll/will do                              |
| 8. have never had       | 20. have never looked                        |
| 9. did you like         | 21. 'll/will be ( <i>also possible: is</i> ) |
| 10. didn't like         | 22. don't know                               |
| 11. was                 | 23. 'll/will find                            |
| 12. are you working     | 24. go                                       |

◇ PRACTICE 18, p. 80.

- |                          |                         |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. have already eaten    | 5. had already finished |
| 2. had already eaten     | 6. had already started  |
| 3. have already finished | 7. has already started  |
| 4. had already finished  | 8. had already left     |

◇ PRACTICE 19, p. 81.

1. was raining
2. had stopped
3. was studying
4. had finished
5. was washing
6. had already washed . . . (had) put

◇ PRACTICE 20, p. 82.

- Past perfect verbs:*
- (1) had always watched
  - (2) had always read
  - (3) had never let . . . had always listened
  - (4) had always left
  - (5) 'd/had never put
  - (6) had never shared
- |                       |
|-----------------------|
| 1. had always watched |
| 2. had always read    |
| 3. had never let      |
| 4. had always left    |
| 5. had never put      |
| 6. had never shared   |

◇ PRACTICE 21, p. 83.

1. A: Did you enjoy  
B: hadn't gone
2. A: Did you see  
B: was . . . hadn't seen
3. A: haven't seen  
B: is . . . haven't seen
4. A: Did you get  
B: got . . . had already begun
5. had already gone
6. have painted
7. A: was watching  
B: did you do  
A: ran
8. A: Did you go  
B: got . . . had already made  
A: was  
B: had . . . were eating . . . stopped . . . invited

◇ PRACTICE 22, p. 84.

1. Where have you been? I've **been** waiting for you for an hour.
2. Anna **has** been a soccer fan **for** a long time.
3. Since I **was** a child, I **have** liked to solve puzzles.
4. Have you ever **wanted** to travel around the world?
5. The family **has been** at the hospital since they **heard** about the accident.
6. My sister is only 30 years old, but her hair has **begun** to turn gray.
7. Jake has **worked** as a volunteer at the children's hospital several times.

8. Steve has worn his black suit only once since he ~~has~~ bought it.
9. My cousin **has been** studying for medical school exams since last month.
10. The students **have been** hearing rumors about their teacher's engagement for a week.
11. I don't know the results of my medical tests **yet**. I'll find out soon.
12. Jean has been **trying** to get online to go Internet shopping for an hour.
13. By the time Michelle unlocked the door and got into her apartment, the phone **had** already stopped ringing.

◇ PRACTICE 3, p. 87.

- |                |               |
|----------------|---------------|
| 1. A: Do       | 6. A: Do      |
| B: I don't     | B: they do    |
| 2. A: Is       | 7. A: Is      |
| B: it isn't    | B: it isn't   |
| 3. A: Do       | 8. A: Does    |
| B: they do     | B: it doesn't |
| 4. A: Are      | 9. A: Are     |
| B: I am        | B: I am       |
| 5. A: Are      | 10. A: Does   |
| B: they aren't | B: it does    |

Chapter 5: ASKING QUESTIONS

◇ PRACTICE 1, p. 85.

1. (*your name*)
2. what is your name
3. Is that your first name?
4. What's your last name?
5. How do you spell it?
6. Where are you from?
7. What is your hometown?
8. When did you come here?
9. Why did you come here?
10. What are you studying? (OR What is your major?)
11. How long are you going to stay here?
12. Where are you living?
13. Is it far from school?
14. How far is it?
15. How do you get to school?
16. Do you like it?

◇ PRACTICE 2, p. 86.

- |          | <i>helping verb</i> | <i>subject</i>  | <i>main verb</i>        | <i>rest of sentence</i> |
|----------|---------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Do    | you                 | like            | coffee?                 |                         |
| 2. Does  | Tom                 | like            | coffee?                 |                         |
| 3. Is    | Ann                 | watching        | TV?                     |                         |
| 4. Are   | you                 | having          | lunch with Rob?         |                         |
| 5. Did   | Sara                | walk            | to school?              |                         |
| 6. Was   | Ann                 | taking          | a nap?                  |                         |
| 7. Will  | Ted                 | come            | to the meeting?         |                         |
| 8. Can   | Rita                | ride            | a bicycle?              |                         |
|          | <i>form of be</i>   | <i>subject</i>  | <i>rest of sentence</i> |                         |
| 9. Is    | Ann                 | a good artist?  |                         |                         |
| 10. Were | you                 | at the wedding? |                         |                         |

◇ PRACTICE 4, p. 88.

1. Yes, I do. OR No, I don't.
2. Yes, she does. OR No she doesn't.
3. Yes, I am. OR No, I'm not.
4. Yes, I will. OR No, I won't.
5. Yes, I can. OR No, I can't.
6. Yes, I do. OR No, I don't.
7. Yes, we are. OR No, we aren't.
8. Yes, they can. OR No, they can't.
9. Yes, they should. OR No, they shouldn't.
10. Yes, I did. OR No, I didn't.
11. Yes, I do. OR No, I don't.
12. Yes, it will. OR No, it won't.
13. Yes, it does. OR No, it doesn't.
14. Yes, they were. OR No, they weren't.
15. Yes, he/she should. OR No, he/she shouldn't.
16. Yes, it is. OR No, it isn't.
17. Yes, it was. OR No, it wasn't.

◇ PRACTICE 5, p. 89.

- |                            |                         |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. A: Does Jane eat        | 6. A: Is Tim Wilson     |
| B: she does.               | B: he is.               |
| 2. A: Do                   | 7. A: Will Karen finish |
| B: they don't.             | B: she will.            |
| 3. A: Did Ann and Jim come | 8. A: Can birds swim    |
| B: they didn't.            | B: they can.            |
| 4. A: Are you writing      | 9. A: Have you looked   |
| B: I am.                   | B: I haven't.           |
| 5. A: Were you             |                         |
| B: I wasn't.               |                         |

◇ PRACTICE 6, p. 89.

- |           | <i>question word</i> | <i>helping verb</i> | <i>subject</i> | <i>main verb</i>     | <i>rest of sentence</i> |
|-----------|----------------------|---------------------|----------------|----------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Ø      | Did                  | you                 | hear           | the news yesterday?  |                         |
| 2. When   | did                  | you                 | hear           | the news?            |                         |
| 3. Ø      | Is                   | Eric                | reading        | today's paper?       |                         |
| 4. What   | is                   | Eric                | reading?       | Ø                    |                         |
| 5. Ø      | Did                  | you                 | find           | your wallet?         |                         |
| 6. Where  | did                  | you                 | find           | your wallet?         |                         |
| 7. Why    | does                 | Mr. Li              | walk           | to work?             |                         |
| 8. Ø      | Does                 | Mr. Li              | walk           | to work?             |                         |
| 9. Ø      | Will                 | Ms. Cook            | return         | to her office?       |                         |
| 10. When  | will                 | Ms. Cook            | return         | to her office?       |                         |
| 11. Ø     | Is                   | the orange juice    |                | in the refrigerator? |                         |
| 12. Where | is                   | the orange juice?   |                | Ø                    |                         |

◇ PRACTICE 7, p. 90.

1. What time/When do the fireworks start
2. Why are you waiting
3. When does Rachel start
4. What time/When do you leave
5. Why didn't you get
6. Where can I find
7. When are you leaving
8. When do you expect
9. Where will the spaceship go
10. Where did you study . . . Why did you study . . . Why didn't you go

◇ PRACTICE 8, p. 91.

1. When/What time did you get up
2. Where did you eat lunch
3. When/What time did you eat
4. Why do you eat lunch
5. Where do your aunt and uncle live
6. When are you going to visit
7. When/What time will you get home
8. Where is George going to study
9. Why does George study
10. Where can I catch
11. When/What time do you have to leave
12. Where were you living
13. Why are the students writing
14. What time should I call
15. Why is Yoko

◇ PRACTICE 9, p. 92.

- |                         |                          |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. were you             | 7. didn't you do         |
| 2. can't you come       | 8. isn't Anita coming    |
| 3. did Tom go           | 9. are you and Joe going |
| 4. won't Ann be         | 10. didn't you eat       |
| 5. do you need          | 11. did Jack take        |
| 6. are you going to buy | 12. don't you like       |

◇ PRACTICE 10, p. 93.

1. Who knows Tom?
2. Who(m) does Tom know?
3. Who will help us?
4. Who(m) will you ask?
5. Who(m) is Eric talking to on the phone? OR (formal: To whom is Eric talking on the phone?)
6. Who is knocking on the door?
7. What surprised them?
8. What did Jack say?
9. What did Sue talk about?
10. Who(m) did Ann talk about? OR (formal: About whom did Ann talk?)

◇ PRACTICE 11, p. 94.

1. Who taught
2. What did Robert see
3. Who got
4. What are you making
5. Who does that calculator belong
6. What do you have
7. What did the cat kill
8. What killed the cat
9. What makes
10. Who wrote a note
11. Who(m) did you get a letter

◇ PRACTICE 12, p. 95.

1. A: What does "explore" mean?  
B: "to go to a new place and find out about it."
2. A: What does "underneath" mean?  
B: "under."
3. A: What does "blink" mean?  
B: "to open and close your eyes quickly."
4. A: What does "delicious" mean?  
B: "it tastes very, very, good."

◇ PRACTICE 13, p. 95.

1. What is Alex doing?
2. What should I do
3. What do astronauts do?
4. What are you going to do
5. What do you do
6. What can I do
7. What did Sara do
8. What should I do?
9. What is Emily going to do
10. What did you do
11. What would you like to do (*also possible*: Where would you like to go)
12. What are you trying to do?
13. What does Kevin need to do?
14. What does Nick do?
15. What did he do? . . . What did you do? . . . what did he do?

◇ PRACTICE 14, p. 96.

1. What kind of music
2. What kind of clothes/clothing
3. What kind of food
4. What kind of books
5. What kind of car
6. What kind of government
7. What kind of job
8. What kind of person/man/woman
9. What kind of products/things

◇ PRACTICE 15, p. 97.

- |          |          |
|----------|----------|
| 1. Which | 6. Which |
| 2. What  | 7. What  |
| 3. Which | 8. What  |
| 4. What  | 9. Which |
| 5. Which |          |

◇ PRACTICE 16, p. 98.

- |          |          |
|----------|----------|
| 1. Who   | 5. Who   |
| 2. Whose | 6. Who   |
| 3. Whose | 7. Whose |
| 4. Who   | 8. Whose |

◇ PRACTICE 17, p. 99.

1. Whose house is that?
2. Who's living in that house?
3. Whose umbrella did you borrow?
4. Whose book did you use?
5. Whose book is on the table?
6. Who is on the phone?
7. Who's that?
8. Whose is that?

◇ PRACTICE 18, p. 99.

1. A: hot  
B: hot
2. soon
3. expensive
4. A: busy  
B: busy
5. A: serious  
B: serious
6. safe
7. B: fresh  
A: fresh . . . fresh
8. A: well  
B: well

◇ PRACTICE 19, p. 100.

- |          |           |           |
|----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. far   | 7. long   | 13. long  |
| 2. long  | 8. far    | 14. often |
| 3. often | 9. long   | 15. far   |
| 4. far   | 10. often | 16. long  |
| 5. far   | 11. long  | 17. often |
| 6. often | 12. far   |           |

◇ PRACTICE 20, p. 101.

1. What is Jack doing
2. Who is he playing
3. What is Anna doing
4. What is she throwing
5. What are Anna and Jack holding
6. What is
7. Where are they
8. How long have they been playing
9. Who is winning
10. Who won

◇ PRACTICE 21, p. 102.

1. When will the clean clothes be
2. Where did you go
3. Which dictionary did you buy
4. How long did it take you
5. How can I reach
6. What kind of bread do you like
7. Why didn't you answer
8. Who are you going
9. Who repaired
10. How is the weather

◇ PRACTICE 22, p. 103.

- |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|
| 1. a. don't  | c. is        |
| b. doesn't   | d. weren't   |
| c. don't     | e. was       |
| d. doesn't   | 4. a. hasn't |
| e. isn't     | b. haven't   |
| f. aren't    | c. have      |
| g. does      | d. hasn't    |
| h. is        | e. has       |
| 2. a. didn't | 5. a. can't  |
| b. did       | b. will      |
| c. were      | c. shouldn't |
| d. wasn't    | d. wouldn't  |
| 3. a. aren't | e. do        |
| b. is        | f. didn't    |

◇ PRACTICE 23, p. 104.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. A: haven't you?<br>B: Yes, I have.     | 9. A: doesn't he?<br>B: Yes, he does.      |
| 2. A: has he?<br>B: No, he hasn't.        | 10. A: didn't you?<br>B: Yes, I did.       |
| 3. A: didn't you?<br>B: Yes, I did.       | 11. A: is it?<br>B: No, it isn't.          |
| 4. A: don't you?<br>B: Yes, I do.         | 12. A: does he?<br>B: No, he doesn't.      |
| 5. A: haven't they?<br>B: Yes, they have. | 13. A: do I?<br>B: No, you don't.          |
| 6. A: hasn't she?<br>B: Yes, she has.     | 14. A: is it?<br>B: No, it isn't.          |
| 7. A: is it?<br>B: No, it isn't.          | 15. A: weren't they?<br>B: Yes, they were. |
| 8. A: don't we?<br>B: Yes, we do.         | 16. A: will she?<br>B: No, she won't.      |

◇ PRACTICE 24, p. 105.

1. **Who** saw the car accident?
2. Why **didn't you** say "good-bye" when you left?
3. How about **asking** Julie and Tim to come for dinner Friday night?
4. What time **does** class **begin** today?
5. Why **does** he have no shoes on his feet?  
(also possible: Why **doesn't** he have **any** shoes on his feet?)
6. Where **can you** get a drink of water in this building?
7. What kind of music **do** you like best?
8. How long **does** it **take** to get to the beach from here?
9. She is working late tonight, **isn't** she?
10. **Whose** glasses are those?
11. How **much** tall **is** your father?
12. Who **did** you talk to about registration for next term?
13. How about **we going** to see the baby elephant at the zoo tomorrow?
14. How far **is it** from here to the nearest gas station?

◇ PRACTICE 25, p. 106.

1. When are you going to buy
2. How are you going to pay
3. How long did you have
4. How often do you ride
5. How do you get
6. Are you going to ride
7. Why didn't you ride
8. Does your bike have
9. What kind of bike do you have
10. When did Jason get
11. Who broke
12. What did Billy break
13. Whose new bike is broken
14. How did Billy break
15. Which bicycle is
16. Where do you keep
17. Who does that bike belong to
18. Whose bike did you borrow
19. Where is Rita
20. What is she doing
21. How far did Rita ride
22. How do you spell

## Chapter 6: NOUNS AND PRONOUNS

### ◇ PRACTICE 1, p. 108.

1. Airplanes ... wings
2. Children ... swings
3. animals ... zoos
4. Trees ... branches ... leaves
5. ducks ... geese ... pond ... park
6. babies ... teeth
7. potatoes ... beans ... peas ... tomatoes
8. Opinions ... facts
9. country ... customs
10. Governments ... taxes

### ◇ PRACTICE 2, p. 108.

- |         |          |
|---------|----------|
| 1. /z/  | 7. /əz/  |
| 2. /s/  | 8. /z/   |
| 3. /s/  | 9. /s/   |
| 4. /əz/ | 10. /əz/ |
| 5. /z/  | 11. /z/  |
| 6. /z/  | 12. /s/  |

### ◇ PRACTICE 3, p. 108.

- |         |          |
|---------|----------|
| 1. /z/  | 7. /z/   |
| 2. /s/  | 8. /s/   |
| 3. /əz/ | 9. /əz/  |
| 4. /s/  | 10. /s/  |
| 5. /z/  | 11. /əz/ |
| 6. /z/  | 12. /əz/ |

### ◇ PRACTICE 4, p. 109.

1. /z/ ... /z/ ... /z/
2. /əz/ ... /əz/
3. /z/ ... /z/ ... /z/
4. /əz/ ... /z/
5. /z/ ... /əz/
6. /z/ ... /əz/ ... /s/
7. /əz/ ... /əz/
8. /z/ ... /z/ ... /z/

### ◇ PRACTICE 5, p. 109.

- |              |                 |              |
|--------------|-----------------|--------------|
| 1. mouse     | 12. beliefs     | 23. sheep    |
| 2. pockets   | 13. potatoes    | 24. loaf     |
| 3. tooth     | 14. radios      | 25. glasses  |
| 4. tomato    | 15. offspring   | 26. problems |
| 5. fish      | 16. child       | 27. families |
| 6. woman     | 17. seasons     | 28. wives    |
| 7. branches  | 18. customs     | 29. shelves  |
| 8. friends   | 19. businesses  | 30. roofs    |
| 9. duties    | 20. century     | 31. foot     |
| 10. highways | 21. occurrences | 32. women    |
| 11. thieves  | 22. phenomenon  |              |

### ◇ PRACTICE 6, p. 110.

1. cows, sheep, horses, mice, geese
2. potatoes, tomatoes, peas, beans
3. apples, grapes, strawberries, bananas, cherries, pears
4. poppies, daffodils, roses, daisies, lilies
5. babies, sons, daughters, husbands, wives, children

### ◇ PRACTICE 7, p. 111.

1. <sup>S</sup> <sup>V</sup> <sup>O</sup>  
Children play games.
2. <sup>S</sup> <sup>V</sup>  
Fish swim.
3. The <sup>S</sup> <sup>V</sup> <sup>O</sup>  
baby doesn't like her new toys.
4. <sup>S</sup> <sup>V</sup> <sup>O</sup>  
Computers process information quickly.
5. <sup>S</sup> <sup>V</sup> <sup>O</sup>  
Dictionaries give definitions.
6. <sup>S</sup> <sup>V</sup> <sup>O</sup>  
Teachers correct tests.
7. The <sup>S</sup> <sup>V</sup> <sup>O</sup>  
cat found a mouse.
8. The <sup>S</sup> <sup>V</sup>  
sun shines brightly.
9. <sup>S</sup> <sup>V</sup>  
Water evaporates.
10. <sup>V</sup> <sup>S</sup> <sup>V</sup> <sup>O</sup>  
Do snakes lay eggs?
11. The <sup>S</sup> <sup>V</sup> <sup>O</sup>  
child petted the dog.
12. <sup>V</sup> <sup>S</sup> <sup>V</sup>  
Did the phone ring?

### ◇ PRACTICE 8, p. 111.

1. The man opened the door <sup>PREP</sup> <sup>O of PREP</sup>  
with his key.
2. The little girl put her shoes <sup>PREP</sup> <sup>O of PREP</sup>  
on the wrong feet.
3. The student added and subtracted <sup>PREP</sup> <sup>O of PREP</sup>  
with a calculator.
4. My father fixes breakfast <sup>PREP</sup> <sup>O of PREP</sup>  
for my mother every morning.
5. Librarians work <sup>PREP</sup> <sup>O of PREP</sup>  
in libraries.
6. The bird flew <sup>PREP</sup> <sup>O of PREP</sup> <sup>PREP</sup> <sup>O of PREP</sup>  
into the window of the building.
7. I do all my homework <sup>PREP</sup> <sup>O of PREP</sup>  
on a computer.
8. The artist drew scenes <sup>PREP</sup> <sup>O of PREP</sup> <sup>PREP</sup>  
of the beach in his notebook.
9. The children played <sup>PREP</sup> <sup>O of PREP</sup> <sup>PREP</sup>  
in the backyard until dinner.
10. It rained <sup>PREP</sup> <sup>O of PREP</sup>  
for two weeks.
11. The painter splashed paint <sup>PREP</sup> <sup>O of PREP</sup> <sup>PREP</sup>  
on the floor of his studio.
12. A man <sup>PREP</sup> <sup>O of PREP</sup> <sup>PREP</sup> <sup>O of PREP</sup>  
with dark glasses stood near the door.

◇ PRACTICE 9, p. 112.

1. Bridges cross rivers.  
S V O
2. A terrible earthquake occurred in Turkey.  
S V PP
3. Airplanes fly above the clouds.  
S V PP
4. Trucks carry large loads.  
S V O
5. Rivers flow toward the sea.  
S V PP
6. Salespeople treat customers with courtesy.  
S V O PP
7. Bacteria can cause diseases.  
S V O
8. Clouds are floating across the sky.  
S V PP
9. The audience in the theater applauded the performers  
PP PP V O  
at the end of the show.
10. Helmets protect bicyclists from serious injuries.  
S V O PP

◇ PRACTICE 10, p. 112.

- |       |       |        |        |
|-------|-------|--------|--------|
| 1. in | 5. at | 9. at  | 13. in |
| 2. in | 6. at | 10. at | 14. in |
| 3. on | 7. in | 11. in | 15. on |
| 4. on | 8. on | 12. on |        |

◇ PRACTICE 11, p. 113.

- |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|
| 1. 3 | 4. 2 | 7. 2 |
| 1    | 1    | 3    |
| 2    | 3    | 1    |
| 2. 1 | 5. 1 | 8. 3 |
| 2    | 3    | 1    |
| 3    | 2    | 2    |
| 3. 2 | 6. 3 | 9. 2 |
| 3    | 1    | 1    |
| 1    | 2    | 3    |

◇ PRACTICE 12, p. 114.

- |        |       |        |
|--------|-------|--------|
| 1. are | 5. is | 9. are |
| 2. are | 6. is | 10. is |
| 3. are | 7. is |        |
| 4. is  | 8. is |        |

◇ PRACTICE 13, p. 114.

- |         |          |          |
|---------|----------|----------|
| 1. make | 5. are   | 9. needs |
| 2. need | 6. comes | 10. go   |
| 3. Do   | 7. is    | 11. work |
| 4. are  | 8. are   | 12. are  |

◇ PRACTICE 14, p. 114.

- |              |            |                       |
|--------------|------------|-----------------------|
| 1. old       | 9. hard    | 17. cheap/inexpensive |
| 2. old       | 10. narrow | 18. light             |
| 3. cold/cool | 11. clean  | 19. light             |
| 4. slow      | 12. empty  | 20. public            |
| 5. happy     | 13. safe   | 21. right             |
| 6. bad       | 14. noisy  | 22. right             |
| 7. wet       | 15. deep   | 23. strong            |
| 8. easy      | 16. sour   | 24. long              |

◇ PRACTICE 15, p. 115.

- |     |                  |   |                          |
|-----|------------------|---|--------------------------|
|     | <i>adjective</i> | → | <i>noun it describes</i> |
| 1.  | loud             | → | voice                    |
| 2.  | sweet            | → | Sugar                    |
| 3.  | easy             | → | test                     |
| 4.  | free             | → | Air                      |
| 5.  | delicious        | → | food                     |
|     | Mexican          | → | restaurant               |
| 6.  | important        | → | facts                    |
|     | wide             | → | variety                  |
| 7.  | sick             | → | child                    |
| 8.  | sick             | → | child                    |
|     | warm             | → | bed                      |
|     | hot              | → | tea                      |
| 9.  | camping          | → | equipment                |
|     | old, rusty       | → | equipment                |
| 10. | hungry           | → | bear                     |
|     | garbage          | → | cans                     |
| 11. | elderly          | → | father                   |
|     | nursing          | → | care                     |
| 12. | fresh            | → | coffee                   |
|     | warm             | → | cookies                  |

◇ PRACTICE 16, p. 116.

- |                        |                     |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. newspaper articles  | 11. brick walls     |
| 2. page numbers        | 12. egg cartons     |
| 3. paper money         | 13. mountain views  |
| 4. apartment buildings | 14. pocket knives   |
| 5. computer disks      | 15. traffic lights  |
| 6. birthday presents   | 16. picnic tables   |
| 7. rose gardens        | 17. apple pies      |
| 8. key chains          | 18. bicycle helmets |
| 9. city governments    | 19. log cabins      |
| 10. duck ponds         | 20. steel bridges   |

◇ PRACTICE 17, p. 117.

1. mountains
2. Cats ... mice
3. Mosquitoes/Mosquitos ... insects
4. eyelashes
5. Geese ... ducks
6. programs
7. Forests ... fires ... fires ... animals
8. knives ... weapons
9. manners
10. tickets
11. lives ... ways ... years ... lamps ... candles ...  
houses ... chickens ... fires
12. kinds ... flowers
13. reporters ... jobs
14. universities
15. students
16. animals ... horses ... zebras [NOTE: deer is already  
plural]
17. students ... experiments ... classes
18. Houseflies ... pests ... germs
19. articles ... experiences
20. devices ... batteries ... flashlights ... calculators ...  
radios ... recorders ... kinds ... toys ... batteries

◇ PRACTICE 18, p. 118

- The teacher helped <sup>o of v</sup> me with the lesson.
- <sup>s</sup> I carry a dictionary with <sup>o of PREP</sup> me at all times.
- Mr. Fong has a computer. <sup>s</sup> He uses <sup>o of v</sup> it for many things. <sup>s</sup> It helps <sup>o of v</sup> him in many ways.
- Jessica went to Hawaii with Ann and <sup>o of PREP</sup> me. <sup>s</sup> We like <sup>o of v</sup> her, and <sup>s</sup> she likes <sup>o of v</sup> us. <sup>s</sup> We had a good time with <sup>o of PREP</sup> her.
- Mike had dirty socks. <sup>s</sup> He washed <sup>o of v</sup> them in the kitchen sink and hung <sup>o of v</sup> them to dry in front of the window. <sup>s</sup> They dried quickly.
- Joseph and <sup>s</sup> I are close friends. No bad feelings will ever come between <sup>o of PREP</sup> him and <sup>o of PREP</sup> me. <sup>s</sup> He and <sup>s</sup> I share a strong bond of friendship.

◇ PRACTICE 19, p. 118.

- pronoun* → *noun/noun phrase*
- She → Janet  
it → a green apple
  - her → Betsy
  - They → Nick and Rob
  - They → phone messages
  - him → Louie  
He → Louie  
her → Alice  
She → Alice
  - She → Jane  
it → letter  
them → Mr. and Mrs. Moore  
They → Mr. and Mrs. Moore  
her → Jane

◇ PRACTICE 20, p. 119.

- me
- He
- him
- he
- her
- She
- me ... He ... us
- her ... They
- I ... They ... us ...  
it ... We ... them
- them
- me ... him
- she
- I ... him and me
- them ... They ... her  
... it ... She
- me ... him
- me ... him
- me ... he ... him ...  
us ... We ... We ...  
him ... he

◇ PRACTICE 21, p. 120.

- friend's
- friends'
- son's
- sons'
- baby's
- babies'
- child's
- children's
- person's
- people's
- teacher's
- teachers'
- man's
- men's
- earth's

◇ PRACTICE 22, p. 120.

- Dan's
- (no change)
- Jack's
- (no change)
- roommate's
- roommates'
- (no change)
- Betty's ... sister's
- sisters'
- woman's
- women's ... men's
- Jupiter's surface
- Mercury's atmosphere
- Mars'/Mars's surface ...  
Earth's surface
- Earth's twin ...  
Venus'/Venus's surface
- planets' ... Jupiter's son  
... Venus'/Venus's son

◇ PRACTICE 23, p. 122.

- your ... yours
- her ... hers
- his ... his
- your ... yours
- their ... our ... theirs ... ours

◇ PRACTICE 24, p. 122.

- her
- hers
- Our
- Ours
- your
- mine ... my ... yours
- their ... theirs
- mine ... yours
- ours

◇ PRACTICE 25, p. 123.

- myself
- himself
- ourselves
- yourself
- yourselves
- herself
- themselves
- himself
- herself
- myself
- ourselves
- themselves
- herself/himself
- ourselves
- themselves
- herself
- himself
- themselves
- yourself/yourselves

◇ PRACTICE 26, p. 124.

- cut myself
- be proud of yourself
- talks to himself
- taught myself
- blamed herself
- help yourselves
- takes care of himself
- enjoyed themselves
- worked for himself
- introduce themselves

◇ PRACTICE 27, p. 125.

- me ... him
- yourselves
- itself
- its ... its
- hers
- him
- yourself ... your
- our ... our
- ours
- themselves
- itself
- himself

◇ PRACTICE 28, p. 125.

- his ... He ... himself ... he ... him
- Her ... She
- Our ... We
- her
- my ... I
- hers
- mine

8. They ... themselves ... them ... theirs ... Their ... their
9. hers ... his
10. himself ... him ... he ... his ... He ... him
11. her ... she ... herself (*also possible: it*) ... she ... her
12. your ... ours

◇ PRACTICE 29, p. 126.

1. one ... another ... another ... the other
2. one ... another ... the other
3. one ... another ... another ... another ... the other
4. one ... the other
5. one ... another ... another ... another ... another ... the other

◇ PRACTICE 30, p. 127.

- |               |               |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1. another    | c. another    |
| 2. The other  | d. another    |
| 3. The other  | e. another    |
| 4. Another    | 8. another    |
| 5. The other  | 9. The other  |
| 6. a. Another | 10. The other |
| b. the other  | 11. another   |
| 7. a. another |               |
| b. another    |               |

◇ PRACTICE 31, p. 128.

- |               |                       |
|---------------|-----------------------|
| 1. The others | 10. The others        |
| 2. The others | 11. The other         |
| 3. Others     | 12. The other         |
| 4. others     | 13. Others ... other  |
| 5. other      | 14. another ... other |
| 6. Others     | 15. another ... Other |
| 7. Other      | 16. The others        |
| 8. Others     | 17. The other         |
| 9. Other      |                       |

◇ PRACTICE 32, p. 129.

- |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|
| 1. A | 4. B | 7. D |
| 2. C | 5. B | 8. B |
| 3. D | 6. A |      |

◇ PRACTICE 33, p. 130.

- |              |                  |
|--------------|------------------|
| 1. are       | 6. us            |
| 2. potatoes  | 7. its           |
| 3. by myself | 8. our ... yours |
| 4. on ... at | 9. himself       |
| 5. four-week | 10. the others   |

◇ PRACTICE 34, p. 130.

1. Look at those **beautiful** mountains!
2. The children played a **game at the park** on Saturday afternoon.
3. There are two **horses**, several **sheep**, and a cow in the **farmer's** field.
4. The owner of the store is busy **at** the moment.
5. The teacher met **her** students at the park after school.
6. Everyone **wants** peace in the world.
7. I grew up in a **very large** city.
8. This apple tastes sour. Here's some more, so let's try **another** (OR **another one**).

9. Some **trees** lose their **leaves** in the winter.
10. I am going to wear my **brown** shirt ~~is~~ to the party.
11. I hurt **myself** at work last week.
12. Our neighbors invited my friend and **me** to visit **them**.
13. My **husband's** boss works for twelve **hours** every **day**.
14. The students couldn't find **their** books.
15. I always read **magazine** articles while I'm in the waiting room at my **dentist's** office.

## Chapter 7: MODAL AUXILIARIES

◇ PRACTICE 1, p. 132.

- (1) has to = *must*
- (3) can't = *is not able to*  
may = *might*
- (5) couldn't = *was not able to*
- (7) got to = *must*
- (10) have to = *must*
- (12) 'd (had) better = *should*
- (13) ought to = *should*  
has to = *must*
- (17) might = *may*
- (21) ought to = *should*

◇ PRACTICE 2, p. 133.

- |       |              |
|-------|--------------|
| 1. Ø  | 8. to        |
| 2. to | 9. Ø         |
| 3. Ø  | 10. Ø ... Ø  |
| 4. Ø  | 11. to ... Ø |
| 5. Ø  | 12. Ø        |
| 6. to | 13. Ø        |
| 7. Ø  |              |

◇ PRACTICE 3, p. 134.

- |              |             |
|--------------|-------------|
| 1. zebra     | 7. horse    |
| 2. cat       | 8. donkey   |
| 3. Elephants | 9. squirrel |
| 4. Monkeys   | 10. ants    |
| 5. camels    | 11. baby    |
| 6. cow       | 12. women   |

◇ PRACTICE 4, p. 134.

1. may/might ... may not/might not
2. can't
3. can ... may/might ... may not/might not
4. may/might
5. can't
6. may/might ... may/might
7. can't

◇ PRACTICE 5, p. 135.

1. I might take a nap.
2. Maybe she is sick.
3. Maybe there will be time later.
4. Our team may win.
5. You might be right.
6. We may hear soon.
7. It may rain.
8. It might snow.
9. Maybe she will come tomorrow.
10. Maybe she is at home right now.

◇ PRACTICE 6, p. 135.

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1. possibility | 6. permission  |
| 2. possibility | 7. possibility |
| 3. permission  | 8. permission  |
| 4. possibility | 9. possibility |
| 5. possibility | 10. permission |

◇ PRACTICE 7, p. 136.

- |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|
| 1. b | 4. a | 7. b |
| 2. b | 5. b | 8. a |
| 3. a | 6. a |      |

◇ PRACTICE 8, p. 137.

- |          |             |
|----------|-------------|
| 1. Can   | 6. A: Could |
| 2. may   | B: May      |
| 3. Would | 7. A: Can   |
| 4. could | B: Will     |
| 5. Can   | 8. Could    |

◇ PRACTICE 9, p. 137.

1. Could/Can/Would
2. Could/May/Can
3. Would/Could/Will
4. Can/May/Could
5. Will/Can/Could

◇ PRACTICE 10, p. 138.

1. shouldn't drive a long distance
2. should quit
3. shouldn't exceed the speed limit
4. shouldn't give too much homework
5. shouldn't miss any classes
6. shouldn't be cruel to animals
7. should always be on time for an appointment
8. shouldn't throw trash out of your car window

◇ PRACTICE 11, p. 138.

1. soak it in cold water . . . wash it in hot water
2. take it back to the store . . . try to fix it herself
3. get a job
4. call the landlord and complain
5. find a new girlfriend
6. send it back to the kitchen . . . eat it

◇ PRACTICE 12, p. 139.

- |      |       |
|------|-------|
| 1. A | 6. C  |
| 2. C | 7. A  |
| 3. B | 8. C  |
| 4. A | 9. B  |
| 5. B | 10. C |

◇ PRACTICE 13, p. 140.

- |      |      |
|------|------|
| 1. C | 5. B |
| 2. A | 6. A |
| 3. D | 7. D |
| 4. C | 8. C |

◇ PRACTICE 14, p. 140.

- |                 |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. have to/must | 5. has to       |
| 2. had to       | 6. had to       |
| 3. have to/must | 7. have to/must |
| 4. had to       | 8. had to       |

◇ PRACTICE 15, p. 141.

- |            |            |
|------------|------------|
| 1. had to  | 4. had to  |
| 2. had to  | 5. have to |
| 3. have to | 6. had to  |

◇ PRACTICE 16, p. 141.

- |                         |                 |
|-------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. had to study         | 4. had to see   |
| 2. had to turn off      | 5. had to be    |
| 3. Did you have to work | 6. had to close |

◇ PRACTICE 17, p. 141.

- |                  |                   |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 1. must not      | 9. must not       |
| 2. don't have to | 10. don't have to |
| 3. don't have to | 11. don't have to |
| 4. don't have to | 12. must not      |
| 5. must not      | 13. must not      |
| 6. don't have to | 14. must not      |
| 7. must not      | 15. don't have to |
| 8. must not      |                   |

◇ PRACTICE 18, p. 143.

- |                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. must/have to    | 5. doesn't have to |
| 2. doesn't have to | 6. must/has to     |
| 3. don't have to   | 7. must not        |
| 4. must/has to     |                    |

◇ PRACTICE 19, p. 143.

- People have to/must . . .*  
eat and drink in order to live  
pay taxes  
stop when they see a police car's lights behind them
- People must not . . .*  
fall asleep while driving  
drive without a license  
take other people's belongings
- People don't have to . . .*  
cook every meal themselves  
say "sir" or "madam" to others  
stay in their homes in the evening

◇ PRACTICE 20, p. 144.

- |      |      |
|------|------|
| 1. 2 | 6. 2 |
| 2. 1 | 7. 2 |
| 3. 1 | 8. 2 |
| 4. 2 | 9. 1 |
| 5. 1 |      |

◇ PRACTICE 21, p. 144.

- |                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| 1. Wait            | 6. Don't cross                         |
| 2. Don't wait      | 7. Don't stand . . . Do                |
| 3. Read            | 8. Call                                |
| 4. Don't put       | 9. Take . . . Go . . . Walk . . . give |
| 5. Come . . . have | 10. Capitalize . . . Put . . . use     |

◇ PRACTICE 22, p. 145.

- |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. 1 | 2. 2 | 3. 2 | 4. 4 |
| 4    | 1    | 1    | 2    |
| 3    | 4    |      | 1    |
| 2    | 3    |      | 3    |

◇ PRACTICE 23, p. 145.

- |                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| 1. A: go . . . fly<br>B: see | 4. A: get/take<br>B: take . . . save       |
| 2. A: get<br>B: take/ask     | 5. A: stop . . . fill up<br>B: get/pick up |
| 3. A: go<br>B: play          | 6. go . . . call . . . ask/see             |

◇ PRACTICE 24, p. 146.

- |   |                         |
|---|-------------------------|
| 1. prefer                                   | 7. would rather         |
| 2. like                                     | 8. would rather         |
| 3. would rather                             | 9. B: prefer<br>A: like |
| 4. prefer                                   | 10. prefer              |
| 5. would rather                             |                         |
| 6. A: prefer<br>B: likes . . . would rather |                         |

◇ PRACTICE 25, p. 147.

- Kim prefers salad to dessert.
- In general, Nicole likes coffee better than tea.
- Bill would rather teach history than work as a business executive.
- When considering a pet, Sam likes dogs better than cats.
- On a long trip, Susie prefers to drive than (to) ride in the back seat.
- I would rather study in a noisy room than study in a completely quiet room.
- Alex would rather play soccer than baseball.

◇ PRACTICE 26, p. 148.

- |      |       |       |
|------|-------|-------|
| 1. C | 6. C  | 11. B |
| 2. A | 7. B  | 12. B |
| 3. C | 8. C  | 13. A |
| 4. A | 9. B  | 14. C |
| 5. B | 10. C | 15. A |

◇ PRACTICE 27, p. 149.

- Before I left on my trip last month, I **had to** get a passport.
- Could you ~~to~~ bring us more coffee, please?
- Ben can **drive**, but he prefers **to** take the bus.
- My roommate **may be** at home this evening.
- A few of our classmates can't ~~to~~ come to the school picnic.
- Could/Would/Will/Can** you take our picture, please?
- Jane's eyes are red, and she is yawning. She **must be** sleepy.
- Jim would rather **have** Fridays off in the summer than **have/take** a long vacation.
- I **must read** several lengthy books for my literature class.
- Take your warm clothes with you. It **may/might** snow. OR **Maybe it will** snow.
- When the baby went to the doctor last week, she **had to have** several shots.
- It's very cool in here. Please ~~you~~ turn up the heat. OR **Would/Could/Will/Can** you please turn up the heat?
- You had better ~~to~~ call us before you come over. We're often away during the day.
- The children would rather ~~to~~ see the circus than a baseball game.
- It's such a gorgeous day. Why **don't we** go to a park or the beach?

◇ PRACTICE 28, p. 150.

- may . . . is . . . can . . . can
- should . . . can . . . should . . . should not . . . is . . . Will
- do not have to . . . do not have to . . . can
- have to . . . cannot . . . must . . . do . . . is . . . can . . . should
- ought to . . . prepare
- are . . . might . . . may . . . Maybe . . . could . . . is . . . are . . . should
- should . . . will . . . can change . . . should . . . should . . . should
- is . . . should

Chapter 8: CONNECTING IDEAS

◇ PRACTICE 1, p. 152.

- The farmer has a <sup>noun</sup> cow, a <sup>noun</sup> goat, and a black <sup>noun</sup> horse.
- Danny is a <sup>adj.</sup> bright and <sup>adj.</sup> happy child.
- I <sup>verb</sup> picked up the telephone and <sup>verb</sup> dialed Steve's number.
- The cook <sup>verb</sup> washed the vegetables and <sup>verb</sup> put them in boiling water.
- My feet were <sup>adj.</sup> cold and <sup>adj.</sup> wet.
- Anita is <sup>adj.</sup> responsible, <sup>adj.</sup> considerate, and <sup>adj.</sup> trustworthy.
- The three largest land animals are the <sup>noun</sup> elephant, <sup>noun</sup> the rhinoceros, and the <sup>noun</sup> hippopotamus.
- A hippopotamus <sup>verb</sup> rests in water during the day and <sup>verb</sup> feeds on land at night.

◇ PRACTICE 2, p. 153.

- (no commas)
- I opened the door, walked into the room, and sat down at my desk.
- (no commas)
- Their flag is green, black, and yellow.
- (no commas)
- Tom made a sandwich, poured a glass of juice, and sat down to eat his lunch.
- Ms. Parker is intelligent, friendly, and kind.
- (no commas)
- Did you bring copies of the annual report for Sue, Dan, Joe, and Mary?
- (no commas)
- Can you watch television, listen to the radio, and read the newspaper at the same time?
- (no commas)
- Doctors save lives, relieve suffering, and cure diseases.
- The restaurant served a five-course dinner: soup, fish, entrée, salad, and dessert.
- (no commas)
- An invitation should include your name, address, the date, the time, the purpose of the party, and any special activities such as swimming or dancing.

◇ PRACTICE 3, p. 153.

1. Birds fly, and fish swim.
2. Birds fly. Fish swim.
3. Dogs bark. Lions roar.
4. Dogs bark, and lions roar.
5. A week has seven days. A year has 365 days.
6. A week has seven days, and a year has 365 days.
7. Ahmed raised his hand, and the teacher pointed at him.
8. Ahmed raised his hand. The teacher pointed at him.

◇ PRACTICE 4, p. 154.

1. I
2. C
3. C
4. I
5. I
6. C
7. C
8. C
9. I

◇ PRACTICE 5, p. 154.

1. I talked to Amy for a long time, but she didn't listen.
2. (no change)
3. (no change)
4. (no change)
5. Please call Jane, Ted, or Anna.
6. Please call Jane, Ted, and Anna.
7. I waved at my friend, but she didn't see me.
8. I waved at my friend, and she waved back.
9. (no change)
10. (no change)
11. My test was short and easy, but Ali's test was hard.

◇ PRACTICE 6, p. 155.

1. C
2. B
3. A
4. C
5. B
6. C
7. A
8. C

◇ PRACTICE 7, p. 155.

1. (no change)
2. I washed the dishes, and my son dried them.
3. I called their house, but no one answered the phone.
4. (no change)
5. I bought some apples, peaches, and bananas.
6. I was hungry, so I ate an apple.
7. (no change)
8. (no change)
9. My daughter is affectionate, shy, independent, and smart.
10. It started to rain, so we went inside and watched television.

◇ PRACTICE 8, p. 156.

1. . . . Every air traffic controller worldwide uses English, so it is important for Gina to become fluent in the language.

2. Gina has decided to take some intensive English courses at a private language institute, but she isn't sure which one to attend. There are many schools available, and they offer many different kinds of classes.
3. Gina has also heard of air traffic control schools that include English as part of their coursework, but she needs to have a fairly high level of English to attend.
4. Gina needs to decide soon, or the classes will be full . . . .

◇ PRACTICE 9, p. 156.

1. There are over 100,000 kinds of flies. They live throughout the world.
2. I like to get mail from my friends and family. Mail is important to me.
3. We are all connected by our humanity. We need to help each other. We can all live in peace.
4. There was a bad flood in Hong Kong. The streets became raging streams. Luckily no one died in the flood.
5. People have used needles since prehistoric times. The first buttons appeared almost two thousand years ago. Zippers are a relatively recent invention. The zipper was invented in 1890.

◇ PRACTICE 10, p. 157.

1. James has a cold. He needs to rest and drink plenty of fluids, so he should go to bed and drink water, fruit juices, or soda pop. He needs to sleep a lot, so he shouldn't drink fluids with caffeine, such as tea or coffee.
2. My friend and I were tired, so we went home early. We wanted to stay until the end of the game, but it got too late for us. Both of us had to get up early in the morning and go to our jobs.
3. The normal pulse for an adult is between 60 and 80 beats per minute, but exercise, nervousness, excitement, and a fever will all make a pulse beat faster. The normal pulse for a child is around 80 to 90.
4. Many famous explorers throughout history set out on their hazardous journeys in search of gold, silver, jewels, or other treasures, but some explorers wanted only to discover information about their world.
5. Edward Fox was a park ranger for thirty-five years. During that time, he was hit by lightning eight times. The lightning never killed him, but it severely burned his skin and damaged his hearing.
6. The Indian Ocean is bordered on four sides by the continents of Africa, Asia, Australia, and Antarctica. Some of the important ports are Aden, Bombay, Calcutta, and Rangoon.
7. The Indian Ocean has many fish and shellfish, but it has less commercial fishing than the Atlantic or the Pacific. The climate of the Indian Ocean is tropical, so fish spoil quickly out of the water. It is difficult and expensive for commercial fishing boats to keep fish fresh.

◇ PRACTICE 11, p. 157.

- |            |           |           |
|------------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. did     | 10. are   | 19. does  |
| 2. does    | 11. will  | 20. don't |
| 3. didn't  | 12. am    | 21. can't |
| 4. do      | 13. won't | 22. don't |
| 5. does    | 14. will  | 23. is    |
| 6. doesn't | 15. can   | 24. does  |
| 7. wasn't  | 16. has   | 25. did   |
| 8. is      | 17. did   | 26. is    |
| 9. isn't   | 18. would | 27. isn't |

◇ PRACTICE 12, p. 158.

1. does Tom . . . does too
2. does Brian . . . Brian doesn't
3. was I . . . I was
4. is Oregon . . . Oregon is
5. did Jean . . . Jean did
6. did Jason . . . Jason didn't
7. can Rick . . . Rick can't
8. does Laura . . . Laura does
9. does Alice . . . Alice doesn't
10. are porpoises . . . porpoises are
11. have I . . . I haven't
12. does my brother . . . my brother does
13. will Erin . . . Erin won't

◇ PRACTICE 13, p. 160.

PART I.

- |                   |                    |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1. can't either   | 7. couldn't either |
| 2. does too       | 8. did too         |
| 3. doesn't either | 9. can't either    |
| 4. is too         | 10. does too       |
| 5. wasn't either  | 11. would too      |
| 6. didn't either  |                    |

PART II.

- |                 |                  |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 12. so is       | 18. neither is   |
| 13. neither do  | 19. so does      |
| 14. neither did | 20. so is        |
| 15. so are      | 21. neither have |
| 16. so do       | 22. so did       |
| 17. so is       | 23. neither did  |

◇ PRACTICE 14, p. 161.

1. Mr. Tanaka was late for work because <sup>S</sup> [he] <sup>V</sup> [missed] the bus.
2. I closed the door because <sup>S</sup> the [room] <sup>V</sup> [was] cold.
3. Because <sup>S</sup> [I] <sup>V</sup> [lost] my umbrella, I got wet on the way home.
4. Joe didn't bring his book to class because <sup>S</sup> [he] <sup>V</sup> [couldn't find] it.
5. The teacher couldn't hear the question because <sup>S</sup> the <sup>V</sup> [class] <sup>V</sup> [was] so noisy.
6. Because <sup>S</sup> the [ice cream] <sup>V</sup> [was beginning] to melt, I put it back in the freezer.

◇ PRACTICE 15, p. 161.

1. I opened the window because the room was hot. **We** felt more comfortable then.
2. Because his coffee was cold, Jack didn't finish it. **He** left it on the table and walked away.
3. Because the weather was bad, we canceled our trip into the city. **We** stayed home and watched TV.
4. Debbie is a cheerleader. **She** woke up in the morning with a sore throat because she had cheered loudly at the basketball game.
5. Francisco is an intelligent and ambitious young man. **Because** he hopes to get a good job late in life, he is working hard to get a good education now.

◇ PRACTICE 16, p. 161.

1. *lose weight*—Eric went on a diet because he wanted to lose weight.
2. *didn't have money*—The family couldn't buy food because they didn't have money.
3. *have several children*—Our neighbors are very busy because they have several children.
4. *be tired*—Because I am tired, I am going to bed.
5. *exercise every day*—Because Susan exercises every day, she is in great shape.
6. *have a high fever*—Because Jennifer has a high fever, she is going to the doctor.

◇ PRACTICE 17, p. 162.

1. a. He was hungry, **so** he ate a sandwich.  
b. **Because** he was hungry, he ate a sandwich.  
c. He ate a sandwich **because** he was hungry.
2. a. **Because** my sister was tired, she went to bed.  
b. My sister went to bed **because** she was tired.  
c. My sister was tired, **so** she went to bed.
3. a. **Because** human beings have opposable thumbs, they can easily pick things up and hold them.  
b. Human beings have opposable thumbs, **so** they can easily pick things up and hold them.  
c. Human beings can easily pick things up and hold them **because** they have opposable thumbs.
4. a. Schoolchildren can usually identify Italy easily on a world map **because** it is shaped like a boot.  
b. **Because** Italy has the distinctive shape of a boot, schoolchildren can usually identify it easily.  
c. Italy has the distinctive shape of a boot, **so** schoolchildren can usually identify it easily on a map.

◇ PRACTICE 18, p. 163.

- |               |                  |
|---------------|------------------|
| 1. like       | 5. didn't change |
| 2. don't like | 6. didn't pass   |
| 3. is         | 7. ate           |
| 4. stayed     | 8. were          |

◇ PRACTICE 19, p. 164.

- |      |      |       |
|------|------|-------|
| 1. B | 5. A | 9. A  |
| 2. A | 6. A | 10. A |
| 3. A | 7. B | 11. B |
| 4. B | 8. B | 12. A |

◇ PRACTICE 20, p. 165.

- |                |                                     |
|----------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. because     | 7. Even though                      |
| 2. even though | 8. even though                      |
| 3. even though | 9. because                          |
| 4. Even though | 10. even though                     |
| 5. Because     | 11. because . . . Even though . . . |
| 6. Because     | because                             |

◇ PRACTICE 21, p. 166.

- |      |       |       |
|------|-------|-------|
| 1. C | 6. C  | 11. C |
| 2. C | 7. B  | 12. A |
| 3. B | 8. A  | 13. C |
| 4. B | 9. A  |       |
| 5. C | 10. B |       |

◇ PRACTICE 22, p. 168.

- I don't drink coffee, and my roommate **doesn't** either.
- The flight was overbooked, so I had to fly on another airline. OR The flight was overbooked. I had to fly on another airline.
- Many people use computers for e-mail, the Internet, and word processing.
- The room was stuffy and hot, but I didn't close the window.
- The baby woke up crying **because** her diaper was wet.
- Even **though** my father works two jobs, he always has time to play soccer or baseball on weekends with his family.
- I saw a bad accident, and my sister **did** too.
- Oscar always pays his bills on time, but his brother **doesn't**.
- Even though** my mother is afraid of heights, I took her up to the observation deck at the top of the building.
- Janey doesn't like to get up early, and Joe **doesn't** either. OR Janey doesn't like to get up early, and **neither does** Joe.
- Although it was raining quite hard, ~~but~~ we decided to go for a bike ride. OR ~~Although~~ It was raining quite hard, but we decided to go for a bike ride.
- My mother and my father/~~They~~ immigrated to this country 30 years ago.
- Because** Maya is very intelligent, her parents want to put her in an advanced program at school.

Chapter 9: COMPARISONS

◇ PRACTICE 1, p. 169.

- (just) as busy as Jason (is)
- (nearly) as busy as Jason (is)
- (nearly) as tired as Susan (was)
- (nearly) as tired as Susan (was)
- (just) as large as/as big as Po's (is)
- (nearly) as big as Anna's (is)

◇ PRACTICE 2, p. 169.

- aren't as noisy as
- is as lazy as
- aren't as strong as
- is as tall as
- isn't as comfortable as
- isn't as big as

- was as nervous as
- isn't as fresh and clean as
- am not as ambitious as
- aren't as interesting as

◇ PRACTICE 3, p. 170.

PART I.

- not nearly as
- almost as / not quite as
- not nearly as
- just as

PART II.

- just as
- not nearly as
- almost as / not quite as
- not nearly as

PART III.

- just as
- not nearly as
- almost as / not quite as

PART IV.

- just as
- almost as
- just as
- not nearly as
- almost as / not quite as

◇ PRACTICE 4, p. 172.

- |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|
| 1. E | 4. G | 7. F |
| 2. C | 5. B | 8. A |
| 3. D | 6. H |      |

◇ PRACTICE 5, p. 172.

PART I.

- as snow
- as ice
- as a picture
- as a bat
- as a bone
- as a pillow
- as a wink
- as a mouse
- as a bird
- as pie

PART II.

- cold as ice
- quick as a wink
- blind as a bat
- white as snow
- quiet as a mouse
- pretty as a picture
- easy as pie
- free as a bird
- soft as a pillow
- dry as a bone

◇ PRACTICE 6, p. 174.

- stronger . . . the strongest
- more important . . . the most important
- softer . . . the softest
- lazier . . . the laziest
- more wonderful . . . the most wonderful
- calmer . . . the calmest
- tamer . . . the tamest
- dimmer . . . the dimmest
- more convenient . . . the most convenient
- more clever/cleverer . . . the most clever/the cleverest
- better . . . the best
- worse . . . the worst
- farther . . . the farthest
- slower . . . the slowest
- more slowly . . . the most slowly

◇ PRACTICE 7, p. 174.

- |                        |                         |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. colder than         | 8. worse than           |
| 2. older than          | 9. faster than          |
| 3. more expensive than | 10. more important      |
| 4. larger              | 11. quicker than        |
| 5. hotter than         | 12. heavier             |
| 6. slower than         | 13. safer than          |
| 7. creamier than       | 14. more difficult than |

◇ PRACTICE 8, p. 175.

- |                             |                 |
|-----------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. colder                   | 6. more softly  |
| 2. more generous            | 7. softer       |
| 3. more slowly              | 8. more careful |
| 4. more comfortable         | 9. prettier     |
| 5. friendlier/more friendly | 10. lazier      |

◇ PRACTICE 9, p. 176.

- |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|
| 1. the worst | 5. the worst |
| 2. worse     | 6. worse     |
| 3. the best  | 7. the worst |
| 4. better    | 8. better    |

◇ PRACTICE 10, p. 176.

- |         |      |
|---------|------|
| 1. A, B | 4. B |
| 2. B    | 5. B |
| 3. A, B | 6. B |

◇ PRACTICE 11, p. 177.

- |                         |                         |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. more slowly (ADV)    | 6. more polite (ADJ)    |
| 2. slower (ADJ)         | 7. more careful (ADJ)   |
| 3. more serious (ADJ)   | 8. more carefully (ADV) |
| 4. more seriously (ADV) | 9. more clearly (ADV)   |
| 5. more politely (ADV)  | 10. clearer (ADJ)       |

◇ PRACTICE 12, p. 177.

- |            |            |
|------------|------------|
| 1. I did   | 6. he will |
| 2. she is  | 7. he does |
| 3. I do    | 8. he has  |
| 4. she did | 9. she did |
| 5. I was   | 10. he can |

◇ PRACTICE 13, p. 178.

- | <i>formal</i> | <i>informal</i> |
|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. I am       | me              |
| 2. he is      | him             |
| 3. I am       | me              |
| 4. she is     | her             |
| 5. I am       | me              |
| 6. I am       | me              |

◇ PRACTICE 14, p. 179.

- |            |            |
|------------|------------|
| 1. A       | 6. A       |
| 2. B, C, D | 7. B, C, D |
| 3. A       | 8. A       |
| 4. B, C, D | 9. B, C, D |
| 5. B, C, D |            |

◇ PRACTICE 15, p. 179.

1. (no change possible using **less**)
2. I visit my brother less often than I visit my sister.
3. (no change possible using **less**)
4. Sam is less generous than his brother.
5. I'm less eager to go to the circus than the children are.
6. A notebook is less expensive than a textbook.
7. (no change possible using **less**)
8. Some people think that life in a city is less peaceful than life in a small town.
9. (no change possible using **less**)
10. I travel to Europe on business less frequently than I used to.

◇ PRACTICE 16, p. 180.

1. Sam enjoys football more than his best friend **does**.
2. OK
3. The coach helped Anna more than Nancy **did**. OR The coach helped Anna more than she/he **helped** Nancy.
5. Sara likes tennis more than her husband **does**.
5. OK
6. OK
7. Charles knows Judy better than Kevin **does**. OR Charles knows Judy better than he **knows** Kevin.

◇ PRACTICE 17, p. 180.

1. more newspapers (NOUN)
2. more homework (NOUN)
3. more snow (NOUN)
4. more friends (NOUN)
5. more pleasant/pleasanter (ADJ)
6. more easily (ADV)
7. more books (NOUN)
8. more carefully (ADV)
9. louder (ADJ)

◇ PRACTICE 18, p. 181.

1. better and better
2. bigger and bigger
3. colder and colder
4. louder and louder
5. angrier and angrier/more and more angry
6. longer and longer
7. more and more expensive
8. more and more tired
9. friendlier and friendlier/more and more friendly
10. faster and faster

◇ PRACTICE 19, p. 181.

1. The more . . . the stronger
2. The softer . . . the easier
3. the older . . . the wiser
4. The simpler . . . the more relaxed
5. The longer . . . the more tired
6. The harder . . . the more

◇ PRACTICE 20, p. 182.

1. more he talked, the more bored I became
2. older you are, the more you understand
3. more I thought about it, the more confused I became
4. more polluted the air, the greater the chances of developing respiratory diseases
5. faster he talked, the more confused I became
6. more the fans clapped and cheered, the more shots the basketball team made

◇ PRACTICE 21, p. 183.

1. the most familiar
2. the longest necks
3. the largest ears
4. the largest eyes
5. the most intelligent . . . the most intelligent

◇ PRACTICE 22, p. 183.

**PART I.**

1. the most difficult . . . ever
2. the friendliest . . . of
3. the most embarrassing . . . in
4. the wisest . . . ever
5. the best . . . in
6. the most artistic of
7. the hottest . . . in
8. the warmest . . . of
9. the brightest . . . ever
10. the highest . . . in
11. the most knowledgeable . . . of
12. the most important . . . in

**PART II.**

13. the least ambitious of
14. the least expensive . . . ever
15. the least populated . . . in
16. the least amount . . . ever

◇ PRACTICE 23, p. 184.

**PART I.**

1. A pencil . . . a telephone
2. A diamond ring . . . a paper clip
3. A cup of coffee . . . a can of coffee beans
4. Radios and CD players . . . big screen TVs
5. A compact car . . . a house
6. Footballs, soccer balls, and basketballs . . . ping-pong balls

**PART II.**

7. Angel Falls . . . than Niagara Falls
8. Giessbach Falls . . . as Cuquenán Falls
9. Angel Falls . . . of all
10. Niagara Falls . . . as Angel Falls
11. Giessbach Falls . . . as Cuquenán Falls

**PART III.**

12. Air . . . than iron
13. Iron . . . than wood
14. iron . . . of all
15. Air . . . as water
16. air . . . of all
17. Water . . . as air
18. Water and iron . . . than wood

◇ PRACTICE 24, p. 186.

- |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|
| 1. a | 4. a | 7. a |
| 2. b | 5. a | 8. b |
| 3. b | 6. b |      |

◇ PRACTICE 25, p. 186.

- |                               |                               |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. the funniest . . . funnier | 5. happier . . . the happiest |
| 2. sadder . . . the saddest   | 6. more entertaining . . .    |
| 3. the best . . . better book | the most entertaining         |
| 4. more exhausting . . .      | 7. harder . . . the hardest   |
| the most exhausting           | 8. hotter . . . the hottest   |

◇ PRACTICE 26, p. 187.

1. more intelligent than . . . the smartest . . . in
2. the most popular . . . in
3. smaller than
4. More potatoes . . . than

5. the closest . . . faster than
6. the largest . . . in . . . the smallest . . . of
7. more important than . . . less important than
8. more information
9. kinder . . . more generous
10. more honest . . . than
11. the worst
12. the safest
13. faster . . . than
14. bigger than
15. more extensive . . . than

◇ PRACTICE 27, p. 188.

- |                                |                               |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. safer . . . than            | 9. the worst . . . in         |
| 2. the largest . . . in        | 10. harder than               |
| 3. more strength than          | 11. lowest                    |
| 4. better                      | 12. the most complex          |
| 5. shortest                    | . . . in                      |
| 6. thinner . . . juicier       | 13. the funniest of           |
| 7. more comfortable . . . than | 14. More people . . . than    |
| 8. the most difficult of       | 15. less expensive . . . than |

◇ PRACTICE 28, p. 189.

- |          |          |           |
|----------|----------|-----------|
| 1. alike | 5. like  | 9. like   |
| 2. like  | 6. like  | 10. alike |
| 3. alike | 7. alike |           |
| 4. alike | 8. like  |           |

◇ PRACTICE 29, p. 190.

- |         |          |
|---------|----------|
| 1. from | 7. to    |
| 2. to   | 8. as    |
| 3. as   | 9. to    |
| 4. from | 10. from |
| 5. as   | 11. as   |
| 6. to   | 12. from |

◇ PRACTICE 30, p. 190.

**PART I.**

1. A is like D.
2. A and D are alike.
3. C is similar to A and D.
4. B is different from A, C, and D.

**PART II.**

5. similar to
6. the same as
7. different
8. the same as
9. different from

◇ PRACTICE 31, p. 191.

1. like
2. like
3. alike
4. A: alike  
B: alike/the same . . . the same . . . the same
5. like
6. A: like  
B: similar to
7. alike . . . alike . . . different
8. the same . . . the same . . . different

◇ PRACTICE 32, p. 192.

1. My brother is older **than** me.
2. A sea is ~~more~~ deeper than a lake.
3. A donkey isn't as big **as** a horse.
4. Ellen is **the** happiest person I've ever met.
5. When I feel embarrassed, my face gets **redder** and **redder**.
6. One of **the** largest **animals** in the world is the hippopotamus.
7. The traffic on the highway is **worse** ~~from~~ than it was a few months ago.
8. Jack is the same **age as** Jerry.
9. Peas are similar **to** beans, but they have several differences.
10. Last winter was pretty mild. This winter is cold and rainy. It's much **rainier** than last winter.
11. Mrs. Peters, the substitute teacher, is **friendlier** than the regular instructor.
12. Although alligators and crocodiles are similar, alligators are **not as big as** crocodiles. OR alligators are **smaller** than crocodiles.
13. Mohammed and Tarek come from different countries, but they became friends easily because they speak **the** same language, Arabic.
14. Mothers of young children are **busier** than mothers of teenagers.
15. We'd like to go sailing, but the wind is not as strong today **as** it was yesterday.
16. We asked for a non-smoking room, but the air and furniture in our hotel room smelled **like** cigarette smoke.

Chapter 10: THE PASSIVE

◇ PRACTICE 1, p. 193.

<i>verb</i>	<i>active/passive</i>
1. grow	active
2. is grown	passive
3. wrote	active
4. was written	passive
5. explained	active
6. was explained	passive
7. are designed	passive
8. design	active

◇ PRACTICE 2, p. 193.

1. is delivered
2. has been eaten
3. was written
4. is going to be fixed
5. will be taught
6. is going to be brought
7. was won
8. will be treated
9. have been planted
10. are caught

◇ PRACTICE 3, p. 194.

- |            |            |             |
|------------|------------|-------------|
| 1. brought | 10. left   | 19. spent   |
| 2. built   | 11. lost   | 20. taken   |
| 3. bought  | 12. made   | 21. taught  |
| 4. eaten   | 13. found  | 22. gone    |
| 5. planned | 14. played | 23. visited |
| 6. given   | 15. read   | 24. worn    |
| 7. grown   | 16. saved  | 25. written |
| 8. hit     | 17. sent   | 26. done    |
| 9. hurt    | 18. spoken |             |

◇ PRACTICE 4, p. 194.

- |                           |                          |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. was eaten              | 7. will be played        |
| 2. is spoken              | 8. can be taught         |
| 3. are written            | 9. are going to be taken |
| 4. was hurt               | 10. have been grown      |
| 5. is going to be visited | 11. is worn              |
| 6. has been read          | 12. will be built        |

◇ PRACTICE 5, p. 195.

- |      |      |
|------|------|
| 1. a | 4. b |
| 2. b | 5. b |
| 3. b | 6. a |

◇ PRACTICE 6, p. 196.

**PART I.**

1. are collected
2. are written
3. is grown
4. are eaten
5. am paid
6. is understood

**PART II.**

7. were collected
8. was built
9. was written
10. were destroyed

**PART III.**

11. have been visited
12. has been spoken
13. have been read
14. has been worn

**PART IV.**

15. will be discovered
16. will be visited
17. will be saved

**PART V.**

18. is going to be hurt
19. are going to be offered
20. is going to be elected

◇ PRACTICE 7, p. 197.

1. The government collects taxes.
2. Big fish eat small fish.
3. Everyone understands the meaning of a smile.
4. Leo Tolstoy wrote *War and Peace*.
5. The dog chased the cat.
6. XYZ Inc. is going to buy ABC Corporation.
7. Millions of tourists have visited the pyramids in Egypt.
8. Scientists in the twenty-first century will discover new information about the universe.

◇ PRACTICE 8, p. 197.

1. Mr. Rice signed the letter.
2. Did Mr. Foster sign the letter?
3. Ms. Owens sent the fax.
4. Did Mr. Chu send the other fax?
5. Will Mr. Berg meet Adam at the airport?
6. Has Mrs. Jordan invited you to the reception?
7. Mr. Lee has invited me to the reception.
8. Is the teacher going to collect the homework?

◇ PRACTICE 9, p. 198.

- | <i>verb</i>      | <i>object</i> |
|------------------|---------------|
| 1. TRANSITIVE    | a letter      |
| 2. INTRANSITIVE  | (none)        |
| 3. INTRANSITIVE  | (none)        |
| 4. INTRANSITIVE  | (none)        |
| 5. TRANSITIVE    | the ball      |
| 6. INTRANSITIVE  | (none)        |
| 7. INTRANSITIVE  | (none)        |
| 8. TRANSITIVE    | my car        |
| 9. TRANSITIVE    | the book      |
| 10. INTRANSITIVE | (none)        |

◇ PRACTICE 10, p. 198.

- | <i>object</i>   | <i>passive sentence</i>              |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. me           | I was awakened by a noise.           |
| 2. (no change)  |                                      |
| 3. the mistake  | The mistake was discovered by Alice. |
| 4. (no change)  |                                      |
| 5. (no change)  |                                      |
| 6. the chair    | The chair was fixed by Anita.        |
| 7. (no change)  |                                      |
| 8. (no change)  |                                      |
| 9. (no change)  |                                      |
| 10. (no change) |                                      |
| 11. a quiz      | A quiz was announced by the teacher. |
| 12. (no change) |                                      |
| 13. (no change) |                                      |
| 14. (no change) |                                      |

◇ PRACTICE 11, p. 199.

*Passive (checked) sentences:* 2, 4, 6, 9

◇ PRACTICE 12, p. 199.

- | <i>passive verb</i>     | <i>action performed by</i>  |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. are used             | unknown                     |
| 2. was opened           | Shelley                     |
| 3. will be translated   | unknown                     |
| 4. was stolen           | unknown                     |
| 5. were taken           | a professional photographer |
| 6. is going to be built | unknown                     |
| 7. has been rented      | a young family              |
| 8. has been rented      | unknown                     |

◇ PRACTICE 13, p. 200.

*Unnecessary by-phrases:* 1, 3, 6, 8

◇ PRACTICE 14, p. 200.

- The soccer game has been canceled.
- The meeting has been canceled by the president.
- Beer and wine are served at that restaurant.
- I was confused in class yesterday.
- I was confused by the teacher's directions.
- The dishes haven't been washed yet.
- They should be washed soon.
- Was this sweater washed in hot water?
- Wool sweaters should not be washed in hot water.
- I was invited to the party by Luis.
- Have you been invited to the party?

◇ PRACTICE 15, p. 201.

- Sometimes keys are hidden under cars.
- Cats hide under cars.
- Students are taught by teachers.
- Students study a lot.
- Cereal is often eaten at breakfast.
- Cats eat cat food.
- Mice are eaten by cats.
- Songs are sung to children by their mothers.
- Children sing songs in school.
- Thai food is cooked in Thai restaurants.
- Chefs cook in restaurants.

◇ PRACTICE 16, p. 201.

- are considering . . . is being considered
- are watching . . . are being watched
- are painting . . . is being painted
- is fixing . . . is being fixed
- was fixing . . . was being fixed
- are meeting . . . is being met
- were moving . . . was being moved
- were singing . . . was being sung
- are discovering . . . are still being discovered

◇ PRACTICE 17, p. 202.

- is being played
- was being cleaned
- is being built
- is being read
- were being watched
- was being flown

◇ PRACTICE 18, p. 203.

- |      |      |
|------|------|
| 1. b | 4. a |
| 2. b | 5. b |
| 3. b |      |

◇ PRACTICE 19, p. 203.

- | <i>I/C</i> | <i>corrections</i>  |
|------------|---|
| 1. I       | It <del>was</del> happened many years ago.                              |
| 2. C       | (none)  |
| 3. I       | I <b>went</b> to school yesterday.                                      |
| 4. I       | Two firefighters <b>were</b> injured while they were fighting the fire. |
| 5. I       | Sara <del>was</del> accidentally <b>broke</b> the window.               |
| 6. I       | Kara <b>ate</b> a snack when she got home from school.                  |
| 7. C       | (none)  |
| 8. I       | I <del>am</del> agree with you.   |
| 9. I       | The little boy <b>fell</b> down while he was running in the park.       |
| 10. I      | The swimmer <del>was</del> died from a shark attack.                    |
| 11. C      | (none)  |
| 12. I      | I <del>was</del> slept for nine hours last night.                       |

◇ PRACTICE 20, p. 204.

- Class might be canceled.
- Medicine can be prescribed by a doctor.
- This report must be signed by Mr. Hook.
- A new post office may be built on First Street.
- Stamps have to be placed in the upper right-hand corner of an envelope.
- That fence ought to be painted.
- The assignment must be done by all of the students.

◇ PRACTICE 21, p. 204.

1. shouldn't be put off
2. must be written
3. can be taught
4. could be killed
5. ought to be divided
6. must be sold
7. will not be known
8. has to be torn down ... can be built

◇ PRACTICE 22, p. 205.

1. has to be returned
2. should be returned
3. must be sent
4. could be sent
5. should be sent
6. can be put away
7. may be thrown away
8. might be picked up
9. will be cleaned up

◇ PRACTICE 23, p. 205.

- | <i>active/passive</i> | <i>verb</i>       |
|-----------------------|-------------------|
| 1. ACTIVE             | have used         |
| 2. PASSIVE            | have been used    |
| 3. PASSIVE            | are used          |
| 4. ACTIVE             | show              |
| 5. PASSIVE            | is shown          |
| 6. PASSIVE            | were made         |
| 7. PASSIVE            | were worn         |
| 8. ACTIVE             | became            |
| 9. ACTIVE             | wear              |
| 10. PASSIVE           | are sold          |
| 11. PASSIVE           | are made and sold |
| 12. PASSIVE           | is being sold     |
| 13. PASSIVE           | can be bought     |
| 14. ACTIVE            | Do own            |
| 15. PASSIVE           | was made          |

◇ PRACTICE 24, p. 206.

1. is being repaired
2. was being repaired
3. repaired
4. is made
5. should not carry
6. ought to be kept
7. are sent
8. has already been hired
9. must be used ... can produce
10. are manufactured
11. can be used ... can be recycled ... should not be thrown away
12. must be protected
13. can be found

◇ PRACTICE 25, p. 207.

1. are loved ... brings ... are often used ... can be found
2. exist ... are found ... have
3. are carried ... carries ... were introduced
4. are appreciated ... is made ... is gathered ... are eaten
5. are made ... do not come ... are made
6. may be planted ... grown ... survive

◇ PRACTICE 26, p. 207.

**PART I.**

1. to
2. about
3. from
4. of
5. with
6. of
7. with
8. in
9. about
10. with

**PART II.**      **PART III.**

11. in
12. with
13. of
14. to
15. to
16. with
17. from
18. of
19. in
20. with
21. for

◇ PRACTICE 27, p. 208.

1. The little girl is **excited about** her coming birthday party.
2. Mr. and Mrs. Rose **are devoted to** each other.
3. ... I **am** lost.
4. The students are **bored with** their chemistry project.
5. ... **are composed of** recycled products.
6. ... He **is** hurt.
7. How well are you **prepared for** the driver's license test?
8. Mary has been **engaged to** Paul for five years.

◇ PRACTICE 28, p. 209.

1. interesting
2. interested
3. exciting
4. excited
5. fascinated
6. fascinating
7. bored ... confused
8. boring ... confusing
9. interesting
10. fascinating ... surprising

◇ PRACTICE 29, p. 209.

1. boring
2. interested
3. confused
4. exciting
5. confused
6. interesting
7. surprising
8. bored
9. boring
10. fascinating
11. fascinated
12. fascinating
13. embarrassing
14. shocking ... shocked
15. exciting ... excited

◇ PRACTICE 30, p. 211.

1. confusing
2. frustrated
3. confusing
4. embarrassed
5. embarrassing
6. interested
7. interesting
8. exhausting ... tired
9. frightening
10. frightened

◇ PRACTICE 31, p. 211.

*Incorrect sentences:*

1. c
2. a
3. b
4. a
5. c

◇ PRACTICE 32, p. 212.

1. sick
2. lost
3. dizzy
4. bored
5. hungry
6. late
7. rich
8. arrested
9. dressed
10. wet
11. invited
12. stolen

◇ PRACTICE 33, p. 213.

- |                         |                   |
|-------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. Get                  | 10. got           |
| 2. got                  | 11. 'm/am getting |
| 3. am getting           | 12. got           |
| 4. to get               | 13. 's/is getting |
| 5. got                  | 14. get           |
| 6. getting . . . to get | 15. 'm/am getting |
| 7. 's/is getting        | 16. get           |
| 8. Get                  | 17. 'm/am getting |
| 9. got                  | 18. getting       |

◇ PRACTICE 34, p. 214.

- |         |         |
|---------|---------|
| 1. B, C | 5. B, C |
| 2. A    | 6. A    |
| 3. B, C | 7. A    |
| 4. A    | 8. B, C |

◇ PRACTICE 35, p. 214.

- |                 |       |
|-----------------|-------|
| 1. Ø            | 5. is |
| 2. is           | 6. Ø  |
| 3. are . . . am | 7. Ø  |
| 4. Ø            | 8. Ø  |

◇ PRACTICE 36, p. 215.

- |                       |                        |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. used to get        | 4. used to work        |
| 2. is used to working | 5. is used to teaching |
| 3. used to attend     | 6. am used to eating   |

◇ PRACTICE 37, p. 215.

- I was supposed to return this book to the library.
- We are supposed to read Chapter 9 before class tomorrow.
- I was supposed to go to a party last night, but I stayed home.
- We are supposed to do Exercise 10 for homework.
- . . . is supposed to rain tomorrow.
- . . . am supposed to take one pill every six hours.
- I am supposed to dust the furniture and (to) vacuum the carpet.

◇ PRACTICE 38, p. 216.

- are supposed to be
- were supposed to sweep/clean
- was supposed to send
- are supposed to give
- are supposed to clean
- am . . . supposed to register
- was supposed to cook
- are supposed to take off

◇ PRACTICE 39, p. 217.

- The moving boxes **were** packed by Pierre.
- My uncle ~~was~~ died in the war.
- Miami **is** located in Florida.
- (no change)
- Mr. Rivera **is** interested in finding a new career.
- Did you tell everyone the **shocking** news?
- After ten years, I **am** finally used to this wet and rainy climate.
- The newspaper **is supposed** to come every morning before eight.

- The Millers have been **married to** each other for 60 years.
- I ~~am~~ **used** to drink coffee with cream, but now I drink it black.
- What ~~was~~ **happened** at the party last night?
- Several people almost **got killed** when the fireworks exploded over them.
- A new parking garage **is being built** for our office.
- I have been living in England for several years, so I **am accustomed to** driving on the left side of the road.

## Chapter 11: COUNT/NONCOUNT NOUNS AND ARTICLES

◇ PRACTICE 1, p. 218.

- |                  |                       |
|------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. a game        | 14. an hour           |
| 2. an office     | 15. a star            |
| 3. a car         | 16. an eye            |
| 4. a friend      | 17. a new car         |
| 5. a mountain    | 18. an old car        |
| 6. a rock        | 19. a used car        |
| 7. an army       | 20. an uncle          |
| 8. an egg        | 21. a house           |
| 9. an island     | 22. an honest mistake |
| 10. an ocean     | 23. a hospital        |
| 11. an umbrella  | 24. a hand            |
| 12. a university | 25. an ant            |
| 13. a horse      | 26. a neighbor        |

◇ PRACTICE 2, p. 218.

*These do not complete the sentences:*

- |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|
| 1. b | 3. c | 5. a |
| d    | e    | c    |
| e    | 4. d | f    |
| h    | f    | h    |
| 2. c | g    | 6. d |
| f    | h    | g    |

◇ PRACTICE 3, p. 219.

- |               |             |
|---------------|-------------|
| <i>one</i>    | <i>some</i> |
| 1. words      | words       |
| 2. Ø          | vocabulary  |
| 3. Ø          | slang       |
| 4. Ø          | homework    |
| 5. assignment | assignments |
| 6. Ø          | grammar     |
| 7. dress      | dresses     |
| 8. Ø          | clothes     |
| 9. Ø          | clothing    |
| 10. parent    | parents     |
| 11. family    | families    |
| 12. Ø         | knowledge   |
| 13. Ø         | information |
| 14. fact      | facts       |
| 15. Ø         | luck        |
| 16. Ø         | garbage     |

◇ PRACTICE 4, p. 220.

- bread, corn, peas, rice, sandwiches
- apple trees, grass, lakes, mountains, plants, scenery
- bracelets, jewels, jewelry, rings
- equipment, hardware, machines, machinery, tools

◇ PRACTICE 5, p. 220.

- |                            |                            |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. <b>one</b> chair        | 14. <b>many</b> games      |
| 2. <b>much</b> furniture   | 15. <b>much</b> water      |
| 3. <b>many</b> vegetables  | 16. <b>one</b> parent      |
| 4. <b>much</b> clothing    | 17. <b>much</b> sand       |
| 5. <b>one</b> vegetable    | 18. <b>many</b> professors |
| 6. <b>many</b> clothes     | 19. <b>much</b> dust       |
| 7. <b>much</b> fruit       | 20. <b>much</b> money      |
| 8. <b>many</b> facts       | 21. <b>much</b> stuff      |
| 9. <b>much</b> grammar     | 22. <b>one</b> thing       |
| 10. <b>one</b> word        | 23. <b>many</b> things     |
| 11. <b>many</b> idioms     | 24. <b>much</b> English    |
| 12. <b>much</b> vocabulary | 25. <b>much</b> toast      |
| 13. <b>many</b> cars       |                            |

◇ PRACTICE 6, p. 221.

- |                              |                              |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. is . . . snow             | 7. pride . . . children      |
| 2. is . . . weather          | 8. people . . . intelligence |
| 3. Sunshine is               | 9. peace                     |
| 4. knowledge                 | 10. hospitality              |
| 5. fun                       | 11. beef . . . was           |
| 6. factories . . . pollution | 12. is . . . fog             |

◇ PRACTICE 7, p. 222.

- |                    |                             |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. many apples     | 13. isn't much news         |
| 2. much fruit      | 14. many articles are       |
| 3. much mail       | 15. much fun                |
| 4. many letters    | 16. many stars are          |
| 5. much English    | 17. isn't much sunshine     |
| 6. much slang      | 18. Is . . . much pollution |
| 7. many words are  | 19. much luck               |
| 8. much coffee     | 20. are many kinds          |
| 9. many sandwiches | 21. is . . . much violence  |
| 10. much sugar     | 22. much makeup             |
| 11. many courses   | 23. many cars               |
| 12. much homework  | 24. Is . . . much traffic   |

◇ PRACTICE 8, p. 223.

- |                              |                               |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. many letters are          | 11. much homework (/)         |
| 2. much mail (/)             | 12. many grandchildren        |
| 3. many <b>men</b> have      | 13. many pages are            |
| 4. many <b>families</b> are  | 14. many <b>libraries</b> are |
| 5. many sentences are        | 15. many glasses              |
| 6. much chalk (/) is         | 16. much fun (/)              |
| 7. much English (/)          | 17. much education (/)        |
| 8. much . . . literature (/) | 18. much soap (/)             |
| 9. many . . . words          | 19. many islands are          |
| 10. much gasoline (/)        | 20. many people (/)           |
| much petrol (/)              | 21. many zeroes/zeros are     |

◇ PRACTICE 9, p. 224.

*Circled words are in boldface:*

- |                               |                                      |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. <b>a</b> flower            | 11. <b>a</b> dream                   |
| 2. <b>some/many</b> flowers   | 12. <b>an</b> interesting dream      |
| 3. <b>a</b> coin              | 13. <b>some/many</b> questions       |
| 4. <b>some/much</b> money     | 14. <b>some/much</b> soap            |
| 5. <b>some/many</b> coins     | 15. <b>a</b> bar of soap             |
| 6. <b>some/much</b> salt      | 16. <b>some/much</b> beauty          |
| 7. <b>an</b> error            | 17. <b>a</b> cup of tea              |
| 8. <b>a</b> mistake           | 18. <b>an</b> unsafe place           |
| 9. <b>an</b> honest mistake   | 19. <b>some/much</b> fruit           |
| 10. <b>some/many</b> mistakes | 20. <b>some/many</b> pieces of fruit |

◇ PRACTICE 10, p. 224.

- |                         |                                |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. a little music (/)   | 9. a few questions             |
| 2. a few songs          | 10. a few people (/)           |
| 3. a little help (/)    | 11. a few . . . minutes        |
| 4. a little English (/) | 12. a little light (/)         |
| 5. a few . . . apples   | 13. a little homework (/)      |
| 6. a little honey (/)   | 14. a little . . . grammar (/) |
| 7. a little advice (/)  | 15. a few flowers              |
| 8. a few suggestions    | 16. a little progress (/)      |

◇ PRACTICE 11, p. 225.

- Kim has applied to **a** university in England.
- . . . gave her **some** jewelry and **a poem he had written**.
- The politician wanted specific **suggestions** for her speech on the economy.
- Some of the **homework** for my English class was easy, but many of the **assignments** were unclear.
- Diane has been to Rome several **times** recently. She always has **a** wonderful time.
- Many parents need **advice** about raising children.
- The boys played together in the **sand** and **dirt** for hours.
- A person doesn't need **much** equipment to play baseball: just **a** ball and **a** bat.
- Much** happiness can come from enjoying the simple **things** in life.

◇ PRACTICE 12, p. 225.

- Plants are the oldest living **things** on earth. (2)
- Scientists divide living things into two groups: plants and animals. Generally speaking, plants stay in one place, but animals move around. (7)
- Flowers, grass, and trees grow every place where people live. Plants also grow in deserts, in oceans, on mountaintops, and in polar regions. (7)
- Plants are useful to people. We eat them. We use them for clothing. We build houses from them. Plants are also important to our health. We get many kinds of beneficial drugs from plants. In addition, plants provide beauty and enjoyment to all our lives. (7)
- Crops are plants that people grow for food. Nature can ruin crops. Bad weather—such as too much rain or too little rain—can destroy fields of corn or wheat. Natural disasters such as floods and storms have caused farmers many problems since people first began to grow their own food. (9)
- Food is a necessity for all living things. All animals and plants need to eat. Most plants take what they need through their roots and their leaves. The majority of insects live solely on plants. Many birds have a diet of worms and insects. Reptiles eat small animals, eggs, and insects. (15)

◇ PRACTICE 13, p. 226.

- |                          |                                   |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. cup                   | 11. bowl, cup, piece, pound, kilo |
| 2. pounds                | 12. sheets                        |
| 3. bowl, cup             | 13. loaf                          |
| 4. glass, bottle, quart  | 14. spoonful                      |
| 5. piece                 | 15. tube                          |
| 6. gallons               | 16. bar, piece                    |
| 7. bottle, gallon, quart | 17. piece                         |
| 8. piece                 | 18. piece                         |
| 9. bottle, glass         | 19. pieces                        |
| 10. pieces               | 20. pieces                        |

◇ PRACTICE 14, p. 227.

- |                      |             |
|----------------------|-------------|
| 1. jar               | 6. bag, box |
| 2. bottle, box       | 7. jar      |
| 3. box, bottle       | 8. bottle   |
| 4. jar, bag, can/tin | 9. box, bag |
| 5. can/tin           | 10. can/tin |

◇ PRACTICE 15, p. 227.

- many suitcases
- much suntan oil
- many pairs of sandals
- many tubes of toothpaste
- many kilos of luggage
- much money

◇ PRACTICE 16, p. 228.

- |                      |                           |
|----------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. a letter          | 10. a suggestion          |
| 2. some mail         | 11. an interesting story  |
| 3. some equipment    | 12. some interesting news |
| 4. a tool            | 13. a poem                |
| 5. some food         | 14. some poetry           |
| 6. an apple          | 15. a song                |
| 7. some old clothing | 16. some Indian music     |
| 8. an old shirt      | 17. a new word            |
| 9. some advice       | 18. some new slang        |

◇ PRACTICE 17, p. 228.

- |                 |                             |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>singular</i> | <i>plural</i>               |
| 1. a bird       | I saw some birds.           |
| 2. some corn    | Ø (none possible)           |
| 3. some tea     | Ø (none possible)           |
| 4. a flower     | I picked some flowers.      |
| 5. some water   | Ø (none possible)           |
| 6. a horse      | I fed grass to some horses. |
| 7. some jewelry | Ø (none possible)           |
| 8. some honey   | Ø (none possible)           |
| 9. a new shirt  | Tom bought some new shirts. |
| 10. some soap   | Ø (none possible)           |

◇ PRACTICE 18, p. 229.

- |                              |                        |
|------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. A dog                     | 13. the telephone      |
| 2. the dog                   | 14. the cat            |
| 3. a desk ... a bed          | 15. A: a cat           |
| ... a chest of drawers       | B: a dog               |
| 4. the desk ... the top      | 16. a poem             |
| drawer                       | 17. A: the lecture     |
| 5. the basement              | B: The speaker ...     |
| 6. a basement                | an interesting talk    |
| 7. a subject ... a verb      | 18. A: a cup of coffee |
| 8. the subject ... the verb  | B: the cafe ... the    |
| 9. a meeting                 | corner                 |
| 10. the meeting              | 19. a quiet street     |
| 11. a long distance ...      | 20. A: the restaurant  |
| a telephone                  | B: the street          |
| 12. The distance ... the sun | 21. A: a job           |
| ... the earth                | B: a restaurant        |

◇ PRACTICE 19, p. 230.

- |              |                            |
|--------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Ø Dogs    | 5. the milk ... the        |
| 2. the dogs  | refrigerator ... the table |
| 3. Ø Fruit   | 6. Ø Milk                  |
| 4. The fruit | 7. Ø wine                  |

- |                               |                           |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 8. the wine                   | 16. Ø Copper              |
| 9. Ø meat                     | 17. Ø candles ... Ø light |
| 10. The meat                  | ... Ø electricity         |
| 11. the potatoes              | 18. Ø books ...           |
| 12. Ø Potatoes ...            | Ø textbooks ...           |
| Ø vegetables                  | Ø workbooks ...           |
| 13. Ø Frogs ... Ø small       | Ø dictionaries ...        |
| animals ... Ø tails ...       | Ø encyclopedias ...       |
| Ø Turtles ... Ø trails        | Ø entertainment ...       |
| ... Ø hard shells             | Ø novels ... Ø poetry     |
| 14. The frogs ... The turtles | 19. The books             |
| 15. the weather               |                           |

◇ PRACTICE 20, p. 231.

- some coffee ... some milk ... The coffee ...  
The milk
- some soup ... a sandwich ... The soup ...  
the sandwich
- some clothes ... a suit ... a shirt ... a tie ...  
The suit ... The shirt ... the tie
- A: an accident ... A man ... a Volkswagen ... a bus  
B: the accident  
A: The man ... the Volkswagen ... the bus
- a man ... a woman ... an argument ... The man ...  
the woman ... the woman ... the man ...  
the argument
- some birds ... a tree ... a cat ... the tree ...  
The birds ... the cat ... the cat ... the birds

◇ PRACTICE 21, p. 233.

- |                     |                  |
|---------------------|------------------|
| 1. a man            | 11. a solution   |
| 2. a truck          | 12. the solution |
| 3. a covered bridge | 13. the truck    |
| 4. The bridge       | 14. the bridge   |
| 5. a small river    | 15. the river    |
| 6. the man          | 16. a great idea |
| 7. the man          | 17. the man      |
| 8. the top          | 18. the tires    |
| 9. the bridge       | 19. the river    |
| 10. the bridge      |                  |

◇ PRACTICE 22, p. 234.

- B: An egg  
A: the egg
- Ø Eggs
- a scientific fact ... Ø steam ... Ø water
- Ø Gas
- The gas
- Ø Newspapers ... an important source ...  
Ø information
- The sun ... a star ... the sun ... Ø heat ... Ø light  
... Ø energy
- Ø Ducks
- Ø Pizza ... Ø cheese ... Ø tomatoes ... Ø Pizza  
... Ø Italian
- A: the pizza  
B: the big piece ... the small one
- Ø Gold ... an excellent conductor ... Ø electricity  
... a spaceship
- the kitchen ... a sandwich
- A: the plumber ... The sink  
B: the water supply ... the house ... the leak
- the man ... the president
- a president

16. B: **a** blouse . . .  $\emptyset$  jewelry  
A: **the** blouse
17. **the** floor . . . **the** corner . . . **the** sofa
18.  $\emptyset$  furniture . . . **a** sofa . . . **an** easy chair
19.  $\emptyset$  **F**urniture
20. **A** vegetarian . . .  $\emptyset$  meat
21. **the** continents . . . **the** world
22. **an** easy exam . . . **the** right answers . . . **the** questions . . . **the** exam
23. **a** job interview . . .  $\emptyset$  nice clothes
24. **a** mouse . . .  $\emptyset$  **R**ats . . .  $\emptyset$  long, skinny tails
25.  $\emptyset$  wood . . .  $\emptyset$  coal . . .  $\emptyset$  heat . . .  $\emptyset$  gas . . .  $\emptyset$  oil . . .  $\emptyset$  electricity
26. **an** interesting experience . . . **A** man . . . **a** blue suit . . . **a** bouquet . . .  $\emptyset$  flowers . . . **the** man . . . **the** flowers . . . **the** door
27.  $\emptyset$  **I**ce cream
28.  $\emptyset$  steamed rice . . .  $\emptyset$  fish . . .  $\emptyset$  vegetables . . . **The** rice . . . **The** fish . . . **The** vegetables
29. **an** exceptionally talented person
30. A: **the** letter  
B: **A** strong wind . . . **the** floor . . . **the** dog . . . **the** scraps . . . **the** wastebasket
31. A: **the** tape player  
B: **the** shelves  
A: **the** batteries
32.  $\emptyset$  **C**halk . . . **a** necessity
33. **An** efficient transportation system . . . **an** essential part

◇ PRACTICE 23, p. 236.

1.  $\emptyset$  Paris
2. **The** Atlantic Ocean . . . **the** Pacific
3.  $\emptyset$  Dr. James
4.  $\emptyset$  Mt. Rainier . . . **the** Cascade Mountain Range
5. **The** Nile . . .  $\emptyset$  Africa
6.  $\emptyset$  Toronto . . .  $\emptyset$  Montreal
7.  $\emptyset$  Mt. Kilimanjaro . . .  $\emptyset$  Kenya
8.  $\emptyset$  New Zealand
9. **The** Himalayas . . .  $\emptyset$  Pakistan . . .  $\emptyset$  India . . .  $\emptyset$  Tibet . . .  $\emptyset$  Nepal
10.  $\emptyset$  President Davis
11.  $\emptyset$  Ho Chi Minh City . . .  $\emptyset$  Vietnam . . .  $\emptyset$  Saigon
12. **The** Andes Mountains

◇ PRACTICE 24, p. 237.

- |                             |                                     |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. <b>the</b> Dead Sea      | 9. North America                    |
| 2. <b>the</b> Amazon River  | 10. <b>the</b> Indian Ocean         |
| 3. Shanghai                 | 11. <b>the</b> Netherlands          |
| 4. <b>the</b> Sahara Desert | 12. North America                   |
| 5. <b>the</b> Thames River  | 13. Tibet                           |
| 6. Europe                   | 14. <b>The</b> Urals                |
| 7. <b>the</b> Alps          | 15. Lagos                           |
| 8. Lake Tanganyika          | 16. <b>the</b> United Arab Emirates |

◇ PRACTICE 25, p. 238.

1. I'm taking **B**iology 101 this semester.
2. I'm taking history, biology, **E**nglish, and calculus this semester.
3. Some lab classes meet on **S**aturday.
4. Marta lives on a busy street. Marta lives at 2358 **O**live Street.
5. We went to **C**anada last summer. **W**e went to **M**ontreal in **J**uly.

6. My roommate likes **V**ietnamese food, and **I** like **T**hai food.
7. The religion of **S**audi **A**rabia is **I**slam.
8. Shelia works for the **X**erox **C**orporation. **I**t is a very large corporation.
9. Pedro is from **L**atin **A**merica.
10. My uncle lives in **S**t. **L**ouis. I'm going to visit **U**ncle **B**ill next spring.
11. We went to a park. **W**e went to **W**aterfall **P**ark.
12. Are you going to the **U**niversity of **O**regon or **O**regon **S**tate **U**niversity?
13. Alice goes to a university in **O**regon.
14. The next assignment in literature class is to read **T**he **A**dventures of **T**om **S**awyer.
15. . . . In **F**rance, they call it "**B**astille **D**ay."

◇ PRACTICE 26, p. 238.

1. Do you know **R**obert **J**ones?
2. (*no change*)
3. I like **U**ncle **J**oe and **A**unt **S**ara.
4. (*no change*)
5. **S**usan **W.** **M**iller is a professor.
6. I am in **P**rof. **M**iller's class.
7. The weather is cold in **J**anuary.
8. (*no change*)
9. I have three classes on **M**onday.
10. I would like to visit **L**os **A**ngeles.
11. It's the largest city in **C**alifornia.
12. (*no change*)
13. There are fifty states in the **U**nited **S**tates of **A**merica.
14. (*no change*)
15. Today we can fly across the **A**tlantic **O**cean in hours.
16. (*no change*)
17. Mark lives on **M**arket **S**treet near **W**ashington **H**igh **S**chool.
18. (*no change*)
19. Our family stayed at the **H**ilton **H**otel in **B**angkok.
20. Yoko is **J**apanese, but she can also speak **G**erman.

◇ PRACTICE 28, p. 239.

1. The mail carrier brought only one **l**etter today.
2. Mr. Dale gave his class **a** long history assignment for the weekend.
3. Tariq speaks several **l**anguages, including Arabic and Spanish.
4. Dr. **K**im gives all her patients a toothbrush (**OR** **t**oothbrushes) and toothpaste at their dental appointments.
5. I usually have **a** glass **o**f water with my lunch.
6. A helpful policeman gave us ~~an~~ information about the city.
7. This cookie recipe calls for two **c**ups of **n**uts.
8. **M**any **v** egetables are believed to have cancer-fighting ingredients.
9. Only applicants with the necessary experience~~s~~ should apply for the computer position.
10. When Vicki likes a movie, she sees it several times.
11. A popular children's story is *Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs*.
12. Is it possible to stop all violence~~s~~ in the world?

## Chapter 12: RELATIVE CLAUSES

### ◇ PRACTICE 1, p. 240.

- who helped me move the refrigerator  
1: I thanked  
2: He helped
- who was wearing a gray suit  
1: A woman asked  
2: She was wearing
- who aided the rebels  
1: The woman put  
2: She aided
- who was wearing a blue coat  
1: I saw  
2: He was wearing
- who broke the vase  
1: The girl apologized  
2: She broke

### ◇ PRACTICE 2, p. 241.

- The woman who answered the phone was polite.
- The man who sang at the concert has a good voice.
- We enjoyed the actors who played the leading roles.
- The girl who fell down the stairs is hurt.
- I read about the soccer player who was injured in the game yesterday.

### ◇ PRACTICE 3, p. 241.

- The people <sup>S V</sup> who live next to me are nice.  
<sup>S V</sup> They live next to me.
- The people <sup>S V</sup> whom Kate visited yesterday were French.  
<sup>S V</sup> Kate visited them yesterday.
- The people <sup>S V</sup> whom I saw at the park were having a picnic.  
<sup>S V</sup> I saw them.
- The students <sup>S V</sup> who go to this school are friendly.  
<sup>S V</sup> They go to this school.
- The woman <sup>S V</sup> whom you met last week lives in Mexico.  
<sup>S V</sup> You met her last week.

### ◇ PRACTICE 4, p. 242.

- The woman whom Jack met was polite.
- I like the woman who manages my uncle's store.
- The singer whom we heard at the concert was wonderful.
- The people who came to dinner brought a small gift.
- What is the name of the woman whom Tom invited to the dance?

### ◇ PRACTICE 5, p. 242.

- |           |           |            |
|-----------|-----------|------------|
| 1. who    | 6. who(m) | 11. who(m) |
| 2. who(m) | 7. who    | 12. who(m) |
| 3. who    | 8. who    | 13. who    |
| 4. who(m) | 9. who    | 14. who(m) |
| 5. who    | 10. who   | 15. who    |

### ◇ PRACTICE 6, p. 243.

- |                      |                       |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. O <del>that</del> | 6. S                  |
| 2. S                 | 7. S                  |
| 3. S                 | 8. O <del>that</del>  |
| 4. O <del>who</del>  | 9. S                  |
| 5. S                 | 10. O <del>that</del> |

### ◇ PRACTICE 7, p. 243.

- That man ~~that~~ I saw was wearing a black hat.
- (no change)
- The fruit ~~that~~ I bought today . . . .
- . . . a person ~~that~~ I will never forget.
- (no change)
- The girl that sits in front of Richard has long black hair ~~that~~ she wears . . . .
- (no change)
- (no change)

### ◇ PRACTICE 8, p. 244.

- |                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|
| 1. who/that      | 4. who/that      |
| 2. who(m)/that/Ø | 5. who/that      |
| 3. who(m)/that/Ø | 6. who(m)/that/Ø |

### ◇ PRACTICE 9, p. 245.

- |      |      |
|------|------|
| 1. C | 5. B |
| 2. A | 6. A |
| 3. C | 7. C |
| 4. C | 8. C |

### ◇ PRACTICE 10, p. 245.

- who/that designs buildings.
- who/that doesn't eat meat.
- which/that forms when water boils.
- which/that has a hard shell and can live in water or on land.
- who/that leaves society and lives completely alone.
- which/that grows in hot climates and produces large bunches of yellow fruit.
- which/that can be shaped and hardened to form many useful things.
- which/that cannot be understood or explained.

### ◇ PRACTICE 11, p. 246.

- |                       |                       |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. O <del>which</del> | 6. S                  |
| 2. S                  | 7. O <del>which</del> |
| 3. O <del>that</del>  | 8. S                  |
| 4. O <del>which</del> | 9. S                  |
| 5. S                  | 10. O <del>that</del> |

### ◇ PRACTICE 12, p. 246.

- |                 |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. which/that/Ø | 4. which/that   |
| 2. which/that   | 5. which/that/Ø |
| 3. which/that/Ø | 6. which/that   |

### ◇ PRACTICE 13, p. 247.

*Incorrect (crossed out) pronouns:*

- |         |        |
|---------|--------|
| 1. them | 4. him |
| 2. it   | 5. her |
| 3. them | 6. him |

◇ PRACTICE 14, p. 247.

1. A, C, D
2. A, D
3. C, D, E
4. A, C, D
5. A, D
6. C, D
7. C, D, E
8. C, D
9. A, C, D
10. C, D, E
11. A, C, D
12. A, C, D
13. C, D

◇ PRACTICE 15, p. 248.

1. students ... are
2. people ... are
3. compound ... consists
4. students ... speak
5. people ... know
6. student ... is
7. people ... live
8. person ... makes
9. artists ... make

◇ PRACTICE 16, p. 249.

1. that ... for  
which ... for  
Ø ... for  
for which ... Ø
2. that ... to  
which ... to  
Ø ... to  
to which ... Ø
3. that ... in  
which ... in  
Ø ... in  
in which ... Ø
4. that ... with  
who(m) ... with  
Ø ... with  
with whom ... Ø

◇ PRACTICE 17, p. 250.

1. that ... to  
who(m) ... to  
Ø ... to  
to whom ... Ø
2. that ... with  
which ... with  
Ø ... with  
with which ... Ø
3. who(m) ... about  
that ... about  
Ø ... about  
about whom ... Ø
4. who(m) ... for  
that ... for  
Ø ... for  
for whom ... Ø
5. that ... for  
which ... for  
Ø ... for  
for which ... Ø
6. that ... in  
which ... in  
Ø ... in  
in which ... Ø

◇ PRACTICE 18, p. 250.

*Adjective clauses:*

1. we listened **to** at Sara's apartment
2. I accidentally broke **Ø**
3. we were waiting **for**
4. I always enjoy talking **to** about politics
5. I had just written **Ø**
6. I've been interested **in** for a long time
7. I talked **to** at the reception
8. I want to visit **Ø** next year
9. I was looking **at**
10. I wanted **Ø**
11. we were listening **to** at Jim's yesterday
12. I'm not familiar **with**
13. I was carrying **Ø**
14. I can always rely **on** for support and help
15. our fourteen-year-old is responsible **for**
16. I was reading **Ø**
17. I bought **Ø**
18. **Ø** which I enjoy studying the most
19. I waved **at**
20. **for** whom Alex was waiting

◇ PRACTICE 19, p. 251.

1. whose daughter is a pilot  
I: I know a man.  
2: His daughter is a pilot.
2. whose husband is out of work  
I: The woman found a job.  
2: Her husband is out of work.
3. whose wallet I found  
I: The man gave me a reward.  
2: I found his wallet.

◇ PRACTICE 20, p. 251.

1. The firefighters are very brave. Their department has won many awards.  
→ The firefighters whose department has won many awards are very brave.
2. I talked to the boy. His kite was caught in a tree.  
→ I talked to the boy whose kite was caught in a tree.
3. The family is staying in a motel. Their house burned down.  
→ The family whose house burned down is staying in a motel.
4. I watched a little girl. Her dog was chasing a ball in the park.  
→ I watched a little girl whose dog was chasing a ball in the park.
5. The reporter won an award. Her articles explained global warming.  
→ The reporter whose articles explained global warming won an award.
6. I know a man. His daughter entered college at the age of fourteen.  
→ I know a man whose daughter entered college at the age of fourteen.
7. We observed a language teacher. Her teaching methods included role-playing.  
→ We observed a language teacher whose teaching methods included role-playing.
8. The teachers are very popular. Their methods include role-playing.  
→ The teachers whose methods include role-playing are very popular.

◇ PRACTICE 21, p. 252.

*True (checked) answers:*

1. a, c
2. c
3. b, c
4. c
5. a
6. a, c
7. b

◇ PRACTICE 22, p. 253.

1. which/that is used to carry boats with goods and/or passengers
2. whose children were doing poorly in her class
3. Ted bought for his wife on their anniversary
4. whose views I share
5. which/that had backbones
6. which/that disrupted the global climate and caused mass extinctions of animal life

◇ PRACTICE 23, p. 253.

- |  |                   |
|--|-------------------|
| 1. who/that                                      | 7. which/that     |
| 2. who/that . . . whom                           | 8. who(m)/that/Ø  |
| 3. who/that . . . which/that<br>. . . which/that | 9. whose          |
| 4. who/that                                      | 10. which/that    |
| 5. which/that/Ø                                  | 11. who/that      |
| 6. whose   | 12. who(m)/that/Ø |

◇ PRACTICE 24, p. 254.

- A movie that **looks** interesting opens tomorrow.
- My family lived in a house which ~~it~~ was built in 1900.
- The little boy **who** was lost asked for directions.
- I don't know people **whose** ~~their~~ lives are carefree.
- It is important to help people who **have** no money.
- At the airport, I was waiting for friends **who(m)/that/Ø** I hadn't seen ~~them~~ for a long time.
- The woman **who/that lives** next door likes to . . .
- My teacher has two cats **whose** ~~their~~ names are Ping and Pong.
- A beautiful garden ~~that~~ separates my house from the street.
- I asked the children who **were** sitting on the bench to help us.
- The school that my children attend ~~it~~ is very good academically.
- I enjoyed the songs which we sang ~~them~~.
- One of the places that I like to visit **is** Central Park.
- The movie we saw ~~it~~ last evening was very exciting.
- I sent the parents **whose son** I hiked with a picture of us on Mt. Fuji.
- Do you know the man who **works** in that office?
- A mother **whose** daughter is in my class often brings cookies for the children.
- The CD player **which/that/Ø** I bought can hold several CDs at once.
- The bed which I sleep **in** is very comfortable. OR  
The bed **in** which I sleep is very comfortable.
- . . . problems which I have had ~~them~~ since I came here.

Chapter 13: GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES

◇ PRACTICE 1, p. 256.

- |           |                     |
|-----------|---------------------|
| 1. moving | 7. reviewing        |
| 2. living | 8. running          |
| 3. taking | 9. driving          |
| 4. buying | 10. retiring        |
| 5. giving | 11. getting married |
| 6. doing  | 12. working         |

◇ PRACTICE 2, p. 256.

- |                          |                    |
|--------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. went dancing          | 6. go sightseeing  |
| 2. is going to go hiking | 7. go camping      |
| 3. went shopping         | 8. go sailing      |
| 4. go swimming           | 9. go skiing       |
| 5. goes fishing          | 10. went skydiving |

◇ PRACTICE 3, p. 257.

- |        |         |
|--------|---------|
| 1. INF | to wait |
| 2. GER | walking |
| 3. INF | to help |
| 4. GER | writing |

- |        |          |
|--------|----------|
| 5. INF | to call  |
| 6. GER | quitting |
| 7. INF | to work  |
| 8. INF | to grow  |

◇ PRACTICE 4, p. 258.

PART I.

- |                    |             |
|--------------------|-------------|
| 1. to work         | 7. to work  |
| 2. working         | 8. to work  |
| 3. to work         | 9. working  |
| 4. working         | 10. to work |
| 5. to work         | 11. working |
| 6. to work/working | 12. working |

PART II.

- |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|
| 13. to leave | 18. leaving  |
| 14. to leave | 19. to leave |
| 15. leaving  | 20. to leave |
| 16. leaving  | 21. leaving  |
| 17. leaving  | 22. to leave |

PART III.

- |             |                     |
|-------------|---------------------|
| 23. to know | 28. to know         |
| 24. to know | 29. to know/knowing |
| 25. to know | 30. to know         |
| 26. knowing | 31. to know         |
| 27. to know | 32. to know/knowing |

◇ PRACTICE 5, p. 258.

- |      |       |       |
|------|-------|-------|
| 1. B | 9. A  | 17. B |
| 2. A | 10. A | 18. B |
| 3. B | 11. A | 19. A |
| 4. B | 12. B | 20. B |
| 5. A | 13. B | 21. B |
| 6. B | 14. B | 22. B |
| 7. B | 15. A | 23. B |
| 8. B | 16. B | 24. A |

◇ PRACTICE 6, p. 261.

- |         |          |          |
|---------|----------|----------|
| 1. B    | 6. A, B  | 11. A, B |
| 2. A, B | 7. A, B  | 12. A, B |
| 3. A, B | 8. B     | 13. B    |
| 4. B    | 9. A     | 14. A    |
| 5. A, B | 10. A, B | 15. B    |

◇ PRACTICE 7, p. 261.

- |                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| 1. to go          | 18. to pass                                    |
| 2. to buy         | 19. hoping                                     |
| 3. looking        | 20. to concentrate . . . to make               |
| 4. to go shopping | 21. to go                                      |
| 5. passing        | 22. to do/doing                                |
| 6. to go fishing  | 23. to help                                    |
| 7. to cry/crying  | 24. to learn                                   |
| 8. to go/going    | 25. driving . . . to fly                       |
| 9. to go          | 26. to postpone                                |
| 10. to have       | 27. to be                                      |
| 11. to meet       | 28. teaching                                   |
| 12. changing      | 29. to read/reading                            |
| 13. camping       | 30. to go dancing                              |
| 14. to arrive     | 31. building                                   |
| 15. writing       | 32. to play/playing . . . to be . . .<br>to be |
| 16. jogging       | 33. to take                                    |
| 17. to call       |  |

◇ PRACTICE 8, p. 262.

**PART I.**

- |                        |                           |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. of <u>flying</u>    | 5. of <u>working</u>      |
| 2. for <u>hurting</u>  | 6. about <u>walking</u>   |
| 3. in <u>helping</u>   | 7. of/about <u>owning</u> |
| 4. at <u>listening</u> |                           |

**PART II.**

- |                        |                             |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 8. for <u>closing</u>  | 12. on <u>eating</u>        |
| 9. for <u>lending</u>  | 13. to <u>finishing</u>     |
| 10. on <u>becoming</u> | 14. from <u>making</u>      |
| 11. for <u>taking</u>  | 15. about ... <u>having</u> |

◇ PRACTICE 9, p. 263.

- |                             |                            |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. for ... for interrupting | 8. in ... in saving        |
| 2. in ... in learning       | 9. about ... about falling |
| 3. for ... for helping      | ... making                 |
| 4. on ... on walking        | 10. about ... about going  |
| 5. for ... for losing       | 11. to ... to going        |
| 6. like ... like going      | 12. of ... of staying      |
| 7. at ... at drawing        |                            |

◇ PRACTICE 10, p. 264.

**PART I.**

- |                 |                   |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1. about asking | 6. to ask         |
| 2. to ask       | 7. for asking     |
| 3. on asking    | 8. to ask         |
| 4. about asking | 9. to ask/asking  |
| 5. about asking | 10. to ask/asking |

**PART II.**

- |                   |                   |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 11. to fix        | 16. about fixing  |
| 12. to fix/fixing | 17. to fix/fixing |
| 13. to fix        | 18. to fix        |
| 14. to fix        | 19. to fix        |
| 15. to fix        | 20. fixing        |

◇ PRACTICE 11, p. 265.

- |               |              |
|---------------|--------------|
| 1. writing    | 6. adopting  |
| 2. to install | 7. to take   |
| 3. to cash    | 8. in using  |
| 4. staying    | 9. to be     |
| 5. to go      | 10. to lower |

◇ PRACTICE 12, p. 265.

- |                       |                       |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. going              | 11. for watering      |
| 2. of driving         | 12. for speaking      |
| 3. to park/on parking | 13. on washing        |
| 4. to watch/watching  | 14. from hitting      |
| 5. to cook/cooking    | 15. to be             |
| 6. baking             | 16. repairing         |
| 7. of going           | 17. to get            |
| 8. of/about becoming  | 18. to have/on having |
| 9. having             | 19. to taking         |
| 10. running           | 20. about seeing      |

◇ PRACTICE 13, p. 267.

1. by holding
2. by reading
3. by reading
4. by watching
5. by running
6. by treating

◇ PRACTICE 14, p. 268.

1. I arrived on time by taking a taxi instead of a bus.
2. I put out the fire by pouring water on it.
3. Giraffes can reach the leaves at the tops of trees by stretching their long necks.
4. I fixed the chair by tightening the loose screws.
5. Sylvia was able to buy an expensive stereo system by saving her money for two years.
6. A hippopotamus can cross a river by walking on the bottom of the riverbed.
7. I figured out how to cook the noodles by reading the directions on the package.
8. Pam finished her project on time by working all through the night.
9. You can figure out how old a tree is by counting its rings.

◇ PRACTICE 15, p. 268.

- |         |          |          |
|---------|----------|----------|
| 1. with | 7. by    | 13. by   |
| 2. by   | 8. by    | 14. with |
| 3. with | 9. with  | 15. with |
| 4. by   | 10. with | 16. with |
| 5. by   | 11. by   |          |
| 6. with | 12. with |          |

◇ PRACTICE 16, p. 269.

1. a. It is ... to learn  
b. Learning ... is
2. a. Eating ... is  
b. It is ... to eat
3. a. Driving ... is  
b. It is ... to drive
4. a. It is ... to swim  
b. Swimming ... is
5. a. Is it ... to live  
b. Is living
6. a. Is it ... to complete  
b. Is completing

◇ PRACTICE 17, p. 270.

1. It is difficult for shy people to meet
2. It is interesting for babies to look
3. it is customary for young children to sleep
4. It is necessary for airline pilots to have
5. It is hard for many teenagers to wake up
6. It is important for elderly people to keep
7. It is boring for people to listen
8. It is necessary for students to have
9. It is impossible for scientists to know
10. It is important for parents to teach
11. It is easy for people to be
12. It is dangerous for small children to cross

◇ PRACTICE 18, p. 271.

**PART I.**

1. for
2. to
3. to
4. for
5. to
6. to
7. for

**PART II.**

8. to
9. to
10. for
11. for
12. to
13. to
14. for
15. to

◇ PRACTICE 19, p. 271.

1. to            5. for            9. to
2. for          6. to            10. for
3. for          7. to            11. for
4. to            8. for

◇ PRACTICE 20, p. 271.

1. turned on the TV (in order) to watch the news.
2. goes to the laundromat (in order) to wash his clothes.
3. runs (in order) to get to class on time.
4. open the bedroom windows (in order) to let in some fresh air.
5. writes a letter to his parents (in order) to ask them for some money.
6. have the radio on (in order) to listen to a baseball game.
7. go to the library (in order) to study in peace and quiet.

◇ PRACTICE 21, p. 272.

1. a. enough time to go  
b. too busy to go
2. a. tall enough  
b. too short
3. a. enough money  
b. too poor
4. a. too hot  
b. cool enough
5. a. too sick to eat anything  
b. well enough to eat anything
6. a. isn't old enough to stay home by herself  
b. too young to stay home by herself

◇ PRACTICE 22, p. 273.

1. Ø ... enough            7. too ... Ø
2. too ... Ø                8. Ø ... enough
3. enough ... Ø            9. enough ... Ø
4. too ... Ø                10. too ... Ø
5. Ø ... enough            11. enough ... Ø
6. Ø ... enough            12. Ø ... enough

◇ PRACTICE 23, p. 273.

1. being ... to be
2. to stay
3. to help
4. to thank
5. going ... to stay
6. to learn
7. to cause ... to destroy
8. to recognize ... to build ... to knock
9. Predicting ... to predict ... reading ... to act ...  
running ... counting ... to be able to predict

◇ PRACTICE 24, p. 274.

1. studying
2. jotting
3. to be
4. B: flying  
A: crashing
5. A: arguing ... to disagree ... be  
B: raising ... to yell  
A: to get

6. A: to sneak ... paying  
B: doing  
A: trying to sneak ... to have ... to like ... liking ...  
to do
7. to build
8. to do ... to do ... to do ... to do
9. A: doing  
B: going shopping  
A: going ... pretending to be ... buying  
B: to do  
A: to get ... to buy ... to have  
B: Pretending to be ... buying
10. B: putting ... forgetting to send  
A: to get ... not remembering
11. interrupting
12. to taste ... to make

◇ PRACTICE 25, p. 276.

1. I decided not to buy a new car.
2. The Johnsons are considering **selling** their antique store.
3. Sam finally finished **building** his vacation home in the mountains.
4. My wife and I go ~~to~~ dancing at the community center every Saturday night.
5. Suddenly, it began **to rain/raining** and the wind started to blow.
6. The baby is afraid **to be/of being** away from her mother for any length of time.
7. I am excited **about starting** college this September.
8. You can send your application **by** fax.
9. My country is **very** beautiful. OR My country is ~~too~~ beautiful.
10. **It is** exciting **to drive** a sports car.
11. My grandparents enjoy ~~to~~ traveling across the country in a motor home.
12. Elena made this sweater **by hand**.
13. Swimming ~~it~~ is one of the sports we can participate in at school.
14. That was very good, but I'm too full **to** eat any more.
15. My mother-in-law went to a tourist shop **to buy** a disposable camera.
16. Instead **of getting** her degree in four years, Michelle decided **to travel** abroad first.
17. **Swimming** with a group of people is more enjoyable than **swimming** alone.
18. **It is** interesting **to meet/meeting** new people.
19. **It is hard for** me to stay up past 9:00.
20. The professor thanked his students **for doing** well on the test.

Chapter 14: NOUN CLAUSES

◇ PRACTICE 1, p. 278.

1. I don't know where Jack bought his boots.            NOUN CLAUSE
2. Where did Jack buy his boots?            QUESTION
3. I don't understand why Ann left.            NOUN CLAUSE
4. Why did Ann leave?            QUESTION
5. I don't know where your book is.            NOUN CLAUSE
6. Where is your book?            QUESTION
7. When did Bob come?            QUESTION
8. I don't know when Bob came.            NOUN CLAUSE

9. What does "calm" mean? QUESTION  
 10. Tarik knows what "calm" means. NOUN CLAUSE  
 11. I don't know how long the earth has existed. NOUN CLAUSE  
 12. How long has the earth existed? QUESTION

◇ PRACTICE 2, p. 278.

*Noun clauses:*

1. where [Patty] [went] last night  
 2. where [Joe's parents] [live]  
 3. where [Joe] [lives]  
 4. what time [the movie] [begins]  
 5. where [Brazil] [is]  
 6. what [Estefan] [said]  
 7. when [the packages] [will arrive]  
 8. how far [it] [is] to the post office  
 9. [who] [knocked] on the door  
 10. [what] [happened] at the party last night

◇ PRACTICE 3, p. 279.

- |                                |                            |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>question</i>                | <i>noun clause</i>         |
| 1. Why did Tim leave?          | why Tim left               |
| 2. Where did he go?            | where he went              |
| 3. Where does he live?         | where he lives             |
| 4. Where is he now?            | where he is now            |
| 5. What time will he return?   | what time he will return   |
| 6. How far is it to his house? | how far it is to his house |
| 7. Who lives next door to him? | who lives next door to him |
| 8. What happened to him?       | what happened to him       |

◇ PRACTICE 4, p. 279.

- |                                |                                  |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>question</i>                | <i>noun clause</i>               |
| 1. did Marcos leave?           | when Marcos left?                |
| 2. did he say?                 | what he said.                    |
| 3. is the post office?         | where the post office is?        |
| 4. is it?                      | what time it is?                 |
| 5. did David arrive?           | when David arrived.              |
| 6. is Anna from?               | what country Anna is from.       |
| 7. was Kathy                   | why Kathy was                    |
| 8. lives                       | who lives                        |
| 9. did Eric invite             | who(m) Eric invited              |
| 10. borrowed                   | who borrowed                     |
| 11. are the restrooms located? | where the restrooms are located? |

◇ PRACTICE 5, p. 281.

- who(m) Helen talked to?
- who lives in that apartment?
- what he said.

- what kind of car Pat has.
- how old their children are.
- why you said that.
- where I can catch the bus?
- who(m) Sara talked to.
- how long Ted has been living here?
- what this word means?

◇ PRACTICE 6, p. 281.

- |                            |                                 |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. A: were you             | 5. A: Mr. Gow's office is . . . |
| A: you were                | is Mr. Gow's office             |
| 2. A: did Tom go           | 6. A: did she come              |
| B: you said                | B: she came                     |
| A: Tom went                | A: was she                      |
| 3. A: is a bumblebee . . . | B: she was                      |
| a bumblebee is             |                                 |
| 4. A: did Oscar borrow     |                                 |
| B: Oscar borrowed          |                                 |

◇ PRACTICE 7, p. 282.

*Noun clauses:*

- who [that man] [is]
- [who] [called]
- who [those people] [are]
- who [that person] [is]
- [who] [lives] next door to me
- who [my teacher] [will be] next semester
- [who] [will teach] us next semester
- what [a lizard] [is]
- [what] [happened] in class yesterday
- whose hat [this] [is]
- [whose hat] [is] on the table

◇ PRACTICE 8, p. 282.

- |               |                |
|---------------|----------------|
| 1. / . . . is | 6. / . . . is  |
| 2. is . . . / | 7. is . . . /  |
| 3. / . . . is | 8. / . . . is  |
| 4. is . . . / | 9. / . . . is  |
| 5. / . . . is | 10. is . . . / |

◇ PRACTICE 9, p. 283.

- |                             |                            |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. who she is.              | 7. what a clause is?       |
| 2. who they are.            | 8. what is in that drawer. |
| 3. whose book that is.      | 9. who is in that room.    |
| 4. whose glasses those are? | 10. what is on TV tonight. |
| 5. what a wrench is?        | 11. what a carrot is?      |
| 6. who that woman is.       | 12. who I am.              |

◇ PRACTICE 10, p. 283.

1. whose car that is
2. whose car is in front of Sam's house
3. who the best students are
4. what time dinner is
5. who's next in line
6. whose purse this is
7. what the main ideas of the story are
8. whose shoes those are under the chair
9. what causes tornadoes

◇ PRACTICE 11, p. 284.

1. if (whether) Tom is coming
2. if (whether) Jin has finished medical school yet
3. if (whether) Daniel has any time off soon
4. if (whether) the flight is on time
5. if (whether) there is enough gas in the car
6. if (whether) Yuki is married
7. if (whether) the Petersons are going to move
8. if (whether) Khaled changed jobs

◇ PRACTICE 12, p. 285.

1. if I'm going to need
2. if chicken is
3. if the new teaching position includes
4. if there will be a movie
5. if Greg has to come
6. if penguins ever get
7. if you can drive
8. if Nasser has already left

◇ PRACTICE 13, p. 285.

1. if (whether) Karen is
2. where Karen went?
3. how Pat is feeling
4. if (whether) Pat is feeling
5. if (whether) the bus stops
6. where the bus stops.
7. why Elena is absent
8. if (whether) Elena is going to be absent
9. if (whether) I should buy
10. which book I should buy.
11. if (whether) we are going to have
12. if (whether) there is

◇ PRACTICE 14, p. 286.

- |          |          |
|----------|----------|
| 1. rains | 5. run   |
| 2. gets  | 6. takes |
| 3. like  | 7. enjoy |
| 4. runs  | 8. seems |

◇ PRACTICE 15, p. 287.

1. I'm sorry that
2. I predict that
3. I'm surprised that
4. Are you certain that
5. Did you notice that
6. John is pleased that
7. Anna was convinced that
8. It's a fact that
9. A: Guido is delighted that  
B: I'm surprised that
10. A: How do you know that  
I'm still worried that

11. A: Mrs. Lane hopes that  
B: I don't think that  
A: I wish that
12. A: Do you think that  
B: Everyone knows that  
A: I'm not sure that that's true.

◇ PRACTICE 16, p. 288.

1. (that) I will have a peanut butter sandwich.
2. (that) I should study tonight
3. (that) flying in an airplane is safer than riding in a car.
4. (that) I'll get married someday.
5. (that) a huge monster was chasing me.
6. (that) John "Cat Man" Smith stole Mrs. Adams' jewelry.
7. (that) people are pretty much the same everywhere.
8. (that) high school students in the United States don't study as hard as the students in my country do.
9. (that) he always twirls his mustache when he's nervous?
10. (that) all people are equal.
11. (that) more than half of the people in the world go hungry every day?
12. (that) plastic trash kills thousands of marine animals every year?

◇ PRACTICE 17, p. 289.

1. I feel (don't feel) that smoking in public places should be prohibited.
2. I regret (don't regret) that I'm living in this country.
3. I would like to know (wouldn't like to know) when I will die.
4. I doubt (don't doubt) that there will be peace in the world soon.
5. I remember (can't remember) what I was like as a child.
6. I wonder (don't wonder) why the world exists.
7. I am afraid (am not afraid) that someone may make unwise decisions about my future.
8. I know (don't know) what I want to do with my life.

◇ PRACTICE 18, p. 290.

1. The Jensens are pleased that their granddaughter graduated from the university. They are pleased that she was offered a good job.
2. Po is lucky that the smoke alarm in his apartment rang. He is lucky that he woke up and discovered that his apartment building was on fire.
3. Ming Soo was surprised that she didn't fail the math exam. She was surprised that she got one of the highest grades in the class.
4. Karen is sorry that she lent her cousin Mark some money. She is sorry that she can't afford to buy her children new shoes.

◇ PRACTICE 19, p. 290.

1. that Alice has a car
2. that the library is open
3. that Ann speaks Spanish
4. that Alex passed his French course
5. that Mr. Kozari is going to be at the meeting
6. that the photos are ready to be picked up at the photo shop

◇ PRACTICE 20, p. 291.

1. Alex said, "Do you smell smoke?"
2. "Something is burning," he said.
3. He said, "Do you smell smoke? Something is burning."
4. "Do you smell smoke?" he said. "Something is burning."
5. Rachel said, "The game starts at seven."
6. "The game starts at seven. We should leave here at six," she said.
7. She said, "The game starts at seven. We should leave here at six. Can you be ready to leave then?"

◇ PRACTICE 21, p. 291.

1. Mrs. Hill said, "My children used to take the bus to school."
2. She said, "We moved closer to the school."
3. "Now my children can walk to school," Mrs. Hill said.
4. "Do you live near the school?" she asked.
5. "Yes, we live two blocks away," I replied.
6. "How long have you lived here?" Mrs. Hill wanted to know.
7. I said, "We've lived here for five years. How long have you lived here?"
8. "We've lived here for two years," Mrs. Hill said. "How do you like living here?"
9. "It's a nice community," I said. "It's a good place to raise children."

◇ PRACTICE 22, p. 292.

- "Why weren't you in class yesterday?" Mr. Garcia asked me.
- "I had to stay home and take care of my pet bird," I said. "He wasn't feeling well."
- "What? Did you miss class because of your pet bird?" Mr. Garcia demanded to know.
- I replied, "Yes, sir. That's correct. I couldn't leave him alone. He looked so miserable."
- "Now I've heard every excuse in the world," Mr. Garcia said. Then he threw his arms in the air and walked away.

◇ PRACTICE 23, p. 293.

- One day my friend Laura and I were sitting in her apartment. We were having a cup of tea together and talking about the terrible earthquake that had just occurred in Iran. Laura asked me, "Have you ever been in an earthquake?"
- "Yes, I have," I replied.
- "Was it a big earthquake?" she asked.
- "I've been in several earthquakes, and they've all been small ones," I answered. "Have you ever been in an earthquake?"
- "There was an earthquake in my village five years ago," Laura said. "I was in my house. Suddenly the ground started shaking. I grabbed my little brother and ran outside. Everything was moving. I was scared to death. And then suddenly it was over."
- "I'm glad you and your brother weren't hurt," I said.
- "Yes, we were very lucky. Has everyone in the world felt an earthquake sometime in their lives?" Laura wondered.
- "Do earthquakes occur everywhere on the earth?"
- "Those are interesting questions," I said, "but I don't know the answers."

◇ PRACTICE 24, p. 293.

- |                 |                             |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. he ... his   | 5. they ... me ... they     |
| 2. his ... them | 6. she ... her              |
| 3. she ... her  | 7. they ... my              |
| 4. him ... them | 8. he ... us ... he ... his |

◇ PRACTICE 25, p. 294.

- | <i>formal</i>      | <i>informal</i> |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| 1. would meet      | will meet       |
| 2. was going to be | is going to be  |
| 3. had             | has             |
| 4. needed          | needs           |
| 5. had flown       | has flown       |
| 6. were planning   | are planning    |
| 7. didn't want     | doesn't want    |
| 8. could babysit   | can babysit     |

◇ PRACTICE 26, p. 295.

1. (that) you didn't have
2. (that) you hadn't found
3. (that) the Smiths hadn't canceled
4. (that) it wouldn't rain
5. (that) the Whites hadn't gotten
6. (that) Mei didn't exercise
7. (that) your computer wasn't working
8. (that) Ali was coming

◇ PRACTICE 27, p. 296.

1. how old I was
2. if/whether he was going to be
3. if/whether she had
4. if/whether he had changed his
5. how long I had been
6. if/whether she could speak
7. if/whether he would be in his office
8. why she was laughing
9. if/whether I had ever considered

◇ PRACTICE 28, p. 296.

1. "Have you ever gone skydiving?"
2. "Will you be at the meeting?"
3. "Are you going to quit your job?"
4. "Where is your car?"
5. "What did you do after class yesterday?"
6. "Do you know Italian?"
7. "Can you guess what I have in my pocket?"
8. "Why aren't you working at your desk?"

◇ PRACTICE 29, p. 297.

1. where I was from.
2. how I liked it here.
3. how long I would stay.
4. why I had come here.
5. if/whether I had met many people.
6. what I was going to study.
7. if/whether the local people were friendly to me.
8. if/whether I liked the weather here.
9. how I had chosen this school.

◇ PRACTICE 30, p. 298.

1. he was going to call me
2. (that) he had to talk . . . her
3. (that) she could meet me
4. (that) she had written him
5. (that) I needed his
6. she would see him
7. (that) he was going to meet . . . me
8. what he was doing
9. (that) he was sure he had met me

◇ PRACTICE 31, p. 299.

- |          |   |
|----------|---|
| 1. told  | 6. told . . . said                          |
| 2. said  | 7. asked . . . asked . . . said             |
| 3. asked | 8. told . . . told                          |
| 4. told  | 9. told                                     |
| 5. said  | 10. asked . . . said . . . asked . . . told |

◇ PRACTICE 32, p. 299.

1. asked me where I lived.
2. asked me if/whether I lived
3. told him / replied / said that I had
4. told me / said that he was looking
5. told me / said that he didn't like living
6. asked him if / whether he wanted to move in with me.
7. asked me where my apartment was.
8. replied / told him / said that I lived
9. told me / said that he couldn't move
10. told me / said that he would cancel his
11. asked me if/whether that was okay.
12. told him / replied / said that I was looking forward to having him

◇ PRACTICE 33, p. 300.

*Correct (checked) answers:*

1. The teacher asked if I was finished.  
The teacher asked, "Are you finished?"
2. Aki said he was finished.  
Aki said that he was finished.  
Aki replied that he was finished.  
Aki answered that he was finished.
3. Ann told Tom she needed more time.  
Ann said she needed more time.
4. Donna answered that she was ready.  
Donna answered, "I am ready."
5. Mr. Wong wanted to know if Ted was coming.  
Mr. Wong wondered if Ted was coming.  
Mr. Wong wondered, "Is Ted coming?"

◇ PRACTICE 34, p. 300.

1. (that) he had forgotten
2. where his bicycle was . . . told me/said (that) he had sold
3. (that) we would miss
4. if/whether she could swim
5. if/whether she wanted . . . (that) she couldn't . . . had to study
6. (that) she had broken
7. was . . . (that) he wasn't . . . (that) he had gone
8. if/whether I would be . . . (that) I would be
9. if/whether he had . . . been . . . (that) he had been
10. where his cane was . . . (that) I didn't know . . .  
if/whether he needed . . . (that) he wanted to walk . . .  
(that) I would find it

◇ PRACTICE 35, p. 302.

The husband asked where the children were. His wife replied/said (that) they had already left for school.

The father said that they had forgotten to take their books with them. The mother wondered how they could be so irresponsible. She asked the father what they were going to do.

The father told her not to worry. He said (that) he would take the books with him and drop them off at the school on his way to work. The mother told him (that) that was okay and said goodbye. She told him to have a good day.

The children asked their mother where their schoolbooks were. They said (that) they had left them on the kitchen table. They said (that) they couldn't go to school without their books.

◇ PRACTICE 36, p. 303.

1. . . . May I ask ~~if~~ how old **you are**?
2. I wonder, "**Did** Rashed pick up something for dinner?"
3. I'm unsure what **Lawrence does** for a living.
4. Fernando said, "**The** best time for me to meet would be Thursday morning."
5. Eriko **asked** me **if I was** coming to the graduation party. I **told** her that I wasn't.  
OR I said ~~her~~ I wasn't.
6. I hope ~~so~~ that I will do well on my final exams.
7. Antonio asked his mother what she **wanted** for her birthday.
8. I'm not sure if the price **includes** sales tax.
9. My mother **asked** me, "How many hours **did you spend** on your homework?"
10. Pedro asked **if/whether** that **was** okay.  
Pedro asked, "**Is** that okay?"
11. Mika told **me** she **was** going to stay home today.
12. I'd like to know how ~~do~~ you do that.
13. My parents knew what Sam and I **did**. OR . . . **know** what Sam and I do.
14. Beth said she had **been** working hard all week, but now **she** had some time off.
15. **It is** a fact that life always changes.

Appendix 1: PHRASAL VERBS

◇ PRACTICE 1, p. 305.

- |                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|
| 1. on            | 7. A: down       |
| 2. up            | B: up            |
| 3. down . . . up | 8. out . . . out |
| 4. off           | 9. off . . . on  |
| 5. B: on         | 10. A: up        |
| A: off           | B: off           |
| 6. away/out      |                  |

◇ PRACTICE 2, p. 306.

*Correct (circled) completions:*

1. her socks
2. the TV, the stove
3. his new shoes
4. a story, a fairy tale, an excuse
5. some rotten food, an old shirt
6. a doctor's appointment, a meeting, a trip
7. a puzzle, a math problem, a riddle
8. a report, some late homework
9. a message, a phone number

10. a box, a sack of mail
11. my coat, my wedding ring
12. the light, the computer, the car engine

◇ PRACTICE 3, p. 307.

- |           |         |         |
|-----------|---------|---------|
| 1. out of | 4. over | 7. from |
| 2. on     | 5. into | 8. in   |
| 3. off    | 6. into | 9. on   |

◇ PRACTICE 4, p. 308.

- |      |      |
|------|------|
| 1. B | 5. F |
| 2. C | 6. D |
| 3. A | 7. E |
| 4. G |      |

◇ PRACTICE 5, p. 308.

- |               |           |
|---------------|-----------|
| 1. back       | 8. up     |
| 2. down/off   | 9. A: out |
| 3. out        | B: up     |
| 4. away       | A: off    |
| 5. on         | B: back   |
| 6. up ... off | 10. back  |
| 7. back       |           |

◇ PRACTICE 6, p. 309.

- |                  |                |
|------------------|----------------|
| 1. out ... out   | 7. down ... X  |
| 2. on ... X      | 8. X ... up    |
| 3. into ... X    | 9. away ... X  |
| 4. into ... X    | 10. up ... up  |
| 5. up ... up     | 11. off ... X  |
| 6. away ... away | 12. from ... X |

◇ PRACTICE 7, p. 310.

- |         |           |          |
|---------|-----------|----------|
| 1. over | 6. down   | 11. out  |
| 2. out  | 7. around | 12. up   |
| 3. in   | 8. out    | 13. over |
| 4. out  | 9. up     |          |
| 5. out  | 10. out   |          |

◇ PRACTICE 8, p. 311.

- |            |            |
|------------|------------|
| 1. a. off  | 5. a. into |
| b. on      | b. up      |
| c. down    | c. over    |
| d. back    | 6. a. up   |
| e. out     | b. off     |
| f. away    | c. back    |
| 2. a. in   | 7. a. down |
| b. out     | b. back    |
| 3. a. over | c. up      |
| b. off     | d. over    |
| c. on      | 8. a. in   |
| d. into    | b. out     |
| e. out of  | c. up      |
| 4. a. out  |            |
| b. up      |            |
| c. down    |            |

◇ PRACTICE 9, p. 312.

- |        |           |           |
|--------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. on  | 6. A: out | 9. up     |
| 2. up  | B: over   | 10. on    |
| 3. out | 7. A: off | 11. A: up |
| 4. out | B: over   | B: up     |
| 5. out | 8. back   |           |

◇ PRACTICE 10, p. 313.

- |                  |                   |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 1. lay ... off   | 6. cheer ... up   |
| 2. take ... back | 7. clean ... up   |
| 3. take ... out  | 8. worked ... out |
| 4. blow ... out  | 9. think ... over |
| 5. give ... away | 10. bring ... up  |

◇ PRACTICE 11, p. 314.

- |                |          |            |
|----------------|----------|------------|
| 1. off         | 8. out   | 15. out of |
| 2. out         | 9. down  | 16. out    |
| 3. up          | 10. down | 17. on     |
| 4. up          | 11. up   | 18. up     |
| 5. over        | 12. up   | 19. back   |
| 6. up          | 13. up   | 20. up     |
| 7. in ... down | 14. up   | 21. up     |

◇ PRACTICE 12, p. 316.

- |           |          |
|-----------|----------|
| 1. a. up  | 2. a. up |
| b. up     | b. up    |
| c. up     | c. up    |
| d. out    | d. up    |
| e. out    | e. up    |
| f. out of | f. up    |

◇ PRACTICE 13, p. 316.

- |                |                 |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. out for     | 7. through with |
| 2. in on       | 8. out for      |
| 3. up for      | 9. back from    |
| 4. along with  | 10. out of      |
| 5. around with | 11. up in       |
| 6. out of      |                 |

◇ PRACTICE 14, p. 317.

- |                     |               |
|---------------------|---------------|
| 1. gymnastics class | 5. assignment |
| 2. their neighbors  | 6. cord       |
| 3. paint            | 7. Hawaii     |
| 4. rocks            | 8. snakes     |

◇ PRACTICE 15, p. 317.

- |                  |                   |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 1. out ... about | 6. A: along with  |
| 2. out for       | B: out of         |
| 3. back to       | 7. over to        |
| 4. out with      | 8. around with    |
| 5. away from     | 9. over to        |
|                  | 10. together with |

◇ PRACTICE 16, p. 318.

- |              |                  |
|--------------|------------------|
| 1. out about | 5. together with |
| 2. out for   | 6. along with    |
| 3. back to   | 7. over to       |
| 4. around    | 8. out of        |

◇ PRACTICE 17, p. 319.

- |      |       |       |       |
|------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. A | 7. B  | 13. B | 19. D |
| 2. B | 8. B  | 14. D | 20. A |
| 3. C | 9. A  | 15. A | 21. A |
| 4. C | 10. C | 16. C | 22. C |
| 5. A | 11. D | 17. A | 23. B |
| 6. B | 12. A | 18. D | 24. A |

## Appendix 2: PREPOSITION COMBINATIONS

### ◇ PRACTICE 1, p. 321.

- |         |          |          |
|---------|----------|----------|
| 1. of   | 6. to    | 11. with |
| 2. to   | 7. about | 12. for  |
| 3. to   | 8. of    | 13. for  |
| 4. with | 9. from  |          |
| 5. for  | 10. to   |          |

### ◇ PRACTICE 2, p. 322.

- |      |      |       |
|------|------|-------|
| 1. B | 5. C | 9. D  |
| 2. F | 6. I | 10. G |
| 3. J | 7. A |       |
| 4. E | 8. H |       |

### ◇ PRACTICE 3, p. 322.

- |         |          |          |
|---------|----------|----------|
| 1. at   | 6. for   | 11. with |
| 2. at   | 7. for   | 12. to   |
| 3. in   | 8. from  | 13. with |
| 4. with | 9. about |          |
| 5. for  | 10. for  |          |

### ◇ PRACTICE 4, p. 323.

- |      |      |       |
|------|------|-------|
| 1. A | 5. B | 9. A  |
| 2. C | 6. A | 10. A |
| 3. B | 7. C |       |
| 4. A | 8. C |       |

### ◇ PRACTICE 5, p. 323.

- |               |             |           |
|---------------|-------------|-----------|
| 1. A: with/to | 6. to       | 13. about |
| B: about      | 7. for      | 14. with  |
| 2. for        | 8. of/about | 15. about |
| 3. to         | 9. for      |           |
| 4. of         | 10. of      |           |
| 5. A: in      | 11. for     |           |
| B: for        | 12. from    |           |

### ◇ PRACTICE 6, p. 324.

- |          |             |
|----------|-------------|
| 1. a. of | 2. a. about |
| b. for   | b. about    |
| c. of    | c. of       |
| d. with  | d. of       |
| e. with  | e. of       |
| f. of    | f. about    |
| g. in    | g. for      |
| h. to    | h. for      |

### ◇ PRACTICE 7, p. 325.

- |                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. for             | 6. in              |
| 2. A: to ... about | 7. of              |
| B: at ... for      | 8. with ... about  |
| 3. to              | 9. to              |
| 4. from            | 10. to             |
| 5. A: on           | 11. with ... about |
| B: about           |                    |

### ◇ PRACTICE 8, p. 326.

- |                   |                       |
|-------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. arrived at     | 6. talked about       |
| 2. wait on        | 7. is leaving for     |
| 3. invited ... to | 8. is ... staring at  |
| 4. consists of    | 9. helped ... with    |
| 5. waited for     | 10. borrowed ... from |

### ◇ PRACTICE 9, p. 326.

- |         |                    |           |
|---------|--------------------|-----------|
| 1. for  | 6. A: to           | 10. from  |
| 2. with | B: for             | 11. like  |
| 3. to   | 7. about/of        | 12. about |
| 4. at   | 8. for             |           |
| 5. to   | 9. about ... about |           |

### ◇ PRACTICE 10, p. 327.

- |      |      |       |
|------|------|-------|
| 1. G | 5. B | 9. E  |
| 2. I | 6. H | 10. D |
| 3. C | 7. A |       |
| 4. J | 8. F |       |

### ◇ PRACTICE 11, p. 327.

- |         |                   |             |
|---------|-------------------|-------------|
| 1. on   | 6. to ... for ... | 10. for     |
| 2. from | for ... on        | 11. from    |
| 3. of   | 7. for            | 12. from/of |
| 4. on   | 8. to             | 13. of      |
| 5. to   | 9. of             |             |

### ◇ PRACTICE 12, p. 328.

- |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. a. C | 4. a. X | 7. a. C |
| b. C    | b. C    | b. X    |
| 2. a. C | 5. a. C | 8. a. X |
| b. X    | b. C    | b. C    |
| 3. a. C | 6. a. C |         |
| b. C    | b. C    |         |

### ◇ PRACTICE 13, p. 329.

- |                              |                   |
|------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. on                        | 7. about ... from |
| 2. to ... about              | 8. about          |
| 3. to ... from ... by ... by | 9. A: from        |
| 4. for                       | B: from           |
| 5. A: about                  | 10. about         |
| B: with                      |                   |
| 6. A: from                   |                   |
| B: to                        |                   |

### ◇ PRACTICE 14, p. 330.

- |                     |                     |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1. hoped for        | 5. concentrates on  |
| 2. wonders about    | 6. escaped from     |
| 3. divided ... into | 7. am accustomed to |
| 4. add ... to       | 8. heard ... about  |

### ◇ PRACTICE 15, p. 331.

Correct (circled) prepositions:

- |             |                    |             |
|-------------|--------------------|-------------|
| 1. to       | 8. like            | 15. with    |
| 2. from/of  | 9. to              | 16. to/with |
| 3. from     | 10. of             | 17. about   |
| 4. with/to  | 11. about ... with | 18. by      |
| 5. of/about | 12. of/about       | 19. on      |
| 6. of/about | 13. with           |             |
| 7. for      | 14. at/with        |             |

### ◇ PRACTICE 16, p. 331.

- |      |       |       |       |
|------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. D | 7. B  | 13. B | 19. C |
| 2. B | 8. B  | 14. A | 20. A |
| 3. C | 9. D  | 15. A | 21. B |
| 4. A | 10. C | 16. B | 22. B |
| 5. B | 11. D | 17. C | 23. A |
| 6. A | 12. B | 18. B | 24. C |

# NOTES